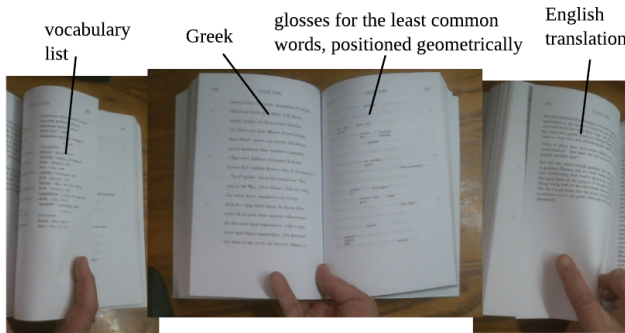


This book is a presentation of a bilingual text with student aids, built using open-source software. For information about how the book is intended to be used and why it's designed the way it is, go to lightandmatter.com/ransom. To read this book on a computer screen, you should set up your PDF viewer so that it displays a two-page layout, with an even page on the left and an odd one on the right.



Text and aids are presented in a four-page spread.

rev. December 31, 2025

The Greek text is from the 1920 edition by Godley, via Wikisource. My additional proofreading and editorial work on the Greek text are released here under the CC0 license.

The English translation is by Macaulay, 1890, via Project Gutenberg.

Text I've written, such as notes and glosses, is CC-BY-SA 4.0. Glosses taken verbatim from Cunliffe or White and Morgan are in the public domain, as are the LSJ dictionary entries. Glosses taken verbatim from Wiktionary are CC-BY-SA 3.0. US law does not allow copyrighting of grammatical facts such as part-of-speech tagging and does not give any additional protection to databases beyond the normal protection of copyright.

Copyright info. Text I've written, such as notes and glosses, is (c) 2025 Benjamin Crowell and CC-BY-SA 4.0. Glosses taken verbatim from Cunliffe or White and Morgan are in the public domain, as are the LSJ dictionary entries. Glosses taken verbatim from Wiktionary are CC-BY-SA 3.0. US law does not allow copyrighting of grammatical facts such as part-of-speech tagging and does not give any additional protection to databases beyond the normal protection of copyright.

vocabulary

ἀπαγινέω lead away, back
 ἀποδείκνυμι (ὄ) show, point out;
 appoint; (mid) declare
 ἀπόδεξις acceptance; (Ion) showing
 διατίθημι arrange; set out goods for
 sale ~thesis
 διαφορά disagreement
 εἰσαφικνέομαι arrive at
 ἕκτος sixth ~hexagon
 Ἕλλην Greek
 ἐξίτηλος fading

ἱστορία science, history
 λόγιος learned, eloquent; oracle
 ναυτιλία sailing ~navy
 πέμπτος fifth ~pentagon
 πέρθω sack, ravage, plunder
 Πέρσης Persian
 προέχω be ahead, jut forward; mid:
 have before one
 φορτίον burden, load
 φόρτος outward cargo ~bear
 χῶρος place ~heir

Ἡροδότου Ἀλικαρνησέος ἱστορίας ἀπόδεξις ἥδε, ὥς μήτε τὰ γενόμενα ἐξ ἀνθρώπων τῷ χρόνῳ ἐξίτηλα γένηται, μήτε ἔργα μεγάλα τε καὶ θωμαστά, τὰ μὲν Ἕλλησι τὰ δὲ βαρβάροισι ἀποδεχθέντα, ἀκλεᾶ γένηται, τὰ τε ἄλλα καὶ δι' ἣν αἰτίην ἐπολέμησαν ἀλλήλοισι.

1.1

Περσέων μὲν νυν οἱ λόγιοι Φοίνικας αἰτίους φασὶ γενέσθαι τῆς διαφορῆς. τούτους γὰρ ἀπὸ τῆς Ἐρυθρῆς καλεομένης θαλάσσης ἀπικομένους ἐπὶ τήνδε τὴν θάλασσαν, καὶ οἰκήσαντας τοῦτον τὸν χώρον τὸν καὶ νῦν οἰκέουσι, αὐτίκα ναυτιλίῃσι μακρῇσι ἐπιθέσθαι, ἀπαγινέοντας δὲ φορτία Αἰγύπτια τε καὶ Ἀσσύρια τῇ τε ἄλλῃ ἐσαπικνέεσθαι καὶ δὴ καὶ ἐς Ἄργος. τὸ δὲ Ἄργος τοῦτον τὸν χρόνον προεῖχε ἅπασι τῶν ἐν τῇ νῦν Ἑλλάδι καλεομένη χώρῃ. ἀπικομένους δὲ τοὺς Φοίνικας ἐς δὴ τὸ Ἄργος τοῦτο διατίθεσθαι τὸν φόρτον. πέμπτη δὲ ἡ ἕκτη ἡμέρη

Ἡροδότου Ἀλικαρνησέος ἱστορίας |acceptance; ἵσταται, ὥς μήτε
 |(Ion) showing
 τὰ γενόμενα ἐξ ἀνθρώπων τῷ χρόνῳ |fading γένηται,
 μήτε ἔργα μεγάλα τε καὶ θωμαστά, τὰ μὲν |Greek τὰ
 δὲ βαρβάροισι |show, point out; ἀπὸ εἰς γένηται, τά τε ἄλλα
 |point; (mid) declare
 καὶ δι' ἣν αἰτίην ἐπολέμησαν ἀλλήλοισι.

1.1

Περσέων μὲν νυν οἱ |learned, ἐλό- κας αἰτίους φασὶ γενέσθαι
 |quent; oracle
 τῆς |disagreement. οὗτους γὰρ ἀπὸ τῆς Ἐρυθρῆς καλεομένης
 θαλάσσης ἀπικομένους ἐπὶ τήνδε τὴν θάλασσαν, καὶ
 οἰκήσαντας τοῦτον τὸν |place τὸν καὶ νῦν οἰκέουσι, αὐτίκα
 ναυτιλίῃσι μακρῇσι ἐπιθέσθαι, |lead away, back δὲ |burden, load
 Αἰγύπτιά τε καὶ Ἀσσύρια τῇ τε ἄλλῃ |arrive at καὶ
 δὴ καὶ ἐς Ἄργος. τὸ δὲ Ἄργος τοῦτον τὸν χρόνον
 |be ahead, ἵστασι τῶν ἐν τῇ νῦν Ἑλλάδι καλεομένη χώρῃ.
 |have before
 ἀπικομένους δὲ τοὺς Φοίνικας ἐς δὴ τὸ Ἄργος τοῦτο
 |arrange; set . out |outward. |fifth δὲ ἡ ἕκτη ἡμέρη
 |goods for sale |cargo

This is the Showing forth of the Inquiry of Herodotus of Halicarnassos, to the end that neither the deeds of men may be forgotten by lapse of time, nor the works great and marvellous, which have been produced some by Hellenes and some by Barbarians, may lose their renown; and especially that the causes may be remembered for which these waged war with one another.

1.1

Those of the Persians who have knowledge of history declare that the Phenicians first began the quarrel. These, they say, came from that which is called the Erythraian Sea to this of ours; and having settled in the land where they continue even now to dwell, set themselves forthwith to make long voyages by sea. And conveying merchandise of Egypt and of Assyria they arrived at other places and also at Argos; now Argos was at that time in all points the first of the States within that land which is now called Hellas;— the Phenicians arrived then at this land of Argos, and began to dispose of their ship's cargo: and on the fifth or sixth day after

vocabulary

ἀδίκημα -τος (n, 3) wrong, misdeed
ἀπηγέομαι lead; tell, relate
ἀποπλέω sail away ~float
ἀποφεύγω avoid, escape, go free
ἀρπάζω carry off, seize ~harpoon
διακελεύομαι give orders to, encourage

εἰσβάλλω throw into ~ballistic
Ἑλλην Greek
ἐξεμπολάω do commerce
Πέρσης Persian
πρύμνα stern
φορτίον burden, load
ὠνέομαι buy

ἀπ' ἧς ἀπίκοντο, ἐξεμπολημένων σφι σχεδὸν πάντων, ἐλθεῖν ἐπὶ τὴν θάλασσαν γυναῖκας ἄλλας τε πολλὰς καὶ δὴ καὶ τοῦ βασιλέως θυγατέρα· τὸ δέ οἱ οὔνομα εἶναι, κατὰ τὸντὸ τὸ καὶ Ἑλλήνες λέγουσι, Ἰοῦν τὴν Ἰνάχου· ταύτας στάσας κατὰ πρύμνην τῆς νεὸς ὠνέεσθαι τῶν φορτίων τῶν σφι ἦν θυμὸς μάλιστα· καὶ τοὺς Φοίνικας διακελευσαμένους ὀρμῆσαι ἐπ' αὐτάς. τὰς μὲν δὴ πλεῦνας τῶν γυναικῶν ἀποφυγεῖν, τὴν δὲ Ἰοῦν σὺν ἄλλῃσι ἀρπασθῆναι. ἐσβαλομένους δὲ ἐς τὴν νέα οἶχεσθαι ἀποπλέοντας ἐπ' Αἰγύπτου.

1.2

Οὕτω μὲν Ἰοῦν ἐς Αἴγυπτον ἀπικέσθαι λέγουσι Πέρσαι, οὐκ ὥς Ἑλλήνες, καὶ τῶν ἀδικημάτων πρῶτον τοῦτο ἄρξαι· μετὰ δὲ ταῦτα Ἑλλήνων τινὰς οὐ γὰρ ἔχουσι τοῦνομα ἀπηγγέσασθαι φασὶ τῆς Φοινίκης ἐς Τύρον προσσχόντας ἀρπάσαι τοῦ βασιλέως τὴν θυγατέρα Εὐρώπην. εἶσαν δ' ἄν οὗτοι Κρήτες. ταῦτα μὲν δὴ ἴσα πρὸς ἴσα σφι γενέσθαι, μετὰ δὲ ταῦτα Ἑλλήνας αἰτίους

ἀπ' ἧς ἀπίκοντο, |do commerce σφι σχεδὸν πάντων,
 ἔλθειν ἐπὶ τὴν θάλασσαν γυναῖκας ἄλλας τε πολλὰς
 καὶ δὴ καὶ τοῦ βασιλέος θυγατέρα· τὸ δέ οἱ οὔνομα
 εἶναι, κατὰ τὸντὸ τὸ καὶ |Greek λέγουσι, Ἰοῦν τὴν
 Ἰνάχου· ταύτας στάσας κατὰ |stern τῆς νεὸς |buy
 τῶν |burden, load Ἦν σφι ἦν θυμὸς μάλιστα· καὶ τοὺς
 Φοίνικας |give orders to, en- ὀρμήσαι ἐπ' αὐτάς. τὰς μὲν
 |courage
 δὴ πλεῦνας τῶν γυναικῶν |avoid, escape, γὴν δὲ Ἰοῦν σὺν
 |go free
 ἄλλῃσι |carry off, seize |throw into δὲ ἐς τὴν νέα οἴχεσθαι
 |sail away ἐπ' Αἰγύπτου.

1.2

Οὕτω μὲν Ἰοῦν ἐς Αἰγυπτον ἀπικέσθαι λέγουσι Πέρσαι,
 οὐκ ὥς |Greek , καὶ τῶν |wrong, πρῶτον τοῦτο
 |misdeed
 ἄρξαι· μετὰ δὲ ταῦτα |Greek τινὰς οὐ γὰρ ἔχουσι
 τοῦνομα |lead; tell, relate φασὶ τῆς Φοινίκης ἐς Τύρον
 προσσχόντας |carry off, seize ὁ βασιλέος τὴν θυγατέρα
 Εὐρώπην. εἶησαν δ' ἄν οὗτοι Κρήτες. ταῦτα μὲν δὴ ἴσα
 πρὸς ἴσα σφι γενέσθαι, μετὰ δὲ ταῦτα |Greek αἰτίους

they had arrived, when their goods had been almost all sold, there came down to the sea a great company of women, and among them the daughter of the king; and her name, as the Hellenes also agree, was Io the daughter of Inachos. These standing near to the stern of the ship were buying of the wares such as pleased them most, when of a sudden the Phenicians, passing the word from one to another, made a rush upon them; and the greater part of the women escaped by flight, but Io and certain others were carried off. So they put them on board their ship, and forthwith departed, sailing away to Egypt.

1.2

In this manner the Persians report that Io came to Egypt, not agreeing therein with the Hellenes, and this they say was the first beginning of wrongs. Then after this, they say, certain Hellenes (but the name of the people they are not able to report) put in to the city of Tyre in Phenicia and carried off the king's daughter Europa;—these would doubtless be Cretans;— and so they were quits for the former injury. After this however the Hellenes, they say, were the authors

vocabulary

ἀδικία injustice, offence

ἀπαιτέω demand to have returned

ἄρπαγή seizure; rape

ἄρπάζω carry off, seize ~harpoon

διαπράσσω travel over, accomplish

~practice

Ἕλληγν Greek

ἐνθεῦτεν thence

καθαπλόω spread over

πάντως by all means

προῖσχω be ahead, jut forward; mid:

have before one

προφέρω bring forth ~bear

ὑποκρίνομαι (i) answer; pretend

τῆς δευτέρης ἀδικίης γενέσθαι· καταπλώσαντας γὰρ μακρῇ νηί ἐς Αἰάν τε τὴν Κολχίδα καὶ ἐπὶ Φᾶσιν ποταμόν, ἐνθεύτεν, διαπρηξαμένους καὶ τᾶλλα τῶν εἵνεκεν ἀπίκατο, ἀρπάσαι τοῦ βασιλέως τὴν θυγατέρα Μηδείην. πέμψαντά δὲ τὸν Κόλχων βασιλέα ἐς τὴν Ἑλλάδα κήρυκα αἰτέειν τε δίκας τῆς ἀρπαγῆς καὶ ἀπαιτέειν τὴν θυγατέρα. τοὺς δὲ ὑποκρίνασθαι ὡς οὐδὲ ἐκεῖνοι Ἴους τῆς Ἀργείης ἔδοσαν σφι δίκας τῆς ἀρπαγῆς· οὐδὲ ὧν αὐτοὶ δώσειν ἐκείνοισι.

1.3

Δευτέρῃ δὲ λέγουσι γενεῇ μετὰ ταῦτα Ἀλέξανδρον¹ τὸν Πριάμου, ἀκηκοότα ταῦτα, ἐθελῆσαί οἱ ἐκ τῆς Ἑλλάδος δι' ἀρπαγῆς γενέσθαι γυναῖκα, ἐπιστάμενον πάντως ὅτι οὐ δώσει δίκας· οὐδὲ γὰρ ἐκείνους διδόναι. οὕτω δὲ ἀρπάσαντος αὐτοῦ Ἑλένην, τοῖσι Ἑλλήσι δόξαι πρῶτον πέμψαντας ἀγγέλους ἀπαιτέειν τε Ἑλένην καὶ δίκας τῆς ἀρπαγῆς αἰτέειν. τοὺς δὲ προῖσχομένων ταῦτα, προφέρειν σφι Μηδείης τὴν ἀρπαγὴν, ὡς οὐ δόντες αὐτοὶ δίκας οὐδὲ

¹ =Paris, the Trojan character from the Iliad who went off with Helen

τῆς δευτέρης ἀδικίης γενέσθαι· |spread over γὰρ
μακρῇ νηὶ ἐς Αἶαν τε τὴν Κολχίδα καὶ ἐπὶ Φᾶσιν ποταμόν,
|thence , |travel over, accom- καὶ τᾶλλα τῶν εἵνεκεν ἀπίκατο,
|plish
|carry off, seize βασιλέος τὴν θυγατέρα Μηδείην. πέμψαντά
δὲ τὸν Κόλχων βασιλέα ἐς τὴν Ἑλλάδα κήρυκα αἰτέειν
τε δίκας τῆς |seizure; rape ... |demand τὸν θυγατέρα. τοὺς
|have returned
δὲ |answer; pretend ὥς οὐδὲ ἐκείνοι Ἴους τῆς Ἀργείης ἔδοσαν
σφι δίκας τῆς |seizure; rape ἰδὲ ὧν αὐτοὶ δώσειν ἐκείνοισι.

1.3

Δευτέρῃ δὲ λέγουσι γενεῇ μετὰ ταῦτα Ἀλέξανδρον¹ τὸν
Πριάμου, ἀκηκοότα ταῦτα, ἐθελῆσαί οἱ ἐκ τῆς Ἑλλάδος
δι' |seizure; rape νέσθαι γυναῖκα, ἐπιστάμενον |by all means .
οὐ δώσει δίκας· οὐδὲ γὰρ ἐκείνους διδόναι. οὕτω δὲ
|carry off, seize αὐτοῦ Ἑλένην, τοῖσι |Greek δόξαι πρῶτον
πέμψαντας ἀγγέλους |demand to Ἑλένην καὶ δίκας τῆς
|have returned
|seizure; rape ἔειπεν. τοὺς δὲ |be ahead, have ταῦτα, |bring forth
|before
σφι Μηδείης τὴν ἀρπαγὴν, ὥς οὐ δόντες αὐτοὶ δίκας οὐδὲ

¹ =Paris, the Trojan character from the Iliad who went off with Helen

of the second wrong; for they sailed in to Aia of Colchis and to the river Phasis with a ship of war, and from thence, after they had done the other business for which they came, they carried off the king's daughter Medea: and the king of Colchis sent a herald to the land of Hellas and demanded satisfaction for the rape and to have his daughter back; but they answered that, as the Barbarians had given them no satisfaction for the rape of Io the Argive, so neither would they give satisfaction to the Barbarians for this.

1.3

In the next generation after this, they say, Alexander the son of Priam, having heard of these things, desired to get a wife for himself by violence from Hellas, being fully assured that he would not be compelled to give any satisfaction for this wrong, inasmuch as the Hellenes gave none for theirs. So he carried off Helen, and the Hellenes resolved to send messengers first and to demand her back with satisfaction for the rape; and when they put forth this demand, the others alleged to them the rape of Medea, saying that the Hellenes were now desiring satisfaction to be given to them by others,

*vocabulary***άνόητος** foolish**ἀπαιτέω** demand to have returned**ἄρπαγή** seizure; rape**ἄρπάζω** carry off, seize ~harpoon**ἐκδίδωμι** hand over ~donate**Ἕλλην** Greek**εὖς** good, brave, noble**καθαιρέω** take down, close ~heresy**ὄον** οὖ type of fruit**Πέρσης** Persian**σπουδή** zeal; (dat) with difficulty,

hastily ~repudiate

συναγείρω gather together ~agora**σώφρων** sensible, prudent ~frenzy**τιμωρέω** (ι) (+dat) take vengeance,

punish; aid one who has been attacked

ἐκδόντες ἀπαιτεόντων βουλοίατό σφι παρ' ἄλλων δίκας γίνεσθαι.

1.4

Μέχρι μὲν ὧν τούτου ἀρπαγὰς μούνας εἶναι παρ' ἀλλήλων, τὸ δὲ ἀπὸ τούτου Ἕλληνας δὴ μεγάλως αἰτίους γενέσθαι· προτέρους γὰρ ἄρξαι στρατεύεσθαι ἐς τὴν Ἀσίην ἢ σφέας ἐς τὴν Εὐρώπην. τὸ μὲν νυν ἀρπάζειν γυναῖκας ἀνδρῶν ἀδίκων νομίζειν ἔργον εἶναι, τὸ δὲ ἀρπασθισέων σπουδὴν ποιήσασθαι τιμωρέειν ἀνοήτων, τὸ δὲ μηδεμίαν ὥρην ἔχειν ἀρπασθισέων σωφρόνων· δηλα γὰρ δὴ ὅτι, εἰ μὴ αὐταὶ ἐβούλοντο, οὐκ ἂν ἠρπάζοντο. σφέας μὲν δὴ τοὺς ἐκ τῆς Ἀσίας λέγουσι Πέρσαι ἀρπαζομενέων τῶν γυναικῶν λόγον οὐδένα ποιήσασθαι, Ἕλληνας δὲ Λακεδαιμονίης εἵνεκεν γυναικὸς¹ στόλον μέγαν συναγεῖραι καὶ ἔπειτα ἐλθόντας ἐς τὴν Ἀσίην τὴν Πριάμου δύναμιν κατελεῖν. ἀπὸ τούτου αἰεὶ ἠγγήσασθαι τὸ Ἑλληνικὸν σφίσι εἶναι πολέμιον. τὴν

¹ Helen, wife of Menelaus of Sparta

|hand over |demand to βουλοίατό σφι παρ' ἄλλων δίκας
|have returned
γίνεσθαι.

1.4

Μέχρι μὲν ὦν τούτου |seizure; rape, ούνας εἶναι παρ'
ἀλλήλων, τὸ δὲ ἀπὸ τούτου |Greek δὴ μεγάλως
αἰτίους γενέσθαι· προτέρους γὰρ ἄρξαι στρατεύεσθαι
ἐς τὴν Ἀσίην ἢ σφέας ἐς τὴν Εὐρώπην. τὸ μὲν
νυν |carry off, seize αἰκας ἀνδρῶν ἀδίκων νομίζειν ἔργον
εἶναι, τὸ δὲ |carry off, seize |zeal; (dat) with difficulty, take vengeance,
|hastily |punish, aid
|foolish , τὸ δὲ μηδεμίαν ὥρην ἔχειν |carry off, seize
|sensible, δῆλα γὰρ δὴ ὅτι, εἰ μὴ αὐταὶ ἐβούλοντο,
|prudent
οὐκ ἂν |carry off, seize σφέας μὲν δὴ τοὺς ἐκ τῆς Ἀσίας
λέγουσι Πέρσαι |carry off, seize τῶν γυναικῶν λόγον
οὐδένα ποιήσασθαι, |Greek δὲ Λακεδαιμονίης εὔνεκεν
γυναικὸς¹ στόλον |big, |gather καὶ ἔπειτα ἐλθόντας
|great, |together
ἐς τὴν Ἀσίην τὴν |mar- |take down, close οὗτου
|velous
αἰεὶ ἠγήσασθαι τὸ Ἑλληνικὸν σφίσι εἶναι πολέμιον. τὴν

¹ Helen, wife of Menelaus of Sparta

though they had given none themselves nor had surrendered the person when demand was made.

1.4

Up to this point, they say, nothing more happened than the carrying away of women on both sides; but after this the Hellenes were very greatly to blame; for they set the first example of war, making an expedition into Asia before the Barbarians made any into Europe. Now they say that in their judgment, though it is an act of wrong to carry away women by force, it is a folly to set one's heart on taking vengeance for their rape, and the wise course is to pay no regard when they have been carried away; for it is evident that they would never be carried away if they were not themselves willing to go. And the Persians say that they, namely the people of Asia, when their women were carried away by force, had made it a matter of no account, but the Hellenes on account of a woman of Lacedemon gathered together a great armament, and then came to Asia and destroyed the dominion of Priam; and that from this time forward they had always considered the Hellenic race to be their enemy: for Asia

vocabulary

αἰδέομαι respect, be ashamed
ἁλίσκομαι be captured ~helix
ἄλλομαι to jump ~sally
ἄλωσις -τος (f) being conquered
ἄρπαγή seizure; rape
ἄρπάζω carry off, seize ~harpoon
ἔγκυος pregnant
ἐθελοντής -οῦ (m, f) a volunteer
Ἑλλήν Greek
ἐνοικέω dwell in
ἐπέξειμι attack, prosecute

ἔχθρη hate
κατάδηλος manifest, visible
ναύκληρος ship master, landlord
οἰκηιόω adopt, adapt
Πέρσης Persian
προβαίνω surpass, continue ~basis
πρόσω forward, in the future; far
σημαίνω give orders to; show; mark
 ~semaphore
τοκεύς -ος (m) parent ~oxytocin
χωρίζω divide; distinguish, pull down

γὰρ Ἀσίην καὶ τὰ ἐνοικέοντα ἔθνηα βάρβαρα οἰκηεῦνται οἱ Πέρσαι, τὴν δὲ Εὐρώπην καὶ τὸ Ἑλληνικόν ἡγῆνται κεχωρίσθαι.

1.5

Οὕτω μὲν Πέρσαι λέγουσι γενέσθαι, καὶ διὰ τὴν Ἰλίου ἄλωσιν εὐρίσκουσι σφίσι εὐοῦσαν τὴν ἀρχὴν τῆς ἑχθρῆς τῆς ἐς τοὺς Ἕλληνας. περὶ δὲ τῆς Ἰοῦς οὐκ ὁμολογέουσι Πέρσησι οὕτω Φοίνικες· οὐ γὰρ ἀρπαγῇ σφέας χρησαμένους λέγουσι ἀγαγεῖν αὐτὴν ἐς Αἴγυπτον, ἀλλ' ὥς ἐν τῷ Ἄργει ἐμίσγετο τῷ ναυκλήρῳ τῆς νέος· ἐπεὶ δ' ἔμαθε ἔγκυος εὐοῦσα, αἰδεομένη τοὺς τοκέας οὕτω δὴ ἐθελοντὴν αὐτὴν τοῖσι Φοίνιξι συνεκπλώσαι, ὥς ἂν μὴ κατάδηλος γένηται. ταῦτα μὲν νυν Πέρσαι τε καὶ Φοίνικες λέγουσι· ἐγὼ δὲ περὶ μὲν τούτων οὐκ ἔρχομαι ἐρέων ὥς οὕτω ἢ ἄλλως κως ταῦτα ἐγένετο, τὸν δὲ οἶδα αὐτὸς πρῶτον ὑπάρξαντα ἀδίκων ἔργων ἐς τοὺς Ἕλληνας, τοῦτον σημῖνας προβήσομαι ἐς τὸ πρόσω τοῦ λόγου, ὁμοίως σμικρὰ καὶ μεγάλα ἄστυα ἀνθρώπων ἐπεξιών.

γὰρ Ἀσίην καὶ τὰ |dwelt in ἔθνεα βάρβαρα |adopt, adapt
οἱ Πέρσαι, τὴν δὲ Εὐρώπην καὶ τὸ Ἑλληνικόν ἡγῆνται
|divide; distinguish,
|pull down

1.5

Οὕτω μὲν Πέρσαι λέγουσι γενέσθαι, καὶ διὰ τὴν
Ἰλίου ἄλωσιν εὐρίσκουσι σφίσι εὐδυσαν τὴν ἀρχὴν τῆς
|hate τῆς ἐς τοὺς |Greek περὶ δὲ τῆς Ἰοῦς οὐκ
ὁμολογέουσι Πέρσῃσι οὕτω Φοίνικες· οὐ γὰρ ἀρπαγῇ
σφέας χρησαμένους λέγουσι ἀγαγεῖν αὐτὴν ἐς Αἴγυπτον,
ἀλλ' ὥς ἐν τῷ Ἀργεὶ ἐμίσγετο τῷ |ship master, τῆς νέος·
|landlord
ἐπεὶ δ' ἔμαθε |pregnant ὀύσα, |respect, |be|parent οὕτω
|ashamed
δὴ ἐθελοντὴν αὐτὴν τοῖσι Φοίνιξι συνεκπλῶσαι, ὥς ἂν μὴ
|manifest, γένηται. ταῦτα μὲν νυν Πέρσαι τε καὶ Φοίνικες
|visible
λέγουσι· ἐγὼ δὲ περὶ μὲν τούτων οὐκ ἔρχομαι ἐρέων ὥς
οὕτω ἢ ἄλλως κως ταῦτα ἐγένετο, τὸν δὲ οἶδα αὐτὸς
πρῶτον ὑπάρξαντα ἀδίκων ἔργων ἐς τοὺς |Greek
τούτων |give orders|surpass ἐς τὸ |forward, in the λόγου,
|to; show; |future; far
ὁμοίως |mark καὶ μεγάλα ἄστεα ἀνθρώπων |attack,
|prosecute

and the Barbarian races which dwell there the Persians claim as belonging to them; but Europe and the Hellenic race they consider to be parted off from them.

1.5

The Persians for their part say that things happened thus; and they conclude that the beginning of their quarrel with the Hellenes was on account of the taking of Ilion: but as regards Io the Phenicians do not agree with the Persians in telling the tale thus; for they deny that they carried her off to Egypt by violent means, and they say on the other hand that when they were in Argos she was intimate with the master of their ship, and perceiving that she was with child, she was ashamed to confess it to her parents, and therefore sailed away with the Phenicians of her own will, for fear of being found out. These are the tales told by the Persians and the Phenicians severally: and concerning these things I am not going to say that they happened thus or thus, but when I have pointed to the man who first within my own knowledge began to commit wrong against the Hellenes, I shall go forward further with the story, giving an account of the cities of men, small as well as

vocabulary

άνθρωπηος human
άπαγωγή leading away
βορέας -οῦ (m, 1) north, north wind
ἐλεύθερος not enslaved
Ἕλλην Greek
ἐντός within
ἐξίημι send forth, allow forth ~jet
ἐπιμνήσκωμαι remember, speak
 about ~mnemonic
εὐδαιμονία prosperity
εὖς good, brave, noble
καταστρέφω overturn, subdue
 ~catastrophe
καταστροφή end, conclusion
μεσαμβρία midday; the south
μεταξύ between
ὄον οὗ type of fruit

οὐδαμὸς not anyone
πάλαι long ago ~paleo
παλαίω wrestle ~Pallas
πάλη wrestling ~Pallas
πάλλω shake, brandish ~Pallas
προσποιέω give over to; pretend
 ~poet
ῥέω flow ~rheostat
ῥοά pl: waters of a river ~rheostat
ῥόος ῥοῦ stream, flow, current
 ~rheostat
στράτευμα -τος (n, 3) army ~strategy
τύραννος tyrant
φορέω frequentative of φέρω, to carry
 ~bear
φόρον forum
φόρος tribute, revenue

τὰ γὰρ τὸ πάλαι μεγάλα ἦν, τὰ πολλὰ σμικρὰ αὐτῶν
γέγονε· τὰ δὲ ἐπ' ἐμεῦ ἦν μεγάλα, πρότερον ἦν σμικρά.
τὴν ἀνθρωπηϊνῶν ἐπιστάμενος εὐδαιμονίην οὐδαμὰ ἐν
τῶντῳ μένουσαν, ἐπιμνήσομαι ἀμφοτέρων ὁμοίως.

1.6

Κροῖσος¹ ἦν Λυδὸς² μὲν γένος, παῖς δὲ Ἀλυάττεω,
τύραννος δὲ ἐθνέων τῶν ἐντὸς Ἄλυσ ποταμοῦ, ὃς ῥέων
ἀπὸ μεσαμβρίας μεταξὺ Συρίων τε καὶ Παφλαγόνων ἐξιᾶ
πρὸς βορέην ἄνεμον ἐς τὸν Εὐξείνου καλεόμενον πόντον.
οὗτος ὁ Κροῖσος, βαρβάρων πρῶτος τῶν ἡμεῖς ἴδμεν,
τοὺς μὲν κατεστρέψατο Ἑλλήνων ἐς φόρου ἀπαγωγὴν,
τοὺς δὲ φίλους προσεποιήσατο. κατεστρέψατο μὲν
Ἰωνάς τε καὶ Αἰολέας καὶ Δωριέας τοὺς ἐν τῇ Ἀσίῃ,
φίλους δὲ προσεποιήσατο Λακεδαιμονίους. πρὸ δὲ τῆς
Κροίσου ἀρχῆς πάντες Ἕλληνες ἦσαν ἐλεύθεροι· τὸ γὰρ
Κιμμερίων στράτευμα τὸ ἐπὶ τὴν Ἰωνίην ἀπικόμενον,
Κροίσου ἐὼν πρεσβύτερον, οὐ καταστροφὴ ἐγένετο τῶν

¹ Croesus, a non-Greek king famous for being rich ² a non-Greek kingdom in Anatolia

τὰ γὰρ τὸ πάλαι μεγάλα ἦν, τὰ πολλὰ σμικρὰ αὐτῶν
 γέγονε· τὰ δὲ ἐπ' ἐμεῦ ἦν μεγάλα, πρότερον ἦν σμικρά.
 τὴν ἀνθρωπηίην ὦν ἐπιστάμενος εὐδαιμονίην οὐδαμὰ ἐν
 τῷτῳ μένουσαν, ἐπιμνήσομαι ἀμφοτέρων ὁμοίως.

1.6

Κροῖσος¹ ἦν Λυδὸς² μὲν γένος, παῖς δὲ Ἀλυάττειω,
 |tyrant δὲ ἐθνέων τῶν |within Ἄλυνος ποταμοῦ, ὃς ῥέων
 ἀπὸ |midday; south the|between Συριῶν τε καὶ Παφλαγόνων |send forth, allow
 |north, north |forth
 πρὸς |north, north ἀνεμον ἐς τὸν Εὐξείνιον καλεόμενον πόντον.
 |wind
 οὗτος ὁ Κροῖσος, βαρβάρων πρῶτος τῶν ἡμεῖς ἴδμεν,
 τοὺς μὲν |overturn, subdue |Greek ἐς φόρου |leading away
 τοὺς δὲ φίλους |give over to; pre- |overturn, subdue μὲν
 |tend
 Ἰωνάς τε καὶ Αἰολέας καὶ Δωριέας τοὺς ἐν τῇ Ἀσίῃ,
 φίλους δὲ |give over to; pre- Λακεδαιμονίους. πρὸ δὲ τῆς
 |tend
 Κροίσου ἀρχῆς πάντες |Greek ἦσαν |not enslaved . ὁ γὰρ
 Κιμμερίων |army τὸ ἐπὶ τὴν Ἰωνίην ἀπικόμενον,
 Κροίσου ἐὼν πρεσβύτερον, οὗ |end, conclusion ἔγένετο τῶν

¹ Croesus, a non-Greek king famous for being rich ² a non-Greek kingdom in Anatolia

great: for those which in old times were great have for the most part become small, while those that were in my own time great used in former times to be small: so then, since I know that human prosperity never continues steadfast, I shall make mention of both indifferently.

1.6

Croesus was Lydian by race, the son of Alyattes and ruler of the nations which dwell on this side of the river Halys; which river, flowing from the South between the Syrians and the Paphlagonians, runs out towards the North Wind into that Sea which is called the Euxine. This Croesus, first of all the Barbarians of whom we have knowledge, subdued certain of the Hellenes and forced them to pay tribute, while others he gained over and made them his friends. Those whom he subdued were the Ionians, the Aiolians, and the Dorians who dwell in Asia; and those whom he made his friends were the Lacedemonians. But before the reign of Croesus all the Hellenes were free; for the expedition of the Kimmerians, which came upon Ionia before the time of Croesus, was not a conquest of

vocabulary

ἀπόγονος descended from

ἄρπαγή seizure; rape

βασιλεύω be king

δούλη slave-woman

ἐκδέχομαι receive; succeed to a
position

Ἕλλην Greek

ἐπιδρομή inroad, raid

ἐπιτρέπω entrust, decide, allow

~trophy

ἡγεμονία authority, rule

θεοπρόπιον prophecy ~theology

πεντακόσιοι 500

περιέρχομαι go around; come next to

τύραννος tyrant

πολίων ἀλλ' ἐξ ἐπιδρομῆς ἀρπαγῇ.

1.7

Ἡ δὲ ἡγεμονίῃ οὕτω περιῆλθε, ἐοῦσα Ἡρακλειδέων, ἐς τὸ γένος τὸ Κροίσου, καλεομένους δὲ Μερμνάδας. ἦν Κανδαύλης, τὸν οἱ Ἑλληνέες Μυρσίλον ὀνομάζουσι, τύραννος Σαρδίων, ἀπόγονος δὲ Ἀλκαίου τοῦ Ἡρακλέος. Ἄγρων μὲν γὰρ ὁ Νίνου τοῦ Βήλου τοῦ Ἀλκαίου πρῶτος Ἡρακλειδέων βασιλεὺς ἐγένετο Σαρδίων, Κανδαύλης δὲ ὁ Μύρσου ὕστατος. οἱ δὲ πρότερον Ἄγρωνος βασιλεύσαντες ταύτης τῆς χώρας ἦσαν ἀπόγονοὶ Λυδοῦ τοῦ Ἄττος, ἀπ' ὅτεν ὁ δῆμος Λύδιος ἐκλήθη ὁ πᾶς οὗτος, πρότερον Μηίων καλεόμενος. παρὰ τούτων Ἡρακλείδαι ἐπιτραφθέντες ἔσχον τὴν ἀρχὴν ἐκ θεοπροπίου, ἐκ δούλης τε τῆς Ἰαρδάνου γεγονότες καὶ Ἡρακλέος, ἄρξαντες μὲν ἐπὶ δύο τε καὶ εἴκοσι γενεᾶς ἀνδρῶν ἕτεα πέντε τε καὶ πεντακόσια, παῖς παρὰ πατρὸς ἐκδεκόμενος τὴν ἀρχήν, μέχρι Κανδαύλεω τοῦ Μύρσου.

πολίων ἀλλ' ἐξ |inroad, raid |seizure; rape

1.7

Ἡ δὲ |authority, rule" τῷ |go around; |οὔσα Ἡρακλιδέων,
 |come next to
 ἐς τὸ γένος τὸ Κροίσου, καλεομένους δὲ Μερμνάδας.
 ἦν Κανδαύλης, τὸν οἱ |Greek Μυρσίλον ὀνομάζουσι,
 |tyrant Σαρδίων, |descended from" Ἀλκαίου τοῦ Ἡρακλέος.
 Ἄγρων μὲν γὰρ ὁ Νίνου τοῦ Βήλου τοῦ Ἀλκαίου πρῶτος
 Ἡρακλιδέων βασιλεὺς ἐγένετο Σαρδίων, Κανδαύλης
 δὲ ὁ Μύρσου ὕστατος. οἱ δὲ πρότερον Ἄγρωνος
 |be king ταύτης τῆς χώρας ἦσαν |descended from" οὗ
 τοῦ Ἄττος, ἀπ' ὅτεν ὁ δῆμος Λύδιος ἐκλήθη ὁ πᾶς οὗτος,
 πρότερον Μηίων καλεόμενος. παρὰ τούτων Ἡρακλεῖδαι
 |entrust, decide, ἔσχον τὴν ἀρχὴν ἐκ |prophecy , ἐκ |slave-woman
 |allow
 τε τῆς Ἰαρδάνου γεγονότες καὶ Ἡρακλέος, ἄρξαντες μὲν
 ἐπὶ δύο τε καὶ εἴκοσι γενεᾶς ἀνδρῶν ἕτα πάντε τε καὶ
 |500 , παῖς παρὰ πατρὸς |receive; succeed. ἦν ἀρχὴν,
 |to a position
 μέχρι Κανδαύλεω τοῦ Μύρσου.

the cities but a plundering incursion only.

1.7

Now the supremacy which had belonged to the Heracleidai came to the family of Croesus, called Mermnadai, in the following manner:— Candaules, whom the Hellenes call Myrsilos, was ruler of Sardis and a descendant of Alcaios, son of Heracles: for Agron, the son of Ninos, the son of Belos, the son of Alcaios, was the first of the Heracleidai who became king of Sardis, and Candaules the son of Myrsos was the last; but those who were kings over this land before Agron, were descendants of Lydos the son of Atys, whence this whole nation was called Lydian, having been before called Meonian. From these the Heracleidai, descended from Heracles and the slave-girl of Iardanos, obtained the government, being charged with it by reason of an oracle; and they reigned for two and twenty generations of men, five hundred and five years, handing on the power from father to son, till the time of Candaules the son of Myrsos.

*vocabulary***αἰχμοφόρος** spearman**ἄπιστος** not trusting, not trustworthy
~stand**ἀρέσκω** please, satisfy; make amends**γυμνός** naked, unarmed**δέσποινα** lady**δεσπότης** -ου (m, 1) master, despot**διέρχομαι** pierce, traverse**εἶδος** -ους (n, 3) appearance, form
~-oid**ἐκδύω** take off; leave; avoid**ἐξευρίσκω** find; discover ~eureka**ἐραμαι** love, aor. fall in love; long for,
covet ~erotic**εὖς** good, brave, noble**θεάομαι** look at, behold, consider
~theater**ὄον** οὓ type of fruit**οὔς** οὔατος (n) ear**πάλαι** long ago ~paleo**παλαίω** wrestle ~Pallas**πάλη** wrestling ~Pallas**πάλλω** shake, brandish ~Pallas**σκοπᾶω** watch, observe**σκοπέω** behold, consider**συνεκδύομαι** put off, go out together**τοιόσδε** such**ὕγιής** sound, profitable ~hygiene**ὑπερεπαινέω** praise effusively**ὑπερτίθημι** hand over; excel; defer

1.8

οὗτος δὴ ὢν ὁ Κανδαύλης ἡράσθη τῆς ἑωυτοῦ γυναικός, ἐρασθεὶς δὲ ἐνόμιζέ οἱ εἶναι γυναιῖκα πολλὸν πασέων καλλίστην. ὥστε δὲ ταῦτα νομίζων, ἦν γάρ οἱ τῶν αἰχμοφόρων Γύγης ὁ Δασκύλου ἀρεσκόμενος μάλιστα, τούτῳ τῷ Γύγῃ καὶ τὰ σπουδαιέστερα τῶν πρηγμάτων ὑπερετίθετο ὁ Κανδαύλης καὶ δὴ καὶ τὸ εἶδος τῆς γυναικὸς ὑπερεπαινέων. χρόνου δὲ οὐ πολλοῦ διελθόντος χρῆν γὰρ Κανδαύλῃ γενέσθαι κακῶς ἔλεγε πρὸς τὸν Γύγην τοιάδε. «Γύγῃ, οὐ γὰρ σε δοκέω πείθεσθαι μοι λέγοντι περὶ τοῦ εἶδους τῆς γυναικὸς ὧτα γὰρ τυγχάνει ἀνθρώποισι ἐόντα ἀπιστότερα ὀφθαλμῶν, ποίειε ὅπως ἐκείνην θεήσσαι γυμνήν.» ὁ δ' ἀμβώσας εἶπε «δέσποτα, τίνα λέγεις λόγον οὐκ ὑγίεια, κελεύων με δέσποιναν τὴν ἐμὴν θεήσασθαι γυμνήν; ἅμα δὲ κιθῶνι ἐκδυομένῳ συνεκδύεται καὶ τὴν αἰδῶ γυνή. πάλαι δὲ τὰ καλὰ ἀνθρώποισι ἐξεύρηται, ἐκ τῶν μανθάνειν δεῖ· ἐν τοῖσι ἐν τόδῃ ἐστί, σκοπέειν τινὰ τὰ ἑωυτοῦ. ἐγὼ δὲ πείθομαι ἐκείνην εἶναι πασέων γυναικῶν

1.8

οὗτος δὲ ὦν ὁ Κανδαύλης |love; long for ἑωυτοῦ γυναικός,
 |love; long for ἐνόμιζέ οἱ εἶναι γυναῖκα πολλὸν πασέων
 καλλίστην. ὥστε δὲ ταῦτα νομίζων, ἦν γάρ οἱ τῶν
 |spearman Γύγης ὁ Δασκύλου |please, satisfy; μάλιστα,
 |make amends τούτῳ τῷ Γύγῃ καὶ τὰ σπουδαιέστερα τῶν πρηγμάτων
 |hand over; ὁ Κανδαύλης καὶ δὴ καὶ τὸ |form τῆς γυναικὸς
 |excel; defer ὑπερεπαινέων. χρόνου δὲ οὐ πολλοῦ |pierce, χρῆν γὰρ
 |traverse Κανδαύλῃ γενέσθαι κακῶς ἔλεγε πρὸς τὸν Γύγην |such
 «Γύγῃ, οὐ γὰρ σε δοκέω πείθεσθαι μοι λέγοντι περὶ
 τοῦ |form τῆς γυναικὸς |ear γὰρ τυγχάνει ἀνθρώποισι
 ἐόντα |not trusting, not |θαλμῶν, ποίειε ὅκως ἐκείνην θεήσσαι
 |trustworthy
 |naked, ὁ δ' ἀμβώσας εἶπε «|master, , τίνα λέγεις λόγον
 |unarmed |despot
 οὐκ |sound, ...λεύων με |lady τὴν ἐμὴν θεήσασθαι
 |profitable
 |naked, , ἅμα δὲ κιθῶνι |take off |put off, go out καὶ τὴν
 |unarmed |together
 αἰδῶ γυνή. πάλαι δὲ τὰ καλὰ ἀνθρώποισι |find; , ἐκ
 |discover
 τῶν μαθάνειν δεῖ· ἐν τοῖσι ἐν τόδε ἐστί, σκοπέειν τινὰ τὰ
 ἑωυτοῦ. ἐγὼ δὲ πείθομαι ἐκείνην εἶναι πασέων γυναικῶν

1.8

This Candaules then of whom I speak had become passionately in love with his own wife; and having become so, he deemed that his wife was fairer by far than all other women; and thus deeming, to Gyges the son of Daskylos (for he of all his spearmen was the most pleasing to him), to this Gyges, I say, he used to impart as well the more weighty of his affairs as also the beauty of his wife, praising it above measure: and after no long time, since it was destined that evil should happen to Candaules, he said to Gyges as follows: “Gyges, I think that thou dost not believe me when I tell thee of the beauty of my wife, for it happens that men’s ears are less apt of belief than their eyes: contrive therefore means by which thou mayest look upon her naked.” But he cried aloud and said: “Master, what word of unwisdom is this which thou dost utter, bidding me look upon my mistress naked? When a woman puts off her tunic she puts off her modesty also. Moreover of old time those fair sayings have been found out by men, from which we ought to learn wisdom; and of these one is this,— that each man should look on his own: but I believe indeed that she is of all women the fairest and I entreat thee not to

vocabulary

ἀγχοῦ near, nigh; like ~angina
ἀνοίγνυμι (ῥ) open
ἄνομος lawless
ἀπομάχομαι fight off
βλάβος -εος (n, 3) harm
ἐκδύνω take off; leave; avoid
ἐνθεῦτεν thence
ἔσοδος entrance
ἐὺνῃ bed; (pl) anchor stones
ἡσυχία peace and quiet
θαρσέω be of good heart
θεάομαι look at, behold, consider
 ~theater

κοιμάω put to sleep; (pass) lie down,
 have sex
κοῖτος rest, resting place, sleepiness
μηχανάομαι build, contrive
 ~mechanism
μίν him, her, it
νῶτον back of the body; rear of an
 army; top of a box
νῶτος back of the body; rear of an
 army; top of a box
οἴκημα -τος (n, 3) room
ὀπισθεν behind, hereafter
ὀρρωδέω dread, shrink from
στείχω go, march ~stair

καλλίστην, καὶ σέο δέομαι μὴ δέεσθαι ἀνόμων.»

1.9

Ὁ μὲν δὴ λέγων τοιαῦτα ἀπεμάχετο, ἀρρωδέων μὴ τί οἱ ἐξ αὐτῶν γένηται κακόν, ὃ δ' ἀμείβετο τοῖσιδε. «θάρσее, Γύγη, καὶ μὴ φοβεῦ μήτε ἐμέ, ὡς σέο πειρώμενος λέγω λόγον τόνδε, μήτε γυναικα τὴν ἐμήν, μὴ τί τοι ἐξ αὐτῆς γένηται βλάβος. ἀρχὴν γὰρ ἐγὼ μηχανήσομαι οὕτω ὥστε μηδέ μαθεῖν μιν ὀφθεῖσαν ὑπὸ σεῦ. ἐγὼ γάρ σε ἐς τὸ οἶκημα ἐν τῷ κοιμώμεθα ὀπισθε τῆς ἀνοιγομένης θύρης στήσω. μετὰ δ' ἐμὲ ἐσελθόντα παρέσται καὶ ἡ γυνὴ ἢ ἐμὴ ἐς κοῖτον. κεῖται δὲ ἀγχοῦ τῆς ἐσόδου θρόνος· ἐπὶ τοῦτον τῶν ἱματίων κατὰ ἓν ἕκαστον ἐκδύνουσα θήσει, καὶ κατ' ἡσυχίην πολλὴν παρέξει τοι θεήσασθαι. ἐπεὰν δὲ ἀπὸ τοῦ θρόνου στείχῃ ἐπὶ τὴν εὐνὴν κατὰ νώτου τε αὐτῆς γένη, σοὶ μελέτω τὸ ἐνθεῦτεν ὅπως μὴ σε ὄψεται ἰόντα διὰ θυρέων.»

καλλίστην, καὶ σέο δέομαι μὴ δέεσθαι |lawless ...»

1.9

Ὁ μὲν δὴ λέγων τοιαῦτα |fight off , |dread, μὴ τί οἱ
 |shrink from
 ἐξ αὐτῶν γένηται κακόν, ὃ δ' ἀμείβετο τοῖσιδε. «|be of good heart
 Γύγη, καὶ μὴ φοβεῦ μήτε ἐμέ, ὥς σέο πειρώμενος λέγω
 λόγον τόνδε, μήτε γυναῖκα τήν ἐμήν, μὴ τί τοι ἐξ αὐτῆς
 γένηται |harm . ἀρχὴν γὰρ ἐγὼ |build, contrive οὕτω ὥστε
 μηδέ μαθεῖν μιν ὀφθείσαν ὑπὸ σεῦ. ἐγὼ γάρ σε ἐς τὸ
 |room ἐν τῷ κοιμώμεθα ὀπισθε τῆς ἀνοιγομένης θύρης
 στήσω. μετὰ δ' ἐμὲ ἐσελθόντα παρέσται καὶ ἡ γυνὴ ἡ
 ἐμὴ ἐς |rest, resting place, |near, nigh, |entrance ἱρόνος· ἐπὶ
 |sleepiness |like
 τοῦτον τῶν ἱματίων κατὰ ἓν ἕκαστον |take off θήσει,
 καὶ κατ' |peace and quiet, ἃν παρέξει τοι θεήσασθαι. ἐπεὰν δέ
 ἀπὸ τοῦ θρόνου |go, march ἰ τήν |bed; (pl) an- νότου τε αὐτῆς
 |chor stones
 γένη, σοὶ μελέτω τὸ |thence ὅκως μὴ σε ὀφεται ἰόντα διὰ
 θυρέων.»

ask of me that which it is not lawful for me to do.”

1.9

With such words as these he resisted, fearing lest some evil might come to him from this; but the king answered him thus: “Be of good courage, Gyges, and have no fear, either of me, that I am saying these words to try thee, or of my wife, lest any harm may happen to thee from her. For I will contrive it so from the first that she shall not even perceive that she has been seen by thee. I will place thee in the room where we sleep, behind the open door; and after I have gone in, my wife also will come to lie down. Now there is a seat near the entrance of the room, and upon this she will lay her garments as she takes them off one by one; and so thou wilt be able to gaze upon her at full leisure. And when she goes from the chair to the bed and thou shalt be behind her back, then let it be thy part to take care that she sees thee not as thou goest through the door.”

*vocabulary***αἰσχύνῃ** (ῥ) shame, dishonor**αἰσχύνω** (ῥ) spoil, disgrace, disfigure, mar**ἀναβοάω** shout out**γυμνός** naked, unarmed**διαφεύγω** escape, survive**εἶμα** -τος (n, 3) garment ~vest**ἔξιμι** go forth; is possible ~ion**ἔτοιμος** ready; fulfilled**ἐφοράω** look upon ~panorama**ἡσυχία** peace and quiet**θιέομαι** look at, behold, consider
~theater**κοίτη** rest, resting place, sleepiness**μίν** him, her, it**νῶτον** back of the body; rear of an army; top of a box**νῶτος** back of the body; rear of an army; top of a box**οἰκέτης** -ου (m, 1) household; house slave**οἴκημα** -τος (n, 3) room**τίνω** (ι) pay, atone for; (mp) punish**τίω** value, honor; mp: exact recompense for**ὑπεκδύομαι** slip out**χωρέω** withdraw, give way to (+dat)
~heir

1.10

Ὁ μὲν δὴ ὥς οὐκ ἐδύνατο διαφυγεῖν, ἦν ἕτοιμος· ὁ δὲ Κανδαύλης, ἐπεὶ ἐδόκεε ὥρῃ τῆς κοίτης εἶναι, ἤγαγε τὸν Γύγεα ἐς τὸ οἶκημα. καὶ μετὰ ταῦτα αὐτίκα παρῆν καὶ ἡ γυνή. ἐσελθοῦσαν δὲ καὶ τιθεῖσαν τὰ εἴματα ἐθλείτο ὁ Γύγης. ὥς δὲ κατὰ νώτου ἐγένετο ἰούσης τῆς γυναικός ἐς τὴν κοίτην, ὑπεκδὺς ἐχώρεε ἔξω, καὶ ἡ γυνὴ ἐπορεύετο ἐξιόντα. μαθοῦσά δὲ τὸ ποιηθέν ἐκ τοῦ ἀνδρὸς οὔτε ἀνέβωσε αἰσχυνθεῖσα οὔτε ἔδοξε μαθεῖν, ἐν νοῶ ἔχουσα πίσεσθαι τὸν Κανδαύλεα. παρὰ γὰρ τοῖσι Λυδοῖσι, σχεδὸν δὲ καὶ παρὰ τοῖσι ἄλλοισι βαρβάροισι καὶ ἄνδρα ὀφθῆναι γυμνόν ἐς αἰσχύνην μεγάλην φέρει.

1.11

τότε μὲν δὴ οὕτω οὐδέν δηλώσασα ἡσυχίην εἶχε. ὥς δὲ ἡμέρη τάχιστα ἐγεγόνεε, τῶν οἰκετέων τοὺς μάλιστα ὥρα πιστοὺς ἔοντας ἑωυτῇ, ἐτοίμους ποιησαμένη ἐκάλεε τὸν Γύγεα. ὁ δὲ οὐδέν δοκέων αὐτὴν τῶν πρηχθέντων

1.10

Ὁ μὲν δὴ ὥς οὐκ ἐδύνατο |escape, survive, ἦν ἑτοιμος· ὁ δὲ
 Κανδαύλης, ἐπεὶ ἐδόκεε ὥρῃ τῆς |rest, resting γαγε τὸν
 |place, sleepiness
 Γύγεα ἐς τὸ |room . καὶ μετὰ ταῦτα αὐτίκα παρήν καὶ
 ἡ γυνή. ἐσελθοῦσαν δὲ καὶ τιθεῖσαν τὰ |garment |look at, 'be-
 |hold, consider
 Γύγης. ὥς δὲ κατὰ νώτου ἐγένετο ἰούσης τῆς γυναικός
 ἐς τὴν |rest, resting place, withdraw, give καὶ ἡ γυνή |look upon
 |sleepiness |way to (+dat)
 μιν |go forth; μαθοῦσά δὲ τὸ ποιηθέν ἐκ τοῦ ἀνδρός οὔτε
 |is possible
 |shout out |spoil, disgrace οὔτε ἔδοξε μαθεῖν, ἐν νοῶ ἔχουσα
 τίσεσθαι τὸν Κανδαύλεα. παρὰ γὰρ τοῖσι Λυδοῖσι, σχεδὸν
 δὲ καὶ παρὰ τοῖσι ἄλλοισι βαρβάροις καὶ ἄνδρα ὀφθῆναι
 |naked, ἴς αἰσχύνην μεγάλην φέρει.
 |unarmed

1.11

τότε μὲν δὴ οὕτω οὐδέν δηλώσασα |peace and quiet ὥς δὲ
 ἡμέρη τάχιστα ἐγεγόνεε, τῶν |household; οὐς μάλιστα ὥρα
 |house slave
 πιστοὺς ἐόντας ἐωντῇ, ἐτοίμους ποιησαμένη ἐκάλεε τὸν
 Γύγεα. ὁ δὲ οὐδὲν δοκέων αὐτήν τῶν πρηχθέντων

1.10

He then, since he might not avoid it, gave consent: and Candaules, when he considered that it was time to rest, led Gyges to the chamber; and straightway after this the woman also appeared: and Gyges looked upon her after she came in and as she laid down her garments; and when she had her back turned towards him, as she went to the bed, then he slipped away from his hiding-place and was going forth. And as he went out, the woman caught sight of him, and perceiving that which had been done by her husband she did not cry out, though struck with shame, but she made as though she had not perceived the matter, meaning to avenge herself upon Candaules: for among the Lydians as also among most other Barbarians it is a shame even for a man to be seen naked.

1.11

At the time then she kept silence, as I say, and made no outward sign; but as soon as day had dawned, and she made ready those of the servants whom she perceived to be the most attached to herself, and after that she sent to summon Gyges. He then, not supposing

vocabulary

αἵρεσις -εως (f) choice, plan
 ἀναγκαίη of necessity, by force
 ἀναγκαῖος coerced, coercing, slavery
 βασίλεια noblewoman
 βασιλῆις kingly
 γυμνός naked, unarmed
 δεσπότης -ου (m, 1) master, despot
 διακρίνω (ι) separate, sort ~critic
 ἐνδέω tie to, entangle; lack
 ἐπειρωτάω consult, ask
 ἐπιχειρέω do, try, attack ~chiral
 ἥτοι truly; either, or
 θεάομαι look at, behold, consider
 ~theater

ἰκετεύω approach to beg
 μίν him, her, it
 ὁπότερος which of two, either of two
 ὀρμή pressure, assault, order
 ~hormone
 οὔκω no longer
 περὶεμι be superior to; be left over;
 still exist
 πρόκειμαι be placed by; be devoted to
 ὑπολαμβάνω take under one's
 support, seize; speak up; imagine
 ~epilepsy
 φοιτάω go back and forth
 ὠθέω push

ἐπίστασθαι ἦλθε καλεόμενος· ἐώθεε γὰρ καὶ πρόσθε, ὅκως ἡ βασιλεια καλέοι, φοιτᾶν. ὥς δὲ ὁ Γύγης ἀπίκετο, ἔλεγε ἡ γυνὴ τάδε. «νῦν τοί δυὼν ὁδῶν παρουσέων Γύγη δίδωμι αἵρεσιν, ὁκοτέρην βούλει τραπέσθαι. ἡ γὰρ Κανδαύlea ἀποκτείνας ἐμέ τε καὶ τὴν βασιληήν ἔχε τὴν Λυδῶν, ἡ αὐτόν σε αὐτίκα οὕτω ἀποθνήσκειν δεῖ, ὥς ἂν μὴ πάντα πειθόμενος Κανδαύλῃ τοῦ λοιποῦ ἴδῃς τὰ μὴ σε δεῖ. ἀλλ' ἦτοι κεῖνόν γε τὸν ταῦτα βουλευσάντα δεῖ ἀπόλλυσθαι, ἡ σε τὸν ἐμὲ γυμνήν θεησάμενον καὶ ποιήσαντα οὐ νομιζόμενα.» ὁ δὲ Γύγης τέως μὲν ἀπεθώμαζε τὰ λεγόμενα, μετὰ δὲ ἰκέτευε μὴ μιν ἀναγκαίῃ ἐνδέειν διακρίναι τοιαύτην αἵρεσιν. οὐκὼν δὲ ἔπειθε, ἀλλ' ὥρα ἀναγκαίην ἀληθέως προκειμένην ἡ τὸν δεσπότεα ἀπολλύναι ἢ αὐτὸν ὑπ' ἄλλων ἀπόλλυσθαι· αἰρέεται αὐτὸς περιεῖναι. ἐπειρώτα δὲ λέγων τάδε. «ἐπεὶ με ἀναγκάζεις δεσπότεα τὸν ἐμὸν κτείνειν οὐκ ἐθέλοντα, φέρε ἀκούσω τέῳ καὶ τρόπῳ ἐπιχειρήσομεν αὐτῷ.» ἡ δὲ ὑπολαβοῦσα ἔφη, «ἐκ τοῦ αὐτοῦ μὲν χωρίου ἡ ὁρμὴ ἔσται ὅθεν περ καὶ

ἐπίστασθαι ἦλθε καλεόμενος· |push γὰρ καὶ πρόσθε, ὅκως
 ἡ βασιλεια καλέοι, |go back and forth ὁ Γύγης ἀπίκετο,
 ἔλεγε ἡ γυνὴ τάδε. «νῦν τοί δυὼν ὁδῶν παρεουσέων
 Γύγῃ δίδωμι |choice, , |which of two, ὥλεια τραπέσθαι. ἡ
 γὰρ Κανδαύλεια ἀποκτείνας ἐμέ τε καὶ τὴν βασιληίην ἔχε
 τὴν Λυδῶν, ἣ αὐτόν σε αὐτίκα οὕτω ἀποθνήσκειν δεῖ, ὥς
 ἂν μὴ πάντα πειθόμενος Κανδαύλῃ τοῦ λοιποῦ ἴδῃς τὰ
 μὴ σε δεῖ. ἀλλ' |truly; ἐῖνόν γε τὸν ταῦτα βουλευσάντα
 δεῖ ἀπόλλυσθαι, |either, ἢ σε τὸν ἐμέ |naked, ἱερσάμενον καὶ
 |or |unarmed
 ποιήσαντα οὐ νομιζόμενα.» ὁ δὲ Γύγης τέως μὲν
 ἀπεθώμαζε τὰ λεγόμενα, μετὰ δὲ |approach τὸ βῆγ ἰναγκαίῃ
 |tie to |separate, sort αὐτὴν |choice, , |no longer ἔπειθε, ἀλλ'
 |plan
 ὥρα ἀναγκαίην ἀληθῶς |be placed by; ἡ τὸν |master,
 |be devoted to |despot
 ἀπολλύναι ἢ αὐτὸν ὑπ' ἄλλων ἀπόλλυσθαι· αἰρέεται αὐτὸς
 |be superior |consult, ask ἢ λέγων τάδε. «ἐπεὶ με ἀναγκάζεις
 |to; be left
 |over; still τὸν ἐμὸν κτείνειν οὐκ ἐθέλοντα, φέρε ἀκούσω
 |master, exist
 |despot
 τέω καὶ τρόπῳ |do, try, attack αὐτῷ.» ἡ δὲ |take under one's support,
 |seize; speak up; imagine
 ἔφη, «ἐκ τοῦ αὐτοῦ μὲν χωρίου ἡ |pressure, as- ὅθεν περ καὶ
 |sault, order

that anything of that which had been done was known to her, came upon her summons; for he had been accustomed before to go whenever the queen summoned him. And when Gyges was come, the woman said to him these words: "There are now two ways open to thee, Gyges, and I give thee the choice which of the two thou wilt prefer to take. Either thou must slay Candaules and possess both me and the kingdom of Lydia, or thou must thyself here on the spot be slain, so that thou mayest not in future, by obeying Candaules in all things, see that which thou shouldest not. Either he must die who formed this design, or thou who hast looked upon me naked and done that which is not accounted lawful." For a time then Gyges was amazed at these words, and afterwards he began to entreat her that she would not bind him by necessity to make such a choice: then however, as he could not prevail with her, but saw that necessity was in truth set before him either to slay his master or to be himself slain by others, he made the choice to live himself; and he inquired further as follows: "Since thou dost compel me to take my master's life against my own will, let me hear from thee also what is the manner in which we shall lay hands upon him." And she answering said: "From that same place shall the attempt be, where he

*vocabulary***ἀναπαύω** cause to cease ~pause**ἀπαλλαγή** relief, escape**γυμνός** naked, unarmed**ἐγχειρίδιος** handle, hand tool, dagger**ἐπιβουλή** a plot, scheme ~volunteer**ἐπιδείκνυμι** (ὕ) display, exhibit**ἐπιμιμνήσκομαι** remember, speak
about ~mnemonic**ἐπιχειρήσεις** -τος (f) attack**θάλαμος** bedchamber ~thalamus**ῥαμβος** iambic verse**κατακρύπτω** hide, cover ~cryptic**κρατύνω** strengthen**μίν** him, her, it**πάθος** -ους (n, 3) an experience,
passion, condition**στασιώτης** -ου (m, 1) partisan**τρίμετρος** type of verse**ὑπεκδύομαι** slip out**ὕπνᾳω** sleep **χρηστήριον** oracle, response

ἐκεῖνος ἐμέ ἐπεδέξατο γυμνήν, ὑπνωμένῳ δὲ ἢ ἐπιχείρησις ἔσται.»

1.12

ὥς δὲ ἤρτυσαν τὴν ἐπιβουλήν, νυκτὸς γενομένης οὐ γὰρ ἐμετίετο ὁ Γύγης, οὐδέ οἱ ἦν ἀπαλλαγὴ οὐδεμία, ἀλλ' ἔδεε ἢ αὐτὸν ἀπολωλέναι ἢ Κανδαύλεα εἶπετο εἰς τὸν θάλαμον τῇ γυναικί, καί μιν ἐκείνῃ, ἐγχειρίδιον δοῦσα, κατακρύπτει ὑπὸ τὴν αὐτὴν θύρην. καὶ μετὰ ταῦτα ἀναπανομένου Κανδαύλεω ὑπεκδύς τε καὶ ἀποκτείνας αὐτὸν ἔσχε καὶ τὴν γυναῖκα καὶ τὴν βασιληίην Γύγης τοῦ καὶ Ἀρχίλοχος ὁ Πάριος κατὰ τὸν αὐτὸν χρόνον γενόμενος ἐν ἰάμβῳ τριμέτρῳ ἐπεμνήσθη.

1.13

ἔσχε δὲ τὴν βασιληίην καὶ ἐκρατύνθη ἐκ τοῦ ἐν Δελφοῖσι χρηστηρίου. ὥς γὰρ δὴ οἱ Λυδοὶ δεινὸν ἐποιεῦντο τὸ Κανδαύλεω πάθος καὶ ἐν ὅπλοισι ἦσαν, συνέβησαν εἰς τὸν αὐτὸ οἱ τε τοῦ Γύγεω στασιῶται καὶ οἱ λοιποὶ Λυδοί, ἦν

ἐκεῖνος ἐμέ ἐπεδέξατο

naked,	ἵπνωμένῳ δὲ ἡ	attack
unarmed		

ἔσται.»

1.12

ὥς δὲ ἤρτυσαν τὴν

a plot, scheme	πλοτὸς	γενομένης	οὐ γὰρ
----------------	--------	-----------	--------

ἐμετίετο ὁ Γύγης, οὐδέ οἱ ἦν

relief,	οὐδεμία,	ἀλλ' ἔδεε
escape		

ἢ αὐτὸν ἀπολωλέναι ἢ Κανδαύλεα εἶπετο ἐς τὸν

bedchamber

τῇ γυναικί, καί μιν ἐκείνη, ἐγχειρίδιον δοῦσα,

hide, cover

ὑπὸ τὴν αὐτὴν θύρην. καὶ μετὰ ταῦτα

cause to cease

Κανδαύλεω ὑπεκδύς τε καὶ ἀποκτείνας αὐτὸν ἔσχε καὶ
τὴν γυναικα καὶ τὴν βασιληίην Γύγης τοῦ καὶ Ἀρχίλοχος
ὁ Πάριος κατὰ τὸν αὐτὸν χρόνον γενόμενος ἐν

iambic
verse

type	of	remember,
verse		speak about

1.13

ἔσχε δὲ τὴν βασιληίην καὶ

strengthen

 ἐκ τοῦ ἐν Δελφοῖσι

oracle,	ὥς γὰρ δὴ οἱ Λυδοὶ δεινὸν ἐποιεῦντο τὸ
response	

Κανδαύλεω

an experience, pas-	τιλοισι ἦσαν, συνέβησαν ἐς
sion, condition	

τῶντ' οἱ τε τοῦ Γύγεω

partisan

 καὶ οἱ λοιποὶ Λυδοί,
ἦν

displayed me naked; and we will lay hands upon him as he sleeps.”

1.12

So after they had prepared the plot, when night came on, (for Gyges was not let go nor was there any way of escape for him, but he must either be slain himself or slay Candaules), he followed the woman to the bedchamber; and she gave him a dagger and concealed him behind that very same door. Then afterwards, while Candaules was sleeping, Gyges came privily up to him and slew him, and he obtained both his wife and his kingdom: of him moreover Archilochos the Parian, who lived about that time, made mention in a trimeter iambic verse.

1.13

He obtained the kingdom however and was strengthened in it by means of the Oracle at Delphi; for when the Lydians were angry because of the fate of Candaules, and had risen in arms, a treaty was made between the followers of Gyges and the other Lydians to this effect, that if the Oracle should give answer that he was to be king of the Lydians, he

vocabulary

ἀνάθημα -τος (n, 3) consecrated gift
 ~thesis
ἀνάκειμαι be dedicated, be put up
ἀνατίθηναι consecrate, lay on, impute;
 (mp) reproach
ἄπλετος boundless, immense,
 abundant
ἀπόγονος descended from
ἀποπέμπω send away ~pomp
ἄργυρος silver, money ~Argentina
ἀριθμός number
ἀφαιρέω take away ~heresy
βασιλεύω be king
δημόσιος public, the state
ἕξ six ~hexagon
ἐπιτελέω complete; do a religious duty

θησαυρός treasury ~treasure
κρητήρ -ος (m) mixing bowl for wine
μίν him, her, it
μνήμη reminder, memorial
πάρεξ alongside, diverging from; (+ῆ
 or gen) except; (+acc) beyond,
 alongside
πέμπτος fifth ~pentagon
σταθμός cottage; post
τάλαντον scale, a unit of weight
 ~talent
τίσις -τος (f) payment, vengeance
τοσόσδε this much
τυραννεύω be an absolute ruler
τυραννίς -δος (f) tyranny
 χρηστήριον oracle, response
χρυσός (ῶ) gold

μὲν τὸ χρηστήριον ἀνέλη μιν βασιλέα εἶναι Λυδῶν, τόν δὲ βασιλεύειν, ἣν δὲ μή, ἀποδοῦναι ὀπίσω ἐς Ἡρακλείδης τὴν ἀρχήν. ἀνείλε τε δὴ τὸ χρηστήριον καὶ ἐβασίλευσε οὕτω Γύγης. τοσόνδε μέντοι εἶπε ἡ Πυθίη, ὥς Ἡρακλείδῃσι τίσις ἦξει ἐς τὸν πέμπτον ἀπόγονον Γύγεω. τούτου τοῦ ἔπεος Λυδοὶ τε καὶ οἱ βασιλέες αὐτῶν λόγον οὐδένα ἐποιεῦντο, πρὶν δὴ ἐπετελέσθῃ.

1.14

τὴν μὲν δὴ τυραννίδα οὕτω ἔσχον οἱ Μερμνάδαι τοὺς Ἡρακλείδης ἀπελόμενοι, Γύγης δὲ τυραννεύσας ἀπέπεμψε ἀναθήματα ἐς Δελφοὺς οὐκ ὀλίγα, ἀλλ' ὅσα μὲν ἀργύρου ἀναθήματα, ἔστι οἱ πλείστα ἐν Δελφοῖσι, πάρεξ δὲ τοῦ ἀργύρου χρυσὸν ἄπλετον ἀνέθηκε ἄλλον τε καὶ τοῦ μάλιστα μνήμην ἄξιον ἔχειν ἐστί, κρητῆρες οἱ ἀριθμὸν ἕξ χρύσειοι ἀνακέαται. ἐστᾶσι δὲ οὗτοι ἐν τῷ Κορινθίων θησαυρῷ, σταθμὸν ἔχοντες τριήκοντα τάλαντα ἀληθεί δὲ λόγῳ χρεωμένῳ οὐ Κορινθίων τοῦ δημοσίου ἐστὶ ὁ θησαυρός, ἀλλὰ Κυψέλου τοῦ Ἡετίωνος. οὗτος δὲ ὁ Γύγης

μὲν τὸ ^{|oracle,}
^{|response}
 |be king , ἦν δὲ μή, ἀποδοῦναι ὀπίσω ἐς Ἡρακλείδας τὴν
 ἀρχήν. ἀνείλέ τε δὴ τὸ ^{|oracle,}
^{|response} καὶ |be king οὕτω
 Γύγης. |this much , μέντοι εἶπε ἡ Πυθίη, ὥς Ἡρακλείδῃσι
 |payment^{ῖς} , ἐς τὸν |fifth |descended from^ῖ , εἰω. τούτου
 |vengeance
 τοῦ ἔπεος Λυδοί τε καὶ οἱ βασιλεῖς αὐτῶν λόγον οὐδένα
 ἐποιεῦντο, πρὶν δὴ ^{|complete; do a}
^{|religious duty}

1.14

τὴν μὲν δὴ |tyranny οὕτω ἔσχον οἱ Μερμνάδαι τοὺς
 Ἡρακλείδας |take away , Γύγης δὲ ^{|be an absolute|send away}
^{|ruler}
 |consecrated gift Δελφούς οὐκ ὀλίγα, ἀλλ' ὅσα μὲν ἀργύρου
 |consecrated gift ἔστι οἱ πλείστα ἐν Δελφοῖσι, πάρεξ δὲ τοῦ
 ἀργύρου |gold ἄπλετον ^{|consecrate, lay on, im-}
^{|pute; (mp) reproach} καὶ τοῦ
 μάλιστα ^{|reminder, ἱξιον ἔχειν ἐστί,} ^{|mixing bowl for|number}
^{|memorial} ^{|wine}
 ἐξ χρύσειοι ^{|be dedicated,} ἐστᾶσι δὲ οὗτοι ἐν τῷ Κορινθίων
^{|be put up}
 |treasury , |cottage; post^{ῶντες} τριήκοντα ^{|scale, a unit^ῖ}
^{|of weight} ληθεί
 δὲ λόγῳ χρεωμένῳ οὐ Κορινθίων τοῦ ^{|public, the state^ῖ} ὁ
 |treasury , ἀλλὰ Κυψέλου τοῦ Ἡετίωνος. οὗτος δὲ ὁ Γύγης

should be king, and if not, he should give back the power to the sons of Heracles. So the Oracle gave answer, and Gyges accordingly became king: yet the Pythian prophetess said this also, that vengeance for the Heracleidai should come upon the descendants of Gyges in the fifth generation. Of this oracle the Lydians and their kings made no account until it was in fact fulfilled.

1.14

Thus the Mermnadai obtained the government having driven out from it the Heracleidai: and Gyges when he became ruler sent votive offerings to Delphi not a few, for of all the silver offerings at Delphi his are more in number than those of any other man; and besides the silver he offered a vast quantity of gold, and especially one offering which is more worthy of mention than the rest, namely six golden mixing-bowls, which are dedicated there as his gift: of these the weight is thirty talents, and they stand in the treasury of the Corinthians, (though in truth this treasury does not belong to the State of the Corinthians, but is that of Kypselos the son of

*vocabulary***ἄζω** dry up ~ash**ἀκρόπολις** -εως (f) citadel, high part of a city ~acute**ἀνάθημα** -τος (n, 3) consecrated gift ~thesis**ἀνατίθηναι** consecrate, lay on, impute; (mp) reproach**ἀξιοθέητος** well worth seeing**ἄργυρος** silver, money ~Argentina**ἄω** aor: to sate ~sate**βασιλεις** kingly**βασιλεύω** be king**βασιλῆις** kingly**δικάζω** judge**εἰσβάλλω** throw into ~ballistic**ἐξανίστημι** raise, bring/send out**ἐπιμνήσκομαι** remember, speak about ~mnemonic**ἐπωνύμιος** called, named**ἦθος** ἥθεος (n, 3) habit, habitat ~ethos**θεάομαι** look at, behold, consider ~theater**κρητήρ** -ος (m) mixing bowl for wine**μνήμη** reminder, memorial**νομᾶς** -δος (m, 3) roaming, grazing**προκαθίζω** keep settling forward ~sit**στρατιά** army ~strategy**τυραννεύω** be an absolute ruler**χρυσός** (ō) gold

πρώτος βαρβάρων τῶν ἡμεῖς ἴδμεν ἐς Δελφοὺς ἀνέθηκε ἀναθήματα, μετὰ Μίδην τὸν Γορδῖεω Φρυγίης βασιλέα. ἀνέθηκε γὰρ δὴ καὶ Μίδης τὸν βασιλῆιον θρόνον ἐς τὸν προκατίζων ἐδίκαζε, ἔοντα ἀξιοθέητον· κείται δὲ ὁ θρόνος οὗτος ἔνθα περ οἱ τοῦ Γύγεω κρητῆρες. ὁ δὲ χρυσός οὗτος καὶ ὁ ἄργυρος τὸν ὁ Γύγης ἀνέθηκε, ὑπὸ Δελφῶν καλέεται Γυγάδας ἐπὶ τοῦ ἀναθέντος ἐπωνυμίην.

1.15

ἐσέβαλε μὲν νυν στρατιὴν καὶ οὗτος ἐπέιτε ἦρξε ἔς τε Μίλητον καὶ ἐς Σμύρνην, καὶ Κολοφῶνος τὸ ἄστυ εἶλε· ἀλλ' οὐδὲν γὰρ μέγα ἀπ' αὐτοῦ ἄλλο ἔργον ἐγένετο βασιλεύσαντος δυνῶν δέοντα τεσσεράκοντα ἔτεα, τοῦτον μὲν παρήσομεν τοσαῦτα ἐπιμνησθέντες, Ἄρδου δὲ τοῦ Γύγεω μετὰ Γύγην βασιλεύσαντος μνήμην ποιήσομαι. οὗτος δὲ Πριηνέας τε εἶλε ἐς Μίλητόν τε ἐσέβαλε, ἐπὶ τούτου τε τυραννεύοντος Σαρδίων Κιμμέριοι ἐξ ἡθέων ὑπὸ Σκυθέων τῶν νομάδων ἐξαναστάντες ἀπίκοντο ἐς τὴν Ἀσίην καὶ Σάρδεις πλὴν τῆς ἀκροπόλιος εἶλον.

πρῶτος βαρβάρων τῶν ἡμεῖς ἴδμεν ἐς Δελφοὺς |consecrate, lay on,
|impute; (mp) re-
|consecrated gift, ... ἐτὰ Μίδην τὸν Γορδῖεω Φρυγίης βασιλέα. |proach

|consecrate, lay on, im- | Μίδης τὸν βασιλῆιον θρόνον ἐς τὸν
|pute; (mp) reproach

|keep settling|judge , ἐόντα |well worth seeing | αἱ δὲ ὁ θρόνος
|forward

οὗτος ἔνθα περ οἱ τοῦ Γύγεω |mixing bowl |for|gold οὗτος
|wine

καὶ ὁ |silver, | τὸν ὁ Γύγης |consecrate, lay on, im- |ν καλέεται
|money |pute; (mp) reproach

Γυγάδας ἐπὶ τοῦ |consecrate, |called,
|lay on, im- |named
|pute; (mp)
|reproach

1.15

ἐσέβαλε μὲν νυν στρατιὴν καὶ οὗτος ἐπείτε ἦρξε ἔς τε
Μίλητον καὶ ἐς Σμύρνην, καὶ Κολοφῶνος τὸ ἄστρ ἐίλε·
ἀλλ' οὐδὲν γὰρ μέγα ἀπ' αὐτοῦ ἄλλο ἔργον ἐγένετο

|be king | δυνῶν δέοντα τεσσαράκοντα ἔτεα, τοῦτον

μὲν παρήσομεν τοσαῦτα |remember, speak, | Ἄρδουος δὲ τοῦ
|about

Γύγεω μετὰ Γύγην |be king |reminder, |τοιήσομαι.
|memorial

οὗτος δὲ Πριηνέας τε εἶλε ἐς Μίλητόν τε ἐσέβαλε, ἐπὶ

τούτου τε |be an absolute ruler |...ρδίων Κιμμέριοι ἐξ ἠθέων

ὑπὸ Σκυθέων τῶν |roaming, |raise, bring/send |πίκοντο ἐς τὴν
|grazing |out

Ἀσίην καὶ Σάρδεις πλὴν τῆς |citadel | εἶλον.

Aëtion). This Gyges was the first of the Barbarians within our knowledge who dedicated votive offerings at Delphi, except only Midas the son of Gordias king of Phrygia, who dedicated for an offering the royal throne on which he sat before all to decide causes; and this throne, a sight worth seeing, stands in the same place with the bowls of Gyges. This gold and silver which Gyges dedicated is called Gygian by the people of Delphi, after the name of him who offered it.

1.15

Now Gyges also, as soon as he became king, led an army against Miletos and Smyrna, and he took the lower town of Colophon: but no other great deed did he do in his reign, which lasted eight and thirty years, therefore we will pass him by with no more mention than has already been made, and I will speak now of Ardys the son of Gyges, who became king after Gyges. He took Priene and made an invasion against Miletos; and while he was ruling over Sardis, the Kimmerians driven from their abodes by the nomad Scythians came to Asia and took Sardis except the citadel.

vocabulary

ἄδρός full-grown, fat
ἀνδρήιος of a man, manly
ἄξιαπήγητος worth telling
ἀπαλλαξείω wish to get rid of
ἀπαλλάσσω free from, remove; be freed, depart
ἀπόγονος descended from
ἀποδείκνυμι (ὅ) show, point out; appoint; (mid) declare
ἀποδέχομαι accept ~doctrine
αὐλέω play (blow, toot)
αὐλός flute, tube, hollow
βασιλεύω be king
γυναικίος of women

εἰσβάλλω throw into ~ballistic
ἐκδέχομαι receive; succeed to a position
ἐξελαύνω drive out, exile ~elastic
ἐπελαύνω beat out ~elastic
κτίζω found, populate ~oxytocin
οἶκημα -τος (n, 3) room
παραδείκνυμι (ὅ) receive, admit
πηκτίς stringed instrument
προσπταίω batter; be set back
στρατιά army ~strategy
σῦριγξ -γος (f) pan pipes
τηνικαῦτα at that time, in that case
τοιόσδε such

1.16

Ἄρδυος δὲ βασιλεύσαντος ἐνὸς δέοντα πεντήκοντα ἔτεα ἐξεδέξατο Σαδυάττης ὁ Ἄρδυος, καὶ ἐβασίλευσε ἔτεα δώδεκα, Σαδυάττει δὲ Ἀλυάττης. οὗτος δὲ Κναξάρη τε τῷ Δηϊόκεω ἀπογόνῳ ἐπολέμησε καὶ Μήδοισι, Κιμμερίους τε ἐκ τῆς Ἀσίας ἐξήλασε, Σμύρνην τε τὴν ἀπὸ Κολοφῶνος κτισθεῖσαν εἶλε, ἐς Κλαζομενάς τε ἐσέβαλε. ἀπὸ μὲν νυν τούτων οὐκ ὥς ἤθελε ἀπήλλαξε, ἀλλὰ προσπταίσας μεγάλως· ἄλλα δὲ ἔργα ἀπεδέξατο ἐὼν ἐν τῇ ἀρχῇ ἀξιαπηγητότατα τάδε.

1.17

ἐπολέμησε Μιλησίοισι, παραδεξάμενος τὸν πόλεμον παρὰ τοῦ πατρός. ἐπελαύνων γὰρ ἐπολιόρκεε τὴν Μίλητον τρόπῳ τοιῷδε· ὅκως μὲν εἷη ἐν τῇ γῇ καρπὸς ἀδρός, τηνικαῦτα ἐσέβαλλε τὴν στρατιήν· ἐστρατεύετο δὲ ὑπὸ συρίγγων τε καὶ πηκτίδων καὶ αὐλοῦ γυναικείου τε καὶ ἀνδρῆιου. ὥς δὲ ἐς τὴν Μιλησίην ἀπίκοιτο, οἰκήματα μὲν

1.16

Ἄρδυος δὲ |be king ἐνὸς δέοντα πεντήκοντα ἔτεα
 |receive; succeed δυνάττης ὁ Ἄρδυος, καὶ |be king ἔτεα
 |to a position
 δυνώδεκα, Σαδυνάττειω δὲ Ἀλυνάττης. οὗτος δὲ Κναζάρη τε
 τῷ Δηιόκειω |descended from ἔμνησε καὶ Μήδοισι, Κιμμερίους
 τε ἐκ τῆς Ἀσίας |drive out, Σμύρνην τε τὴν ἀπὸ Κολοφῶνος
 |found, εἶλε, ἐς Κλαζομενάς τε ἐσέβαλε. ἀπὸ μέν
 |populate
 νυν τούτων οὐκ ὥς ἤθελε ἀπήλλαξε, ἀλλὰ |batter; be set back
 μεγάλως· ἄλλα δὲ ἔργα ἀπεδέξατο ἐὼν ἐν τῇ ἀρχῇ
 |worth telling τάδε.

1.17

ἐπολέμησε Μιλησίοισι, παραδεξάμενος τὸν πόλεμον παρὰ
 τοῦ πατρός. |beat out γὰρ ἐπολιόρκεε τὴν Μίλητον
 τρόπῳ |such ὅκως μὲν εἶη ἐν τῇ γῇ καρπὸς |fat ,
 |at that time, ἐσέβαλλε τὴν στρατιήν· ἐστρατεύετο δὲ ὑπὸ
 |in that case
 |pan pipes τε καὶ |stringed καὶ αὐλοῦ |of women τε καὶ
 |instrument
 |of a man, mainly ἔς τὴν Μιλησίην ἀπικούτο, |room μὲν

1.16

Now when Ardys had been king for nine and forty years, Sadyattes his son succeeded to his kingdom, and reigned twelve years; and after him Alyattes. This last made war against Kyaxares the descendant of Deïokes and against the Medes, and he drove the Kimmerians forth out of Asia, and he took Smyrna which had been founded from Colophon, and made an invasion against Clazomenai. From this he returned not as he desired, but with great loss: during his reign however he performed other deeds very worthy of mention as follows:—

1.17

He made war with those of Miletos, having received this war as an inheritance from his father: for he used to invade their land and besiege Miletos in the following manner:— whenever there were ripe crops upon the land, then he led an army into their confines, making his march to the sound of pipes and harps and flutes both of male and female tone: and when he came to the Milesian land, he neither pulled down the houses that

vocabulary

ἀπαλλάσσω free from, remove; be freed, depart

ἀποσπάω tear/drag away

δένδρεον -οῦ tree

δένδρον tree

δένδρος tree

διφάσιος of two kinds

εἰσβάλλω throw into ~ballistic

ἐμπύμπρημι burn up ~pyre

ἐνδεκα eleven ~decimal

ἐνθεῦτεν thence

ἕξ six ~hexagon

ἐπιδραίνω run onto

ἐπικρατέω rule over

ἐφέδρα siege

καταβάλλω throw down, cast off
~ballistic

παραδείκνυμι (ὁ) receive, admit

σίνομαι (ἷ) rob, damage

σπείρω sow ~diaspora

στρατιά army ~strategy

συνάπτω join, partake; adjoin; consult;
fight ~haptic

σφέτερος their

τηνικαῦτα at that time, in that case

τὰ ἐπὶ τῶν ἀγρῶν οὔτε κατέβαλλε οὔτε ἐνεπίμπρη οὔτε θύρας ἀπέσπα, ἕα δὲ κατὰ χώραν ἐστάναι· ὁ δὲ τὰ τε δένδρεα καὶ τὸν καρπὸν τὸν ἐν τῇ γῇ ὅκως διαφθείρειε, ἀπαλλάσσετο ὀπίσω. τῆς γὰρ θαλάσσης οἱ Μιλήσιοι ἐπεκράτεον, ὥστε ἐπέδρης μὴ εἶναι ἔργον τῇ στρατιῇ. τὰς δὲ οἰκίας οὐ κατέβαλλε ὁ Λυδὸς τῶνδε εἵνεκα, ὅκως ἔχοιεν ἐνθεῦτεν ὀρμώμενοι τὴν γῆν σπείρειν τε καὶ ἐργάζεσθαι οἱ Μιλήσιοι, αὐτὸς δὲ ἐκείνων ἐργαζομένων ἔχοι τι καὶ σίνεσθαι ἐσβάλλων.

1.18

ταῦτα ποιέων ἐπολέμεε ἕτεα ἔνδεκα, ἐν τοῖσι τρώματα μεγάλα διφάσια Μιλησίων ἐγένετο, ἐν τε Λιμενηίῳ χώρης τῆς σφετέρης μαχεσαμένων καὶ ἐν Μαιάνδρου πεδίῳ. τὰ μὲν νυν ἐξ ἕτεα τῶν ἔνδεκα Σαδυάττης ὁ Ἄρδυος ἔτι Λυδῶν ἦρχε, ὁ καὶ ἐσβάλλων τηνικαῦτα ἐς τὴν Μιλησίην τὴν στρατιήν· Σαδυάττης οὗτος γὰρ καὶ ὁ τὸν πόλεμον ἦν συνάψας· τὰ δὲ πέντε τῶν ἐτέων τὰ ἐπόμενα τοῖσι ἐξ Ἄλυάττης ὁ Σαδυάττεω ἐπολέμεε, ὃς παραδεξάμενος,

τὰ ἐπὶ τῶν ἀγρῶν οὔτε |throw down, cast off|burn up οὔτε
 θύρας |tear/drag away ἵε κατὰ χώρην ἐστάναι· ὁ δὲ τὰ τε
 δένδρεα καὶ τὸν καρπὸν τὸν ἐν τῇ γῇ ὅκως διαφθείρειε,
 |free from, remove; τίσω. τῆς γὰρ θαλάσσης οἱ Μιλήσιοι
 |be freed, depart
 |rule over , ὥστε ἐπέδρης μὴ εἶναι ἔργον τῇ στρατιῇ. τὰς
 δὲ οἰκίας οὐ |throw down, cast off τῶνδε εἵνεκα, ὅκως ἔχοιεν
 |thence ὀρμώμενοι τὴν γῆν |sow τε καὶ ἐργάζεσθαι
 οἱ Μιλήσιοι, αὐτὸς δὲ ἐκείνων ἐργαζομένων ἔχοι τι καὶ
 |rob, damage βάλλων.

1.18

ταῦτα ποιέων ἐπολέμεε ἔτεα |eleven , ἐν τοῖσι τρώματα
 μεγάλα |of two kinds...ησίων ἐγένετο, ἐν τε Λιμενιῶ χώρης
 τῆς |their μαχεσαμένων καὶ ἐν Μαιάνδρου πεδίῳ. τὰ
 μέν νυν ἕξ ἔτεα τῶν |eleven Σαδυάττης ὁ Ἄρδνος ἔτι
 Λυδῶν ἦρχε, ὁ καὶ ἐσβάλλων |at that time, ἐς τὴν Μιλησίην
 |in that case
 τὴν στρατιήν· Σαδυάττης οὗτος γὰρ καὶ ὁ τὸν πόλεμον
 ἦν |join, partake; `ad- πέντε τῶν ἐτέων τὰ ἐπόμενα τοῖσι ἕξ
 |join; consult; fight
 Ἀλυάττης ὁ Σαδυάττεω ἐπολέμεε, ὃς παραδεξάμενος,

were in the fields, nor set fire to them nor tore off their doors, but let them stand as they were; the trees however and the crops that were upon the land he destroyed, and then departed by the way he came: for the men of Miletos had command of the sea, so that it was of no use for his army to blockade them: and he abstained from pulling down the houses to the end that the Milesians might have places to dwell in while they sowed and tilled the land, and by the means of their labour he might have somewhat to destroy when he made his invasion.

1.18

Thus he continued to war with them for eleven years; and in the course of these years the Milesians suffered two great defeats, once when they fought a battle in the district of Limenion in their own land, and again in the plain of Maiander. Now for six of the eleven years Sadyattes the son of Ardys was still ruler of the Lydians, the same who was wont to invade the land of Miletos at the times mentioned; for this Sadyattes was he who first began the war: but for the five years which followed these first six the war was carried on by Alyattes the son of Sadyattes, who

*vocabulary***ἀνορθόω** rebuild, restore**ἀνταποδίδωμι** give in exchange**βιάω** use force against, overcome**βιόω** live; (mp) make a living ~biology**δωδέκατος** twelfth**ἐντεταμένως** vehemently**ἐπείρομαι** ask as well; ask then**ἐπικλησις** -τος (f) nickname;

nominally ~gallo

θεοπρόπος seer ~theology**κατακαίω** burn down ~caustic**λίον** standing grain**νήεω** pile up, load a ship**νήός** temple, shrine**νοσέω** be sick, be mad, suffer**νόσος** (f) plague, pestilence ~noisome**νοῦσος** (f) plague, pestilence ~noisome**οὐδαμός** not anyone**παραυτίκα** immediately**στρατιά** army ~strategy**συμβουλευώ** give advice; (mid) consult
~volunteer**συμφέρω** bring together; be expedient;
agree; (mp) happen ~bear**συνδιαφέρω** bring along**συνεπελαφρύνω** help to carry**τιμωρέω** (i) (+dat) take vengeance,
punish; aid one who has been attacked**τοιόσδε** such

ὥς καὶ πρότερον μοι δεδήλωται, παρὰ τοῦ πατρὸς τὸν πόλεμον προσείχε ἐντεταμένως. τοῖσι δὲ Μιλησίοισι οὐδαμοὶ Ἰώνων τὸν πόλεμον τοῦτον συνεπελάφρυνον ὅτι μὴ Χῖοι μούντοι. οὗτοι δὲ τὸ ὅμοιον ἀνταποδιδόντες ἐτιμώρεον· καὶ γὰρ δὴ πρότερον οἱ Μιλήσιοι τοῖσι Χίοισι τὸν πρὸς Ἑρυθραίους πόλεμον συνδιήνεικαν.

1.19

τῷ δὲ δυωδεκάτῳ ἔτει, λήιου ἐμπιπραμένου ὑπὸ τῆς στρατιῆς, συνηνείχθη τι τοιόνδε γενέσθαι πρήγμα· ὥς ἄφθη τάχιστα τὸ λήιον, ἀνέμῳ βιώμενον ἄψατο νηοῦ Ἀθηναίης ἐπίκλησιν Ἀσσησίης, ἀφθεῖς δὲ ὁ νηὸς κατεκαύθη. καὶ τὸ παραντίκα μὲν λόγος οὐδεὶς ἐγένετο, μετὰ δὲ τῆς στρατιῆς ἀπικομένης ἐς Σάρδεις ἐνόσησε ὁ Ἀλυάττης. μακροτέρης δὲ οἱ γινομένης τῆς νούσου πέμπει ἐς Δελφούς θεοπρόπους, εἴτε δὴ συμβουλεύσαντός τευ, εἴτε καὶ αὐτῷ ἔδοξε πέμψαντα τὸν θεὸν ἐπειρέσθαι περὶ τῆς νούσου. τοῖσι δὲ ἡ Πυθίη ἀπικομένοισι ἐς Δελφούς οὐκ ἔφη χρήσειν πρὶν ἢ τὸν νηὸν τῆς Ἀθηναίης ἀνορθώσωσι,

ὥς καὶ πρότερον μοι δεδήλωται, παρὰ τοῦ πατρὸς τὸν
 πόλεμον προσεῖχε |vehemently . τοῖσι δὲ Μιλησίοισι
 |not anyone ἔλυνων τὸν πόλεμον τοῦτον |help to carry ὅτι
 μὴ Χίοι μούνοι. οὗτοι δὲ τὸ ὅμοιον |give in exchange
 |take vengeance, |punish, aid ἡ γὰρ δὴ πρότερον οἱ Μιλήσιοι τοῖσι Χίοισι
 τὸν πρὸς Ἐρυθραίους πόλεμον |bring along .

1.19

τῷ δὲ |twelfth ἔτει, |standing, |grain ἡπιπραμένου ὑπὸ τῆς
 στρατιῆς, συνηνείχθη τι |such γενέσθαι πρήγμα·
 ὥς ἄφθη τάχιστα τὸ |standing ἰνέμῳ βιώμενον ἄψατο
 νηοῦ Ἀθηναίης |nickname; |nominally Ἀσσησίης, ἀφθείς δὲ ὁ νηὸς
 |burn down . καὶ τὸ |immediately μὲν λόγος οὐδεὶς ἐγένετο,
 μετὰ δὲ τῆς στρατιῆς ἀπικομένης ἐς Σάρδεις |be sick, be
 Ἀλυάττης. μακροτέρης δὲ οἱ γινομένης τῆς νούσου πέμπει
 ἐς Δελφοὺς |seer , εἴτε δὲ |give advice; (mid) τευ, εἴτε
 καὶ αὐτῷ ἔδοξε πέμψαντα τὸν θεὸν |ask as well; |ask then περὶ τῆς
 νούσου. τοῖσι δὲ ἡ Πυθίῃ ἀπικομένοισι ἐς Δελφοὺς οὐκ
 ἔφη χρήσειν πρὶν ἢ τὸν |temple ἧς Ἀθηναίης |rebuild, restore

received it as an inheritance from his father (as I have already said) and applied himself to it earnestly. And none of the Ionians helped those of Miletos bear the burden of this war except only the men of Chios. These came to their aid to pay back like with like, for the Milesians had formerly assisted the Chians throughout their war with the people of Erythrai.

1.19

Then in the twelfth year of the war, when standing corn was being burnt by the army of the Lydians, it happened as follows:— as soon as the corn was kindled, it was driven by a violent wind and set fire to the temple of Athene surnamed of Assessos; and the temple being set on fire was burnt down to the ground. Of this no account was made then; but afterwards when the army had returned to Sardis, Alyattes fell sick, and as his sickness lasted long, he sent messengers to inquire of the Oracle at Delphi, either being advised to do so by some one, or because he himself thought it best to send and inquire of the god concerning his sickness. But when these arrived at Delphi, the Pythian prophetess said that she would give them no answer, until they should have built up again the temple of Athene

vocabulary

ἀπόστολος messenger

ἐμπίμπρημι burn up ~pyre

ἐμπρήθω burn up

ἐξαγγέλλω bring news out ~angel

ἰδιωτικός private, amateurish

κατεῖπον denounce; report

μηχανάομαι build, contrive
~mechanism

νηός temple, shrine

οἰκοδομέω build, build a house

πρόοιδα foresee

προπυνθάνομαι learn in advance

σπονδή libation, treaty ~spontaneous

τοιόσδε such

τυραννεύω be an absolute ruler

χρηστήριον oracle, response

τὸν ἐνέπρησαν χώρας τῆς Μιλησίου ἐν Ἀσσησῶ.

1.20

Δελφῶν οἶδα ἐγὼ οὕτω ἀκούσας γενέσθαι· Μιλήσιοι δὲ τάδε προστιθείσι τούτοις, Περίανδρον τὸν Κυψέλου ἐόντα Θρασυβούλῳ τῷ τότε Μιλήτου τυραννεύοντι ξεῖνον ἐς τὰ μάλιστα, πυθόμενον τὸ χρηστήριον τὸ τῷ Ἀλυάττῃ γινόμενον, πέμψαντα ἄγγελον κατειπεῖν, ὅπως ἂν τι προειδὼς πρὸς τὸ παρεὸν βουλευήται.

1.21

Μιλήσιοι μὲν νυν οὕτω λέγουσι γενέσθαι. Ἀλυάττης δέ, ὥς οἱ ταῦτα ἐξαγγέλθη, αὐτίκα ἔπεμπε κήρυκα ἐς Μίλητον βουλόμενος σπονδὰς ποιήσασθαι Θρασυβούλῳ τε καὶ Μιλησίοις χρόνον ὅσον ἂν τὸν νηὸν οἰκοδομήῃ. ὁ μὲν δὴ ἀπόστολος ἐς τὴν Μίλητον ἦν, Θρασύβουλος δὲ σαφέως προπεπυσμένος πάντα λόγον, καὶ εἰδὼς τὰ Ἀλυάττης μέλλοι ποιήσειν, μηχανᾶται τοιάδε· ὅσος ἦν ἐν τῷ ἄστει σῖτος καὶ ἐωυτοῦ καὶ ἰδιωτικός, τοῦτον πάντα

τὸν ἐνέπρησαν χώρας τῆς Μιλησίου ἐν Ἀσσησῶ.

1.20

Δελφῶν οἶδα ἐγὼ οὕτω ἀκούσας γενέσθαι· Μιλήσιοι
 δὲ τάδε προστιθεῖσι τούτοισι, Περίανδρον τὸν Κυψέλου
 ἐόντα Θρασυβούλῳ τῷ τότε Μιλήτου ^{be an absolute ruler} ν
 ἐς τὰ μάλιστα, πυθόμενον τὸ ^{oracle,} ^{response} τὸ τῷ Ἀλυάττῃ
 γενόμενον, πέμψαντα ἄγγελον ^{denounce;} ^{report} ὅπως ἂν τι
^{foresee} πρὸς τὸ παρεὸν βουλευῆται.

1.21

Μιλήσιοι μὲν νυν οὕτω λέγουσι γενέσθαι. Ἀλυάττης
 δέ, ὡς οἱ ταῦτα ^{bring news out} ἵτίκα ἔπεμπε κήρυκα ἐς
 Μίλητον βουλόμενος ^{libation,} ^{treaty} ποιήσασθαι Θρασυβούλῳ
 τε καὶ Μιλησίοισι χρόνον ὅσον ἂν τὸν ^{tem-} ^{build, build}
^{ple} ^{a house}
 ὁ μὲν δὴ ^{messenger} ἐς τὴν Μίλητον ἦν, Θρασύβουλος
 δὲ σαφέως ^{learn in advance} πάντα λόγον, καὶ εἰδὼς τὰ
 Ἀλυάττης μέλλοι ποιήσιν, ^{build,} ^{such} ὅσος ἦν ἐν
^{contrive}
 τῷ ἄστει σίτος καὶ ἐωυτοῦ καὶ ἰδιωτικός, τοῦτον πάντα

which they had burnt at Assessos in the land of Miletos.

1.20

Thus much I know by the report of the people of Delphi; but the Milesians add to this that Periander the son of Kypselos, being a special guest-friend of Thrasybulos the then despot of Miletos, heard of the oracle which had been given to Alyattes, and sending a messenger told Thrasybulos, in order that he might have knowledge of it beforehand and take such counsel as the case required. This is the story told by the Milesians.

1.21

And Alyattes, when this answer was reported to him, sent a herald forthwith to Miletos, desiring to make a truce with Thrasybulos and the Milesians for so long a time as he should be building the temple. He then was being sent as envoy to Miletos; and Thrasybulos in the meantime being informed beforehand of the whole matter and knowing what Alyattes was meaning to do, contrived this device:— he gathered together in the market-place all the store of provisions which was found in the city, both

vocabulary

ἄγγέλλω carry a message, announce
 ~angel
διαλλαγὴ change, interchange;
 agreement
ἐντολή order
ἔσχατος farthest, last
εὐπάθεια comfort
καταδοκέω suspect, be prejudiced
κῶμος party, celebration
νηός temple, shrine
νόσος (f) plague, pestilence ~noisome
νοστέω go home

νοῦσος (f) plague, pestilence ~noisome
οἰκοδομέω build, build a house
προαγορεύω declare, predict, order
προεῖπον foretell, proclaim, order
 before
προλέγω prophecy, proclaim; preselect
 ~legion
σημαίνω give orders to; show; mark
 ~semaphore
σιτοδεία (i) famine
συγκομίζω gather
σωρός pile
τρύω (i) exhaust, wear down

συγκομίσας ἐς τὴν ἀγορὴν προεῖπε Μιλησίοισι, ἐπεὰν αὐτὸς σημήνη, τότε πίνειν τε πάντας καὶ κώμῳ χρᾶσθαι ἐς ἀλλήλους.

1.22

ταῦτα δὲ ἐποίεε τε καὶ προηγόρευε Θρασύβουλος τῶνδε εἵνεκεν, ὅκως ἂν δὴ ὁ κήρυξ ὁ Σαρδιηνὸς ἰδὼν τε σωρὸν μέγαν σίτου κεχυμένον καὶ τοὺς ἀνθρώπους ἐν εὐπαθείῃσι ἐόντας ἀγγείλῃ Ἀλυάττῃ· τὰ δὴ καὶ ἐγένετο. ὥς γὰρ δὴ ἰδὼν τε ἐκείνα ὁ κήρυξ καὶ εἶπας πρὸς Θρασύβουλον τοῦ Λυδοῦ τὰς ἐντολὰς ἀπῆλθε ἐς τὰς Σάρδεις, ὥς ἐγὼ πυνθάνομαι, δι' οὐδὲν ἄλλο ἐγένετο ἢ διαλλαγή. ἐλπίζων γὰρ ὁ Ἀλυάττης σιτοδείην τε εἶναι ἰσχυρὴν ἐν τῇ Μιλήτῳ καὶ τὸν λεὼν τετρῦσθαι ἐς τὸ ἔσχατον κακοῦ, ἤκουε τοῦ κήρυκος νοστήσαντος ἐκ τῆς Μιλήτου τοὺς ἐναντίους λόγους ἢ ὥς αὐτὸς κατεδόκεε. μετὰ δὲ ἢ τε διαλλαγή σφι ἐγένετο ἐπ' ᾧ τε ξείνους ἀλλήλοισι εἶναι καὶ συμμάχους, καὶ δύο τε ἀντὶ ἐνὸς νηοὺς τῇ Ἀθηναίῃ οἰκοδόμησε ὁ Ἀλυάττης ἐν τῇ Ἀσσησῶ, αὐτὸς τε ἐκ τῆς νόσου ἀνέστη.

|gather ἔς τὴν ἀγορὴν προεῖπε Μιλησίοισι, ἐπεὰν
 αὐτὸς |give orders to; πίνειν τε πάντας καὶ |party, celebration.
 |show; mark
 ἐς ἀλλήλους.

1.22

ταῦτα δὲ ἐποίεε τε καὶ |declare, pre- Θρασύβουλος τῶνδε
 |dict, order
 εἵνεκεν, ὅπως ἂν δὴ ὁ κήρυξ ὁ Σαρδιηνὸς ἰδὼν τε |pile
 μέγαν σίτου κεχυμένον καὶ τοὺς ἀνθρώπους ἐν |comfort
 ἑόντας |carry a message, ἔττη· τὰ δὴ καὶ ἐγένετο. ὥς γὰρ
 |announce
 δὴ ἰδὼν τε ἐκεῖνα ὁ κήρυξ καὶ εἶπας πρὸς Θρασύβουλον
 τοῦ Λυδοῦ τὰς |order ἀπῆλθε ἐς τὰς Σάρδεις, ὥς ἐγὼ
 πυνθάνομαι, δι' οὐδὲν ἄλλο ἐγένετο ἢ |change; ἐλπίζων
 |agreement
 γὰρ ὁ Ἀλυάττης |famine τε εἶναι ἰσχυρὴν ἐν τῇ Μιλήτῳ
 καὶ τὸν λεὼν |exhaust, wear down|farthest κακοῦ, ἤκουε τοῦ
 κήρυκος |go home ἐκ τῆς Μιλήτου τοὺς ἐναντίους
 λόγους ἢ ὥς αὐτὸς |suspect, be. μετὰ δὲ ἢ τε |change; σφι
 |prejudiced |agreement
 ἐγένετο ἐπ' ᾧ τε ξείνους ἀλλήλοισι εἶναι καὶ συμμάχους,
 καὶ δύο τε ἀντὶ ἐνὸς |temple τῇ Ἀθηναίῃ |build, build a ὁ
 |house
 Ἀλυάττης ἐν τῇ Ἀσσησῶ, αὐτός τε ἐκ τῆς νούσου ἀνέστη.

his own and that which belonged to private persons; and he proclaimed to the Milesians that on a signal given by him they should all begin to drink and make merry with one another.

1.22

This Thrasybulos did and thus proclaimed to the end that the herald from Sardis, seeing a vast quantity of provisions carelessly piled up, and the people feasting, might report this to Alyattes: and so on fact it happened; for when the herald returned to Sardis after seeing this and delivering to Thrasybulos the charge which was given to him by the king of Lydia, the peace which was made, came about, as I am informed, merely because of this. For Alyattes, who thought that there was a great famine in Miletos and that the people had been worn down to the extreme of misery, heard from the herald, when he returned from Miletos, the opposite to that which he himself supposed. And after this the peace was made between them on condition of being guest-friends and allies to one another, and Alyattes built two temples to Athene at Assessos in place of one, and himself recovered from his sickness. With regard

vocabulary

δελφίς -νος (m) dolphin
διατρίβω (ι) wear down, delay
 ~tribology
διθύραμβος (ι) dithyramb
ἐκφέρω carry off ~bear
θῶμα a wonder, feeling of surprise

~theater

κιθαρωδός singer with cithara
μηνύω disclose, betray, accuse
οὐδαμὸς not anyone
τυραννεύω be an absolute ruler
 χρηστήριον oracle, response

κατὰ μὲν τὸν πρὸς Μιλησίους τε καὶ Θρασύβουλον
πόλεμον Ἀλυάττη ὧδε ἔσχε.

1.23

Περίανδρος δὲ ἦν Κυψέλου παῖς οὗτος ὁ τῷ Θρασυβούλῳ
τὸ χρηστήριον μηνύσας· ἐτυράννευε δὲ ὁ Περίανδρος
Κορίνθου· τῷ δὴ λέγουσι Κορίνθιοι ὁμολογέουσι δέ σφι
Λέσβιοι ἐν τῷ βίῳ θῶμα μέγιστον παραστήναι, Ἀρίονα
τὸν Μηθυμναῖον ἐπὶ δελφῖνος ἐξενειχθέντα ἐπὶ Ταίναρον,
έόντα κιθαρωδὸν τῶν τότε έόντων οὐδενὸς δεύτερον,
καὶ διθύραμβον πρῶτον ἀνθρώπων τῶν ἡμεῖς ἴδμεν
ποιήσαντά τε καὶ ὀνομάσαντα καὶ διδάξαντα ἐν Κορίνθῳ.

1.24

τοῦτον τὸν Ἀρίονα λέγουσι, τὸν πολλὸν τοῦ χρόνου
διατρίβοντα παρὰ Περιάνδρῳ ἐπιθυμῆσαι πλώσαι ἐς
Ἰταλίην τε καὶ Σικελίην, ἐργασάμενον δὲ χρήματα μεγάλα
θελῆσαι ὀπίσω ἐς Κόρινθον ἀπικέσθαι. ὀρμαῖσθαι μὲν νυν
ἐκ Τάραντος, πιστεύοντα δὲ οὐδαμοῖσι μᾶλλον ἢ

κατὰ μέν τὸν πρὸς Μιλησίους τε καὶ Θρασύβουλον
πόλεμον Ἀλυσία ὥδε ἔσχε.

1.23

Περίαςδρος δὲ ἦν Κυψέλου παῖς οὗτος ὁ τῷ Θρασυβούλῳ
τὸ

oracle,	disclose, be-
response	be an absolute ruler

 Περίαςδρος
Κορίνθου· τῷ δὲ λέγουσι Κορίνθιοι ὁμολογέουσι δέ σφι
Λέσβιοι ἐν τῷ βίῳ

wonder,	έγιστον
surprise	παραστήναι,

 Ἀρίονα
τὸν Μηθυμναῖον ἐπὶ

dolphin	carry off
---------	-----------

 ἐπὶ Ταίναρον,
έόντα

singer with cithara	τότε
---------------------	------

 έόντων οὐδενὸς δεύτερον,
καὶ

dithyramb	πρῶτον
-----------	--------

 ἀνθρώπων τῶν ἡμεῖς ἴδμεν
ποιήσαντά τε καὶ ὀνομάσαντα καὶ διδάξαντα ἐν Κορίνθῳ.

1.24

τοῦτον τὸν Ἀρίονα λέγουσι, τὸν πολλὸν τοῦ χρόνου

wear down, delay	...ρὰ
------------------	-------

 Περίαςδρῳ ἐπιθυμῆσαι πλῶσαι ἐς
Ἰταλίην τε καὶ Σικελίην, ἐργασάμενον δὲ χρήματα μεγάλα
θελῆσαι ὀπίσω ἐς Κόρινθον ἀπικέσθαι. ὀρμᾶσθαι μέν νυν
ἐκ Τάραντος, πιστεύοντα δὲ

not anyone	μᾶλλον ἢ
------------	----------

then to the war waged by Alyattes with the Milesians and Thrasybulos things went thus.

1.23

As for Periander, the man who gave information about the oracle to Thrasybulos, he was the son of Kypselos, and despot of Corinth. In his life, say the Corinthians, (and with them agree the Lesbians), there happened to him a very great marvel, namely that Arion of Methymna was carried ashore at Tainaron upon a dolphin's back. This man was a harper second to none of those who then lived, and the first, so far as we know, who composed a dithyramb, naming it so and teaching it to a chorus at Corinth.

1.24

This Arion, they say, who for the most part of his time stayed with Periander, conceived a desire to sail to Italy and Sicily; and after he had there acquired large sums of money, he wished to again to Corinth. He set forth therefore from Taras, and as he had faith in Corinthians more than in other men, he

vocabulary

αείδω sing
ἀναχωρέω return, retreat ~heir
ᾄδός (f) singer
ἀπειλέω vow, threaten, boast
ἀποπλέω sail away ~float
ἀπορία difficulty, bottleneck ~pierce
δελφίς -νος (m) dolphin
διαχράομαι use habitually; lend out;
 reveal
διαχραύω use; kill
διαχρέομαι use habitually; lend out;
 reveal
διεξέρχομαι go through
ἑδῶλιον seat; quarter-deck; (pl) abodes
ἐκπηδάω sally, leave
ἐκφέρω carry off ~bear
ἐνδύω go into, put on
ἐπιβουλεύω plot, plan, harm
 ~volunteer
ἡδονή pleasure
κατεργάζομαι achieve; cultivate; get;

kill

κιθάρα lyre
λίσσομαι beg, beseech ~litany
μίν him, her, it
μισθώω rent out; (pass) be hired
ὄρθιος shrill; steep, straight
οὐκ no longer
παραιτέομαι entreat; beg for; decline
πέλαγος -ους (n, 3) the open sea
 ~pelagic
περιοράω look around; watch; permit
πορθμεύς -ος (m) ferryman ~pierce
πρύμνα stern
ρίπτω hurl
σκευή equipment
συνίημι send together; hear, notice,
 understand ~jet
ταφή burial, grave
ὑποδέχομαι welcome, accept, suffer
ὑπολαμβάνω take under one's
 support, seize; speak up; imagine
 ~epilepsy

Κορινθίοισι μισθώσασθαι πλοῖον ἀνδρῶν Κορινθίων. τοὺς δὲ ἐν τῷ πελάγει ἐπιβουλεύειν τὸν Ἀρίονα ἐκβαλόντας ἔχειν τὰ χρήματα. τὸν δὲ συνέντα τοῦτο λίσσεσθαι, χρήματα μὲν σφι προϊέντα, ψυχὴν δὲ παραιτούμενον. οὐκ ὄν δὴ πείθειν αὐτὸν τούτοις, ἀλλὰ κελεύει τοὺς πορθμέας ἢ αὐτὸν διαχρᾶσθαί μιν, ὥς ἂν ταφῆς ἐν γῇ τύχη, ἢ ἐκπηδᾶν ἐς τὴν θάλασσαν τὴν ταχίστην· ἀπειληθέντα δὴ τὸν Ἀρίονα ἐς ἀπορίην παραιτήσασθαι, ἐπειδὴ σφι οὕτω δοκέοι, περιδεῖν αὐτὸν ἐν τῇ σκευῇ πάσῃ στάντα ἐν τοῖσι ἐδωλίοις αἰεῖσαι· αἰέσας δὲ ὑπεδέκετο ἑαυτὸν κατεργάσασθαι. καὶ τοῖσι ἐσελθεῖν γὰρ ἡδονὴν εἰ μέλλοιεν ἀκούσεσθαι τοῦ ἀρίστου ἀνθρώπων αἰδοῦ, ἀναχωρῆσαι ἐκ τῆς πρύμνης ἐς μέσσην νέα. τὸν δὲ ἐνδύντα τε πᾶσαν τὴν σκευὴν καὶ λαβόντα τὴν κιθάρην, στάντα ἐν τοῖσι ἐδωλίοις διεξελθεῖν νόμον¹ τὸν ὄρθιον, τελευτῶντος δὲ τοῦ νόμου ῥῦφαί μιν ἐς τὴν θάλασσαν ἑωυτὸν ὥς εἶχε σὺν τῇ σκευῇ πάσῃ. καὶ τοὺς μὲν ἀποπλέειν ἐς Κόρινθον, τὸν δὲ δελφίνα λέγουσι ὑπολαβόντα ἐξενεῖκαι

¹ melody

Κορινθίοισι|rent out; (pass) πλοῖον ἀνδρῶν Κορινθίων. τοὺς
 |be hired
 δὲ ἐν τῷ |the open|plot, plan, harm. ἔν Ἀρίονα ἐκβαλόντας
 |sea
 ἔχειν τὰ χρήματα. τὸν δὲ |send together; hear|beg ,
 χρήματα μὲν σφι προϊέντα, ψυχὴν δὲ |entreat; beg for;
 |decline
 οὐκῶν δὴ πείθειν αὐτὸν τούτοις, ἀλλὰ κελεύειν τοὺς
 |ferryman ἢ αὐτὸν διαχρᾶσθαι μιν, ὡς ἂν |burial, ἐν
 |grave
 γῇ τύχῃ, ἢ |sally, ἐς τὴν θάλασσαν τὴν ταχίστην.
 |leave
 |vow, threaten, boast ἔν Ἀρίονα ἐς ἀπορίην |entreat; beg for;
 |decline
 ἐπειδὴ σφι οὕτω δοκέοι, περιδεῖν αὐτὸν ἐν τῇ |equipment ἢ
 στάντα ἐν τοῖσι |seat |sing |sing δὲ |welcome, ac-
 |cept, suffer
 ἑαυτὸν |achieve; cultivate; καὶ τοῖσι ἐσελθεῖν γὰρ |pleasure
 |get; kill
 εἰ μέλλοιεν ἀκούσεσθαι τοῦ ἀρίστου ἀνθρώπων |singer ,
 ἀναχωρῆσαι ἐκ τῆς |stern ἐς μέσην νέα. τὸν δὲ |go into, put on
 τε πᾶσαν τὴν |equipment... λαβόντα τὴν κιθάρην, στάντα ἐν
 τοῖσι |seat |go through νόμον¹ τὸν |shrill; steep, εὐτῶντος
 |straight
 δὲ τοῦ νόμου |hurl μιν ἐς τὴν θάλασσαν ἑωυτὸν ὡς εἶχε
 σὺν τῇ |equipment ἢ. καὶ τοὺς μὲν ἀποπλέειν ἐς Κόρινθον,
 τὸν δὲ |dolphin λέγουσι |take under|carry off
 |one's support,
 |seize; speak
 |up; imagine

¹ melody

hired a ship with a crew of Corinthians. These, the story says, when out in open sea, formed a plot to cast Arion overboard and so possess his wealth; and he having obtained knowledge of this made entreaties to them, offering them his wealth and asking them to grant him his life. With this however he did not prevail upon them, but the men who were conveying him bade him either slay himself there, that he might receive burial on the land, or leap straightway into the sea. So Arion being driven to a strait entreated them that, since they were so minded, they would allow him to take his stand in full minstrel's garb upon the deck of the ship and sing; and he promised to put himself to death after he had sung. They then, well pleased to think that they should hear the best of all minstrels upon earth, drew back from the stern towards the middle of the ship; and he put on the full minstrel's garb and took his lyre, and standing on the deck performed the Orthian measure. Then as the measure ended, he threw himself into the sea just as he was, in his full minstrel's garb; and they went on sailing away to Corinth, but him, they say, a dolphin supported on its back and brought him to shore at Tainaron: and

*vocabulary***ἀνάθημα** -τος (n, 3) consecrated gift

~thesis

ἀνακῶς carefully**ἀνατίθῃμι** consecrate, lay on, impute;
(mp) reproach**ἀπηγέομαι** lead; tell, relate**ἀπιστία** disbelief, distrust**ἀρνέομαι** deny, refuse, repudiate**βασιλεύω** be king**δελφίς** -νος (m) dolphin**ἐκπλήσσω** panic, be knocked out

~plectrum

ἐκφεύγω flee from, escape ~fugitive**ἐλέγχω** shame; try, examine**ἐπιφαίνω** display ~photon**ἱστορέω** inquire; relate**μεθίημι** let go, cease; (mid) speed off

~jet

μετέπειτα afterward, next**μίν** him, her, it**νόσος** (f) plague, pestilence ~noisome**νοῦσος** (f) plague, pestilence ~noisome**οὐδαμῇ** nowhere**πορθμεύς** -ος (m) ferryman ~pierce**πορθμός** canal, straits ~pierce**σκευή** equipment**χωρέω** withdraw, give way to (+dat)

~heir

ἐπὶ Ταίναρον.

Ἀποβάντα δέ αὐτὸν χωρέειν ἐς Κόρινθον σὺν τῇ σκευῇ, καὶ ἀπικόμενον ἀπηγέεσθαι πᾶν τὸ γεγονός. Περιάνδρον δὲ ὑπὸ ἀπιστίας Ἀρίονα μὲν ἐν φυλακῇ ἔχειν οὐδαμῇ μετιέντα, ἀνακῶς δὲ ἔχειν τῶν πορθμέων. ὥς δὲ ἄρα παρῆναι αὐτούς, κληθέντας ἱστορέεσθαι εἴ τι λέγοιεν περὶ Ἀρίονος. φαμένων δὲ ἐκείνων ὥς εἴη τε σῶς περὶ Ἰταλίην καί μιν εὖ πρήσσοντα λίποιεν ἐν Τάραντι, ἐπιφανῆναί σφι τὸν Ἀρίονα ὥσπερ ἔχων ἐξεπήδησε· καὶ τοὺς ἐκπλαγέντας οὐκ ἔχειν ἔτι ἐλεγχομένους ἀρνέεσθαι. ταῦτα μὲν νυν Κορίνθιοί τε καὶ Λέσβιοι λέγουσι, καὶ Ἀρίονος ἐστὶ ἀνάθημα χάλκεον οὐ μέγα ἐπὶ Ταινάρῳ, ἐπὶ δελφίνος ἐπέων ἄνθρωπος.

1.25

Ἀλυάττης δὲ ὁ Λυδὸς τὸν πρὸς Μιλησίους πόλεμον διενείκας μετέπειτα τελευτᾷ, βασιλεύσας ἕτεα ἑπτὰ καὶ πεντήκοντα. ἀνέθηκε δὲ ἐκφυγῶν τὴν νοῦσον δεύτερος

ἐπὶ Ταίναρον.

Ἀποβάντα δέ αὐτὸν |withdraw, 'give' ὅρινθον σὺν τῇ |equipment
 way to (+dat)
 καὶ ἀπικόμενον |lead; tell, relate. ἔν τὸ γεγονός. Περίανδρον
 δὲ ὑπὸ ἀπιστίας Ἀρίονα μὲν ἐν φυλακῇ ἔχειν |nowhere
 |let go, cease; κῶς δὲ ἔχειν τῶν πορθμέων. ὥς δὲ ἄρα
 (mid) speed off
 παρῆναι αὐτούς, κληθέντας |inquire; relate εἴ τι λέγοιεν
 περὶ Ἀρίονος. φαμένων δὲ ἐκείνων ὥς εἴη τε σῶς
 περὶ Ἰταλίην καὶ μιν εὖ πρήσσοντα λίποιεν ἐν Τάραντι,
 |display σφι τὸν Ἀρίονα ὥσπερ ἔχων ἐξεπήδησε· καὶ
 τοὺς |panic, be οὐκ ἔχειν ἔτι |shame; try, ex-|deny, refuse
 |knocked out |amine
 ταῦτα μὲν νυν Κορίνθιοί τε καὶ Λέσβιοι λέγουσι, καὶ
 Ἀρίονος ἐστὶ |consecrated, gift. εὖ οὐ μέγα ἐπὶ Ταινάρῳ, ἐπὶ
 |dolphin ἐπέων ἄνθρωπος.

1.25

Ἀλυάττης δὲ ὁ Λυδὸς τὸν πρὸς Μιλησίους πόλεμον
 διενείκας |afterward, next `ευτῆ, |be king ἔτεα ἑπτὰ καὶ
 πεντήκοντα. |consecrate, 'flee τὴν νοῦσον δεύτερος
 lay on,
 impute; (mp)
 reproach

when he had come to land he proceeded to Corinth with his minstrel's garb.

Thither having arrived he related all that had been done; and Periander doubting of his story kept Arion in guard and would let him go nowhere, while he kept careful watch for those who had conveyed him. When these came, he called them and inquired of them if they had any report to make of Arion; and when they said that he was safe in Italy and that they had left him at Taras faring well, Arion suddenly appeared before them in the same guise as when he made his leap from the ship; and they being struck with amazement were no longer able to deny when they were questioned. This is the tale told by the Corinthians and Lesbians alike, and there is at Tainaron a votive offering of Arion of no great size, namely a bronze figure of a man upon a dolphin's back.

1.25

Alyattes the Lydian, when he had thus waged war against the Milesians, afterwards died, having reigned seven and fifty years. This king, when he recovered from his sickness, dedicated a votive offering at Delphi (being the

vocabulary

ἀνάθημα -τος (n, 3) consecrated gift
 ~thesis
ἀνατίθῃμι consecrate, lay on, impute;
 (mp) reproach
ἀργύρεος silver ~Argentina
ἐκδέχομαι receive; succeed to a
 position
Ἑλλήν Greek
ἐξάπτω fasten to ~haptic
ἐξευρίσκω find; discover ~eureka
ἐπαιτιόομαι accuse
ἐπιφέρω bestow, impute ~bear
ἐπιχειρέω do, try, attack ~chiral
ἡλικία time of life, contemporaries
θέα (ᾱ) seeing, sight, viewpoint

κολλήεις joined overlapping
κολλητός skillfully joined
κρητήρ -ος (m) mixing bowl for wine
μεταξύ between
νηέω pile up, load a ship
νηός temple, shrine
παρευρίσκω discover as well
ποίημα -τος (n, 3) work, deed
σιδήρεος of iron ~siderite
σίδηρος iron ~siderite
στάδιον 200 meters (pl also masc)
στάδιος (adj) standing upright, firm;
 (pl noun) 200 meters
σχοινίον cord
φαῦλος trifling

οὗτος τῆς οἰκίης ταύτης ἐς Δελφοὺς κρητῆρά τε ἀργύρεον μέγαν καὶ ὑποκρητηρίδιον σιδήρεον κολλητόν, θέης ἄξιον διὰ πάντων τῶν ἐν Δελφοῖσι ἀναθημάτων, Γλαύκου τοῦ Χίου ποίημα, ὃς μούνος δὴ πάντων ἀνθρώπων σιδήρου κόλλησιν ἐξεύρε.

1.26

τελευτήσαντος δὲ Ἀλυάττεω ἐξεδέξατο τὴν βασιληίην Κροῖσος ὁ Ἀλυάττεω, ἐτέων ἐὼν ἡλικίην πέντε καὶ τριήκοντα· ὃς δὴ Ἑλλήνων πρώτοισι ἐπεθήκατο Ἐφεσίοισι. ἔνθα δὴ οἱ Ἐφέσιοι πολιορκεόμενοι ὑπ' αὐτοῦ ἀνέθεσαν τὴν πόλιν τῇ Ἀρτέμιδι, ἐξάψαντες ἐκ τοῦ νηοῦ σχοινίον ἐς τὸ τεῖχος. ἔστι δὲ μεταξὺ τῆς τε παλαιῆς πόλιος, ἣ τότε ἐπολιορκέετο, καὶ τοῦ νηοῦ ἑπτὰ στάδιοι. πρώτοισι μὲν δὴ τούτοις ἐπεχείρησε ὁ Κροῖσος, μετὰ δὲ ἐν μέρει ἐκάστοις Ἰώνων τε καὶ Αἰολέων, ἄλλοις ἄλλας αἰτίας ἐπιφέρων, τῶν μὲν ἐδύνατο μέζοντας παρευρίσκειν, μέζονα ἐπαιτιώμενος, τοῖσι δὲ αὐτῶν καὶ φαῦλα ἐπιφέρων.

οὗτος τῆς οἰκίης ταύτης ἐς Δελφοὺς |mixing bowl|silver
 for wine
 μέγαν καὶ ὑποκρητηρίδιον |of iron |skillfully , θέης ἄξιον
 joined
 διὰ πάντων τῶν ἐν Δελφοῖσι |consecrated gift, Γλαύκου τοῦ
 Χίου |work, deed : μῦθος δὲ πάντων ἀνθρώπων σιδήρου
 joined |find;
 overlap- |discover
 ping
 1.26

τελευτήσαντος δὲ Ἀλυάττεω |receive; succeed βασιληίην
 to a position
 Κροῖσος ὁ Ἀλυάττεω, ἐτέων ἐὼν |time of life, con- καὶ
 |temporaries
 τριήκοντα· ὅς δὲ |Greek πρότοισι ἐπεθήκατο
 Ἐφεσίοισι. ἔνθα δὲ οἱ Ἐφέσιοι πολιορκέμενοι ὑπ'
 αὐτοῦ |consecrate, lay on, im- τῇ Ἀρτέμιδι, |fasten to ἐκ
 |pute; (mp) reproach
 τοῦ νηοῦ |cord ἐς τὸ τεῖχος. ἔστι δὲ |between τῆς τε
 παλαιῆς πόλιος, ἣ τότε ἐπολιορκέετο, καὶ τοῦ νηοῦ ἑπτὰ
 στάδιοι. πρότοισι μὲν δὲ τούτοισι |do, try, attack ὁ Κροῖσος,
 μετὰ δὲ ἐν μέρει ἐκάστοισι Ἰώνων τε καὶ Αἰολέων,
 ἄλλοισι ἄλλας αἰτίας |bestow, , τῶν μὲν ἐδύνατο μέζονας
 |impute
 |discover as well μέζονα |accuse , τοῖσι δὲ αὐτῶν καὶ
 |trifling |bestow,
 |impute

second of his house who had so done), namely a great mixing-bowl of silver with a stand for it of iron welded together, which last is a sight worth seeing above all the offerings at Delphi and the work of Glaucos the Chian, who of all men first found out the art of welding iron.

1.26

After Alyattes was dead Croesus the son of Alyattes received the kingdom in succession, being five and thirty years of age. He (as I said) fought against the Hellenes and of them he attacked the Ephesians first. The Ephesians then, being besieged by him, dedicated their city to Artemis and tied a rope from the temple to the wall of the city: now the distance between the ancient city, which was then being besieged, and the temple is seven furlongs. These, I say, were the first upon whom Croesus laid hands, but afterwards he did the same to the other Ionian and Aiolian cities one by one, alleging against them various causes of complaint, and making serious charges against those in whose cases he could find serious grounds, while against others of them he charged merely trifling offences.

*vocabulary***ἀπαγωγή** leading away**Ἕλληγν** Greek**ἐνθεῦτεν** thence**ἐπινοέω** intend**ἐπιχειρέω** do, try, attack ~chiral**ἐτοιμός** ready; fulfilled**ἡπειρος** (f) mainland, continent**ἵππεύω** ride**καταπαύω** stop, restrain ~pause**καταστρέφω** overturn, subdue

~catastrophe

μυρίος (δ) 10,000 ~myriad**ναυπηγέω** build ships**ναυπηγία** shipbuilding**νησιώτης** -ου (m, f) insular**πρόθυμος** (ο) willing, eager ~fume**συνωνέομαι** buy together, buy up**ὑπολαμβάνω** take under one's

support, seize; speak up; imagine

~epilepsy

φορέω frequentative of φέρω, to carry

~bear

φόρον forum**φόρος** tribute, revenue

1.27

ὥς δὲ ἄρα οἱ ἐν τῇ Ἀσίῃ Ἕλληνες κατεστράφατο ἐς
 φόρου ἀπαγωγὴν, τὸ ἐνθεῦτεν ἐπενόεε νέας ποιησάμενος
 ἐπιχειρέειν τοῖσι νησιώτησι. ἐόντων δέ οἱ πάντων ἐτοιμῶν
 ἐς τὴν ναυπηγίην, οἳ μὲν Βίαντα λέγουσι τὸν Πριηνέα
 ἀπικόμενον ἐς Σάρδεις, οἳ δὲ Πιττακὸν τὸν Μυτιληναῖον,
 εἰρομένου Κροίσου εἴ τι εἴη νεώτερον περὶ τὴν Ἑλλάδα,
 εἰπόντα τάδε καταπαῦσαι τὴν ναυπηγίην· «ὦ βασιλεῦ,
 νησιῶται ἵππον¹ συνωνέονται μυρίην, ἐς Σάρδεις τε καὶ ἐπὶ
 σὲ ἐν νόῳ ἔχοντες στρατεύεσθαι.» Κροῖσον δὲ ἐλπίσαντα
 λέγειν ἐκεῖνον ἀληθέα εἰπεῖν, «αἱ γὰρ τοῦτο θεοὶ ποιήσειαν
 ἐπὶ νόον νησιώτησι, ἐλθεῖν ἐπὶ Λυδῶν παῖδας σὺν
 ἵπποισι.» τὸν δὲ ὑπολαβόντα φάναι, «ὦ βασιλεῦ,
 προθύμως μοι φαίνεται εὐξασθαι νησιώτας ἵππευομένους
 λαβεῖν ἐν ἡπείρῳ, οἰκότα ἐλπίζων. νησιώτας δὲ τί δοκέεις
 εὐχεσθαι ἄλλο ἢ, ἐπεῖτε τάχιστα ἐπύθοντό σε μέλλοντα
 ἐπὶ σφίσι ναυπηγέεσθαι νέας, λαβεῖν ἀρώμενοι Λυδοὺς ἐν

¹ in the feminine, meaning a mounted force

1.27

ὥς δὲ ἄρα οἱ ἐν τῇ Ἀσίῃ |Greek |overturn, subdue ἐς
 φόρου |leading away, τὸ |thence |intend νέας ποιησάμενος
 |do, try, attack. ὠῖσι |insular . ἐόντων δέ οἱ πάντων ἐτοίμων
 ἐς τὴν ναυπηγίην, οἱ μὲν Βίαντα λέγουσι τὸν Πριηνέα
 ἀπικόμενον ἐς Σάρδεις, οἱ δὲ Πιττακὸν τὸν Μυτιληναῖον,
 εἰρομένου Κροίσου εἴ τι εἴη νεώτερον περὶ τὴν Ἑλλάδα,
 εἰπόντα τάδε |stop, restrain τὴν ναυπηγίην· «ὦ βασιλεῦ,
 |insular ἵππων¹ |buy together, |10,000 , ἐς Σάρδεις τε καὶ ἐπὶ
 |buy up
 σὲ ἐν νόῳ ἔχοντες στρατεύεσθαι.» Κροῖσον δὲ ἐλπίσαντα
 λέγειν ἐκείνον ἀληθέα εἰπεῖν, «αἶ γὰρ τοῦτο θεοὶ ποιήσειαν
 ἐπὶ νόον |insular , ἐλθεῖν ἐπὶ Λυδῶν παῖδας σὺν
 ἵπποισι.» τὸν δὲ |take under one's support, |ὦ βασιλεῦ,
 |seize; speak up; imagine
 |willing, μοι φαίνεται εὐξασθαι |insular |ride
 |eager
 λαβεῖν ἐν |mainland, |ἰκότα ἐλπίζων. |insular δὲ τί δοκέεις
 |continent
 εὐχεσθαι ἄλλο ἢ, ἐπεῖτε τάχιστα ἐπύθοντό σε μέλλοντα
 ἐπὶ σφίσι |build ships νέας, λαβεῖν ἀρώμενοι Λυδοὺς ἐν

¹ in the feminine, meaning a mounted force

1.27

Then when the Hellenes in Asia had been conquered and forced to pay tribute, he designed next to build for himself ships and to lay hands upon those who dwelt in the islands; and when all was prepared for his building of ships, they say that Bias of Priene (or, according to another account, Pittacos of Mytilene) came to Sardis, and being asked by Croesus whether there was any new thing doing in Hellas, brought to an end his building of ships by this saying: "O king," said he, "the men of the islands are hiring a troop of ten thousand horse, and with this they mean to march to Sardis and fight against thee." And Croesus, supposing that what he reported was true, said: "May the gods put it into the minds of the dwellers of the islands to come with horses against the sons of the Lydians!" And he answered and said: "O king, I perceive that thou dost earnestly desire to catch the men of the islands on the mainland riding upon horses; and it is not unreasonable that thou shouldest wish for this: what else however thinkest thou the men of the islands desire and have been praying for ever since the time they heard that thou wert about to build ships against them, than that they might catch the Lydians upon the

vocabulary

ἀκμάζω be in top form, flourish
δουλόω enslave
Ἕλληγ Greek
ἐντός within
ἐπιγίγνομαι succeed, come after
 ~genus
ἐπίλογος reasoning; peroration
ἡδομαι be pleased, enjoy ~hedonism
ἡπειρος (f) mainland, continent
κάρτα very much ~κράτος

καταστρέφω overturn, subdue
 ~catastrophe
ναυπηγία shipbuilding
ξείνιος of hospitality
προσεπικτάομαι acquire as well
προσφυής attached to, part of
συντίθημι hearken, mark ~thesis
τίνω (i) pay, atone for; (mp) punish
τίω value, honor; mp: exact
 recompense for

θαλάσση, ἵνα ὑπερ τῶν ἐν τῇ ἡπείρῳ οἰκημένων Ἑλλήνων
 τίσωνταί σε, τοὺς σὺ δουλώσας ἔχεις;» κάρτα τε ἡσθῆναι
 Κροῖσον τῷ ἐπιλόγῳ καὶ οἱ, προσφυνέως γὰρ δόξαι λέγειν,
 πειθόμενον παύσασθαι τῆς ναυπηγίης. καὶ οὕτω τοῖσι τὰς
 νήσους οἰκημένοισι Ἴωσι ξεινίην συνεθήκατο.

1.28

χρόνου δὲ ἐπιγινομένου καὶ κατεστραμμένων σχεδὸν
 πάντων τῶν ἐντὸς Ἄλυσ ποταμοῦ οἰκημένων· πλὴν γὰρ
 Κιλικῶν καὶ Λυκίων τοὺς ἄλλους πάντας ὑπ' ἐωυτῷ
 εἶχε καταστρεψάμενος ὁ Κροῖσος. εἰσὶ δὲ οἶδε, Λυδοί,
 Φρύγες, Μυσοί, Μαριανδυνοί, Χάλυβες, Παφλαγόνες,
 Θρήικες οἱ Θυνοί τε καὶ Βιθυνοί, Κᾶρες, Ἴωνες, Δωριέες,
 Αἰολέες, Πάμφυλοι κατεστραμμένων δὲ τούτων καὶ
 προσεπικτωμένου Κροῖσου Λυδοῖσι,

1.29

ἀπικνέονται ἐς Σάρδεις, ἀκμαζούσας, πλούτῳ ἄλλοι¹ τε

¹ those other than Solon

θαλάσση, ἵνα ὑπὲρ τῶν ἐν τῇ |mainland, ἡ κημένων |Greek
 |continent
 τίσωνταί σε, τοὺς σὺ |enslave ἔχεις;» |very much |be pleased, enjoy
 Κροῖσον τῷ |reasoning; αἱ οἱ, |attached to, part of ᾧ ὅξαι λέγειν,
 |peroration
 πειθόμενον παύσασθαι τῆς ναυπηγίης. καὶ οὕτω τοῖσι τὰς
 νήσους οἰκημένοισι Ἰωσι ξεινίην |hearken, mark

1.28

χρόνου δὲ ἐπιγινόμενου καὶ |overturn, subdue σχεδὸν
 πάντων τῶν |within Ἄλυος ποταμοῦ οἰκημένων· πλὴν γὰρ
 Κιλικῶν καὶ Λυκίων τοὺς ἄλλους πάντας ὑπ' ἐωυτῷ
 εἶχε |overturn, subdue ὁ Κροῖσος. εἰς δὲ οἶδε, Λυδοί,
 Φρύγες, Μυσοί, Μαριανδυνοί, Χάλυβες, Παφλαγόνες,
 Θρήκες οἱ Θυνοί τε καὶ Βιθυνοί, Κᾶρες, Ἰῶνες, Δωριέες,
 Αἰολέες, Πάμφυλοι |overturn, subdue δὲ τούτων καὶ
 |acquire as well Κροίσου Λυδοῖσι,

1.29

ἀπικνέονται ἐς Σάρδεις, |be in top form,, πλούτῳ ἄλλοι¹ τε
 |flourish

¹ those other than Solon

sea, so as to take vengeance upon thee for the Hellenes who dwell upon the mainland, whom thou dost hold enslaved?” Croesus, they say, was greatly pleased with this conclusion, and obeying his suggestion, for he judged him to speak suitably, he stopped his building of ships; and upon that he formed a friendship with the Ionians dwelling in the islands.

1.28

As time went on, when nearly all those dwelling on this side the river Halys had been subdued, (for except the Kilikians and Lykians Croesus subdued and kept under his rule all the nations, that is to say Lydians, Phrygians, Mysians, Mariandynoi, Chalybians, Paphlagonians, Thracians both Thynian and Bithynian, Carians, Ionians, Dorians, Aiolians, and Pamphylians),

1.29

When these, I say, had been subdued, and while he was still adding to his

*vocabulary***ἀποδημέω** be absent, abroad**βασίλειος** kingly**ἐκδημέω** be abroad**ἐκπλέω** sail away ~float**ἐπιδείκνυμι** (ὅ) display, exhibit**εὖς** good, brave, noble**θεάομαι** look at, behold, consider

~theater

θεράπων -οντος (m, 3) helper,

henchman, servant ~therapy

θεωρία spectator, contemplation**θησαυρός** treasury ~treasure**μίν** him, her, it**ξεινίζω** be host, treat as a guest**ὄλβιος** happy, wealthy**ὄον** οὓ type of fruit**ὄρκιον** oath ~orc**περιάγω** lead around**πρόφασις** -εως (f) pretext; motive;

prediction ~fame

σκέπτομαι look, look at, watch

~skeptic

σοφιστής -οῦ (m, 1) expert**τέταρτος** fourth ~trapezoid

οἱ πάντες ἐκ τῆς Ἑλλάδος σοφισταί, οἳ τοῦτον τὸν χρόνον ἐτύγχανον ἐόντες, ὥς ἕκαστος αὐτῶν ἀπικνέοιτο, καὶ δὴ καὶ Σόλων ἀνὴρ Ἀθηναῖος, ὃς Ἀθηναίοισι νόμους κελεύσας ποιήσας ἀπεδήμησε ἕτεα δέκα κατὰ θεωρίας πρόφασιν ἐκπλώσας, ἵνα δὴ μή τινα τῶν νόμων ἀναγκασθῇ, λῦσαι τῶν ἔθετο. αὐτοὶ γὰρ οὐκ οἰοί τε ἦσαν αὐτὸ ποιῆσαι Ἀθηναῖοι· ὀρκίοισι γὰρ μεγάλοισι κατείχοντο δέκα ἕτεα χρήσεσθαι νόμοισι τοὺς ἄν σφι Σόλων θῇται.

1.30

αὐτῶν δὴ ὧν τούτων καὶ τῆς θεωρίας ἐκδημήσας ὁ Σόλων εἵνεκεν ἐς Αἴγυπτον ἀπίκετο παρὰ Ἄμασιν καὶ δὴ καὶ ἐς Σάρδις παρὰ Κροίσον. ἀπικόμενος δὲ ἐξεινίζετο ἐν τοῖσι βασιλῆίοισι ὑπὸ τοῦ Κροίσου· μετὰ δὲ ἡμέρῃ τρίτῃ ἢ τετάρτῃ κελεύσαντος Κροίσου τὸν Σόλωνα θεράποντες περιῆγον κατὰ τοὺς θησαυρούς, καὶ ἐπεδείκνυσαν πάντα ἐόντα μεγάλα τε καὶ ὄλβια. θεησάμενον δέ μιν τὰ πάντα καὶ σκεψάμενον ὥς οἱ κατὰ καιρὸν ἦν, εἶρετο ὁ

οἱ πάντες ἐκ τῆς Ἑλλάδος |expert , οἷ τοῦτον τὸν
 χρόνον ἐτύγχανον ἐόντες, ὡς ἕκαστος αὐτῶν ἀπικνέοιτο,
 καὶ δὴ καὶ Σόλων ἀνὴρ Ἀθηναῖος, ὃς Ἀθηναίοισι
 νόμους κελεύσας ποιήσας |be absent, abroad . δέκα κατὰ
 |spectator, |pretext; mo-|sail away , ἵνα δὴ μή τινα τῶν νόμων
 |contem- |tive; predic-
 |plation tion
 ἀναγκασθῇ, λῦσαι τῶν ἔθετο. αὐτοὶ γὰρ οὐκ οἰοί τε
 ἦσαν αὐτὸ ποιῆσαι Ἀθηναῖοι· ὀρκίοισι γὰρ μεγάλοις
 κατείχοντο δέκα ἔτεα χρήσεσθαι νόμοισι τοὺς ἄν σφι
 Σόλων θῇται.

1.30

αὐτῶν δὴ ὦν τούτων καὶ τῆς |spectator, |be abroad ὁ Σόλων
 εἵνεκεν ἐς Αἴγυπτον ἀπίκετο |contem-
 |plation παρὰ Ἀμασιν καὶ δὴ καὶ
 ἐς Σάρδις παρὰ Κροίσον. ἀπικόμενος δὲ |be host ἐν
 τοῖσι |kingly ὑπὸ τοῦ Κροίσου· μετὰ δὲ ἡμέρῃ τρίτῃ
 ἢ |fourth κελεύσαντος Κροίσου τὸν Σόλωνα |companion
 |lead around ἰτὰ τοὺς |treasury , καὶ |display, exhibit πάντα
 ἐόντα μεγάλα τε καὶ |happy, |wealthy θεησάμενον δέ μιν τὰ πάντα
 καὶ |look, look at, watch ἔκατὰ καιρὸν ἦν, εἶρετο ὁ

Lydian dominions, there came to Sardis, then at the height of its wealth, all the wise men of the Hellas who chanced to be alive at that time, brought thither severally by various occasions; and of them one was Solon the Athenian, who after he had made laws for the Athenians at their bidding, left his native country for ten years and sailed away saying that he desired to visit various lands, in order that he might not be compelled to repeal any of the laws which he had proposed. For of themselves the Athenians were not competent to do this, having bound themselves by solemn oaths to submit for ten years to the laws which Solon should propose for them.

1.30

So Solon, having left his native country for this reason and for the sake of seeing various lands, came to Amasis in Egypt, and also to Croesus at Sardis. Having there arrived he was entertained as a guest by Croesus in the king's palace; and afterwards, on the third or fourth day, at the bidding of Croesus his servants led Solon round to see his treasures; and they showed him all things, how great and magnificent they were: and after he had looked upon them all and examined them as he had occasion, Croesus asked him

vocabulary

ἀστυγείτων near a city
δημόσιος public, the state
ἐκγίγνομαι be born; be by birth
 ~genus
ἐπείρομαι ask as well; ask then
ἐπειρωτάω consult, ask
ἐπιγίγνομαι succeed, come after
 ~genus
ἐπιστρεφής attentive; strict
εὖς good, brave, noble
θάπτω bury ~epitaph
θεωρία spectator, contemplation
ἔμερος (ἶ) desire, inclination (+gen)

λαμπρός brilliant ~lamp
μίν him, her, it
ὄλβιος happy, wealthy
ὄον οὐ type of fruit
παραμένω stay with ~remain
πλάνη wandering
πλάνης -τος (m, 3) wanderer
σοφία skill; wisdom ~sophistry
τελευτή conclusion, fulfilment ~apostle
τροπή rout, turning of an enemy
 ~trophy
ὑποθωπεύω subtly flatter
φιλοσοφέω philosophize, study
φιλόσοφος wisdom-loving

Κροΐσος τάδε. «ξείνε Ἀθηναίε, παρ' ἡμέας γὰρ περὶ σέο λόγος ἀπίκται πολλὸς καὶ σοφίης εἵνεκεν τῆς σῆς καὶ πλάνης, ὡς φιλοσοφέων γῆν πολλὴν θεωρίας εἵνεκεν ἐπελήλυθας· νῦν ὦν ἐπειρέσθαι με ἵμερος ἐπήλθ' σε εἴ τινα ἤδη πάντων εἶδες ὀλβιώτατον.» ὁ μὲν ἐλπίζων εἶναι ἀνθρώπων ὀλβιώτατος ταῦτα ἐπειρώτα· Σόλων δὲ οὐδὲν ὑποθωπεύσας ἀλλὰ τῷ ἐόντι χρησάμενος λέγει «ὦ βασιλεῦ, Τέλλον Ἀθηναῖον.» ἀποθωμάσας δὲ Κροΐσος τὸ λεχθὲν εἵρετο ἐπιστρεφέως· «κοίη δὴ κρίνεις Τέλλον εἶναι ὀλβιώτατον;» ὁ δὲ εἶπε «Τέλλῳ τοῦτο μὲν τῆς πόλιος εὖ ἠκούσης παῖδες ἦσαν καλοὶ τε καὶ ἀγαθοί, καὶ σφί εἶδε ἅπασι τέκνα ἐκγενόμενα καὶ πάντα παραμείναντα· τοῦτο δὲ τοῦ βίου εὖ ἤκοντι, ὡς τὰ παρ' ἡμῖν, τελευτὴ τοῦ βίου λαμπροτάτῃ ἐπεγένετο· γενομένης γὰρ Ἀθηναίοισι μάχης πρὸς τοὺς ἀστυγείτονας ἐν Ἐλευσῖνι, βοηθήσας καὶ τροπὴν ποιήσας τῶν πολεμίων ἀπέθανε κάλλιστα, καὶ μιν Ἀθηναῖοι δημοσίῃ τε ἔθαψαν αὐτοῦ τῇ περ ἔπεσε καὶ ἐτίμησαν μεγάλως.»

Κροῖσος τάδε. «ξείνε Ἀθηναῖε, παρ' ἡμέας γὰρ περὶ
 σέο λόγος ἀπῖκται πολλὸς καὶ σοφίης εἵνεκεν τῆς σῆς
 καὶ πλάνης, ὡς φιλοσοφέων γῆν πολλὴν |spectator, cōn- εν
 |templation
 ἐπελήλυθας· νῦν ὦν |ask as well; με |urge ἐπῆλθέ σε εἴ
 |ask then
 τινα ἤδη πάντων εἶδες |happy, » ὁ μὲν ἐλπίζων
 |wealthy
 εἶναι ἀνθρώπων |happy, ταῦτα |consult, ask Σόλων δὲ
 |wealthy
 οὐδὲν |subtly flatter ἀλλὰ τῷ ἐόντι χρησάμενος λέγει «ὦ
 βασιλεῦ, Τέλλον Ἀθηναῖον.» ἀποθωμάσας δὲ Κροῖσος τὸ
 λεχθὲν εἶρετο |attentive; strict «κοίη δὴ κρίνεις Τέλλον εἶναι
 |happy, ,» ὁ δὲ εἶπε «Τέλλω τοῦτο μὲν τῆς πόλιος
 |wealthy
 εὖ ἡκούσης παῖδες ἦσαν καλοὶ τε κάγαθοί, καὶ σφι εἶδε
 ἅπανι τέκνα |be born; be by birth ἔντα |stay with τοῦτο
 δὲ τοῦ βίου εὖ ἤκοντι, ὡς τὰ παρ' ἡμῖν, |conclusion, οὐ
 |fulfilment
 βίου |brilliant |succeed γενομένης γὰρ Ἀθηναίοισι
 μάχης πρὸς τοὺς |near a city ἐν Ἐλευσῖνι, βοηθήσας καὶ
 |rout, ποίησας τῶν πολεμίων ἀπέθανε κάλλιστα, καὶ
 |turning
 μιν Ἀθηναῖοι δημοσίῃ τε |bury αὐτοῦ τῇ περ ἔπεσε καὶ
 ἐτίμησαν μεγάλως.»

as follows: "Athenian guest, much report of thee has come to us, both in regard to thy wisdom and thy wanderings, how that in thy search for wisdom thou hast traversed many lands to see them; now therefore a desire has come upon me to ask thee whether thou hast seen any whom thou deemest to be of all men the most happy." This he asked supposing that he himself was the happiest of men; but Solon, using no flattery but the truth only, said: "Yes, O king, Tellos the Athenian." And Croesus, marvelling at that which he said, asked him earnestly: "In what respect dost thou judge Tellos to be the most happy?" And he said: "Tellos, in the first place, living while his native State was prosperous, had sons fair and good and saw from all of them children begotten and living to grow up; and secondly he had what with us is accounted wealth, and after his life a most glorious end: for when a battle was fought by the Athenians at Eleusis against the neighbouring people, he brought up supports and routed the foe and there died by a most fair death; and the Athenians buried him publicly where he fell, and honoured him greatly."

vocabulary

ἀθλοφόρος taking prizes ~athlete

ἄμαξα wagon

ἀρκέω satisfy; ward off, defend; suffice

ἄρκυς net

δευτερεῖος second-best

διαδέχομαι be next, succeed ~doctrine

διακομίζω carry over

ἐκκληίω shut out; prevent

ἐπειρωτάω consult, ask

ἐπιγίγνομαι succeed, come after

~genus

ζεύγλη yoke cushion ~zygote

ζεῦγος -ους (n, 3) team of animals

~zygote

νεηνίης young person

ὀλβία bliss

ὀρτή holiday, feast

πάγχι entirely

πανήγυρις -εως (f) gathering

πάντως by all means

προτρέπω prompt, urge, compel; (mp)

go, flee to ~trophy

ῥώμη strength, might

στάδιον 200 meters (pl also masc)

στάδιος (adj) standing upright, firm;

(pl noun) 200 meters

τελευτή conclusion, fulfilment ~apostle

τοιόσδε such

ὑπείμι be under

ὑποδύω (mp) get under; play a character

1.31

ὥς δὲ τὰ κατὰ τὸν Τέλλον προετρέψατο ὁ Σόλων τὸν Κροῖσον εἶπας πολλά τε καὶ ὀλβία, ἐπειρώτα τίνα δεύτερον μετ' ἐκείνων ἴδοι, δοκέων πάγχυ δευτερεῖα γῶν οἶσεσθαι. ὁ δ' εἶπε «Κλέοβίν τε καὶ Βίτωνα. τούτοισι γὰρ ἐοῦσι γένος Ἀργείοισι βίος τε ἀρκέων ὑπὴν, καὶ πρὸς τούτῳ ρώμη σώματος τοιήδε· ἀθλοφόροι τε ἀμφοτέροι ὁμοίως ἦσαν, καὶ δὴ καὶ λέγεται ὅδε ὁ λόγος. ἐούσης ὀρτῆς τῇ Ἥρῃ τοῖσι Ἀργείοισι ἔδεε πάντως τὴν μητέρα αὐτῶν ζεύγεϊ κομισθῆναι ἐς τὸ ἱρόν, οἱ δέ σφι βόες ἐκ τοῦ ἀγροῦ οὐ παρεγίνοντο ἐν ὥρῃ· ἐκκλησιόμενοι δὲ τῇ ὥρῃ οἱ νεηνῖαι ὑποδύντες αὐτοὶ ὑπὸ τὴν ζεύγλην εἰλκον τὴν ἄμαξαν, ἐπὶ τῆς ἀμάξης δέ σφι ὠχέετο ἡ μήτηρ· σταδίους δὲ πέντε καὶ τεσσεράκοντα διακομίσαντες ἀπίκοντο ἐς τὸ ἱρόν.

ταῦτα δέ σφι ποιήσασι καὶ ὀφθείσι ὑπὸ τῆς πανηγύριος τελευταῖα τοῦ βίου ἀρίστη ἐπεγένετο, διέδεξε τε ἐν τούτοις

1.31

ὥς δὲ τὰ κατὰ τὸν Τέλλον |prompt, urge, com- Σόλων
 |pel; (mp) go, flee to
 τὸν Κροῖσον εἶπας πολλά τε καὶ |bliss , |consult, ask ἵνα
 δεύτερον μετ' ἐκείνων ἴδοι, δοκέων |entirely |second-best ἰὼν
 οἴσεσθαι. ὃ δ' εἶπε «Κλέοβίν τε καὶ Βίτωνα. τούτοις
 γὰρ εὐοῦσι γένος Ἀργείοισι βίος τε ἀρκέων ὑπὴν, καὶ πρὸς
 τούτῳ |strength, ὁμάτος |such ἀθλοφόροι τε ἀμφοτέροι
 |might
 ὁμοίως ἦσαν, καὶ δὴ καὶ λέγεται ὅδε ὁ λόγος. εὐούσης
 |holiday, ἡ Ἑρῆ τοῖσι Ἀργείοισι ἔδεε |by all means, |μητέρα
 |feast
 αὐτῶν |team κομισθῆναι εἰς τὸ ἱρόν, οἱ δέ σφι βόες ἐκ τοῦ
 ἀγροῦ οὐ παρεγίνοντο ἐν ὥρῃ· ἐκκλησιόμενοι δὲ τῇ ὥρῃ
 οἱ |young |(mp) get under; οὐ ὑπὸ τὴν |yoke cushion... :ον τὴν
 |person |play a character
 |wagon , ἐπὶ τῆς |wagon δέ σφι ὠχέετο ἡ μήτηρ· σταδίου
 δὲ πέντε καὶ τεσσαράκοντα |carry over ἀπίκοντο εἰς τὸ
 ἱρόν.

ταῦτα δέ σφι ποιήσασι καὶ ὀφθεῖσι ὑπὸ τῆς |gathering

|conclusion, ἡ βίου ἀρίστη |succeed , |be next, succeed ὑτοῖσι
 |fulfilment

1.31

So when Solon had moved Croesus to inquire further by the story of Tellos, recounting how many points of happiness he had, the king asked again whom he had seen proper to be placed next after this man, supposing that he himself would certainly obtain at least the second place; but he replied: “Cleobis and Biton: for these, who were of Argos by race, possessed a sufficiency of wealth and, in addition to this, strength of body such as I shall tell. Both equally had won prizes in the games, and moreover the following tale is told of them:— There was a feast of Hera among the Argives and it was by all means necessary that their mother should be borne in a car to the temple.

But since their oxen were not brought up in time from the field, the young men, barred from all else by lack of time, submitted themselves to the yoke and drew the wain, their mother being borne by them upon it; and so they brought it on for five and forty furlongs, and came to the temple. Then after they had done this and had been seen by the assembled crowd, there came to their life a most excellent ending; and in this the deity declared that

vocabulary

ἄγαλμα -τος (n, 3) ornament, glory,
 statue
ἀνατίθῃμι consecrate, lay on, impute;
 (mp) reproach
ἀπορρίπτω cast away
δευτερεῖος second-best
εἰκῶν -όνος (f, 3) image, likeness
εὐδαιμονία prosperity
εὐχή prayer; vow ~vow
εὖωχέω fete, feed well
θύω (ō) rush; sacrifice ~θύω
ιδιώτης -ου (m, 1) private; a layman
κατακοιμάω pass: go to sleep; have
 sex with

κυρέω come upon, come up against;
 obtain
μακαρίζω congratulate ~macarism
μίν him, her, it
νεηνίης young person
νέμω to allot, to pasture ~nemesis
περίστημι be around; turn out
 ~station
περιχαρής very glad
ῥώμη strength, might
ῥώομαι move nimbly, rush, stream
σόλος lump of iron for throwing
σπέρχω set in rapid motion
φήμη speech, rumor ~fame

ὁ θεὸς ὡς ἄμεινον εἴη ἀνθρώπῳ¹ τεθνάναι μᾶλλον ἢ ζῶειν.

Ἀργεῖοι μὲν γὰρ περιστάντες ἐμακάριζον τῶν νεηνιέων τὴν ῥώμην, αἱ δὲ Ἀργεῖαι τὴν μητέρα αὐτῶν, οἷων τέκνων ἐκύρησε· ἡ δὲ μήτηρ περιχαρὴς ἐοῦσα τῷ τε ἔργῳ καὶ τῇ φήμῃ, στᾶσα ἀντίον τοῦ ἀγάλματος εὔχετο Κλεόβι τε καὶ Βίτωνι τοῖσι ἐωυτῆς τέκνοισι, οἳ μιν ἐτίμησαν μεγάλως, τὴν θεὸν δοῦναι τὸ ἀνθρώπῳ τυχεῖν ἄριστον ἐστί. μετὰ ταύτην δὲ τὴν εὐχὴν ὡς ἔθυσάν τε καὶ εὐωχήθησαν, κατακοιμηθέντες ἐν αὐτῷ τῷ ἱρῷ οἱ νεηνίαὶ οὐκέτι ἀνέστησαν ἀλλ' ἐν τέλει τούτῳ ἔσχοντο. Ἀργεῖοι δὲ σφέων εἰκόνας ποιησάμενοι ἀνέθεσαν ἐς Δελφοὺς ὡς ἀριστῶν γενομένων.»

1.32

Σόλων μὲν δὴ εὐδαιμονίης δευτερεῖα ἔνεμε τούτοισι, Κροῖσος δὲ σπερχθεὶς εἶπε «ὦ ξεῖνε Ἀθηναῖε, ἡ δ' ἡμετέρη εὐδαιμονίη οὕτω τοι ἀπέρριπται ἐς τὸ μηδὲν ὥστε οὐδὲ ἰδιωτέων ἀνδρῶν ἀξίους ἡμέας ἐποίησας;»

¹ a man in general

ὁ θεὸς ὡς ἄμεινον εἶη ἀνθρώπῳ¹ τεθνάναι μᾶλλον ἢ ζῶειν.

Ἀργεῖοι μὲν γὰρ |be around; turn|congratulate τῶν |young
|out |person
τὴν ῥώμην, αἱ δὲ Ἀργεῖαι τὴν μητέρα αὐτῶν, οἷων τέκνων
|come upon .| δὲ μήτηρ |very glad εὐῶσα τῷ τε ἔργῳ καὶ
τῇ |speech, σῆμα ἀντίον τοῦ |ornament, εὖχετο Κλεόβι
|rumor |glory, statue
τε καὶ Βίτωνι τοῖσι ἐωυτῆς τέκνοισι, οἳ μιν ἐτίμησαν
μεγάλως, τὴν θεὸν δοῦναι τὸ ἀνθρώπῳ τυχεῖν ἄριστον
ἐστί. μετὰ ταύτην δὲ τὴν |prayer; vów |rush; sacrifice .αὶ
|fete, feed well . |sleep; have sex ἐν αὐτῷ τῷ ἱρῷ οἱ |young
|person
οὐκέτι ἀνέστησαν ἀλλ' ἐν τέλει τούτῳ ἔσχοντο. Ἀργεῖοι
δὲ σφέων |image, ποιησάμενοι |consecrate, lay ὄν, ἱμ-ῶς ὡς
|likeness |pute; (mp) reproach
ἀριστῶν γενομένων.»

1.32

|lump of iron δὴ εὐδαιμονίης |second-best |distribute ὑτοῖσι,
Κροῖσος δὲ |set in rapid motion <ὦ ξεῖνε Ἀθηναῖε, ἡ δ'
ἡμετέρη εὐδαιμονία οὕτω τοι |cast away ἐς τὸ μηδὲν
ὥστε οὐδὲ |private; a layman ὦν ἀξίους ἡμέας ἐποίησας;»

¹ a man in general

it was better for man to die than to continue to live.

For the Argive men were standing round and extolling the strength of the young men, while the Argive women were extolling the mother to whose lot it had fallen to have such sons; and the mother being exceedingly rejoiced both by the deed itself and by the report made of it, took her stand in front of the image of the goddess and prayed that she would give to her sons Cleobis and Biton, who had honoured her greatly, that gift which is best for man to receive: and after this prayer, when they had sacrificed and feasted, the young men lay down to sleep within the temple itself, and never rose again, but were held bound in this last end. And the Argives made statues in the likeness of them and dedicated them as offerings at Delphi, thinking that they had proved themselves most excellent.”

1.32

Thus Solon assigned the second place in respect of happiness to these: and Croesus was moved to anger and said: “Athenian guest, hast thou then so cast aside our prosperous state as worth nothing, that thou dost prefer to us even men of private station?”

vocabulary

άνθρωπῆιος human
διακόσιοι (ἄ) two hundred
δισμύριοι (ὅ) 20,000
ἐβδομήκοντα 70
ἐμβόλιμος intercalary
ἑξακισχίλιοι 6000
ἐπειρωτάω consult, ask
εὖς good, brave, noble
ὄον οὖ type of fruit
ὄρος boundary marker ~horizon
οὔρον boundary stone; unit of distance; limit

οὔρος fair wind; guardian; hill
παραγίγνομαι be beside, attend
 ~genus
παράπαν completely
πεντακισχίλιοι 5,000
προσάγω bring to a place
 ~demagogue
προτίθημι prefer, set out ~thesis
συμφορά collecting; accident, misfortune
ταραχώδης messed up ~trachea
φθονερός jealous
χίλιοι (ι) thousand ~kilo-

Ὁ δὲ εἶπε «ὦ Κροῖσε, ἐπιστάμενόν με τὸ θεῖον πᾶν
 ἐὼν φθονερόν τε καὶ ταραχῶδες ἐπειρωτᾶς ἀνθρωπείων
 πρηγμάτων πέρι. ἐν γὰρ τῷ μακρῷ χρόνῳ πολλὰ
 μὲν ἐστὶ ἰδεῖν τὰ μή τις ἐθέλει, πολλὰ δὲ καὶ
 παθεῖν. ἐς γὰρ ἐβδομήκοντα ἔτεα οὖρον τῆς ζῆσης
 ἀνθρώπῳ προτίθημι. οὗτοι ἐόντες ἐνιαυτοὶ ἐβδομήκοντα
 παρέχονται ἡμέρας διηκοσίας καὶ πεντακισχιλίας καὶ
 δισμυρίας, ἐμβολίμου μηνὸς μὴ γινομένου· εἰ δὲ δὴ
 ἐτελήσει τοῦτερον τῶν ἐτέων μηνὶ μακρότερον γίνεσθαι,
 ἵνα δὴ αἱ ὥραι συμβαίνωσι παραγινόμεναι ἐς τὸ δέον,
 μῆνες μὲν παρὰ τὰ ἐβδομήκοντα ἔτεα οἱ ἐμβόλιμοι
 γίνονται τριήκοντα πέντε, ἡμέραι δὲ ἐκ τῶν μηνῶν τούτων
 χίλιαι πεντήκοντα. τουτέων τῶν ἀπασέων ἡμερέων
 τῶν ἐς τὰ ἐβδομήκοντα ἔτεα, ἐουσέων πεντήκοντα καὶ
 διηκοσιέων καὶ ἑξακισχιλιέων καὶ δισμυριέων, ἡ ἐτέρη
 αὐτέων τῇ ἐτέρῃ ἡμέρῃ τὸ παράπαν οὐδὲν ὅμοιον
 προσάγει πρῆγμα.

«οὕτω ὦν Κροῖσε πᾶν ἐστὶ ἄνθρωπος συμφορῇ. ἐμοὶ

Ὅ δὲ εἶπε «ὦ Κροῖσε, ἐπιστάμενόν με τὸ θεῖον πᾶν
 ἔδον |jealous τε καὶ |messed up |consult, ask |human
 πρηγμάτων πέρι. ἐν γὰρ τῷ μακρῷ χρόνῳ πολλὰ
 μὲν ἐστὶ ἰδεῖν τὰ μή τις ἐθέλει, πολλὰ δὲ καὶ
 παθεῖν. ἐς γὰρ |70 ἔτεα οὖρον τῆς ζόης
 ἀνθρώπων |prefer, set out - ὕτοι ἐόντες ἐνιαυτοὶ |70
 παρέχονται ἡμέρας διηκοσίας καὶ |5,000 καὶ
 δισμυρίας, |intercalary μηνὸς μὴ γινομένου· εἰ δὲ δὴ
 ἐθελήσει τοῦτερον τῶν ἐτέων μηνὶ μακρότερον γίνεσθαι,
 ἵνα δὴ αἱ ὥραι συμβαίνωσι παραγινόμεναι ἐς τὸ δέον,
 μῆνες μὲν παρὰ τὰ |70 ἔτεα οἱ |intercalary
 γίνονται τριήκοντα πέντε, ἡμέραι δὲ ἐκ τῶν μηνῶν τούτων
 |thousand. ἐντήκοντα. τουτέων τῶν ἀπασέων ἡμερέων
 τῶν ἐς τὰ |70 ἔτεα, ἐουσέων πεντήκοντα καὶ
 |two hundred καὶ |6000 καὶ |20,000 , ἡ ἑτέρα
 αὐτέων τῇ ἑτέρῃ ἡμέρῃ τὸ |completely οὐδὲν ὅμοιον
 |bring to a place, /μα.

«οὕτω ὦν Κροῖσε πᾶν ἐστὶ ἄνθρωπος συμφορῇ. ἐμοὶ

And he said: "Croesus, thou art inquiring about human fortunes of one who well knows that the Deity is altogether envious and apt to disturb our lot. For in the course of long time a man may see many things which he would not desire to see, and suffer also many things which he would not desire to suffer. The limit of life for a man I lay down at seventy years: and these seventy years give twenty-five thousand and two hundred days, not reckoning for any intercalated month. Then if every other one of these years shall be made longer by one month, that the seasons may be caused to come round at the due time of the year, the intercalated months will be in number five and thirty besides the seventy years; and of these months the days will be one thousand and fifty. Of all these days, being in number twenty-six thousand two hundred and fifty, which go to the seventy years, one day produces nothing at all which resembles what another brings with it.

"Thus then, O Croesus, man is altogether a creature of accident. As for

vocabulary

ἀνόλβιος unfortunate, wretched
ἄνολβος unfortunate, wretched
ἄνουσος disease-free
ἀπαθής unaffected, impassive
ἀπερύκω (ὑ) keep off ~serve
ἄπηρος unmaimed
ἄτα bewilderment, folly
ἄω aor: to sate ~sate
ἐκτελέω complete, bring about
 ~apostle
ἐπέχω hold, cover; offer; assail
ἐπιθυμία (ὑ) desire, thing desired
ἐπίσχω aim; restrain
εὐειδής good-looking ~wit

εὖπαις with many/good children
εὐτυχής fortunate
εὐτυχία good luck, success
ἐφέπω drive, meet, follow ~sequel
ζάπλουτος very rich
μέτριος medium, moderate
ὄλβιος happy, wealthy
οὐκω no longer
πλουτέω be rich
προέχω be ahead, jut forward; mid:
 have before one
προσπίπτω attack; befall; kow-tow
συλλαμβάνω seize, capture;
 understand ~epilepsy
τύχη fortune, act of a god

δὲ σὺ καὶ πλουτέειν μέγα φαίνεαι καὶ βασιλεὺς πολλῶν
 εἶναι ἀνθρώπων· ἐκείνο δὲ τὸ εἶρεό με, οὐκ ἔγω σε ἐγὼ
 λέγω, πρὶν τελευτήσαντα καλῶς τὸν αἰῶνα πύθωμαι. οὐ
 γάρ τι ὁ μέγα πλούσιος μᾶλλον τοῦ ἐπ' ἡμέρην ἔχοντος
 ὀλβιώτερος ἐστί, εἰ μὴ οἱ τύχη ἐπίσποιτο πάντα καλὰ
 ἔχοντα εὖ τελευτῆσαι τὸν βίον. πολλοὶ μὲν γὰρ ζάπλουτοι
 ἀνθρώπων ἀνόλβιοι εἰσὶ, πολλοὶ δὲ μετρίως ἔχοντες βίου
 εὐτυχέες. ὁ μὲν δὴ μέγα πλούσιος ἀνόλβιος δὲ δυοῖσι
 προέχει τοῦ εὐτυχέος μῶνον, οὗτος δὲ τοῦ πλουσίου καὶ
 ἀνόλβου πολλοῖσι· ὁ μὲν ἐπιθυμίην ἐκτελέσαι καὶ ἄτην
 μεγάλην προσπεσοῦσαν ἐνείκει δυνατώτερος, ὁ δὲ τοῖσιδε
 προέχει ἐκείνου· ἄτην μὲν καὶ ἐπιθυμίην οὐκ ὁμοίως
 δυνατὸς ἐκείνῳ ἐνείκει, ταῦτα δὲ ἡ εὐτυχίη οἱ ἀπερύκει,
 ἄπηρος δὲ ἐστί, ἄνουσος, ἀπαθὴς κακῶν, εὖπαις, εὐειδής.
 εἰ δὲ πρὸς τούτοις ἔτι τελευτήσῃ τὸν βίον εὖ, οὗτος
 ἐκείνος τὸν σὺ ζητέεις, ὁ ὀλβιος κεκληῆσθαι ἄξιός ἐστί· πρὶν
 δ' ἂν τελευτήσῃ, ἐπισχεῖν, μηδὲ καλέειν κω ὀλβιον ἀλλ'
 εὐτυχέα. τὰ πάντα μὲν νυν ταῦτα συλλαβεῖν ἄνθρωπον

δὲ σὺ καὶ |be rich μέγα φαίνεαι καὶ βασιλεὺς πολλῶν
εἶναι ἀνθρώπων· ἐκεῖνο δὲ τὸ εἶρεό με, |no longer ἐγὼ
λέγω, πρὶν τελευτήσαντα καλῶς τὸν αἰῶνα πύθωμαι. οὐ
γάρ τι ὁ μέγα πλούσιος μᾶλλον τοῦ ἐπ' ἡμέρην ἔχοντος

|happy, ἐστί, εἰ μή οἱ |for- |drive, meet, follow καλὰ
|wealthy tune,
ἔχοντα εὖ τελευτήσαι τὸν βίον· πολλοὶ μὲν γὰρ |very rich
|act of
|a god

ἀνθρώπων |unfor- ..σί, πολλοὶ δὲ |medium, ἔχοντες βίον
|fortunate, |wretched |moderate
|fortunate οὐ μὲν οὖν μέγα πλούσιος |unfor- δὲ δυοῖσι
|wretched

|be ahead, have|fortunate μούνον, οὗτος δὲ τοῦ πλουσίου καὶ
|before

|unfor- ..ολλοῖσι· ὁ μὲν ἐπιθυμῖν |complete καὶ ἄτην
|fortunate, |wretched
|μέγαλην |attack; befall; ἐνείκαι δυνατώτερος, ὁ δὲ τοῖσιδε
|kow-tow

|be ahead, εἶναι· ἄτην μὲν καὶ ἐπιθυμῖν οὐκ ὁμοίως
|have before

δυνατὸς ἐκείνῳ ἐνείκαι, ταῦτα δὲ ἡ εὐτυχίῃ οἱ |keep off ,

|unmaimed· ἐστί, |disease- , |unaffected, |κῶν, |with , |good-looking
|free |impassive |many/good
εἰ δὲ πρὸς τούτοις ἔτι τελευτήσῃ τὸν βίον εὖ, οὗτος
|children

ἐκεῖνος τὸν σὺ ζητέεις, ὁ |happy, |εκλήσθαι ἄξιος ἐστί· πρὶν
|wealthy

δ' ἂν τελευτήσῃ, ἐπισχεῖν, μηδὲ καλέειν κω |happy, ἀλλ'
|wealthy

|fortunate. τὰ πάντα μὲν νυν ταῦτα |seize, capture; θρωπον
|understand

thee, I perceive that thou art both great in wealth and king of many men, but that of which thou didst ask me I cannot call thee yet, until I learn that thou hast brought thy life to a fair ending; for the very rich man is not at all to be accounted more happy than he who has but his subsistence from day to day, unless also the fortune go with him of ending his life well in possession of all things fair. For many very wealthy men are not happy, while many who have but a moderate living are fortunate; and in truth the very rich man who is not happy has two advantages only as compared with the poor man who is fortunate, whereas this latter has many as compared with the rich man who is not happy. The rich man is able better to fulfil his desire, and also to endure a great calamity if it fall upon him; whereas the other has advantage over him in these things which follow:— he is not indeed able equally with the rich man to endure a calamity or to fulfil his desire, but these his good fortune keeps away from him, while he is sound of limb, free from disease, untouched by suffering, the father of fair children and himself of comely form; and if in addition to this he shall end his life well, he is worthy to be called that which thou seekest, namely a happy man; but before he comes to his end it is well to hold back and not to call him yet happy but only fortunate. Now to possess all these things

*vocabulary***ἄδύνατος** unable; impossible**ἄμαθής** ignorant**ἀνατρέπω** defeat, thwart ~trophy**ἀποπέμπω** send away ~pomp**αὐτάρκης** self-sufficient**διατελέω** accomplish; keep doing
~apostle**ἐνδεής** inadequate**ἐπιδέω** fasten; lack**εὐχάριστος** agreeable, grateful,
beneficent**κάος** (n, 3) flammable thing**κάρτα** very much ~κράτος**καταρκέω** completely suffice**μέτεμι** be among, go, follow ~ion**μίν** him, her, it**νέμεσις** -εως (f) indignation;
punishment ~nemesiς**ὄλβος** happiness, wealth**πρόρριζος** roots and all; devastatingly
~rhizome**σκοπάω** watch, observe**σκοπέω** behold, consider**τελευτή** conclusion, fulfilment ~apostle**ὕποδείκνυμι** (υὑ) show, trace out**ὕποδέχομαι** welcome, accept, suffer
~doctrine**χωρέω** withdraw, give way to (+dat)
~heir

έόντα ἀδύνατον ἐστί, ὥσπερ χωρῇ οὐδεμία καταρκέει πάντα ἐωυτῇ παρέχουσα, ἀλλὰ ἄλλο μὲν ἔχει ἐτέρου δὲ ἐπιδέεται· ἡ δὲ ἂν τὰ πλείστα ἔχη, αὕτη ἀρίστη. ὥς δὲ καὶ ἀνθρώπου σῶμα ἐν οὐδὲν αὐτάρκες ἐστί· τὸ μὲν γὰρ ἔχει, ἄλλου δὲ ἐνδεές ἐστι· ὅς δ' ἂν αὐτῶν πλείστα ἔχων διατελέῃ καὶ ἔπειτα τελευτήσῃ εὐχαρίστως τὸν βίον, οὗτος παρ' ἐμοὶ τὸ οὖνομα τοῦτο ὦ βασιλεῦ δίκαιος ἐστὶ φέρεσθαι. σκοπέειν δὲ χρὴ παντὸς χρήματος τὴν τελευτήν, κῆ ἀποβήσεται· πολλοῖσι γὰρ δὴ ὑποδέξας ὄλβον ὁ θεὸς προρρίζους ἀνέτρεψε.»

1.33

ταῦτα λέγων τῷ Κροίσῳ οὐ κως οὔτε ἐχαρίζετο, οὔτε λόγου μιν ποιησάμενος οὐδενὸς ἀποπέμπεται, κάρτα δόξας ἀμαθία εἶναι, ὅς τὰ παρεόντα ἀγαθὰ μετεῖς τὴν τελευτήν παντὸς χρήματος ὁρᾶν ἐκέλευε.

1.34

μετὰ δὲ Σόλωνα οἰχόμενον ἔλαβέ ἐκ θεοῦ νέμεσις μεγάλη

ἐόντα |unable; impossible| ἐστί, ὥσπερ |withdraw, way to (+dat)|, ἵκεν |give| completely suffice
 πάντα ἐωυτῇ παρέχουσα, ἀλλὰ ἄλλο μὲν ἔχει ἑτέρου δὲ
 |fasten; lack| ἣ δὲ ἂν τὰ πλείστα ἔχη, αὕτη ἀρίστη. ὥς
 δὲ καὶ ἀνθρώπου σῶμα ἐν οὐδὲν |self-sufficient| τί· τὸ μὲν
 γὰρ ἔχει, ἄλλου δὲ |inadequate| ὡς δ' ἂν αὐτῶν πλείστα
 ἔχων διατελέῃ καὶ ἔπειτα τελευτήσῃ |agreeable, grateful, beneficent| βίον,
 οὗτος παρ' ἐμοὶ τὸ οὐνομα τοῦτο ὦ βασιλεῦ δίκαιος
 ἐστὶ φέρεσθαι. σκοπέειν δὲ χρὴ παντὸς χρήματος τὴν
 |conclusion, fulfilment| κῆ ἀποβήσεται· πολλοῖσι γὰρ δὴ ὑποδέξας
 |happiness, wealth| εὖ οὖν |roots and all; defeat, devastatingly| »
 |thwart|

1.33

ταῦτα λέγων τῷ Κροίσῳ οὕτως οὔτε ἐχαρίζετο, οὔτε
 λόγου μιν ποιησάμενος οὐδενὸς |send away|, |very much|
 δόξας |ignorant| εἶναι, ὅς τὰ παρεόντα ἀγαθὰ |be among| ν
 |conclusion, fulfilment| παντὸς χρήματος ὁρᾶν ἐκέλευε.

1.34

μετὰ δὲ Σόλωνα οἰχόμενον ἔλαβέ ἐκ θεοῦ |indignation; punishment|, ἀλλ'

together is impossible for one who is mere man, just as no single land suffices to supply all things for itself, but one thing it has and another it lacks, and the land that has the greatest number of things is the best: so also in the case of a man, no single person is complete in himself, for one thing he has and another he lacks; but whosoever of men continues to the end in possession of the greatest number of these things and then has a gracious ending of his life, he is by me accounted worthy, O king, to receive this name. But we must of every thing examine the end and how it will turn out at the last, for to many the divine shows but a glimpse of happiness and then plucks them up by the roots and overturns them.“

1.33

Thus saying he refused to gratify Croesus, who sent him away from his presence holding him in no esteem, and thinking him utterly senseless in that he passed over present good things and bade men look to the end of every matter.

1.34

After Solon had departed, a divine punishment came upon Croesus, probably

vocabulary

αἰχμή spear point ~acute
ἄκόντιον diminutive of javelin
γάμος wedding, sex ~bigamy
δοράτιον small spear
εἰκάζω liken; conjecture
ἐκκομίζω remove; bury a corpse
ἐμπίπτω fall into; attack ~petal
ἐξεγείρω awaken
εὕδω sleep, lie down, rest
εὖς good, brave, noble
ἐωθα be accustomed, in the habit
ἥλιξ -χος (m) of the same age
θάλαμος bedchamber ~thalamus

καταρρωδέω fear, dread
κρεμάννυμι (ῥ) hang
κωφός blunt, insensible
μῖν him, her, it
ὄλβιος happy, wealthy
ὄνειρον dream
ὄνειρος dream
ὄον οῦ type of fruit
οὐδαμῇ nowhere
σημαίνω give orders to; show; mark
 ~semaphore
στρατηγέω be a general
συννέω swim together; pile together

Κροῖσον, ὡς εἰκάσαι, ὅτι ἐνόμισε ἑωυτὸν εἶναι ἀνθρώπων
 ἀπάντων ὀλβιώτατον. αὐτίκα δέ οἱ εὕδοντι ἐπέστη
 ὄνειρος, ὅς οἱ τὴν ἀληθείην ἔφαινε τῶν μελλόντων
 γενέσθαι κακῶν κατὰ τὸν παῖδα. ἦσαν δὲ τῷ Κροίσῳ δύο
 παῖδες, τῶν οὗτερος μὲν διέφθαρτο, ἦν γὰρ δὴ κωφός, ὁ δὲ
 ἕτερος τῶν ἡλίκων μακρῷ τὰ πάντα πρῶτος· οὐνομα δέ
 οἱ ἦν Ἄτυς. τοῦτον δὴ ὦν τὸν Ἄτυν σημαίνει τῷ Κροίσῳ
 ὁ ὄνειρος, ὡς ἀπολέει μιν αἰχμῇ σιδηρῇ βληθέντα. ὁ δ'
 ἐπεῖτε ἐξηγέρθη καὶ ἑωυτῷ λόγον ἔδωκε, καταρρωδήσας
 τὸν ὄνειρον ἄγεται μὲν τῷ παιδί γυναικα, ἐωθότα δὲ
 στρατηγέειν¹ μιν τῶν Λυδῶν σὺδαμῇ ἔτι ἐπὶ τοιοῦτο
 πρῆγμα ἐξέπεμπε· ἀκόντια δὲ καὶ δοράτια καὶ τά τοιαῦτα
 πάντα τοῖσι χρέωνται ἐς πόλεμον ἄνθρωποι, ἐκ τῶν
 ἀνδρεώνων ἐκκομίσας ἐς τοὺς θαλάμους συνένησε, μή τί
 οἱ κρεμáμενον τῷ παιδί ἐμπέσῃ.

1.35

ἔχοντι δέ οἱ ἐν χερσὶ τοῦ παιδὸς τὸν γάμον, ἀπικνέεται

¹ Atys

Κροῖσον, ὥς [|]liken; [|]conjecture, ὅτι ἐνόμισε ἐωυτὸν εἶναι ἀνθρώπων
 ἀπάντων [|]happy, [|]wealthy, αὐτίκα δέ οἱ [|]lie ἐπέστη
[|]dream, ὅς οἱ τὴν ἀληθείην ἔφαινε τῶν μελλόντων
 γενέσθαι κακῶν κατὰ τὸν παῖδα. ἦσαν δὲ τῷ Κροίσῳ δύο
 παῖδες, τῶν οὐτερος μὲν διέφθαρτο, ἦν γὰρ δὴ [|]blunt, [|]insensible δὲ
 ἕτερος τῶν ἡλίκων μακρῷ τὰ πάντα πρῶτος· οὖνομα δέ
 οἱ ἦν Ἄτυς. τοῦτον δὲ ὦν τὸν Ἄτυν [|]give orders to; [|]show; mark Κροίσῳ
 ὁ [|]dream, ὥς ἀπολείει μιν [|]spear [|]point σιδηρῇ βληθέντα. ὁ δ'
 ἐπείτε [|]awaken καὶ ἐωυτῷ λόγον ἔδωκε, [|]fear, dread
 τὸν ὄνειρον ἄγεται μὲν τῷ παιδὶ γυναῖκα, [|]be accustomed, [|]in the habit
[|]be a general ¹ μιν τῶν Λυδῶν [|]nowhere ἔτι ἐπὶ τοιοῦτο
 πρῆγμα ἐξέπεμπε· [|]diminutive [|]of javelin καὶ [|]small [|]spear καὶ τὰ τοιαῦτα
 πάντα τοῖσι χρέωνται ἐς πόλεμον ἄνθρωποι, ἐκ τῶν
 ἀνδρεώνων [|]remove; [|]inter ἐς τοὺς [|]bedchamber ὑνένησε, μή τί
 οἱ [|]hang τῷ παιδὶ ἐμπέση.

1.35

ἔχοντι δέ οἱ ἐν χερσὶ τοῦ παιδὸς τὸν [|]wedding, [|]sex νέεται

¹ Atys

because he judged himself to be the happiest of all men. First there came and stood by him a dream, which showed to him the truth of the evils that were about to come to pass in respect of his son. Now Croesus had two sons, of whom one was deficient, seeing that he was deaf and dumb, while the other far surpassed his companions of the same age in all things: and the name of this last was Atys. As regards this Atys then, the dream signified to Croesus that he should lose him by the blow of an iron spear-point: and when he rose up from sleep and considered the matter with himself, he was struck with fear on account of the dream; and first he took for his son a wife; and whereas his son had been wont to lead the armies of the Lydians, he now no longer sent him forth anywhere on any such business; and the javelins and lances and all such things which men use for fighting he conveyed out of the men's apartments and piled them up in the inner bed-chambers, for fear lest something hanging up might fall down upon his son.

1.35

Then while he was engaged about the marriage of his son, there came

vocabulary

ἀέκων unwilling
 ἀμηχανάω be helpless, resourceless
 ἀμηχανέω be helpless, resourceless
 βασιλείως kingly
 ἔκγονος offspring, descendant ~genus
 Ἑλλήν Greek
 ἐμεωυτοῦ myself
 ἐξελαύνω drive out, exile ~elastic
 ἐπίστιος hearthside
 ἐπιχώριος native
 καθαίρω clean
 καθαρὸς clean, pure

καθάρσιος cleansing
 κάθαρσις purification
 κόθεν from where?
 κυρέω come upon, come up against;
 obtain
 μίν him, her, it
 ὁπόθεν whence
 παραπλήσιος similar to
 στέρεω steal, take
 συμφορά collecting; accident,
 misfortune
 φονεύω kill

ἐς τὰς Σάρδεις ἀνὴρ συμφορῇ ἐχόμενος καὶ οὐ καθαρὸς
 χεῖρας, ἐὼν Φρυξ μὲν γενεῇ, γένεος δὲ τοῦ βασιλείου.
 παρελθὼν δὲ οὗτος ἐς τὰ Κροῖσου οἰκία κατὰ νόμους
 τοὺς ἐπιχωρίους καθαρσίου¹ ἐδέετο κυρῆσαι, Κροῖσος
 δέ μιν ἐκάθηρε. ἔστι δὲ παραπλησίη ἡ κάθαρσις τοῖσι
 Λυδοῖσι καὶ τοῖσι Ἑλλήσι. ἐπεῖτε δὲ τὰ νομιζόμενα
 ἐποίησε ὁ Κροῖσος, ἐπυνθάνετο ὁκόθεν τε καὶ τίς εἴη,
 λέγων τάδε· «ὦνθρωπε, τίς τε ἐὼν καὶ κόθεν τῆς Φρυγίης
 ἦκων ἐπίστίός μοι ἐγένεο; τίνα τε ἀνδρῶν ἢ γυναικῶν
 ἐφόνευσας;»

Ὁ δὲ ἀμείβετο «ὦ βασιλεῦ, Γορδῖεω μὲν τοῦ Μίδεω εἰμὶ
 παῖς, ὀνομάζομαι δὲ Ἄδρηστος, φονεύσας δὲ ἀδελφεὸν
 ἐμεωντοῦ ἀέκων πάρεμι ἐξεληλαμένος τε ὑπὸ τοῦ πατρὸς
 καὶ ἐστερημένος πάντων.»

Κροῖσος δέ μιν ἀμείβετο τοῖσιν· «ἀνδρῶν τε φίλων
 τυγχάνεις ἔκγονος ἐὼν καὶ ἐλήλυθας ἐς φίλους, ἔνθα
 ἀμηχανήσεις χρήματος οὐδενὸς μένων ἐν ἡμετέρου,

¹ a ritual cleansing of his shame

ἐς τὰς Σάρδεις ἀνὴρ συμφορῇ ἐχόμενος καὶ οὐ |clean, pure
 χεῖρας, ἐὼν Φρυξ μὲν γενεῇ, γένεος δὲ τοῦ |kingly .
 παρελθὼν δὲ οὗτος ἐς τὰ Κροίσου οἰκία κατὰ νόμους
 τοὺς |native |cleansing ¹ ἐδέετο |come upon Κροῖσος
 δέ μιν |clean ἔστι δὲ |similar to ἡ |purification τοῖσι
 Λυδοῖσι καὶ τοῖσι |Greek . ἐπεῖτε δὲ τὰ νομιζόμενα
 ἐποίησε ὁ Κροῖσος, ἐπυνθάνετο |whence τε καὶ τίς εἴη,
 λέγων τάδε· «ὦνθρωπε, τίς τε ἐὼν καὶ |from where? ^κρυγίης
 ἥκων |hearthside ,οι ἐγένεο; τίνα τε ἀνδρῶν ἢ γυναικῶν
 |kill ,»

Ὁ δὲ ἀμείβετο «ὦ βασιλεῦ, Γορδῖεω μὲν τοῦ Μίδεω εἰμι
 παῖς, ὀνομάζομαι δὲ Ἄδρηστος, |kill δὲ ἀδελφεὸν
 |myself |unwilling ἵρειμι |drive out τε ὑπὸ τοῦ πατρὸς
 καὶ |steal, take πάντων.»

Κροῖσος δέ μιν ἀμείβετο τοῖσιδε· «ἀνδρῶν τε φίλων
 τυγχάνεις |offspring ἐὼν καὶ ἐλήλυθας ἐς φίλους, ἔνθα
 ἀμηχανήσεις χρήματος οὐδενὸς μένων ἐν ἡμετέρου,

¹ a ritual cleansing of his shame

to Sardis a man under a misfortune and with hands not clean, a Phrygian by birth and of the royal house. This man came to the house of Croesus, and according to the customs which prevail in that land made request that he might have cleansing; and Croesus gave him cleansing: now the manner of cleansing among the Lydians is the same almost as that which the Hellenes use. So when Croesus had done that which was customary, he asked of him whence he came and who he was, saying as follows: “Man, who art thou, and from what region of Phrygia didst thou come to sit upon my hearth? And whom of men or women didst thou slay?”

And he replied: “O king, I am the son of Gordias, the son of Midas, and I am called Adrastos; and I slew my own brother against my will, and therefore am I here, having been driven forth by my father and deprived of all that I had.”

And Croesus answered thus: “Thou art, as it chances, the offshoot of men who are our friends and thou hast come to friends, among whom thou shalt want of nothing so long as thou shalt remain in our land: and thou

*vocabulary***ἀναφαίνω** reveal, shine ~phenomenon**δίαιτα** way of life; home; arbitration**ἐξαιρέω** pick, steal; dedicate; destroy

~heresy

ἐξάλλομαι break away from ~sally**εὖς** good, brave, noble**κερδαίνω** profit, take advantage**κοῦφος** light, nimble**λογάζ** -δος (m, 3) picked, chosen**μίν** him, her, it**μνημονεύω** remember, remind**νεηνίης** young person**νεόγαμος** newlywed**ὄνειρον** dream**ὄνειρος** dream**ὄον** οὐ type of fruit**προθυμέομαι** (ὐ) be eager**προσδέω** bind also; need also**συμπέμπω** send with ~pomp**συμφορά** collecting; accident, misfortune

συμφορήν τε ταύτην ὥς κουφότατα φέρων κερδανέεις
πλείστον.»

1.36

ὁ μὲν δὴ δίαιταν εἶχε ἐν Κροίσου. ἐν δὲ τῷ αὐτῷ
χρόνῳ τούτῳ ἐν τῷ Μυσίῳ Ὀλύμπῳ ὑὸς χρήμα γίνεται
μέγα· ὀρμώμενος δὲ οὗτος ἐκ τοῦ ὄρεος τούτου τὰ τῶν
Μυσῶν ἔργα διαφθείρεσκε. πολλάκις δὲ οἱ Μυσοὶ ἐπ’
αὐτὸν ἐξελθόντες ποιέεσκον μὲν κακὸν οὐδέν, ἔπασχον
δὲ πρὸς αὐτοῦ. τέλος δὲ ἀπικόμενοι παρὰ τὸν Κροῖσον
τῶν Μυσῶν ἄγγελοι ἔλεγον τάδε. «ὦ βασιλεῦ, ὑὸς
χρήμα μέγιστον ἀνεφάνη ἡμῖν ἐν τῇ χώρῃ, ὃς τὰ ἔργα
διαφθείρει. τοῦτον προθυμεόμενοι ἐλεῖν οὐ δυνάμεθα.
νῦν ὦν προσδεόμεθά σευ τὸν παῖδα καὶ λογάδας νεηνίας
καὶ κύνας συμπέμψαι ἡμῖν, ὥς ἂν μιν ἐξέλωμεν ἐκ
τῆς χώρας.» οἱ μὲν δὴ τούτων ἐδέοντο, Κροῖσος δὲ
μνημονεύων τοῦ ὀνείρου τὰ ἔπεα ἔλεγέ σφι τάδε. «παιδὸς
μὲν πέρι τοῦ ἐμοῦ μὴ μνησθῆτε ἔτι· οὐ γὰρ ἂν ὑμῖν
συμπέμψαιμι· νεόγαμός τε γὰρ ἐστὶ καὶ ταῦτά οἱ νῦν μέλει.

συμφορήν τε ταύτην ὥς |light, nimble φέρων |profit, take
|advantage

πλείστον.»

1.36

ὁ μὲν δὴ |way of life; home; Κροίσου. ἐν δὲ τῷ αὐτῷ
|arbitration

χρόνῳ τούτῳ ἐν τῷ Μυσίῳ Ὀλύμπῳ υἱὸς χρήμα γίνεται

μέγα· ὀρμώμενος δὲ οὗτος ἐκ τοῦ ὄρεος τούτου τὰ τῶν

Μυσῶν ἔργα διαφθείρεσκε. πολλάκις δὲ οἱ Μυσοὶ ἐπ’

αὐτὸν ἐξελθόντες ποιέεσκον μὲν κακὸν οὐδέν, ἔπασχον

δὲ πρὸς αὐτοῦ. τέλος δὲ ἀπικόμενοι παρὰ τὸν Κροῖσον

τῶν Μυσῶν ἄγγελοι ἔλεγον τάδε. «ὦ βασιλεῦ, υἱὸς

χρήμα μέγιστον |reveal, |shine ἡμῖν ἐν τῇ χώρῃ, ὅς τὰ ἔργα

διαφθείρει. τοῦτον |be eager ἐλεῖν οὐ δυνάμεθα.

νῦν ὧν προσδεόμεθά σευ τὸν παῖδα καὶ |picked, |young
|chosen |person

καὶ κύνας |συμπέμπω?: send with; or ἂν μιν ἐξέλωμεν ἐκ
|συμπέμπω?: send with

τῆς χώρας.» οἱ μὲν δὴ τούτων ἐδέοντο, Κροῖσος δὲ

|remember, τοῦ ὀνείρου τὰ ἔπεα ἔλεγέ σφι τάδε. «παιδὸς
|remind

μὲν πέρι τοῦ ἐμοῦ μὴ μνησθῆτε ἔτι· οὐ γὰρ ἂν ὑμῖν

|συμπέμπω?: |newlywed τε γὰρ ἐστὶ καὶ ταῦτά οἱ νῦν μέλει.
|send with; or
|συμπέμπω?:
|send with

wilt find it most for thy profit to bear this misfortune as lightly as may be.”

1.36

So he had his abode with Croesus. During this time there was produced in the Mysian Olympos a boar of monstrous size. This, coming down from the mountain aforesaid, ravaged the fields of the Mysians, and although the Mysians went out against it often, yet they could do it no hurt, but rather received hurt themselves from it; so at length messengers came from the Mysians to Croesus and said: “O king, there has appeared in our land a boar of monstrous size, which lays waste our fields; and we, desiring eagerly to take it, are not able: now therefore we ask of thee to send with us thy son and also a chosen band of young men with dogs, that we may destroy it out of our land.” Thus they made request, and Croesus calling to mind the words of the dream spoke to them as follows: “As touching my son, make no further mention of him in this matter; for I will not send him with you, seeing that he is newly married and is concerned now with the affairs of his marriage: but I will send with you

vocabulary

ἄγρᾱ hunting, prey
ἄθυμία (ῥ) despondency
ἀναπείθω (aor, plupf) seduce,
 persuade; (mp, pf, aor ppl) trust, obey,
 be confident in
ἀποκλείω shut out; (+acc) close
ἀποχρέω suffice; abuse
γενναῖος noble, sincere ~genesis
δειλία cowardice
διακελεύομαι give orders to, encourage
ἐπείσρχομαι come in also
εὐδοκιμέω be esteemed
εὖς good, brave, noble
θήρᾱ hunt ~fierce

κυνηγέσιον hunt
λογάς -δος (m, 3) picked, chosen
μεθίημι let go, cease; (mid) speed off
 ~jet
μέτεμι be among, go, follow ~ion
νεηνίης young person
νεόγαμος newlywed
ὄμμα -τος (n, 3) eye
ὄον οὖ type of fruit
παροράω notice; overlook, neglect
πρόθυμος (ῥ) willing, eager ~fume
σμπέμπω send with ~pomp
συνεξαίρῶ help in removing
συνοικέω live together
φοιτέω go back and forth

Λυδῶν μέντοι λογάδας καὶ τὸ κυνηγέσιον πᾶν συμπέμψω,
καὶ διακελεύσομαι τοῖσι ἰοῦσι εἶναι ὥς προθυμοτάτοις
συνεξελεῖν ὑμῖν τὸ θηρίον ἐκ τῆς χώρας.»

1.37

ταῦτα ἀμείψατο· ἀποχρεωμένων δὲ τούτοις τῶν Μυσῶν,
ἐπεσέρχεται ὁ τοῦ Κροίσου παῖς ἀκηκοὺς τῶν ἐδέοντο
οἱ Μυσοί. οὐ φαμένου δὲ τοῦ Κροίσου τόν γε παῖδά σφι
συμπέμψειν, λέγει πρὸς αὐτὸν ὁ νεηνίης τάδε. «ὦ πάτερ,
τὰ κάλλιστα πρότερον κοτὲ καὶ γενναιότατα ἡμῖν ἦν ἔς
τε πολέμους καὶ ἐς ἄγρας φοιτέοντας εὐδοκιμέειν· νῦν δὲ
ἀμφοτέρων με τούτων ἀποκληίσας ἔχεις, οὔτε τινὰ δειλίην
μοι παριδὼν οὔτε ἀθυμίην νῦν τε τέοισί με χρὴ ὄμμασι ἔς
τε ἀγορὴν καὶ ἐξ ἀγορῆς φοιτέοντα φαίνεσθαι; κοῖος μὲν
τις τοῖσι πολιήτησι δόξω εἶναι, κοῖος δὲ τις τῇ νεογάμῳ
γυναικί; κοῖω δὲ ἐκείνῃ δόξει ἀνδρὶ συνουκέειν; ἐμὲ ὦν σὺ
ἢ μέτεες ἰέναι ἐπὶ τὴν θήρην, ἢ λόγῳ ἀνάπεισον ὅπως μοι
ἀμείνω ἐστὶ ταῦτα οὕτω ποιέόμενα.»

Λυδῶν μέντοι |picked, chosen καὶ τὸ |hunt πᾶν |συμπέμπω?: send with; or συμπέμπω?: send
καὶ |give orders to, encourage τοῖσι ἰοῦσι εἶναι ὥς |willing, eager
|help in removing τὸ θηρίον ἐκ τῆς χώρας.»

1.37

ταῦτα ἀμεύφατο· ἀποχρεωμένων δὲ τούτοισι τῶν Μυσῶν,
|come in also ὁ τοῦ Κροίσου παῖς ἀκηκοὺς τῶν ἐδέοντο
οἱ Μυσοί. οὐ φαμένου δὲ τοῦ Κροίσου τόν γε παῖδά σφι
|συμπέμπω?: send with; or. αὐτὸν ὁ |young person τάδε. «ὦ πάτερ,
|συμπέμπω?: send with τὰ κάλλιστα πρότερον κοτὲ καὶ |noble, sincere ἡμῖν ἦν ἔς
τε πολέμους καὶ ἐς ἄγρας |go back and be esteemed νῦν δὲ
|forth
ἀμφοτέρων με τούτων |shut out; ἔχεις, οὔτε τινὰ |cowardice
|(+acc) close
μοι |notice; over-look, neglect τε ἀθυμίην νῦν τε τέοισί με χρή |eye ἔς
τε ἀγορὴν καὶ ἐξ ἀγορῆς |go back and forth ῥθαι; κοῖος μέν
τις τοῖσι πολιήτῃσι δόξω εἶναι, κοῖος δέ τις τῇ |newlywed
γυναικί; κοίῳ δὲ ἐκείνῃ δόξει ἀνδρὶ |live together, ἐμὲ ὦν σὺ
ἢ μέτεσ ἰέναι ἐπὶ τὴν θήρην, ἢ λόγῳ |
|in
ἀμείνω ἐστὶ ταῦτα οὕτω ποιούμενα.»

(aor, plupf) séduce, persuade; (mp, pf, aor ppl) trust, obey, be confident

chosen men of the Lydians and the whole number of my hunting dogs, and I will give command to those who go, to be as zealous as may be in helping you to destroy the wild beast out of your land.”

1.37

Thus he made reply, and while the Mysians were being contented with this answer, there came in also the son of Croesus, having heard of the request made by the Mysians: and when Croesus said that he would not send his son with them, the young man spoke as follows: “My father, in times past the fairest and most noble part was allotted to us, to go out continually to wars and to the chase and so have good repute; but now thou hast debarred me from both of these, although thou hast not observed in me any cowardly or faint-hearted spirit. And now with what face must I appear when I go to and from the market-place of the city? What kind of a man shall I be esteemed by the citizens, and what kind of a man shall I be esteemed by my newly-married wife? With what kind of a husband will she think that she is mated? Therefore either let me go to the hunt, or persuade me by reason that these things are better for me done as now they are.”

*vocabulary***αἰχμή** spear point ~acute**ἄκοή** hearing ~acoustic**ἀποπέμπω** send away ~pomp**ἄχαρις** -δος (f) ungracious**γάμος** wedding, sex ~bigamy**δειλία** cowardice**διακλέπτω** steal, evade, save by stealth**λογίζομαι** reckon, consider**νεηνίης** young person**ὀδούς** -ντος (m) tooth**ὀδών** ὀδόντος (m, 3) tooth**ὀλιγοχρόνιος** short-lived; within a short time**ὄνειρον** dream**ὄνειρος** dream**ὄψις** ὄψεως (f) sight, view

~thanatopsis

παροράω notice; overlook, neglect**σιδήρεος** of iron ~siderite**σπεύδω** 'push on,' get going, hurry

~repudiate

συγγνώμη sympathy, leniency

1.38

ἀμείβεται Κροῖσος τοῖσιδε. «ὦ παῖ, οὔτε δειλίην οὔτε ἄλλο οὐδὲν ἄχαρι παριδών, τοι ποιέω ταῦτα, ἀλλά μοι ὄψις ὀνείρου ἐν τῷ ὕπνῳ ἐπιστᾶσα ἔφη σε ὀλιγοχρόνιον ἔσεσθαι· ὑπὸ γὰρ αἰχμῆς σιδηρέης ἀπολέεσθαι. πρὸς ὧν τὴν ὄψιν ταύτην τόν τε γάμον τοι τοῦτον ἔσπευσα καὶ ἐπὶ τὰ παραλαμβανόμενα οὐκ ἀποπέμπω, φυλακὴν ἔχων, εἴ πως δυναίμην ἐπὶ τῆς ἐμῆς σε ζόης διακλέψαι. εἰς γὰρ μοι μῦθος τυγχάνεις ἐὼν παῖς· τὸν γὰρ δὴ ἕτερον διεφθαρμένον τὴν ἀκοὴν οὐκ εἶναί μοι λογίζομαι.»

1.39

ἀμείβεται ὁ νεηνίης τοῖσιδε. «συγγνώμη μὲν ὦ πάτερ τοι, ἰδόντι γε ὄψιν τοιαύτην, περὶ ἐμέ φυλακὴν ἔχειν· τὸ δὲ οὐ μανθάνεις ἀλλὰ λέληθέ σε τὸ ὄνειρον, ἐμέ τοί δίκαιον ἐστὶ φράζειν. φῆς τοι τὸ ὄνειρον ὑπὸ αἰχμῆς σιδηρέης φάναι ἐμέ τελευτήσειν. ὕος δὲ κοῖαι μὲν εἰσὶ χεῖρες, κοίῃ δὲ αἰχμὴ σιδηρὴ τὴν σὺ φοβέαι; εἰ μὲν γὰρ ὑπὸ ὀδόντος τοι εἶπε

1.38

ἀμείβεται Κροῖσος τοῖσιδε. «ὦ παῖ, οὔτε cowardice ἔτε
 ἄλλο οὐδὲν ungra- notice; over- ρι ποιέω ταῦτα, ἀλλά μοι
 cious look, neglect
 |sight ὀνείρου ἐν τῷ ὕπνῳ ἐπιστᾶσα ἔφη σε short-lived; within
 | a short time
 ἔσεσθαι· ὑπὸ γὰρ spear σιδηρέης ἀπολέεσθαι. πρὸς ὧν
 |point
 τὴν |sight ταύτην τὸν τε |wedding, sex οὔτον 'push on,' get
 |going, hurry
 ἐπὶ τὰ παραλαμβανόμενα οὐκ |send away , φυλακὴν ἔχων,
 εἴ πως δυναίμην ἐπὶ τῆς ἐμῆς σε ζόης steal, evade, εἰς
 |save by stealth
 γὰρ μοι μῦθος τυγχάνεις ἔων παῖς· τὸν γὰρ δὴ ἕτερον
 διεφθαρμένον τὴν |hearing οὐκ εἶναί μοι reckon, .»
 |consider

1.39

ἀμείβεται ὁ young τοῖσιδε. «sympathy, μὲν ὦ πάτερ τοι,
 |person leniency
 ἰδόντι γε |sight τοιαύτην, περὶ ἐμὲ φυλακὴν ἔχειν· τὸ δὲ οὐ
 μανθάνεις ἀλλὰ λέληθέ σε τὸ ὄνειρον, ἐμέ τοί δίκαιον ἐστί
 φράζειν. φῆς τοι τὸ ὄνειρον ὑπὸ spear σιδηρέης φάναι
 |point
 ἐμὲ τελευτήσειν. ὑὸς δὲ κοῖαι μὲν εἰς χεῖρες, κοίη δὲ spear
 |point
 |of iron τὴν σὺ φοβέαι; εἰ μὲν γὰρ ὑπὸ ὀδόντος τοι εἶπε

1.38

And Croesus made answer thus: “My son, not because I have observed in thee any spirit of cowardice or any other ungracious thing, do I act thus; but a vision of a dream came and stood by me in my sleep and told me that thou shouldest be short-lived, and that thou shouldest perish by a spear-point of iron. With thought of this vision therefore I both urged on this marriage for thee, and I refuse now to send thee upon the matter which is being taken in hand, having a care of thee that I may steal thee from thy fate at least for the period of my own life, if by any means possible for me to do so. For thou art, as it chances, my only son: the other I do not reckon as one, seeing that he is deficient in hearing.”

1.39

The young man made answer thus: “It may well be forgiven in thee, O my father, that thou shouldest have a care of me after having seen such a vision; but that which thou dost not understand, and in which the meaning of the dream has escaped thee, it is right that I should expound to thee. Thou sayest the dream declared that I should end my life by means of a spear-point of iron: but what hands has a boar, or what spear-point of iron, of which thou art afraid? If the dream had told thee that I should end my

vocabulary

ἄγρᾱ hunting, prey
αἰχμή spear point ~acute
ἀποφαίνω display, declare
ἄχαρις -δος (f) ungracious
δαπάνη cost, funds, extravagance
δήλησις mischief; harm
ἐνύπνιος seen in dreams
εὖς good, brave, noble
καθαίρω clean
κακοῦργος causing evil ~ergonomics
κλώψ thief
μεθίημι let go, cease; (mid) speed off
 ~jet
μεταγινώσκω change one's mind
 ~gnostic
μεταπέμπω send; (mid) summon

~pomp

μέτεμι be among, go, follow ~ion
οἶκίον abode, nest ~economics
ὀνειδίζω upbraid, reproach
ὄον οὓ type of fruit
ὀφείλω owe, should, if only
πλήσσω hit ~plectrum
προποιέω do beforehand
συμφορά collecting; accident, misfortune
ὑποδείκνυμι (υὑ) show, trace out
ὑποδέχομαι welcome, accept, suffer
 ~doctrine
φύλαξ -χος (m) guard; sentry
 ~phylactery
χρήζω need ~chresard
χρηστός useful; brave, worthy

τελευτήσῃν με, ἢ ἄλλου τευ ὅ τι τούτῳ ἔοικε, χρῆν δὴ σε
ποιέειν τὰ ποιέεις· νῦν δὲ ὑπὸ αἰχμῆς. ἐπεῖτε ὦν οὐ πρὸς
ἄνδρας ἡμῖν γίνεται ἡ μάχη, μέτεσ με.»

1.40

ἀμείβεται Κροῖσος «ὦ παῖ, ἔστι τῇ με νικᾶς γνώμην
ἀποφαίνων περὶ τοῦ ἐνυπνίου. ὥς ὦν νενικημένος ὑπὸ
σέο μεταγινώσκω, μετήμί τε σὲ ἵεναι ἐπὶ τὴν ἄγρην.»

1.41

εἶπας δὲ ταῦτα ὁ Κροῖσος μεταπέμπεται τὸν Φρύγα
Ἄδρηστον, ἀπικομένῳ δέ οἱ λέγει τάδε. «Ἄδρηστε, ἐγὼ
σε συμφορῇ, πεπληγμένον ἀχάρι, τήν τοι οὐκ ὀνειδίζω,
ἐκάθηρα καὶ οἰκίοισι ὑποδεξάμενος ἔχω, παρέχων πᾶσαν
δαπάνην. νῦν ὦν ὀφείλεις γὰρ ἐμοῦ προποιήσαντος
χρηστὰ ἐς σὲ χρηστοῖσί με ἀμείβεσθαι φύλακα παιδός σε
τοῦ ἐμοῦ χρηρίζω γενέσθαι ἐς ἄγρην ὀρμωμένου, μή τινες
κατ' ὁδὸν κλῶπες κακοῦργοι ἐπὶ δηλήσι φανέωσι ὑμῖν.
πρὸς δὲ τούτῳ καὶ σέ τοι χρεόν ἐστι ἵεναι ἔνθα

τελευτήσῃν με, ἢ ἄλλου τευ ὅ τι τούτῳ ἔοικε, χρῆν δὴ σε
ποιέειν τὰ ποιέεις· νῦν δὲ ὑπὸ ^{|spear}_{|point} . ἐπέιτε ὦν οὐ πρὸς
ἄνδρας ἡμῖν γίνεται ἡ μάχη, μέτεσ με.»

1.40

ἀμείβεται Κροῖσος «ὦ παῖ, ἔστι τῇ με νικᾶς γνώμην
^{|display,}_{|declare} περὶ τοῦ ἐνυπνίου. ὥς ὦν νενικημένος ὑπὸ
σέο μεταγινώσκω, ^{|let go, cease;}_{(mid) speed off} ἵεναι ἐπὶ τὴν ἄγρην.»

1.41

εἶπας δὲ ταῦτα ὁ Κροῖσος ^{|send; (mid) summon} Φρύγα
Ἄδρηστον, ἀπικομένῳ δέ οἱ λέγει τάδε. «Ἄδρηστε, ἐγὼ
σε συμφορῇ, ^{|hit} ^{|ungracious;} τοι οὐκ ^{|reproach} ,
^{|clean} καὶ ^{|abode, nest} οδεξάμενος ἔχω, παρέχων πᾶσαν
^{|cost, funds,} νῦν ὦν ^{|owe, should, if only...} ^{|do beforehand}
^{|extravagance}
^{|useful; brave, ἔ} χρηστοῖσί με ἀμείβεσθαι ^{|guard;} παιδός σε
^{|worthy} ^{|sentry}
τοῦ ἐμοῦ ^{|need} γενέσθαι ἐς ἄγρην ὀρμωμένον, μή τινες
κατ' ὁδὸν ^{|thief} ^{|causing evil} ἐπὶ ^{|mischief; harm} σοι ὑμῖν.
πρὸς δὲ τούτῳ καὶ σέ τοι χρεόν ἐστι ἵεναι ἔνθα

life by a tusk, or any other thing which resembles that, it would be right for thee doubtless to do as thou art doing; but it said ‘by a spear-point.’ Since therefore our fight will not be with men, let me now go.”

1.40

Croesus made answer: “My son, thou dost partly prevail with me by declaring thy judgment about the dream; therefore, having been prevailed upon by thee, I change my resolution and allow thee to go to the chase.”

1.41

Having thus said Croesus went to summon Adrastos the Phrygian; and when he came, he addressed him thus: “Adrastos, when thou wast struck with a grievous misfortune (with which I reproach thee not), I cleansed thee, and I have received thee into my house supplying all thy costs. Now therefore, since having first received kindness from me thou art bound to requite me with kindness, I ask of thee to be the protector of my son who goes forth to the chase, lest any evil robbers come upon you by the way to do you harm; and besides this thou too oughtest to go where thou mayest become famous by thy deeds, for it belongs

vocabulary

ἄθλον ἄέθλου prize ~athlete
ἄθλος ἄέθλου contest, trial ~athlete
ἀπήμων unharmed, not harmful
ἀπονοστέω go home
διακελεύομαι give orders to, encourage
εἰσακοντίζω shoot
ἐμεωυτοῦ myself
ἐξαρτύω (ῥ) train, equip
ἐτοιμός ready; fulfilled
καθαίρω clean
κύκλος circle, wheel ~cycle
λογάς -δος (m, 3) picked, chosen
ὁμηλιξ -κος (m) of the same age
ὀφείλω owe, should, if only

πατρώιος of the father(s), ancestral
 ~paternal
περίστημι be around; turn out
 ~station
πολλαχῇ in many places or ways
πολλαχῇ in many places or ways
προσδοκάω expect
προσέτι in addition
ῥώμη strength, might
σπεύδω 'push on,' get going, hurry
 ~repudiate
συμφορά collecting; accident,
 misfortune
τοιόσδε such

ἀπολαμπρυνέαι τοῖσι χρεόν πατρώϊόν τε γάρ τοι ἐστὶ καὶ προσέτι ῥώμη ὑπάρχει.»

1.42

ἀμείβεται ὁ Ἄδρηστος «ὦ βασιλεῦ, ἄλλως μὲν ἔγωγε ἂν οὐκ ἦια ἐς ἄθλον τοιόνδε· οὔτε γὰρ συμφορῇ τοιῇδε κεχρημένον οἶκός ἐστι ἐς ὀμήλικας εἶ πρήσσοντας ἰέναι, οὔτε τὸ βούλεσθαι πάρα, πολλαχῇ τε ἂν ἰσχον ἐμεωυτόν. νῦν δέ, ἐπεῖτε σὺ σπεύδεις καὶ δεῖ τοί χαρίζεσθαι ὀφείλω γάρ σε ἀμείβεσθαι χρηστοῖσι, ποιέειν εἰμὶ ἕτοιμος ταῦτα, παῖδα τε σόν, τὸν διακελεύει φυλάσσειν, ἀπήμονα τοῦ φυλάσσοντος εἵνεκεν προσδόκα τοι ἀπονοστήσειν.»

1.43

τοιούτοισι ἐπεῖτε οὗτος ἀμείψατο Κροῖσον, ἦσαν μετὰ ταῦτα ἐξηρτυμένοι λογάσι τε νεηνίησι καὶ κυσί. ἀπικόμενοι δὲ ἐς τὸν Ὀλυμπον τὸ ὄρος ἐζήτεον τὸ θηρίον, εὐρόντες δὲ καὶ περιστάντες αὐτὸ κύκλῳ ἐσηκόντιζον. ἔνθα δὴ ὁ ξεῖνος, οὗτος δὴ ὁ καθαρθεὶς τὸν φόνον,

ἀπολαμπρυνέαι τοῖσι χρεόν | of the father(s),, ἄρ τοι ἐστὶ καὶ
ancestral

|in addi-|strength, .. ἄρχει.»
tion |might

1.42

ἀμείβεται ὁ Ἄδρηστος «ὦ βασιλεῦ, ἄλλως μὲν ἔγωγε

ἂν οὐκ ἦια ἐς ἄεθλον |such οὔτε γὰρ συμφορῇ |such

κεχρημένον οἰκός ἐστι ἐς |of the same age, ῥήσσοντας ἰέναι,

οὔτε τὸ βούλεσθαι πάρα, πολλαχῇ τε ἂν ἴσχον |myself

νῦν δέ, ἐπέιτε σὺ |‘push on,’ get δεῖ τοί χαρίζεσθαι |owe, should, if only
going, hurry

γάρ σε ἀμείβεσθαι χρηστοῖσι, ποιέειν εἰμὶ ἕτοιμος ταῦτα,

παῖδα τε σόν, τὸν |give orders to, φυλάσσειν, |unharmed, οὐ
encourage |not harmful

φυλάσσοντος εἵνεκεν |expect τοι |go home »

1.43

τοιούτοισι ἐπέιτε οὗτος ἀμείψατο Κροῖσον, ἦισαν

μετὰ ταῦτα |train, equip |picked, τε νεηνίῃσι καὶ κυσί.
chosen

ἀπικόμενοι δὲ ἐς τὸν Ὀλυμπον τὸ ὄρος ἐζήτεον τὸ θηρίον,

εὐρόντες δὲ καὶ |be around; turn out ` |circle, |shoot
wheel

ἔνθα δὴ ὁ ξείνος, οὗτος δὴ ὁ |clean τὸν φόνον,

to thee as an inheritance from thy fathers so to do, and moreover thou hast strength for it.”

1.42

Adrastos made answer: “O king, but for this I should not have been going to any such contest of valour; for first it is not fitting that one who is suffering such a great misfortune as mine should seek the company of his fellows who are in prosperity, and secondly I have no desire for it; and for many reasons I should have kept myself away. But now, since thou art urgent with me, and I ought to gratify thee (for I am bound to requite thee with kindness), I am ready to do this: expect therefore that thy son, whom thou commandest me to protect, will home to thee unhurt, so far as his protector may avail to keep him safe.”

1.43

When he had made answer to Croesus in words like these, they afterwards set forth provided with chosen young men and with dogs. And when they were come to Mount Olympos, they tracked the animal; and having found it and taken their stand round in a circle, they were hurling against it their spears. Then the guest, he who had been cleansed of manslaughter, whose

vocabulary

αἰχμή spear point ~acute
ἄκοντίζω throw, (+gen) at ~acute
βόσχω feed, tend ~bovine
δεινολογέομαι complain loudly
ἐκπίμπλημι fulfil, accomplish
ἐπίστιον ship's slip ~stand
ἐπίστιος hearthside
ἐταιρήιος companionable
θέω run, run for
καθαίρω clean
καθάρσιος cleansing
μαρτύρομαι (ἴ) call to witness; protest
μίν him, her, it
μόρος portion, lot in life
οἶκίον abode, nest ~economics
ὄνειρον dream

ὄνειρος dream
περιημεκτέω be aggrieved
σημαίνω give orders to; show; mark
 ~semaphore
συμπέμπω send with ~pomp
συμφορά collecting; accident, misfortune
συνταράσσω mess up
ὑποδείκνυμι (υὑ) show, trace out
ὑποδέχομαι welcome, accept, suffer
 ~doctrine
ὕς pig ~sow
φήμη speech, rumor ~fame
φονεύς -ως (m) killer ~offend
φύλαξ -χος (m) guard; sentry
 ~phylactery

καλεόμενος δὲ Ἄδρηστος, ἀκοντίζων τὸν ὕν τοῦ μὲν
 ἀμαρτάνει, τυγχάνει δὲ τοῦ Κροίσου παιδός. ὁ μὲν δὴ
 βληθεὶς τῇ αἰχμῇ ἐξέπλησε τοῦ ὀνείρου τὴν φήμην, ἔθεε
 δέ τις ἀγγελέων τῷ Κροίσῳ τὸ γεγονός, ἀπικόμενος δὲ
 ἐς τὰς Σάρδεις τὴν τε μάχην καὶ τὸν τοῦ παιδὸς μόρον
 ἐσήμηνέ οἱ.

1.44

ὁ δὲ Κροῖσος τῷ θανάτῳ τοῦ παιδὸς συντεταραγμένος
 μᾶλλον τι ἐδεινολογέετο ὅτι μιν ἀπέκτεινε τὸν αὐτὸς
 φόνου ἐκάθηρε· περιημεκτέων δὲ τῇ συμφορῇ δεινῶς
 ἐκάλεε μὲν Δία καθάρσιον μαρτυρόμενος τὰ ὑπὸ τοῦ ξείνου
 πεπονθῶς εἶη ἐκάλεε δὲ ἐπίστιόν τε καὶ ἐταιρήιον, τὸν
 αὐτὸν τοῦτον ὀνομάζων θεόν, τὸν μὲν ἐπίστιον καλέων,
 διότι δὴ οἰκίοισι ὑποδεξάμενος τὸν ξείνον φονέα τοῦ
 παιδὸς ἐλάνθανε βόσκων, τὸν δὲ ἐταιρήιον, ὥς φύλακα
 συμπέμφας αὐτὸν εὐρήκοι πολεμιώτατον.

καλεόμενος δὲ Ἄδρηστος, |throw, (+gen) at ὕν τοῦ μὲν
 ἁμαρτάνει, τυγχάνει δὲ τοῦ Κροίσου παιδός. ὁ μὲν δὴ
 βληθεὶς τῇ |spear |fulfil, τοῦ ὀνείρου τὴν |speech, , |run
 |point |accomplish |rumor
 δέ τις ἀγγελέων τῷ Κροίσῳ τὸ γεγονός, ἀπικόμενος δὲ
 ἐς τὰς Σάρδεις τὴν τε μάχην καὶ τὸν τοῦ παιδός |portion, lot in life
 |give orders to;
 |show; mark

1.44

ὁ δὲ Κροῖσος τῷ θανάτῳ τοῦ παιδός |mess up
 μᾶλλον τι |complain loudly ὅτι μιν ἀπέκτεινε τὸν αὐτὸς
 φόνου |clean |be aggrieved δὲ τῇ συμφορῇ δεινῶς
 ἐκάλεε μὲν Δία |cleansing |call to witness; τὰ ὑπὸ τοῦ ξείνου
 |protest
 πεπονθὼς εἷη ἐκάλεε δὲ ἐπίστιόν τε καὶ |companionable
 αὐτὸν τοῦτον ὀνομάζων θεόν, τὸν μὲν ἐπίστιον καλέων,
 διότι δὴ |abode, nest τοδεξάμενος τὸν ξεῖνον |killer τοῦ
 παιδός ἐλάνθανε |feed, tend τὸν δὲ |companionable |guard;
 |sentry
 |συμπέμπω?: send with; ,οἱ πολεμιώτατον.
 |συμπέμπω?: send with

name was Adrastos, hurling a spear at it missed the boar and struck the son of Croesus. So he being struck by the spear-point fulfilled the saying of the dream. And one ran to report to Croesus that which had come to pass, and having come to Sardis he signified to him of the combat and of the fate of his son. And Croesus was very greatly disturbed by the death of his son, and was much the more moved to complaining by this, namely that his son was slain by the man whom he had himself cleansed of manslaughter. And being grievously troubled by the misfortune he called upon Zeus the Cleanser, protesting to him that which he had suffered from his guest, and he called moreover upon the Protector of Suppliants and the Guardian of Friendship, naming still the same god, and calling upon him as the Protector of Suppliants because when he received the guest into his house he had been fostering ignorantly the slayer of his son, and as the Guardian of Friendship because having sent him as a protector he had found him the worst of foes.

*vocabulary***ἄέκων** unwilling**βιώσιμος** to be lived; likely to live**ἐξεργάζομαι** accomplish; undo;

destroy someone

ἐπικατασφάζω slay also**ἡσυχία** peace and quiet**θάπτω** bury ~epitaph**καθαίρω** clean**καίπερ** even if**καταδικάζω** give judgment**κατοικτείρω** have mercy, compassion**κατοικτίρω** have mercy, compassion**μίν** him, her, it**ὀπισθεν** behind, hereafter**πάλαι** long ago ~paleo**παλαίω** wrestle ~Pallas**πάλη** wrestling ~Pallas**πάλλω** shake, brandish ~Pallas**προσημαίνω** foretell; proclaim**προτείνω** hold out, offer**σήμα** -τος (n, 3) mark, sign, grave mound ~semaphore**συγγιγνώσκω** acknowledge; pardon**συμφορά** collecting; accident, misfortune**φονεύς** -ως (m) killer ~offend

1.45

παρήσαν δὲ μετὰ τοῦτο οἱ Λυδοὶ φέροντες τὸν νεκρόν, ὅπισθε δὲ εἶπετό οἱ ὁ φονεύς. στὰς δὲ οὗτος πρὸ τοῦ νεκροῦ παρεδίδου ἑωυτὸν Κροῖσω προτείνων τὰς χεῖρας, ἐπικατασφάζαι μιν κελεύων τῷ νεκρῷ, λέγων τήν τε προτέρην ἑωυτοῦ συμφορὴν, καὶ ὡς ἐπ' ἐκείνῃ τὸν καθήραντα ἀπολωλεκῶς εἴη, οὐδέ οἱ εἴη βιώσιμον. Κροῖσος δὲ τούτων ἀκούσας τόν τε Ἄδρηστον κατοικτεῖρει, καίπερ ἔων ἐν κακῷ οἰκίῳ τοσούτῳ καὶ λέγει πρὸς αὐτόν «ἔχω ὧ ξεῖνε παρὰ σεῦ πᾶσαν τὴν δίκην, ἐπειδὴ σεωυτοῦ καταδικάζεις θάνατον. εἰς δὲ οὐ σύ μοι τοῦδε τοῦ κακοῦ αἵτιος, εἰ μὴ ὅσον ἀέκων ἐξεργάσαιο, ἀλλὰ θεῶν κού τις, ὅς μοι καὶ πάλαι προεσήμεινε τὰ μέλλοντα ἔσεσθαι.» Κροῖσος μὲν νυν ἔθαιψε ὡς οἶκός ἦν τὸν ἑωυτοῦ παῖδα· Ἄδρηστος δὲ ὁ Γορδῖεω τοῦ Μίδεω, οὗτος δὲ ὁ φονεὺς μὲν τοῦ ἑωυτοῦ ἀδελφεοῦ γενόμενος φονεὺς δὲ τοῦ καθήραντος, ἐπεῖτε ἡσυχίῃ τῶν ἀνθρώπων ἐγένετο περὶ τὸ σῆμα, συγγινωσκόμενος ἀνθρώπων εἶναι

1.45

παρήσαν δὲ μετὰ τοῦτο οἱ Λυδοὶ φέροντες τὸν νεκρόν,
 ὅπισθε δὲ εἶπετό οἱ ὁ |killer στὰς δὲ οὗτος
 πρὸ τοῦ νεκροῦ παρεδίδου ἑωυτὸν Κροΐσῳ |hold out, offer
 τὰς χεῖρας, |slay also μιν κελεύων τῷ νεκρῷ,
 λέγων τήν τε προτέρην ἑωυτοῦ συμφορὴν, καὶ ὥς ἐπ’
 ἐκείνη τὸν |clean ἀπολωλεκῶς εἴη, οὐδέ οἱ εἴη
 |to be lived; Κροῖσος δὲ τούτων ἀκούσας τόν τε Ἕαδρηστον
 |likely to live
 κατοικτεῖρει, |even if ἔων ἐν κακῷ οἰκίῳ τοσούτῳ καὶ
 λέγει πρὸς αὐτόν «ἔχω ὦ ξεῖνε παρὰ σεῦ πᾶσαν τήν δίκην,
 ἐπειδὴ σεωυτοῦ |give judgment θάνατον. εἰς δὲ οὐ σύ μοι
 τοῦδε τοῦ κακοῦ αἵτιος, εἰ μὴ ὅσον |unwill- |accomplish; ,undo; ing |destroy someone
 θεῶν κού τις, ὅς μοι καὶ πάλαι |foretell; τὰ μέλλοντα
 |proclaim
 ἔσεσθαι.» Κροῖσος μὲν νυν |bury ὥς οἶκός ἦν τὸν ἑωυτοῦ
 παῖδα· Ἕαδρηστος δὲ ὁ Γορδίῳ τοῦ Μίδεω, οὗτος δὲ ὁ
 |killer μὲν τοῦ ἑωυτοῦ ἀδελφεοῦ γενόμενος |killer δὲ τοῦ
 |clean , ἐπείτε |peace and quiet θρώπων ἐγένετο περὶ
 τὸ |mark, sign, ὡσκόμενος ἀνθρώπων εἶναι
 |grave mound

1.45

After this the Lydians came bearing the corpse, and behind it followed the slayer: and he taking his stand before the corpse delivered himself up to Croesus, holding forth his hands and bidding the king slay him over the corpse, speaking of his former misfortune and saying that in addition to this he had now been the destroyer of the man who had cleansed him of it; and that life for him was no more worth living. But Croesus hearing this pitied Adrastus, although he was himself suffering so great an evil of his own, and said to him: “Guest, I have already received from thee all the satisfaction that is due, seeing that thou dost condemn thyself to suffer death; and not thou alone art the cause of this evil, except in so far as thou wert the instrument of it against thine own will, but some one, as I suppose, of the gods, who also long ago signified to me that which was about to be.” So Croesus buried his son as was fitting; but Adrastus the son of Gordias, the son of Midas, he who had been the slayer of his own brother and the slayer also of the man who had cleansed him, when silence came of all men round about the tomb, recognising that he was more grievously burdened by misfortune

vocabulary

ἀποπαύω stop ~pause
ἀποπειράομαι try, try out
ἀποπέμπω send away ~pomp
βαρυσύμφορος suffering bad luck
διάνοια a thought; intelligence
διαπέμπω send out/over
Ἑλλήν Greek
ἐμβαίνω step on, board ~basis
ἐπικατασφάζω slay also
εὖς good, brave, noble
ἡγεμονία authority, rule

καθαιρέω take down, close ~heresy
καταλαμβάνω seize, understand, catch, overtake; (mp) happen ~epilepsy
μαντεῖον prophetic warning ~mantis
μαντεύομαι to divine ~mantis
ὄον οὖ type of fruit
πένθος -εος (n, 3) grief, misfortune
 ~Nepenthe
Πέρσης Persian
στερέω steal, take
τύμβος grave mound ~tomb
φροντίς -τος (f) thought, care

τῶν αὐτὸς ἦδεε βαρυσυμφωρότατος, ἐπικατασφάζει τῷ
τύμβῳ ἐωντόν.

1.46

Κροῖσος δὲ ἐπὶ δύο ἔτεα ἐν πένθει μεγάλῳ κατῆστο
τοῦ παιδὸς ἐστερημένος. μετὰ δὲ ἡ Ἀστυάγεος
τοῦ Κναζάρεω ἡγεμονίῃ καταιρεθεῖσα ὑπὸ Κύρου τοῦ
Καμβύσεω καὶ τὰ τῶν Περσέων πρήγματα αὐξανόμενα
πένθεος μὲν Κροῖσον ἀπέπαυσε, ἐνέβησε δὲ ἐς φροντίδα,
εἴ πως δύναιτο, πρὶν μεγάλους γενέσθαι τοὺς Πέρσας,
καταλαβεῖν αὐτῶν αὐξανομένην τὴν δύναμιν.

μετὰ ὧν τὴν διάνοιαν ταύτην αὐτίκα ἀπεπειρᾶτο τῶν
μαντείων τῶν τε ἐν Ἑλλησι καὶ τοῦ ἐν Λιβύῃ, διαπέμψας
ἄλλους ἄλλῃ, τοὺς μὲν ἐς Δελφοὺς ἰέναι, τοὺς δὲ ἐς Ἄβας
τὰς Φωκέων, τοὺς δὲ ἐς Δωδώνην· οἳ δὲ τινὲς ἐπέμποντο
παρὰ τε Ἀμφιάρεων καὶ παρὰ Τροφώνιον, οἳ δὲ τῆς
Μιλησίης ἐς Βραγχίδας. ταῦτα μὲν νυν τὰ Ἑλληνικὰ
μαντήια ἐς τὰ ἀπέπεμψε μαντευσόμενος

τῶν αὐτὸς ἥδ' ἐε |suffering bad luck , |slay also τῶ

|grave ἐωυτόν.
|mound

1.46

Κροῖσος δὲ ἐπὶ δύο ἔτεα ἐν |grief μεγάλην κατήστο

τοῦ παιδὸς |steal, take . μετὰ δὲ ἡ Ἀστυάγεος

τοῦ Κναξάρου |authority, |take down, close 'πὸ Κύρου τοῦ
|rule

Καμβύσεω καὶ τὰ τῶν Περσέων πρήγματα αὐξανόμενα

|grief μὲν Κροῖσον |stop , |step on, board' |thought, care

εἴ πως δύναίτο, πρὶν μεγάλους γενέσθαι τοὺς Πέρσας,

|seize, understand, 'catch,' ξανομένην τὴν δύναμιν.
|overtake; (mp) happen

μετὰ ὧν τὴν |a thought; αὐτὴν αὐτίκα |try, try out τῶν
|intelligence

|prophetic τῶν τε ἐν |Greek καὶ τοῦ ἐν Λιβύῃ, |send out/over
|warning

ἄλλους ἄλλη, τοὺς μὲν ἐς Δελφοὺς ἰέναι, τοὺς δὲ ἐς Ἄβας

τὰς Φωκέων, τοὺς δὲ ἐς Δωδώνην· οἳ δὲ τινὲς ἐπέμποντο

παρὰ τε Ἀμφιάρεων καὶ παρὰ Τροφώνιον, οἳ δὲ τῆς

Μιλησίδης ἐς Βραγχίδας. ταῦτα μὲν νυν τὰ Ἑλληνικὰ

|prophetic ἐς τὰ |send away |to divine
|warning

than all men of whom he knew, slew himself upon the grave.

1.46

For two years then Croesus remained quiet in his mourning, because he was deprived of his son: but after this period of time the overthrowing of the rule of Astyages the son of Kyaxares by Cyrus the son of Cambyses, and the growing greatness of the Persians caused Croesus to cease from his mourning, and led him to a care of cutting short the power of the Persians, if by any means he might, while yet it was in growth and before they should have become great.

So having formed this design he began forthwith to make trial of the Oracles, both those of the Hellenes and that in Libya, sending messengers some to one place and some to another, some to go to Delphi, others to Abai of the Phokians, and others to Dodona; and some were sent to the shrine of Amphiaraos and to that of Trophonios, others to Branchidai in the land of Miletos: these are the Oracles of the Hellenes to which Croesus sent messengers to seek divination; and others he sent to the shrine of Ammon

vocabulary

ἀναφέρω bring up ~bear
ἀποπέμπω send away ~pomp
διάπειρα experience, experiment
διαπέμπω send out/over
ἐκατοστός hundredth
ἐντέλλω (mp) command
ἐξάμετρος hexameter
ἐπείρομαι ask as well; ask then
ἐπειρωτάω consult, ask

ἐπιχειρέω do, try, attack ~chiral
ἡμερολογέω count by days
θεσπίζω prophecy
μαντεῖον prophetic warning ~mantis
οὐδαμὸς not anyone
Πέρσης Persian
συγγράφω write down
τόνος pitch, stretching
 χρηστήριον oracle, response

Κροῖσος· Λιβύης δὲ παρὰ Ἄμμωνα ἀπέστελλε ἄλλους χρησομένους. διέπεμπε δὲ πειρώμενος τῶν μαντηίων ὅ τι φρονέοιεν, ὥς εἰ φρονέοντα τὴν ἀληθείην εὐρεθείη, ἐπείρηται σφέα δεύτερα πέμπων εἰ ἐπιχειροί ἐπὶ Πέρσας στρατεῦεσθαι.

1.47

ἐντειλάμενος δὲ τοῖσι Λυδοῖσι τάδε ἀπέπεμπε ἐς τὴν διάπειραν τῶν χρηστηρίων, ἀπ' ἧς ἂν ἡμέρης ὀρμηθέωσι ἐκ Σαρδίων, ἀπὸ ταύτης ἡμερολογέοντας τὸν λοιπὸν χρόνον ἑκατοστῇ ἡμέρῃ χρᾶσθαι τοῖσι χρηστηρίοις, ἐπειρωτῶντας ὅ τι ποιέων τυγχάνοι ὁ Λυδῶν βασιλεὺς Κροῖσος ὁ Ἀλυάττεω· ἅσα δ' ἂν ἕκαστα τῶν χρηστηρίων θεσπίσῃ, συγγραψάμενους ἀναφέρειν παρ' ἑωυτόν. ὅ τι μὲν νυν τὰ λοιπὰ τῶν χρηστηρίων ἐθέσπισε, οὐ λέγεται πρὸς οὐδαμῶν· ἐν δὲ Δελφοῖσι ὥς ἐσῆλθον τάχιστα ἐς τὸ μέγαρον οἱ Λυδοὶ χρησόμενοι τῷ θεῷ καὶ ἐπειρώτων τὸ ἐντεταλμένον, ἡ Πυθίη ἐν ἑξαμέτρῳ τόνῳ λέγει τάδε.

Κροῖσος· Λιβύης δὲ παρὰ Ἄμμωνα ἀπέστελλε ἄλλους
 χρησομένους. |send out/over\ πειρώμενος τῶν |prophetic
 |warning
 ὅ τι φρονόειεν, ὥς εἰ φρονέοντα τὴν ἀληθείην εὐρεθείη,
 ἐπείρηται σφέα δεύτερα πέμπων εἰ |do, try, attack\ ἰ Πέρσας
 στρατεύεσθαι.

1.47

ἐντειλάμενος δὲ τοῖσι Λυδοῖσι τάδε |send away ἐς τὴν
 |experience, exper- |oracle, , ἀπ' ἧς ἂν ἡμέρης ὀρμηθέωσι
 |iment |response
 ἐκ Σαρδίων, ἀπὸ ταύτης |count by days τὸν λοιπὸν
 χρόνον |hundredth ἡμέρη χρᾶσθαι τοῖσι |oracle, response,
 |consult, ask ὅ τι ποιέων τυγχάνοι ὁ Λυδῶν βασιλεὺς
 Κροῖσος ὁ Ἀλυάττεω· ἄσσα δ' ἂν ἕκαστα τῶν |oracle,
 |response
 |prophecy, |write down |bring up παρ' ἑαυτόν. ὅ τι
 μέν νυν τὰ λοιπὰ τῶν |oracle,
 |response
 πρὸς |not anyone ἐν δὲ Δελφοῖσι ὥς ἐσῆλθον τάχιστα ἐς
 τὸ μέγαρον οἱ Λυδοὶ χρησόμενοι τῷ θεῷ καὶ |consult, ask
 τὸ ἐντεταλμένον, ἡ Πυθίῃ ἐν |hexameter |pitch, \', εἰ τάδε.
 |stretching

in Libya to inquire there. Now he was sending the messengers abroad to the end that he might try the Oracles and find out what knowledge they had, so that if they should be found to have knowledge of the truth, he might send and ask them secondly whether he should attempt to march against the Persians.

1.47

And to the Lydians whom he sent to make trial of the Oracles he gave charge as follows,— that from the day on which they set out from Sardis they should reckon up the number of the days following and on the hundredth day they should consult the Oracles, asking what Croesus the son of Alyattes king of the Lydians chanced then to be doing: and whatever the Oracles severally should prophesy, this they should cause to be written down and bear it back to him. Now what the other Oracles prophesied is not by any reported, but at Delphi, so soon as the Lydians entered the sanctuary of the temple to consult the god and asked that which they were commanded to ask, the Pythian prophetess spoke thus in hexameter measure:

vocabulary

ἀμήχανος helpless, impossible

~mechanism

ἀναπτύσσω unfold

ἀριθμός number

ἄρνειος lamb, sheep

διαπέμπω send out/over

ἐνθαῦτα there, here

ἐξευρίσκω find; discover ~eureka

ἐπινοέω intend

ἐφοράω look upon ~panorama

θεοπρόπος seer ~theology

θεσπίζω prophecy

κραταίρινος (ι) hard-shelled

κωφός blunt, insensible

μαντεῖον prophetic warning ~mantis

μέτρον measure ~metric

μηχανάομαι build, contrive

~mechanism

μὴν him, her, it

ὀσμή smell ~osmium, odor

περιπέμπω send on a circuit

προσδέχομαι await, expect; suppose

προσεύχομαι pray, vow

προσίημι be allowed near

σύγγραμμα -τος (n, 3) piece of writing

συγγράφω write down

συνίημι send together; hear, notice,
understand ~jet

τοιόσδε such

ὑποστόρνυμι strew under

χελώνη tortoise

χρηστήριον oracle, response

ψάμμος (f) sand

οἶδα δ' ἐγὼ ψάμμον τ' ἀριθμὸν καὶ μέτρα θαλάσσης, καὶ
 κωφοῦ συνίημι, καὶ οὐ φωνεῦντος ἀκούω. ὁδμή μ' ἐς
 φρένας ἦλθε κραταιρίνιοιο χελώνης ἐφομένης ἐν χαλκῷ
 ἅμ' ἀρνείοισι κρέεσσιν, ἥ χαλκὸς μὲν ὑπέστρωται, χαλκὸν
 δ' ἐπιέσται.

1.48

ταῦτα οἱ Λυδοὶ θεσπισάσης τῆς Πυθίης συγγραφάμενοι
 οἷχοντο ἀπιόντες ἐς τὰς Σάρδεις. ὥς δὲ καὶ ἄλλοι
 οἱ περιπεμφθέντες παρήσαν φέροντες τοὺς χρησμούς,
 ἐνθαῦτα ὁ Κροῖσος ἕκαστα ἀναπτύσσων ἐπώρα τῶν
 συγγραμμάτων, τῶν μὲν δὴ οὐδὲν προσίετό μιν· ὁ
 δὲ ὥς τὸ ἐκ Δελφῶν ἤκουσε, αὐτίκα προσεύχετό τε
 καὶ προσεδέξατο, νομίσας μῦνον εἶναι μαντήιον τὸ ἐν
 Δελφοῖσι, ὅτι οἱ ἐξευρήκεε τὰ αὐτὸς ἐποίησε.

ἐπεῖτε γὰρ δὴ διέπεμψε¹ παρὰ τὰ χρηστήρια τοὺς
 θεοπρόπους, φυλάξας τὴν κυρίην τῶν ἡμερέων ἐμηχανᾶτο
 τοιάδε· ἐπινοήσας τὰ ἦν ἀμήχανον ἐξευρεῖν τε καὶ

¹ but before the responses came back

οἶδα δ' ἐγὼ |sand τ' |number καὶ |measure ἰαλάσσης, καὶ
 |blunt, |send together; hear ῥωνεῦντος ἀκούω. |smell μ' ἐς
 |insensible
 φρένας ἦλθε |hard-shelled |tortoise ἐφομένης ἐν χαλκῷ
 ἄμ' |lamb, κρέεσσιν, ἧ χαλκὸς μὲν |strew under , χαλκὸν
 |sheep
 δ' ἐπίεσται.

1.48

ταῦτα οἱ Λυδοὶ |prophecy τῆς Πυθίης |write down
 οἷχοντο ἀπιόντες ἐς τὰς Σάρδεις. ὥς δὲ καὶ ὅλλοι
 οἱ |send on a circuit παρήσαν φέροντες τοὺς χρησμούς,
 |there, here ἰ Κροῖσος ἕκαστα |unfold |look upon ὃν
 |piece of writing , τῶν μὲν δὴ οὐδὲν |be allowed near ὁ
 δὲ ὥς τὸ ἐκ Δελφῶν ἤκουσε, αὐτίκα |pray, vow τε
 καὶ |await, expect; νομίσας μῶνον εἶναι |prophetic τὸ ἐν
 |suppose |warning
 Δελφοῖσι, ὅτι οἱ ἐξευρήκεε τὰ αὐτὸς ἐποίησε.

ἐπεῖτε γὰρ δὴ |send out/over ¹ ἀρὰ τὰ |oracle, τοὺς
 |response
 |seer , φυλάξας τὴν κυρίην τῶν ἡμερέων |build,
 |contrive
 |such |intend τὰ ἦν |helpless, |find; τε καὶ
 |impossible |discover

¹ but before the responses came back

“But the number of sand I know, and the measure of drops in the ocean; the dumb man I understand, and I hear the speech of the speechless: And there hath come to my soul the smell of a strong-shelled tortoise boiling in caldron of bronze, and the flesh of a lamb mingled with it; under it bronze is laid, it hath bronze as a clothing upon it.”

1.48

When the Pythian prophetess had uttered this oracle, the Lydians caused the prophecy to be written down, and went away at once to Sardis. And when the rest also who had been sent round were there arrived with the answers of the Oracles, then Croesus unfolded the writings one by one and looked upon them: and at first none of them pleased him, but when he heard that from Delphi, forthwith he did worship to the god and accepted the answer, judging that the Oracle at Delphi was the only true one, because it had found out what he himself had done.

For when he had sent to the several Oracles his messengers to consult the gods, keeping well in mind the appointed day he contrived the following device,— he thought of something which it would be impossible to discover or to conceive

vocabulary

ἀνακτάομαι regain, revive; win over
ἀρήν ἄρνός (m, 3) lamb, sheep; wool
ἀψευδής truthful
εἶμα -τος (n, 3) garment ~vest
ἐπάργυρος overlaid with silver
ἐπίθημα -τος (n, 3) lid ~thesis
ἐπιφράζω realize, think of ~frenzy
ἐπίχρυσος (ῥ) gilded
εὖς good, brave, noble
θυσία sacrifice
θύσιμος fit for a sacrifice
θύω (ῥ) rush; sacrifice ~θύω
ἱλάσκομαι appease
κατακαίω burn down ~caustic
κατακόπτω cut down, shatter
κλίνη (ι) bed, couch ~clinic
κλίνω (ι) lean, recline ~incline
κτάομαι acquire, possess
κτῆνος -ους (n, 3) herd animal

λέβης -τος (m, 3) kettle, basin
μαντεῖον prophetic warning ~mantis
νέω spin; swim ~neuro
ὁμός same ~homoerotic
ὁμοῦ together
ὁμόω unite ~homoerotic
ὄον οὖ type of fruit
πορφύρεος purple
προαγορεύω declare, predict, order
προεῖπον foretell, proclaim, order
 before
προλέγω prophecy, proclaim; preselect
 ~legion
πυρά pyre ~pyre
τρισχίλιοι 3000 ~kilo-
ὑπόκρισις -εως (f) answer; acting,
 hypocrisy
φιάλη jar ~vial
χελώνη tortoise

ἐπιφράσασθαι, χελώνην καὶ ἄρνα κατακόψας ὁμοῦ ἦψε
αὐτὸς ἐν λέβητι χαλκέῳ, χάλκεον ἐπίθημα ἐπιθείς.

1.49

τὰ μὲν δὴ ἐκ Δελφῶν οὕτω τῷ, Κροίσῳ ἐχρήσθη· κατὰ δὲ
τὴν Ἀμφιάρεω τοῦ μαντηίου ὑπόκρισιν, οὐκ ἔχω εἰπεῖν¹
ὅ τι τοῖσι Λυδοῖσι ἔχρησε² ποιήσασι περὶ τὸ ἱρόν τὰ
νομιζόμενα οὐ γὰρ ὦν οὐδὲ τοῦτο λέγεται, ἄλλο γε ἢ ὅτι
καὶ τοῦτο ἐνόμισε³ μαντήιον ἀψευδὲς ἐκτῆσθαι.

1.50

μετὰ δὲ ταῦτα θυσίῃσι μεγάλῃσι τὸν ἐν Δελφοῖσι θεὸν
ιλάσκετο· κτήνέα τε γὰρ τὰ θύσιμα πάντα τρισχίλια
ἔθυσε, κλίνας τε ἐπιχρύσους καὶ ἐπαργύρους καὶ φιάλας
χρυσέας καὶ εἴματα πορφύρεα καὶ κιθῶνας, νήσας πυρὴν
μεγάλην, κατέκαιε, ἐλπίζων τὸν θεὸν μᾶλλον τι τούτοις
ἀνακτήσεσθαι· Λυδοῖσι τε πᾶσι προεῖπε θύειν πάντα τινὰ
αὐτῶν τούτῳ ὅ τι ἔχοι ἕκαστος. ὥς δὲ ἐκ τῆς

¹ Herodotus ² the oracle ³ Croesus

of, and cutting up a tortoise and a lamb he boiled them together himself in a caldron of bronze, laying a cover of bronze over them.

1.49

This then was the answer given to Croesus from Delphi; and as regards the answer of Amphiaraos, I cannot tell what he replied to the Lydians after they had done the things customary in his temple, for there is no record of this any more than of the others, except only that Croesus thought that he also possessed a true Oracle.

1.50

After this with great sacrifices he endeavoured to win the favour of the god at Delphi: for of all the animals that are fit for sacrifice he offered three thousand of each kind, and he heaped up couches overlaid with gold and overlaid with silver, and cups of gold, and robes of purple, and tunics, making of them a great pyre, and this he burnt up, hoping by these means the more to win over the god to the side of the Lydians: and he proclaimed to all the Lydians that every one of them should make sacrifice with that which each man had. And when

*vocabulary***ἄπεφθος** boiled, refined ~ἀφέψω**ἄπλετος** boundless, immense,
abundant**ἀποπέμπω** send away ~pomp**ἀποτήκω** melt away from**ἀργύρεος** silver ~Argentina**ἀριθμός** number**ἀφαιρέω** take away ~heresy**διτάλαντος** weighing two talents**ἑβδομος** seventh**εἰκών** -όνος (f, 3) image, likeness**ἐξελαύνω** drive out, exile ~elastic**ἐπιτελέω** complete; do a religious duty**ἑπτακαίδεκα** 17**ἡμιπλίνθιον** brick**ἡμιτάλαντον** a measure of weight

~hemisphere

θησαυρός treasury ~treasure**θύσια** sacrifice**ἱδρύω** establish**κατακαίω** burn down ~caustic**καταπίπτω** fall down ~petal**καταχεύω** pour onto**κρητήρ** -ος (m) mixing bowl for wine**μέγαθος** tall, big (person)**παλαιστιαῖος** palm-sized**σταθμός** cottage; post**τάλαντον** scale, a unit of weight

~talent

τέταρτος fourth ~trapezoid**ὕψος** ὕψους (n, 3) height, summit**χρυσός** (ῶ) gold

θυσίης ἐγένετο, καταχεάμενος χρυσὸν ἄπλετον ἡμιπλίνθια ἐξ αὐτοῦ ἐξήλυνε, ἐπὶ μὰν τὰ μακρότερα ποιέων ἐξαπάλαιστα, ἐπὶ δὲ τὰ βραχύτερα τριπάλαιστα, ὕψος δὲ παλαιστιαῖα. ἀριθμὸν δὲ ἑπτακαίδεκα καὶ ἑκατόν, καὶ τούτων ἀπέφθου χρυσοῦ τέσσερα, τρίτον ἡμιτάλαντον ἕκαστον ἔλκοντα, τὰ δὲ ἄλλα ἡμιπλίνθια λευκοῦ χρυσοῦ, σταθμὸν διτάλαντα. ἐποιέετο δὲ καὶ λέοντος εἰκόνα χρυσοῦ ἀπέφθου ἔλκουσαν σταθμὸν τάλαντα δέκα. οὗτος ὁ λέων, ἐπεῖτε κατεκαίετο ὁ ἐν Δελφοῖσι νηός, κατέπεσε ἀπὸ τῶν ἡμιπλινθίων ἐπὶ γὰρ τούτοισι ἴδρυτο, καὶ νῦν κεῖται ἐν τῷ Κορινθίων θησανρῶ, ἔλκων¹ σταθμὸν² ἑβδομον ἡμιτάλαντον· ἀπετάκη γὰρ αὐτοῦ τέταρτον ἡμιτάλαντον.

1.51

ἐπιτελέσας δὲ ὁ Κροῖσος ταῦτα ἀπέπεμπε εἰς Δελφούς, καὶ τάδε ἄλλα ἅμα τοῖσι, κρητῆρας δύο μεγάθει μεγάλους, χρύσειον καὶ ἀργύρεον, τῶν ὁ μὲν χρύσεος ἔκειτο ἐπὶ

¹ weighing ² weight

θυσίης ἐγένετο, καταχεάμενος |gold ἄπλετον |brick
 ἐξ αὐτοῦ |drive out , ἐπὶ μὰν τὰ μακρότερα ποιέων
 ἐξαπάλαιστα, ἐπὶ δὲ τὰ βραχύτερα τριπάλαιστα, |height, |summit
 |palm-sized |number δὲ |17 καὶ ἑκατόν, καὶ
 τούτων ἀπέφθου χρυσοῦ τέσσερα, τρίτον |a measure of weight
 ἕκαστον ἔλκοντα, τὰ δὲ ἄλλα |brick λευκοῦ χρυσοῦ,
 |cottage; |weighing two talents ἔτο δὲ καὶ λέοντος |image,
 |post |likeness
 χρυσοῦ ἀπέφθου ἔλκουσαν |cottage; |scale, a unit ἑκα. οὗτος
 |post |of weight
 ὁ λέων, ἐπίτε |burn down ὁ ἐν Δελφοῖσι νηὸς, |fall down
 ἀπὸ τῶν |brick ἐπὶ γὰρ τούτοις |establish καὶ νῦν
 κεῖται ἐν τῷ Κορινθίῳ |treasury , ἔλκων¹ |cottage; |post
 |seventh |a measure of |melt away from αὐτοῦ |fourth
 |weight
 |a measure of weight

1.51

|complete; do ἂ ὁ Κροῖσος ταῦτα ἀπέπεμπε ἐς Δελφούς, καὶ
 |religious duty
 τάδε ἄλλα ἅμα τοῖσι, |mixing bowl for wine, 'θεῖ μεγάλους,
 χρύσειον καὶ ἀργύρεον, τῶν ὁ μὲν χρύσεος ἔκειτο ἐπὶ

¹ weighing ² weight

he had finished the sacrifice, he melted down a vast quantity of gold, and of it he wrought half-plinths making them six palms in length and three in breadth, and in height one palm; and their number was one hundred and seventeen. Of these four were of pure gold weighing two talents and a half each, and others of gold alloyed with silver weighing two talents. And he caused to be made also an image of a lion of pure gold weighing ten talents; which lion, when the temple of Delphi was being burnt down, fell from off the half-plinths, for upon these it was set, and is placed now in the treasury of the Corinthians, weighing six talents and a half, for three talents and a half were melted away from it.

1.51

So Croesus having finished all these things sent them to Delphi, and with them these besides:— two mixing bowls of great size, one of gold and the other of silver, of which the golden bowl was placed on

*vocabulary***ἀμφορεύς** -ος (m) amphora**ἀνάθημα** -τος (n, 3) consecrated gift

~thesis

ἀνατίθῃμι consecrate, lay on, impute;
(mp) reproach**ἀποπέμπω** send away ~pomp**ἀργύρεος** silver ~Argentina**ἀργυροῦς** silver**ἀριστερός** left-hand**γωνία** corner, angle**εἵνατος** ninth**εἴσειμι** go in; come in range; come to
mind ~ion**ἑξακόσιοι** 600**ἐπιγράφω** scratch, graze ~photograph**ἐπιμιμνήσκομαι** remember, speak

about ~mnemonic

ἡμιτάλαντον a measure of weight
~hemisphere**θησαυρός** treasury ~treasure**κατακαίω** burn down ~caustic**μετακινέω** (ῖ) move; change**μίν** him, her, it**νῆός** temple, shrine**οὐδέτερος** neither**περιρραντήριον** whisk, sprinkler**πίθος** barrel, big jar**ῥέω** flow ~rheostat**σταθμός** cottage; post**συντυγχάνω** fall in with; happen**χωρέω** withdraw, give way to (+dat)

~heir

χῶρος place ~heir

δεξιὰ ἐσιόντι ἐς τὸν νηόν, ὁ δὲ ἀργύρεος ἐπ' ἀριστερά.
 μετεκινήθησαν δὲ καὶ οὗτοι ὑπὸ τὸν νηὸν κατακαέντα καὶ
 ὁ μὲν χρύσεος κείται ἐν τῷ Κλαζομενίων θησαυρῷ, ἔλκων
 σταθμὸν εἵνατον ἡμιτάλαντον καὶ ἔτι δυνώδεκα μνέας, ὁ δὲ
 ἀργύρεος ἐπὶ τοῦ προνηίου τῆς γωνίης, χωρέων ἀμφορέας
 ἑξακοσίους· ἐπικίρνεται γὰρ ὑπὸ Δελφῶν Θεοφανίοισι.
 φασὶ δὲ μιν Δελφοὶ Θεοδώρου τοῦ Σαμίου ἔργον εἶναι,
 καὶ ἐγὼ δοκέω· οὐ γὰρ τὸ συντυχὸν φαίνεται μοι ἔργον
 εἶναι. καὶ πίθους τε ἀργυρέους τέσσερας ἀπέπεμψε, οἱ
 ἐν τῷ Κορινθίων θησαυρῷ ἐστᾶσι, καὶ περιρραντήρια
 δύο ἀνέθηκε, χρύσεόν τε καὶ ἀργύρεον, τῶν τῷ χρυσέῳ
 ἐπιγέγραπται Λακεδαιμονίων φαμένων εἶναι ἀνάθημα,
 οὐκ ὀρθῶς λέγοντες· ἔστι γὰρ καὶ τοῦτο Κροίσου,
 ἐπέγραψε δὲ τῶν τις Δελφῶν Λακεδαιμονίοισι βουλόμενος
 χαρίζεσθαι, τοῦ ἐπιστάμενος τὸ οὖνομα οὐκ ἐπιμνήσομαι.
 ἀλλ' ὁ μὲν παῖς, δι' οὗ τῆς χειρὸς ῥέει τὸ ὕδωρ,
 Λακεδαιμονίων ἐστί, οὐ μέντοι τῶν γε περιρραντηρίων
 οὐδέτερον. ἄλλα τε ἀναθήματα οὐκ

δεξιὰ |go in ἐς τὸν |temple ὃ δὲ |silver ἐπ' |left-hand
 |move; change δὲ καὶ οὗτοι ὑπὸ τὸν |tem- |burn down καὶ
 |ple
 ὁ μὲν χρύσεος κείται ἐν τῷ Κλαζομενίων |treasury , ἔλκων
 |cottage; |ninth |a measure of weight ἑξήκοντα μνέας, ὁ δὲ
 |post
 |silver ἐπὶ τοῦ προνηίου τῆς |corner, , χωρέων |amphora
 |angle
 |600 ἐπικίρνεται γὰρ ὑπὸ Δελφῶν Θεοφανίοισι.
 φασὶ δὲ μιν Δελφοὶ Θεοδώρου τοῦ Σαμίου ἔργον εἶναι,
 καὶ ἐγὼ δοκέω· οὐ γὰρ τὸ |fall in with; happen ... μοι ἔργον
 εἶναι. καὶ |barrel, big jar ἡγυρέους τέσσερας |send away , οἷ
 ἐν τῷ Κορινθίων |treasury ἐστᾶσι, καὶ |whisk, sprinkler
 δύο |consecrate, lay on, impute; |silver , τῶν τῷ χρυσέῳ
 (mp) reproach
 |graze Λακεδαιμονίων φασὶ εἶναι |consecrated gift
 οὐκ ὀρθῶς λέγοντες· ἔστι γὰρ καὶ τοῦτο Κροίσου,
 |graze δὲ τῶν τις Δελφῶν Λακεδαιμονίοισι βουλόμενος
 χαρίζεσθαι, τοῦ ἐπιστάμενος τὸ οὐνομα οὐκ ἐπιμνήσομαι.
 ἀλλ' ὁ μὲν παῖς, δι' οὗ τῆς χειρὸς ῥέει τὸ ὕδωρ,
 Λακεδαιμονίων ἐστί, οὐ μέντοι τῶν γε |whisk, sprinkler
 |neither . ἄλλα τε |consecrated gift ἔχ

the right hand as one enters the temple, and the silver on the left, but the places of these also were changed after the temple was burnt down, and the golden bowl is now placed in the treasury of the people of Clazomenai, weighing eight and a half talents and twelve pounds over, while the silver one is placed in the corner of the vestibule and holds six hundred amphors (being filled with wine by the Delphians on the feast of the Theophania): this the people of Delphi say is the work of Theodoros the Samian, and, as I think, rightly, for it is evident to me that the workmanship is of no common kind: moreover Croesus sent four silver wine-jars, which stand in the treasury of the Corinthians, and two vessels for lustral water, one of gold and the other of silver, of which the gold one is inscribed "from the Lacedemonians," who say that it is their offering: therein however they do not speak rightly; for this also is from Croesus, but one of the Delphians wrote the inscription upon it, desiring to gratify the Lacedemonians; and his name I know but will not make mention of it. The boy through whose hand the water flows is from the Lacedemonians, but neither of the vessels for lustral water. And many other votive offerings Croesus

vocabulary

αἰχμή spear point ~acute
ἀνατίθῃμι consecrate, lay on, impute;
 (mp) reproach
ἀποπέμπω send away ~pomp
ἀργύρεος silver ~Argentina
ἀρτοκόπος baker
δειρή neck, throat, mane
εἶδωλον phantom, unreal image ~wit
εἰκών -όνος (f, 3) image, likeness
ἐντέλλω (mp) command
ἐπειρωτάω consult, ask
ἐπίσημον mark, badge
ἐπίσημος marked, significant

ζώνη girdle; waist, loins ~zone
κυκλοτερής rounded (by wear) ~cycle
λόγχη spear point; lot
νηός temple, shrine
ξυστός lance, javelin
πάθη passivity, suffering
Πέρσης Persian
στερεός solid, firm ~stereo
στρατός common people/soldiers
 ~strategy
τρίπηχυς 3 cubits long
χεῦμα -τος (n, 3) plating
 χρηστήριον oracle, response

ἐπίσημα πολλὰ ἀπέπεμψε ἅμα τούτοισι ὁ Κροῖσος, καὶ χεύματα ἀργύρεα κυκλοτερέα, καὶ δὴ καὶ γυναικὸς εἶδωλον χρύσειον τρίπηχυ, τὸ Δελφοὶ τῆς ἀρτοκόπου τῆς Κροίσου εἰκόνα λέγουσι εἶναι. πρὸς δὲ καὶ τῆς ἐώντου γυναικὸς τὰ ἀπὸ τῆς δειρῆς ἀνέθηκε ὁ Κροῖσος καὶ τὰς ζώνας.

1.52

ταῦτα μὲν ἐς Δελφούς ἀπέπεμψε, τῷ δὲ Ἀμφιάρεω, πυθόμενος αὐτοῦ τὴν τε ἀρετὴν καὶ τὴν πάθην, ἀνέθηκε σάκος τε χρύσειον πᾶν ὁμοίως καὶ αἰχμὴν στερεὴν πᾶσαν χρυσέην, τὸ ξυστὸν τῇσι λόγχῃσι ἐὼν ὁμοίως χρύσειον· τὰ ἔτι καὶ ἀμφοτέρω ἐς ἐμὲ ἦν κείμενα ἐν Θήβῃσι καὶ Θηβέων ἐν τῷ νηῷ τοῦ Ἰσμηνίου Ἀπόλλωνος.

1.53

τοῖσι δὲ ἄγειν μέλλουσι τῶν Λυδῶν ταῦτα τὰ δῶρα ἐς τὰ ἱρὰ ἐνετέλλετο ὁ Κροῖσος ἐπειρωτᾶν τὰ χρηστήρια εἰ στρατεύεται ἐπὶ Πέρσας Κροῖσος καὶ εἴ τινα στρατὸν

ἐπίσημα πολλά |send away ἅμα τούτοις ὁ Κροῖσος,
καὶ |plating |silver |rounded , καὶ δὴ καὶ γυναῖκας
|phantom χρύσειον |3 cubits ὁ Δελφοὶ τῆς |baker τῆς
|long
Κροίσου |image, λέγουσι εἶναι. πρὸς δὲ καὶ τῆς ἐωντοῦ
|likeness
γυναῖκας τὰ ἀπὸ τῆς |neck, |consecrate, lay on, im- καὶ τὰς
|throat, |pute; (mp) reproach
|mane
|girdle; .
|waist

1.52

ταῦτα μὲν ἐς Δελφοὺς |send away , τῷ δὲ Ἀμφιάρεω,
πυθόμενος αὐτοῦ τὴν τε ἀρετὴν καὶ τὴν |passivity, |consecrate, lay on,
|suffering |impute; (mp) re-
σάκος τε χρύσειον πᾶν ὁμοίως καὶ |spear |solid, firm... ἄσαν
|point
χρυσέην, τὸ |lance, τῇσι |spear ἐὼν ὁμοίως χρύσειον· τὰ
|javelin |point; lot
ἔτι καὶ ἀμφότερα ἐς ἐμὲ ἦν κείμενα ἐν Θήβησι καὶ Θηβέων
ἐν τῷ |temple ᾧ Ἰσμηνίου Ἀπόλλωνος.

1.53

τοῖσι δὲ ἄγειν μέλλουσι τῶν Λυδῶν ταῦτα τὰ δῶρα ἐς
τὰ ἱρὰ ἐνετέλλετο ὁ Κροῖσος |consult, ask τὰ |oracle, εἰ
|response
στρατεύεται ἐπὶ Πέρσας Κροῖσος καὶ εἴ τινα |army

sent with these, not specially distinguished, among which are certain castings of silver of a round shape, and also a golden figure of a woman three cubits high, which the Delphians say is a statue of the baker of Croesus. Moreover Croesus dedicated the ornaments from his wife's neck and her girdles.

1.52

These are the things which he sent to Delphi; and to Amphiaraos, having heard of his valour and of his evil fate, he dedicated a shield made altogether of gold throughout, and a spear all of solid gold, the shaft being of gold also as well as the two points, which offerings were both remaining even to my time at Thebes in the temple of Ismenian Apollo.

1.53

To the Lydians who were to carry these gifts to the temples Croesus gave charge that they should ask the Oracles this question also,— whether Croesus should march against the Persians, and if so, whether he should join with himself any army of

*vocabulary***ἀνάθημα** -τος (n, 3) consecrated gift

~thesis

ἀνατίθμι consecrate, lay on, impute;
(mp) reproach**ἀναφέρω** bring up ~bear**ἀποπέμπω** send away ~pomp**δωρέω** give ~donate**Ἑλλην** Greek**ἐξεύρημα** invention, discovery**ἐξευρίσκω** find; discover ~eureka**ἐπειρωτάω** consult, ask**θεοπρόπιον** prophecy ~theology**μαντεῖον** prophetic warning ~mantis**μίν** him, her, it**πάγχυ** entirely**Πέρσης** Persian**προλέγω** prophecy, proclaim; preselect

~legion

στρατός common people/soldiers

~strategy

συμβουλευώ give advice; (mid) consult

~volunteer

συντρέχω rush together**ὑπερήδομαι** rejoice greatly **χρηστήριον** oracle, response

ἀνδρῶν προσθέοιτο φίλον, ὥς δὲ ἀπικόμενοι ἐς τὰ ἀπεπέμφθησαν, οἱ Λυδοὶ ἀνέθεσαν τὰ ἀναθήματα, ἐχρέωντο τοῖσι χρηστηρίοισι λέγοντες «Κροῖσος ὁ Λυδῶν τε καὶ ἄλλων ἐθνέων βασιλεύς, νομίσας τάδε μαντήια εἶναι μούνα ἐν ἀνθρώποισι, ὑμῖν τε ἄξια δῶρα ἔδωκε τῶν ἐξευρημάτων, καὶ νῦν ὑμέας ἐπειρωτᾷ εἰ στρατεύηται ἐπὶ Πέρσας καὶ εἴ τινα στρατὸν ἀνδρῶν προσθέοιτο σύμμαχον.» οἷ μὲν ταῦτα ἐπειρώτων, τῶν δὲ μαντηῶν ἀμφοτέρων ἐς τῶντὸ αἰ γινῶμαι συνέδραμον, προλέγουσαι Κροίσῳ, ἣν στρατεύηται ἐπὶ Πέρσας, μεγάλην ἀρχὴν μιν καταλύσειν· τοὺς δὲ Ἑλλήνων δυνατωτάτους συνεβούλευόν οἱ ἐξευρόντα φίλους προσθέσθαι.

1.54

ἐπεῖτε δὲ ἀνενειχθέντα τὰ θεοπρόπια ἐπύθετο ὁ Κροῖσος, ὑπερήσθη τε τοῖσι χρηστηρίοισι, πάγχυ τε ἐλπίσας καταλύσειν τὴν Κύρου βασιληίην, πέμψας αὖτις ἐς Πυθῶν Δελφοὺς δωρέεται, πυθόμενος αὐτῶν τὸ πλῆθος, κατ'

ἀνδρῶν προσθείτο φίλον, ὥς δὲ ἀπικόμενοι ἐς τὰ
|send away , οἱ Λυδοὶ |consecrate, lay `on,|consecrated gift
|impute; (mp) re-
ἐχρέωντο τοῖσι |oracle, response|προῶντες «Κροῖσος ὁ
Λυδῶν τε καὶ ἄλλων ἐθνέων βασιλεὺς, νομίσας τάδε
|prophetic εἶναι μούνα ἐν ἀνθρώποισι, ὑμῖν τε ἄξια δῶρα
|warning
ἔδωκε τῶν |invention, , καὶ νῦν ὑμέας |consult, ask εἰ
|discovery
στρατεύηται ἐπὶ Πέρσας καὶ εἴ τινα |army ἀνδρῶν
προσθείτο σύμμαχον.» οἱ μὲν ταῦτα |consult, ask ,
τῶν δὲ |prophetic ἀμφοτέρων ἐς τῶντὸ αἰ γινώμαι
|warning
|rush together , |prophecy, pro- Κροῖσῳ, ἣν στρατεύηται
|claim; preselect
ἐπὶ Πέρσας, μεγάλην ἀρχὴν μιν καταλύσειν· τοὺς
δὲ |Greek δυνατωτάτους |give advice; (mid)|find;
|consult |discover
φίλους προσθέσθαι.

1.54

ἐπεῖτε δὲ |bring up τὰ |prophecy ἐπύθετο ὁ Κροῖσος,
|rejoice τε τοῖσι |oracle, response, |entirely τε ἐλπίσας
|greatly
καταλύσειν τὴν Κύρου βασιληίην, πέμψας αὐτὶς ἐς Πυθῶν
Δελφοὺς δωρέεται, πυθόμενος αὐτῶν τὸ πλῆθος, κατ’

men as his friends. And when the Lydians had arrived at the places to which they had been sent and had dedicated the votive offerings, they inquired of the Oracles and said: "Croesus, king of the Lydians and of other nations, considering that these are the only true Oracles among men, presents to you gifts such as your revelations deserve, and asks you again now whether he shall march against the Persians, and if so, whether he shall join with himself any army of men as allies." They inquired thus, and the answers of both the Oracles agreed in one, declaring to Croesus that if he should march against the Persians he should destroy a great empire: and they counselled him to find out the most powerful of the Hellenes and join these with himself as friends.

1.54

So when the answers were brought back and Croesus heard them, he was delighted with the oracles, and expecting that he would certainly destroy the kingdom of Cyrus, he sent again to Pytho, and presented to the men of Delphi, having ascertained the number of them, two

vocabulary

αἰδέομαι respect, be ashamed

ἄτέλεια incompleteness, imperfection;
exemption

δωρέω give ~donate

ἐμφορέω carry in ~bear

ἐπειρωτάω consult, ask

ἡδομαι be pleased, enjoy ~hedonism

ἡμίονος (f) mule ~hemisphere

μαντεῖον prophetic warning ~mantis

μουναρχίη monarchy

οὐδαμὸς not anyone

ποδαβρός tender-footed

πολυχρόνιος ancient; long-lived

πολυψήφιος (ι) pebbly

προεδρία pride of place

προμαντήιη right of consulting an
oracle first

στατήρ -ος (m) pound; type of coin

χρηστηριάζω prophesy

ἄνδρα δύο στατήρσι ἕκαστον χρυσοῦ. Δελφοὶ δὲ ἀντὶ τούτων ἔδοσαν Κροίσῳ καὶ Λυδοῖσι προμαντήϊν καὶ ἀτελείην¹ καὶ προεδρίην, καὶ ἐξεῖναι τῷ βουλομένῳ αὐτῶν γίνεσθαι Δελφὸν ἐς τὸν αἰὲ χρόνον.

1.55

δωρησάμενος δὲ τοὺς Δελφοὺς ὁ Κροῖσος ἐχρηστηριάζετο τὸ τρίτον· ἐπεῖτε γὰρ δὴ παρέλαβε τοῦ μαντείου ἀληθείην, ἐνεφορέετο αὐτοῦ. ἐπειρώτα δὲ τάδε χρηστηριαζόμενος, εἴ οἱ πολυχρόνιος ἔσται ἡ μοναρχία. ἡ δὲ Πυθίη οἱ χρᾶ τάδε.

Ἄλλ' ὅταν ἡμίονος βασιλεὺς Μήδοισι γένηται, καὶ τότε, Λυδὲ ποδαβρέ, πολυψήφida παρ' Ἑρμον φεύγειν μηδὲ μένειν μηδ' αἰδεῖσθαι κακός εἶναι.

1.56

τούτοισι ἐλθοῦσι τοῖσι ἔπεσι ὁ Κροῖσος πολλόν τι μάλιστα πάντων ἥσθη, ἐλπίζων ἡμίονον οὐδαμὰ ἀντ'

¹ free of charge

ἄνδρα δύο |pound; type of coin ' χρυσοῦ. Δελφοὶ δὲ ἀντὶ
 τούτων ἔδοσαν Κροίσῳ καὶ Λυδοῖσι |right of consulting αἱ
 |incompleteness; exemption ἱεροεδρίην, καὶ ἐξεῖναι τῷ βουλομένῳ αὐτῶν
 γίνεσθαι Δελφὸν ἐς τὸν αἰεὶ χρόνον.

1.55

δωρησάμενος δὲ τοὺς Δελφοὺς ὁ Κροῖσος |prophecy
 τὸ τρίτον· ἐπεῖτε γὰρ δὴ παρέλαβε τοῦ |prophetic ἀληθείην,
 |carry in αὐτοῦ. |consult, ask ὃ ἐτάδε |prophecy ,
 εἴ οἱ |ancient; long-lived . καὶ ἡ |monarchy . ἡ δὲ Πυθίη οἱ χρᾶ
 τάδε.

Ἄλλ' ὅταν |mule βασιλεὺς Μήδοισι γένηται, καὶ τότε,
 Λυδὲ |tender-footed|pebbly παρ' Ἑρμον φεύγειν μηδὲ
 μένειν μηδ' |respect, be ashamed εἶναι.

1.56

τούτοις ἐλθοῦσι τοῖσι ἔπεσι ὁ Κροῖσος πολλόν τι μάλιστα
 πάντων |be pleased, enjoy |mule οὐδαμὰ ἀντ'

¹ free of charge

staters of gold for each man: and in for this the Delphians gave to Croesus and to the Lydians precedence in consulting the Oracle and freedom from all payments, and the right to front seats at the games, with this privilege also for all time, that any one of them who wished should be allowed to become a citizen of Delphi.

1.55

And having made presents to the men of Delphi, Croesus consulted the Oracle the third time; for from the time when he learnt the truth of the Oracle, he made abundant use of it. And consulting the Oracle he inquired whether his monarchy would endure for a long time. And the Pythian prophetess answered him thus:

“But when it cometh to pass that a mule of the Medes shall be monarch then by the pebbly Hermos, O Lydian delicate-footed, flee and stay not, and be not ashamed to be called a coward.”

1.56

By these lines when they came to him Croesus was pleased more than by all the rest, for he supposed that a mule would never be

*vocabulary***ἀρχαῖος** ancient, from the beginning

~oligarch

βασιλεύω be king**ἐκχωρέω** depart, back off, cede**Ἑλλήν** Greek**ἐνθεν** thence**ἐξανίστημι** raise, bring/send out**εὖς** good, brave, noble**ἱστορέω** inquire; relate**ἵστωρ** referee, witness ~wit**κάρτα** very much ~χράτος**μακεδνός** tall, high**μεταβαίνω** change the subject ~basis**ὄον** οὖ type of fruit**οὐδαμῇ** nowhere**πολυπλάνητος** nomadic**προέχω** be ahead, jut forward; mid:

have before one

προκρίνω (ι) choose first**προσκτάομαι** get, win as well**φροντίζω** consider, ponder

ἀνδρὸς βασιλεύσειν Μήδων, οὐδ' ὦν αὐτὸς οὐδὲ οἱ ἐξ
 αὐτοῦ παύσεσθαι κοτὲ τῆς ἀρχῆς. μετὰ δὲ ταῦτα
 ἐφρόντιζε ἱστορέων τοὺς ἂν Ἑλλήνων δυνατωτάτους
 ἐόντας προσκτῆσαιτο φίλους, ἱστορέων δὲ εὔρισκε
 Λακεδαιμονίους καὶ Ἀθηναίους προέχοντας τοὺς μὲν τοῦ
 Δωρικοῦ γένεος τοὺς δὲ τοῦ Ἰωνικοῦ. ταῦτα γὰρ ἦν τὰ
 προκεκριμένα, ἐόντα τὸ ἀρχαῖον τὸ μὲν Πελασγικόν¹ τὸ δὲ
 Ἑλληνικὸν ἔθνος. καὶ τὸ μὲν οὐδαμῇ κω ἐξεχώρησε, τὸ δὲ
 πολυπλάνητον κάρτα. ἐπὶ μὲν γὰρ Δευκαλίωνος βασιλέος
 οἴκεε γῆν τὴν Φθιώτιν, ἐπὶ δὲ Δώρου τοῦ Ἑλληνος τὴν
 ὑπὸ τὴν Ὀσσαν τε καὶ τὸν Ὀλυμπον χώραν, καλεομένην
 δὲ Ἰστιαιώτιν· ἐκ δὲ τῆς Ἰστιαιώτιδος ὥς ἐξανέστη
 ὑπὸ Καδμείων, οἴκεε ἐν Πίνδῳ Μακεδνὸν καλεόμενον·
 ἐνθεῦτεν δὲ αὐτὶς ἐς τὴν Δρυοπίδα μετέβη καὶ ἐκ τῆς
 Δρυοπίδος οὕτω ἐς Πελοπόννησον ἐλθὼν Δωρικὸν ἐκλήθη.

¹ a vague name for the pre-Greek indigenes of Greece

ἀνδρὸς |be king Μήδων, οὐδ' ὦν αὐτὸς οὐδὲ οἱ ἐξ
 αὐτοῦ παύσεσθαι κοτὲ τῆς ἀρχῆς. μετὰ δὲ ταῦτα
 |consider, |istoréōn τοὺς ἄν |Greek δυνατωτάτους
 |ponder
 ἐόντας |get, win as well φίλους, |istoréōn δὲ εὗρισκε
 Λακεδαιμονίους καὶ Ἀθηναίους |be ahead, τοὺς μὲν τοῦ
 |have before
 Δωρικοῦ γένεος τοὺς δὲ τοῦ Ἰωνικοῦ. ταῦτα γὰρ ἦν τὰ
 |choose first , ἐόντα τὸ |ancient, from ἐν Πελασγικόν¹ τὸ δὲ
 |the beginning
 Ἑλληνικὸν ἔθνος. καὶ τὸ μὲν |nowhere αὖ |depart, back τὸ δὲ
 |off, cede
 |nomadic |very much ἰ μὲν γὰρ Δευκαλίωνος βασιλέος
 οἴκεε γῆν τὴν Φθιώτιν, ἐπὶ δὲ Δώρου τοῦ |Greek τὴν
 ὑπὸ τὴν Ὀσσαν τε καὶ τὸν Ὀλυμπον χώραν, καλεομένην
 δὲ Ἰστιαιώτιν· ἐκ δὲ τῆς Ἰστιαιώτιδος ὡς |raise, bring/send
 |out
 ὑπὸ Καδμείων, οἴκεε ἐν Πίνδῳ |tall, high καλεόμενον·
 |thence δὲ αὐτίς ἐς τὴν Δρυοπίδα |change the subject . ἥς
 Δρυοπίδος οὕτω ἐς Πελοπόννησον ἐλθὼν Δωρικὸν ἐκλήθη.

¹ a vague name for the pre-Greek indigenes of Greece

ruler of the Medes instead of a man, and accordingly that he himself and his heirs would never cease from their rule. Then after this he gave thought to inquire which people of the Hellenes he should esteem the most powerful and gain over to himself as friends. And inquiring he found that the Lacedemonians and the Athenians had the pre-eminence, the first of the Dorian and the others of the Ionian race. For these were the most eminent races in ancient time, the second being a Pelasgian and the first a Hellenic race: and the one never migrated from its place in any direction, while the other was very exceedingly given to wanderings; for in the reign of Deucalion this race dwelt in Pthiotis, and in the time of Doros the son of Hellen in the land lying below Ossa and Olympos, which is called Histiaiotis; and when it was driven from Histiaiotis by the sons of Cadmos, it dwelt in Pindos and was called Makednian; and thence it moved afterwards to Dryopis, and from Dryopis it came finally to Peloponnesus, and began to be called Dorian.

vocabulary

ἀτρεκής precise, certain

γλῶσσα tongue, language ~glossary

Ἑλλην Greek

μεταβαίνω change the subject ~basis

μεταβάλλω alter, transform

μεταβολή change, exchange

μεταμανθάνω unlearn, relearn

ὁμόγλωσσος speaking the same
language

ὄμouρος bordering

οὐδαμὸς not anyone

περιοικέω dwell around

πόλισμα buildings of a city

σύνοικος fellow inhabitant

τεκμαίρομαι conclude, declare from
evidence

τηνικαῦτα at that time, in that case

χαρακτήρ -ος (m) stamp; characteristic

1.57

ἦντινα δὲ γλῶσσαν ἔσαν οἱ Πελασγοί, οὐκ ἔχω ἀτρεκέως εἰπεῖν. εἰ δὲ χρεόν ἐστι τεκμαιρόμενον λέγειν τοῖσι νῦν ἔτι ἐοῦσι Πελασγῶν τῶν ὑπὲρ Τυρσηνῶν Κρηστῶνα πόλιν οἰκεόντων, οἳ ὅμουροι κοτὲ ἦσαν τοῖσι νῦν Δωριεῦσι καλεομένοισι οἴκεον δὲ τηνικαῦτα γῆν τὴν νῦν Θεσσαλιῶτιν καλεομένην, καὶ τῶν Πλακίην τε καὶ Σκυλάκην Πελασγῶν οἰκησάντων ἐν Ἑλλησπόντῳ, οἳ σύνοικοι ἐγένοντο Ἀθηναίοισι, καὶ ὅσα ἄλλα Πελασγικὰ ἔοντα πολίσματα τὸ οὔνομα μετέβαλε· εἰ τούτοις τεκμαιρόμενον δεῖ λέγειν, ἦσαν οἱ Πελασγοὶ βάρβαρον γλῶσσαν ἰέντες. εἰ τοίνυν ἦν καὶ πᾶν τοιοῦτο τὸ Πελασγικόν, τὸ Ἀττικὸν ἔθνος ἐὸν Πελασγικὸν ἅμα τῇ μεταβολῇ τῇ ἐς Ἑλλήνας καὶ τὴν γλῶσσαν μετέμαθε. καὶ γὰρ δὴ οὔτε οἱ Κρηστωνιῆται οὐδαμοῖσι τῶν νῦν σφέας περιουκεόντων εἰσὶ ὁμόγλωσσοι οὔτε οἱ Πλακιηνοί, σφίσι δὲ ὁμόγλωσσοι· δηλοῦσί τε ὅτι τὸν ἠνείκαντο γλώσσης χαρακτῆρα μεταβαίνοντες ἐς ταῦτα τὰ χωρία, τοῦτον

1.57

ἦντινα δὲ |tongue, |language ἔσαν οἱ Πελασγοί, οὐκ ἔχω |precise, |certain
 εἰπεῖν. εἰ δὲ χρεόν ἐστι |conclude, declare |from evidence λέγειν τοῖσι
 νῦν ἔτι εἴοσι Πελασγῶν τῶν ὑπὲρ Τυρσηνῶν Κρηστῶνα
 πόλιν οἰκόντων, οἱ |bordering κοτὲ ἦσαν τοῖσι νῦν
 Δωριεῦσι καλομένοισι οἴκεον δὲ |at that time, |in that case γῆν τὴν
 νῦν Θεσσαλιῶτιν καλομένην, καὶ τῶν Πλακίην τε καὶ
 Σκυλάκην Πελασγῶν οἰκησάντων ἐν Ἑλλησπόντῳ, οἱ
 |fellow |inhabitant ἐγένοντο Ἀθηναίοισι, καὶ ὅσα ἄλλα Πελασγικά
 ἔοντα |buildings of a city οὖνομα |alter, |transform εἰ τούτοις
 |conclude, declare δεῖ λέγειν, ἦσαν οἱ Πελασγοὶ βάρβαρον
 |from evidence
 |tongue, |language ἱέντες. εἰ τοίνυν ἦν καὶ πᾶν τοιοῦτο τὸ
 Πελασγικόν, τὸ Ἀττικὸν ἔθνος ἐὼν Πελασγικὸν ἅμα τῇ
 |change, |exchange τῇ ἐς |Greek καὶ τὴν |tongue, |unlearn, |relearn . καὶ
 γὰρ δὴ οὔτε οἱ Κρηστωνιῆται |not anyone τῶν νῦν σφέας
 |dwell around εἰς |speaking |the |same language οὔτε οἱ Πλακιηνοί, σφίσι
 δὲ |speaking |the |same language δηλοῦσί τε ὅτι τὸν ἠνείκαντο |tongue, |language
 |stamp; |characteristic char- |change the subject ταῦτα τὰ χωρία, τοῦτον

1.57

What language however the Pelasgians used to speak I am not able with certainty to say. But if one must pronounce judging by those that still remain of the Pelasgians who dwelt in the city of Creston above the Tyrsenians, and who were once neighbours of the race now called Dorian, dwelling then in the land which is now called Thessaliotis, and also by those that remain of the Pelasgians who settled at Plakia and Skylake in the region of the Hellespont, who before that had been settlers with the Athenians, and of the natives of the various other towns which are really Pelasgian, though they have lost the name,— if one must pronounce judging by these, the Pelasgians used to speak a Barbarian language. If therefore all the Pelasgian race was such as these, then the Attic race, being Pelasgian, at the same time when it changed and became Hellenic, unlearnt also its language. For the people of Creston do not speak the same language with any of those who dwell about them, nor yet do the people of Phakia, but they speak the same language one as the other: and by this it is proved that they still keep unchanged the form of language which they brought with them when

*vocabulary***ἀποσχίζω** sever**ἀσθενής** weak**γλῶσσα** tongue, language ~glossary**διασπάω** tear apart ~spatula**διαχράομαι** use habitually; lend out;
reveal**διαχραύω** use; kill**διαχρέομαι** use habitually; lend out;
reveal**εὖς** good, brave, noble**θύω** (ῥ) rush; sacrifice ~θύω**ιδιώτης** -ου (m, 1) private; a layman**καταφαίνω** declare, make visible**κρέας** -ως (n) meat ~creatine**λέβης** -τος (m, 3) kettle, basin**ὄον** οῦ type of fruit**οὐδαμὸς** not anyone**προσχωρέω** go to, join, support**συχνός** long; many; extensive**τέρας** -ως (n, 3) omen, fetish**τυραννεύω** be an absolute ruler

ἔχουσι ἐν φυλακῇ.

1.58

τὸ δὲ Ἑλληνικὸν γλώσση μὲν ἐπείτε ἐγένετο αἰεὶ κοτε τῇ αὐτῇ διαχρᾶται, ὥς ἐμοὶ καταφαίνεται εἶναι· ἀποσχισθὲν μέντοι ἀπὸ τοῦ Πελασγικοῦ ἐὼν ἀσθενές, ἀπὸ μικροῦ τεο τὴν ἀρχὴν ὀρμώμενον αὔξεται ἐς πλῆθος τῶν ἐθνέων, Πελασγῶν μάλιστα προσκεχωρηκότων αὐτῷ καὶ ἄλλων ἐθνέων βαρβάρων συχνῶν. πρόσθε δὲ ὧν ἔμοιγε δοκέει οὐδὲ τὸ Πελασγικὸν ἔθνος, ἐὼν βάρβαρον, οὐδαμὰ μεγάλως αὐξηθῆναι.

1.59

τούτων δὴ ὧν τῶν ἐθνέων τὸ μὲν Ἀττικὸν κατεχόμενόν τε καὶ διεσπασμένον ἐπυνθάνετο ὁ Κροῖσος ὑπὸ Πεισιστράτου τοῦ Ἱπποκράτεος τοῦτον τὸν χρόνον τυραννεύοντος Ἀθηναίων. Ἱπποκράτει γὰρ ἐόντι ἰδιώτῃ καὶ θεωρόντι τὰ Ὀλύμπια τέρας ἐγένετο μέγα· θύσαντος γὰρ αὐτοῦ τὰ ἱρὰ οἱ λέβητες ἐπεστεῶτες καὶ κρεῶν

ἔχουσι ἐν φυλακῇ.

1.58

τὸ δὲ Ἑλληνικὸν ^{|tongue,}
^{|language} μὲν ἐπεῖτε ἐγένετο αἰεὶ κοτε τῇ
 αὐτῇ διαχρᾶται, ὥς ἐμοὶ ^{|declare,}
^{|visible} make εἶναι· ^{|sever}
 μέντοι ἀπὸ τοῦ Πελασγικοῦ ἐόν ^{|weak} , ἀπὸ σμικροῦ
 τεο τὴν ἀρχὴν ὀρμώμενον αὕξεται ἐς πλῆθος τῶν
 ἐθνέων, Πελασγῶν μάλιστα ^{|go to, join, support} αὐτῷ καὶ
 ἄλλων ἐθνέων βαρβάρων συχνῶν. πρόσθε δὲ ὦν ἔμοιγε
 δοκέει οὐδὲ τὸ Πελασγικὸν ἔθνος, ἐὼν βάρβαρον, οὐδαμὰ
 μεγάλως αὕξηθῆναι.

1.59

τούτων δὴ ὦν τῶν ἐθνέων τὸ μὲν Ἀττικὸν κατεχόμενόν
 τε καὶ ^{|tear apart} ἐπυνθάνετο ὁ Κροῖσος ὑπὸ
 Πεισιστράτου τοῦ Ἱπποκράτεος τοῦτον τὸν χρόνον
^{|be an absolute ruler} Ἰγναίων. Ἱπποκράτει γὰρ ἐόντι ^{|private; a layman}
 καὶ θεωροῦντι τὰ Ὀλύμπια ^{|omen,}
^{|fetish} ἐγένετο ^{|big,}
^{|great,} ^{|rush; sacrifice}
 γὰρ αὐτοῦ τὰ ἱρὰ οἱ ^{|kettle,}
^{|basin} ἐπεστεῶτες ^{|mar-}
^{|velous} ^{|meat}

they migrated to these places.

1.58

As for the Hellenic race, it has used ever the same language, as I clearly perceive, since it first took its rise; but since the time when it parted off feeble at first from the Pelasgian race, setting forth from a small beginning it has increased to that great number of races which we see, and chiefly because many Barbarian races have been added to it besides. Moreover it is true, as I think, of the Pelasgian race also, that so far as it remained Barbarian it never made any great increase.

1.59

Of these races then Croesus was informed that the Athenian was held subject and torn with faction by Peisistratos the son of Hippocrates, who then was despot of the Athenians. For to Hippocrates, when as a private citizen he went to view the Olympic games, a great marvel had occurred. After he had offered the sacrifice, the caldrons which were standing upon the hearth, full of pieces of flesh

vocabulary

ἄνευ away from; not having; not needing ~Sp. sin
ἀνίημι urge, impel; release ~jet
ἀπείπον refuse, renounce, declare
δάω learn ~didactic
δῆθεν strong form of δῆ
ἐκφεύγω flee from, escape ~fugitive
ἐμπλεος full of ~plethora
ζεῦγος -ους (n, 3) team of animals ~zygote
ζέω boil ~eczema
ἡμίονος (f) mule ~hemisphere
θεάομαι look at, behold, consider ~theater
καταφρονέω scorn; think of
κυρέω come upon, come up against; obtain
μηχανάομαι build, contrive ~mechanism
μίν him, her, it

οὐκω no longer
παραινέω recommend, exhort, warn
πάραλος seaside
παρατυγχάνω happen to be present
προίστημι put forward; (+gen) be head of, guard ~station
προσδοκάω expect
προστάς vestibule, porch
στασιάζω revolt, be divided
στάσις -εως (f) placing; faction
στασιώτης -ου (m, 1) partisan
συλλέγω collect, assemble ~legion
συμβουλεύω give advice; (mid) consult ~volunteer
τεκνοποιός begetting, bearing children
τέρας -ως (n, 3) omen, fetish
τοιόσδε such
τυραννίς -δος (f) tyranny
ὑπεράκριος beyond the heights
ὑπερβάλλω cause to go beyond; delay ~ballistic

τε ἑόντες ἔμπλεοι καὶ ὕδατος ἄνευ πυρὸς ἔζεσαν καὶ ὑπερέβαλον. Χίλων δὲ ὁ Λακεδαιμόνιος παρατυχῶν καὶ θεησάμενος τὸ τέρας συνεβούλευε Ἴπποκράτει· πρῶτα μὲν γυναῖκα μὴ ἄγεσθαι τεκνοποιὸν ἐς τὰ οἰκία, εἰ δὲ τυγχάνει ἔχων, δευτέρα τὴν γυναῖκα ἐκπέμπειν, καὶ εἴ τίς οἱ τυγχάνει ἔὼν παῖς, τοῦτον ἀπείπασθαι.

οὕκων ταῦτα παραινέσαντος Χίλωνος πείθεσθαι θέλειν τὸν Ἴπποκράτεια· γενέσθαι οἱ μετὰ ταῦτα τὸν Πεισίστρατον τοῦτον, ὃς στασιαζόντων τῶν παράλων καὶ τῶν ἐκ τοῦ πεδίου Ἀθηναίων, καὶ τῶν μὲν προεστεῶτος Μεγακλέος τοῦ Ἀλκμέωνος, τῶν δὲ ἐκ τοῦ πεδίου Λυκούργου Ἀριστολαΐδew, καταφρονήσας τὴν τυραννίδα ἤγειρε τρίτην στάσιν· συλλέξας δὲ στασιώτας καὶ τῷ λόγῳ τῶν ὑπερακρίων προστὰς μηχανᾶται τοιάδε. τραματίσας ἑωυτόν τε καὶ ἡμιόνους ἤλασε ἐς τὴν ἀγορὴν τὸ ζεῦγος ὥς ἐκπεφευγὸς τοὺς ἐχθρούς, οἳ μιν ἐλαύνοντα ἐς ἀγρὸν ἠθέλησαν ἀπολέσαι δῆθεν, ἐδέετό τε τοῦ δήμου φυλακῆς τινος πρὸς αὐτοῦ κυρῆσαι, πρότερον

τε ἑόντες ἔμπλεοι καὶ ὕδατος ἄνευ πυρὸς |boil καὶ

|cause to go be- Χίλων δὲ ὁ Λακεδαιμόνιος |happen to be present
|yond; delay

θηεσάμενος τὸ |omen, |give advice; Ἴπποκράτει πρῶτα
|fetish (mid) consult

μὲν γυναῖκα μὴ ἄγεσθαι |begetting, bear- τὰ οἰκία, εἰ δὲ
|ing children

τυγχάνει ἔχων, δευτέρα τὴν γυναῖκα ἐκπέμπειν, καὶ εἴ τις

οἱ τυγχάνει ἐὼν παῖς, τοῦτον |refuse, re-
|nounce, declare

|no longer ταῦτα |recommend, ex- Χίλωνος πείθεσθαι
|hort, warn

θέλειν τὸν Ἴπποκράτεια γενέσθαι οἱ μετὰ ταῦτα τὸν

Πεισίστρατον τοῦτον, ὃς |revolt, be divided ὦν |seaside καὶ

τῶν ἐκ τοῦ πεδίου Ἀθηναίων, καὶ τῶν μὲν προεστεῶτος

Μεγακλέος τοῦ Ἀλκμέωνος, τῶν δὲ ἐκ τοῦ πεδίου

Λυκούργου Ἀριστολαΐδew, |scorn; think of τὴν |tyranny

ἤγειρε τρίτην |placing; |collect, δὲ |partisan καὶ τῷ
|faction assemble

λόγῳ τῶν |beyond the|vestibule, |build, |such
|heights |porch |contrive

τρωματίσας ἐωυτόν τε καὶ |mule ἤλασε ἐς τὴν ἀγορὴν

τὸ |team ὥς |flee τοὺς ἐχθρούς, οἳ μιν ἐλαύνοντα

ἐς ἀγρὸν ἠθέλησαν ἀπολέσαι δῆθεν, ἐδέετό τε τοῦ δήμου

φυλακῆς τινος πρὸς αὐτοῦ |come upon ρότερον

and of water, boiled without fire under them and ran over. And Chilon the Lacedemonian, who chanced to have been present and to have seen the marvel, advised Hippocrates first not to bring into his house a wife to bear him children, and secondly, if he happened to have one already, to dismiss her, and if he chanced to have a son, to disown him.

When Chilon had thus recommended, Hippocrates, they say, was not willing to be persuaded, and so there was born to him afterwards this Peisistratos; who, when the Athenians of the shore were at feud with those of the plain, Megacles the son of Alcmaion being leader of the first faction, and Lycurgos the son of Aristolaïdes of that of the plain, aimed at the despotism for himself and gathered a third party. So then, after having collected supporters and called himself leader of the men of the mountain-lands, he contrived a device as follows:— he inflicted wounds upon himself and upon his mules, and then drove his car into the market-place, as if he had just escaped from his opponents, who, as he alleged, had desired to kill him when he was driving into the country: and he asked the commons that he might obtain some protection from

vocabulary

ἀκρόπολις -εως (f) citadel, high part of
 a city ~acute
ἀποβάλλω throw away, lose
ἀποδείκνυμι (ō) show, point out;
 appoint; (mid) declare
ἀποδέχομαι accept ~doctrine
δορυφόρος spear-bearing
ἐξαπατάω trick, cheat ~apatosaurus
ἐξελαύνω drive out, exile ~elastic
εὐδοκιμέω be esteemed
θέσμιος fixed, settled, lawful
κάρτα very much ~κράτος
καταλέγω relate in detail, choose;
 enroll ~legion
κορύνη club, shepherd's staff

κορυνηφόρος club-bearing
μεταλλάσσω change; exchange
μίν him, her, it
νέμω to allot, to pasture ~nemesis
ὀπίσθεν behind, hereafter
οὐκω no longer
περιελαύνω drive around
ρίζω furnish with roots ~rhizome
στασιάζω revolt, be divided
στάσις -εως (f) placing; faction
στασιώτης -ου (m, f) partisan
στρατηγία office of command, strategy
 ~strategy
συνταράσσω mess up
τυραννίς -δος (f) tyranny

εὐδοκμήσας ἐν τῇ πρὸς Μεγαρέας γενομένη στρατηγίῃ,
 Νίσαιάν τε ἐλὼν καὶ ἄλλα ἀποδεξάμενος μεγάλα ἔργα.
 ὁ δὲ δῆμος ὁ τῶν Ἀθηναίων ἐξαπατηθεὶς ἔδωκέ οἱ τῶν
 ἀστῶν καταλέξας ἄνδρας τούτους οἱ δορυφόροι μὲν
 οὐκ ἐγένοντο Πεισιστράτου, κορυνηφόροι δέ· ξύλων γὰρ
 κορύνας ἔχοντες εἶποντό οἱ ὅπισθε. συνεπαναστάντες
 δὲ οὗτοι ἅμα Πεισιστράτῳ ἔσχον τὴν ἀκρόπολιν. ἔνθα
 δὴ ὁ Πεισίστρατος ἦρχε Ἀθηναίων, οὔτε τιμὰς τὰς
 εἰσέσας συνταράξας οὔτε θέσμια μεταλλάξας, ἐπὶ τε τοῖσι
 κατεστεῶσι ἔνεμε τὴν πόλιν κοσμέων καλῶς τε καὶ εὖ.

1.60

μετὰ δὲ οὐ πολλὸν χρόνον τῶντὸ φρονήσαντες οἳ τε τοῦ
 Μεγακλέος στασιῶται καὶ οἱ τοῦ Λυκούργου ἐξελαύνουσί
 μιν. οὕτω μὲν Πεισίστρατος ἔσχε τὸ πρῶτον Ἀθήνας, καὶ
 τὴν τυραννίδα οὐκω κάρτα ἐρριζωμένην ἔχων ἀπέβαλε.

Οἱ δὲ ἐξελάσαντες Πεισίστρατον αὐτὶς ἐκ νέης ἐπ'
 ἀλλήλοισι ἐστασίασαν. περιελανόμενος δὲ τῇ στάσι

|be esteemed ἐν τῇ πρὸς Μεγαρέας γενομένη στρατηγίῃ,
 Νίσαιάν τε ἐλὼν καὶ ἄλλα ἀποδεξάμενος μεγάλα ἔργα.
 ὁ δὲ δῆμος ὁ τῶν Ἀθηναίων |trick, cheat ἔδωκέ οἱ τῶν
 ἀστῶν |relate in detail, |νδρας τούτους οἱ |spear-bearing |μὲν
 |choose; enroll
 οὐκ ἐγένοντο Πεισιστράτου, |club-bearing δέ· ξύλων γὰρ
 |club ἔχοντες εἶποντό οἱ ὅπισθε. συνεπαναστάντες
 δὲ οὗτοι ἅμα Πεισιστράτῳ ἔσχον τὴν |citadel . ἔνθα
 δὴ ὁ Πεισίστρατος ἦρχε Ἀθηναίων, οὔτε τιμὰς τὰς
 εἰσάσας |mess up οὔτε |fixed, |change; , ἐπὶ τε τοῖσι
 |settled, |exchange
 |lawful
 κατεστεῶσι |distribute. ' πολλὴν κοσμέων καλῶς τε καὶ εὖ.

1.60

μετὰ δὲ οὐ πολλὸν χρόνον τῶντ' ὅντων φρονήσαντες οἳ τε τοῦ
 Μεγακλέος |partisan καὶ οἱ τοῦ Λυκούργου |drive out
 μιν. οὕτω μὲν Πεισίστρατος ἔσχε τὸ πρῶτον Ἀθήνας, καὶ
 τὴν |tyranny |no |very |furnish with roots ... |throw away, lose
 |longer |much
 Οἱ δὲ |drive out Πεισίστρατον αὐτίς ἐκ νέης ἐπ'
 ἀλλήλοισι |revolt, be di-|drive around δὲ τῇ |placing;
 |vied |faction

them, for before this he had gained reputation in his command against the Megarians, during which he took Nisaia and performed other signal service. And the commons of the Athenians being deceived gave him those men chosen from the dwellers in the city who became not indeed the spear-men of Peisistratos but his club-men; for they followed behind him bearing wooden clubs. And these made insurrection with Peisistratos and obtained possession of the Acropolis. Then Peisistratos was ruler of the Athenians, not having disturbed the existing magistrates nor changed the ancient laws; but he administered the State under that constitution of things which was already established, ordering it fairly and well.

1.60

However, no long time after this the followers of Megacles and those of Lycurgos joined together and drove him forth. Thus Peisistratos had obtained possession of Athens for the first time, and thus he lost the power before he had it firmly rooted.

But those who had driven out Peisistratos became afterwards at feud with one another again. And Megacles, harassed by the party strife, sent a message to

*vocabulary***ἀπαλλαξείω** wish to get rid of**ἀπαλλάσσω** free from, remove; be freed, depart**ἄρμα** -τος (n, 3) chariot**δάκτυλος** finger, toe**εἰσβιβάζω** put aboard**Ἑλλην** Greek**ἐνδείκνυμι** (ὅ) address, consider**ἐνδέχομαι** accept, admit, be possible**ἐντέλλω** (mp) command**ἐπικηρυκεύω** send a herald, ambassador**εὐειδής** good-looking ~wit**εὐήθεια** goodheartedness, silliness**εὐήθης** good-hearted; simple**εὐπρεπής** comely, decent; specious**ἡλίθιος** idle, vain, foolish**κάτοδος** descent, return, cycle**μέγαθος** tall, big (person)**μηχανάομαι** build, contrive
~mechanism**πανοπλία** suit of armor**πῆχυς** forearm, cubit**προδείκνυμι** (ὅ) show by example; foreshadow**πρόδρομος** running ahead**προπέμπω** send, send ahead ~pomp**σκευάζω** prepare, collect**σοφία** skill; wisdom ~sophistry**σχῆμα** -τος (n, 3) form, figure**τοιόσδε** such**τυραννίς** -δος (f) tyranny

ὁ Μεγακλῆς ἐπεκηρυκεῖτο Πεισιστράτῳ, εἰ βούλοιτό οἱ τὴν θυγατέρα ἔχειν γυναῖκα ἐπὶ τῇ τυραννίδι. ἐνδεξαμένου δὲ τὸν λόγον καὶ ὁμολογήσαντος ἐπὶ τούτοις Πεισιστράτου, μηχανῶνται δὴ ἐπὶ τῇ κατόδῳ πρῆγμα εὐηθέστατον, ὥς ἐγὼ εὐρίσκω, μακρῶ, ἐπεὶ γε ἀπεκρίθη ἐκ παλαιτέρου τοῦ βαρβάρου ἔθνους τὸ Ἑλληνικὸν ἐόν καὶ δεξιώτερον καὶ εὐθεΐης ἡλιθίου ἀπηλλαγμένον μᾶλλον, εἰ καὶ τότε γε οὗτοι ἐν Ἀθηναίοις τοῖσι πρώτοις λεγομένοις εἶναι Ἑλλήνων σοφίην μηχανῶνται τοιάδε.

ἐν τῷ δήμῳ τῷ Παιανίῃ ἦν γυνὴ τῇ οὔνομα ἦν Φύη, μέγαθος ἀπὸ τεσσέρων πηχέων ἀπολείπουσα τρεῖς δακτύλους καὶ ἄλλως εὐειδής· ταύτην τὴν γυναῖκα σκευάσαντες πανοπλίῃ, ἐς ἄρμα ἐσβιβάσαντες καὶ προδέξαντες σχῆμα οἷόν τι ἔμελλε εὐπρεπέστατον φανέεσθαι ἔχουσα, ἤλαυνον ἐς τὸ ἄστυ, προδρόμους κήρυκας προπέμψαντες· οἱ τὰ ἐντεταλμένα ἡγόρευον ἀπικόμενοι ἐς τὸ ἄστυ, λέγοντες τοιάδε· «ὦ Ἀθηναῖοι, δέκεσθε ἀγαθῷ νόφ Πεισίστρατον, τὸν αὐτὴ ἡ Ἀθηναίη

ὁ Μεγακλῆς |send a herald, Πεισιστράτῳ, εἰ βούλοιτό
 |ambassador
 οἱ τὴν θυγατέρα ἔχειν γυναῖκα ἐπὶ τῇ |tyranny
 ἐνδεξαμένου δὲ τὸν λόγον καὶ ὁμολογήσαντος ἐπὶ τούτοις
 Πεισιστράτου, |build, contrive δὴ ἐπὶ τῇ |descent, re-|ῥήγμα
 |turn, cycle
 |good-hearted; , ὥς ἐγὼ εὐρίσκω, μακρῶ, ἐπεὶ γε ἀπεκρίθη
 |simple
 ἐκ παλαιτέρου τοῦ βαρβάρου ἔθνεος τὸ Ἑλληνικὸν ἐὼν καὶ
 δεξιώτερον καὶ |goodheart-|idle, vain, foolish...γμένον μᾶλλον,
 |edness,
 εἰ καὶ τότε γε οὗτοι ἐν Ἀθηναίοις τοῖσι πρώτοις
 |silliness
 λεγομένοις εἶναι |Greek σοφίῃν |build, contrive |such
 ἐν τῷ δήμῳ τῷ Παιανίῃ ἦν γυνὴ τῇ οὖνομα ἦν
 Φύη, |tall, big ἀπὸ τεσσέρων |forearm, ἀπολείπουσα τρεῖς
 |cubit
 |finger, toe καὶ ἄλλως |good-looking αὐτὴν τὴν γυναῖκα
 |prepare, collect πανοπλίῃ, ἐς |chariot |put aboard καὶ
 προδέξαντες |form, οἷόν τι ἔμελλε |comely, decent;
 |figure |specious
 φανέεσθαι ἔχουσα, ἤλαυνον ἐς τὸ ἄστυ, |running
 |ahead
 κήρυκας |send, send ahead οἱ τὰ ἐντεταλμένα ἡγόρευον
 ἀπικόμενοι ἐς τὸ ἄστυ, λέγοντες |such «ὦ Ἀθηναῖοι,
 δέκεσθε ἀγαθῷ νόῳ Πεισίστρατον, τὸν αὐτὴν ἢ Ἀθηναίῃ

Peisistratos asking whether he was willing to have his daughter to wife on condition of becoming despot. And Peisistratos having accepted the proposal and made an agreement on these terms, they contrived with a view to his a device the most simple by far, as I think, that ever was practised, considering at least that it was devised at a time when the Hellenic race had been long marked off from the Barbarian as more skilful and further removed from foolish simplicity, and among the Athenians who are accounted the first of the Hellenes in ability. In the deme of Paiania there was a woman whose name was Phya, in height four cubits all but three fingers, and also fair of form. This woman they dressed in full armour and caused her to ascend a chariot and showed her the bearing in which she might best beseem her part, and so they drove to the city, having sent on heralds to run before them, who, when they arrived at the city, spoke that which had been commanded them, saying as follows: “O Athenians, receive with favour Peisistratos, whom Athene herself, honouring him most of all men, brings back to her

vocabulary

ἀκρόπολις -εως (f) citadel, high part of
 a city ~acute
ἀπαλλάσσω free from, remove; be
 freed, depart
ἀπολαμβάνω receive, recover, take
 aside, cut off ~epilepsy
διαφοιτέω wander, cast about
ἐναγής cursed, polluted
ἐνάγω lead in/on; arraign
ἔχθρη hate
ἱστορέω inquire; relate

κατάγω lead down/home; land
 ~demagogue
καταλλάσσω exchange; make up with
κρύπτω hide, cover ~cryptic
νεηνίης young person
νεόγαμος newlywed
ὁμολογίη agreement, consent
προσεύχομαι pray, vow
στασιώτης -ου (m, 1) partisan
τυραννίς -δος (f) tyranny
φάτις -τος (f) report, rumor ~fame

τιμήσασα ἀνθρώπων μάλιστα κατάγει ἐς τὴν ἐωυτῆς ἀκρόπολιν.» οἱ μὲν δὴ ταῦτα διαφοιτέοντες ἔλεγον· αὐτίκα δὲ ἐς τε τοὺς δήμους φάτις ἀπίκετο ὡς Ἀθηναίη Πεισίστρατον κατάγει, καὶ οἱ ἐν τῷ ἄστει πειθόμενοι τὴν γυναῖκα εἶναι αὐτὴν τὴν θεὸν προσεύχοντό τε τὴν ἄνθρωπον καὶ ἐδέκοντο Πεισίστρατον.

1.61

ἀπολαβὼν δὲ τὴν τυραννίδα τρόπῳ τῷ εἰρημένῳ ὁ Πεισίστρατος κατὰ τὴν ὁμολογίην τὴν πρὸς Μεγακλέα γενομένην γαμέει τοῦ Μεγακλέος τὴν θυγατέρα. οἶα δὲ παίδων τέ οἱ ὑπαρχόντων νεηνιέων καὶ λεγομένων ἐναγέων εἶναι τῶν Ἀλκμεωνιδέων, οὐ βουλόμενός οἱ γενέσθαι ἐκ τῆς νεογάμου γυναικὸς τέκνα ἐμίσγετό οἱ οὐ κατὰ νόμον. τὰ μὲν νυν πρῶτα ἔκρυπτε ταῦτα ἢ γυνή, μετὰ δὲ εἴτε ἱστορεύσῃ εἴτε καὶ οὐ φράζει τῇ ἐωυτῆς μητρί, ἢ δὲ τῷ ἀνδρί. ὀργῇ δὲ ὡς εἶχε καταλλάσσετο τὴν ἔχθρην τοῖσι στασιώτῃσι. μαθὼν δὲ ὁ Πεισίστρατος τὰ ποιούμενα ἐπ' ἐωυτῷ ἀπαλλάσσετο ἐκ τῆς χώρας τὸ

τιμήσασα ἀνθρώπων μάλιστα |lead down/home; land | τῆς
 |citadel . . . οἱ μὲν δὴ ταῦτα |wander, cast about ἔειπον·
 αὐτίκα δὲ ἔς τε τοὺς δήμους |report, ἀπίκητο ὡς Ἀθηναίη
 |rumor
 Πεισίστρατον |lead down/home; land τῷ ἄστεϊ πειθόμενοι
 τὴν γυναῖκα εἶναι αὐτὴν τὴν θεὸν |pray, vow τε τὴν
 ἄνθρωπον καὶ ἐδέκοντο Πεισίστρατον.

1.61

|receive, recover, |take|tyranny τρόπῳ τῷ εἰρημένῳ ὁ
 |aside, cut off
 Πεισίστρατος κατὰ τὴν |agreement, τὴν πρὸς Μεγακλέα
 |consent
 γενομένην γαμέει τοῦ Μεγακλέος τὴν θυγατέρα. οἶα
 δὲ παίδων τέ οἱ ὑπαρχόντων |young καὶ λεγομένων
 |person
 ἐναγέων εἶναι τῶν Ἀλκμεωνιδέων, οὐ βουλόμενός οἱ
 γενέσθαι ἐκ τῆς |newlywed γυναικὸς τέκνα ἐμίσγετό οἱ οὐ
 κατὰ νόμον. τὰ μὲν νυν πρῶτα |hide, ταῦτα ἢ γυνή,
 |cover
 μετὰ δὲ εἴτε |inquire; εἴτε καὶ οὐ φράζει τῇ ἐωυτῆς μητρὶ,
 |relate
 ἢ δὲ τῷ ἀνδρὶ. ὀργῇ δὲ ὡς εἶχε |exchange; make τὴν |hate
 |up with
 τοῖσι |partisan μαθὼν δὲ ὁ Πεισίστρατος τὰ ποιούμενα
 ἐπ' ἐωυτῷ |free from, remove; τῆς χώρας τὸ
 |be freed, depart

Acropolis.” So the heralds went about hither and thither saying this, and straightway there came to the demes in the country round a report that Athene was bringing Peisistratos back, while at the same time the men of the city, persuaded that the woman was the very goddess herself, were paying worship to the human creature and receiving Peisistratos.

1.61

So having received back the despotism in the manner which has been said, Peisistratos according to the agreement made with Megacles married the daughter of Megacles; but as he had already sons who were young men, and as the descendants of Alcmaion were said to be under a curse, therefore not desiring that children should be born to him from his newly-married wife, he had only non-vaginal sex with her. And at first the woman kept this secret, but afterwards she told her mother, whether in answer to her inquiry or not I cannot tell; and the mother told her husband Megacles. He then was very indignant that he should be dishonoured by Peisistratos; and in his anger straightway he proceeded to compose his quarrel with the men of his faction.

And when Peisistratos heard of that which was being done against himself, he departed wholly from the land and

vocabulary

ἀνακτάομαι regain, revive; win over
ἀσπαστός gladly, with glad welcome
διαφύω grow between, intervene; be connected
δόσις -εως (f) gift, loan ~donate
δωτίνη (i) gift ~donate
ἐθελοντής -οῦ (m, 1) a volunteer
ἐλευθερία freedom
ἐνδέκατος eleventh ~decimal
ἐνθαῦτα there, here
ἐξαρτύω (ὑ) train, equip
ἴσχω restrain, hold back ~ischemia
κάτοδος descent, return, cycle

μισθωτός hired, hireling
παράπαν completely
προαιδέομαι be obliged to
προθυμία (ὑ) zeal, alacrity ~fume
προσρέω stream in
στασιώτης -ου (m, 1) partisan
στρατοπεδεύω encamp or take up station ~strategy
συναλίζω collect; eat with
τυραννίς -δος (f) tyranny
ὑπερβάλλω cause to go beyond; delay ~ballistic
χῶρος place ~heir

παράπαν, ἀπικόμενος δὲ ἐς Ἑρέτριαν ἐβουλεύετο ἅμα τοῖσι παισὶ. Ἰππίω δὲ γνώμη νικήσαντος ἀνακτᾶσθαι ὀπίσω τὴν τυραννίδα, ἐνθαῦτα ἤγειρον δωτίνας ἐκ τῶν πολλῶν αἵτινές σφι προαιδέοντό κού τι. πολλῶν δὲ μεγάλα παρασχόντων χρήματα, Θηβαῖοι ὑπερεβάλλοντο τῇ δόσι τῶν χρημάτων. μετὰ δέ, οὐ πολλῶ λόγῳ εἰπεῖν, χρόνος διέφνυ καὶ πάντα σφι ἐξήρτυτο ἐς τὴν κάτοδον· καὶ γὰρ Ἀργεῖοι μισθωτοὶ ἀπίκοντο ἐκ Πελοποννήσου, καὶ Νάξιός σφι ἀνὴρ ἀπιγμένος ἐθελοντής, τῷ οὖνομα ἦν Λύγδαμης, προθυμίην πλείστην παρείχετο, κομίσας καὶ χρήματα καὶ ἄνδρας.

1.62

ἐξ Ἑρετρίας δὲ ὀρμηθέντες διὰ ἐνδεκάτου ἔτεος ἀπίκοντο ὀπίσω, καὶ πρῶτον τῆς Ἀττικῆς ἴσχουσι Μαραθῶνα. ἐν δὲ τούτῳ τῷ χώρῳ σφι στρατοπεδευομένοισι οἳ τε ἐκ τοῦ ἄστεος στασιῶται ἀπίκοντο ἄλλοι τε ἐκ τῶν δήμων προσέρρεον, τοῖσι ἢ τυραννὶς πρὸ ἐλευθερίας ἦν ἀσπαστότερον. οὗτοι μὲν δὴ συνηλίζοντο, Ἀθηναίων δὲ οἱ

|completely, ἀπικόμενος δὲ ἐς Ἑρέτριαν ἐβουλεύετο ἅμα
 τοῖσι παισί. Ἰππῖω δὲ γνώμη νικήσαντος |regain, revive;
 |win over
 ὀπίσω τὴν |tyranny , |there, here ᾗ γειρον |gift ἐκ τῶν
 πολίων αἵτινές σφι |be obliged to κού τι. πολλῶν δὲ
 μεγάλα παρασχόντων χρήματα, Θηβαῖοι |cause to go be-
 |yond; delay
 τῇ |gift, loan ᾗ χρημάτων. μετὰ δέ, οὐ πολλῶ λόγῳ εἰπεῖν,
 χρόνος διέφυ καὶ πάντα σφι |train, ἐς τὴν |descent, re-
 |equip |turn, cycle
 καὶ γὰρ Ἀργεῖοι |hired, ἀπίκοντο ἐκ Πελοποννήσου,
 |hireling
 καὶ Νάξιός σφι ἀνὴρ ἀπιγμένος |a volunteer , τῷ οὐνομα
 ἦν Δύγδαμς, προθυμίην πλείστην παρείχετο, κομίσας καὶ
 χρήματα καὶ ἄνδρας.

1.62

ἐξ Ἑρετρίης δὲ ὀρμηθέντες διὰ |eleventh ἔτεος ἀπίκοντο
 ὀπίσω, καὶ πρῶτον τῆς Ἀττικῆς |hold back Μαραθῶνα.
 ἐν δὲ τούτῳ τῷ |place σφι |encamp or take up station οἳ τε
 ἐκ τοῦ ἄστεος |partisan ἀπίκοντο ἄλλοι τε ἐκ τῶν
 δήμων |stream in , τοῖσι ἢ |tyranny πρὸ ἐλευθερίας ἦν
 |glad, welcoming οὔτοι μὲν δὴ συνηλίζοντο, Ἀθηναίων δὲ οἱ

came to Eretria, where he took counsel together with his sons: and the advice of Hippias having prevailed, that they should endeavour to win back the despotism, they began to gather gifts of money from those States which owed them obligations for favours received: and many contributed great sums, but the Thebans surpassed the rest in the giving of money. Then, not to make the story long, time elapsed and at last everything was prepared for their return. For certain Argives came as mercenaries from the Peloponnesus, and a man of Naxos had come to them of his own motion, whose name was Lygdamis, and showed very great zeal in providing both money and men.

1.62

So starting from Eretria after the lapse of ten years they ed back; and in Attica the first place of which they took possession was Marathon. While they were encamping here, their partisans from the city came to them, and also others flowed in from the various demes, to whom despotic rule was more welcome than freedom. So these were gathering themselves together; but the Athenians in the city,

vocabulary

βόλος cast (a net, dice)

δίχτυον fishing net

ἐκπετάζω spread out, be scattered

ἐνθαῦτα there, here

ἐνθεάζω be inspired

ἐξάμετρος hexameter

ἐπάγω drive game; induce belief

~demagogue

θύννος tuna ~tuna

κάτειμι go down, disembark ~ion

μεταῦτις afterward, thereupon

οἰμάω rush, spring, swoop

πανστρατιῇ with the whole army

πομπή a sending, expedition ~pomp

πρόσειμι approach, draw near; add
~ion

ῥίπτω hurl

σεληναῖος moonlit

στρατιά army ~strategy

συλλαμβάνω seize, capture;
understand ~epilepsy

σύνειμι be with; have sex ~ion

τόνος pitch, stretching

χρησμολόγος prophesying

χρηστήριον oracle, response

ἐκ τοῦ ἄστεος, ἕως μὲν Πεισίστρατος τὰ χρήματα ἤγειρε,
καὶ μεταῦτις ὥς ἔσχε Μαραθῶνα, λόγον οὐδένα εἶχον·
ἐπεῖτε δὲ ἐπύθοντο ἐκ τοῦ Μαραθῶνος αὐτὸν πορεύεσθαι
ἐπὶ τὸ ἄστυ, οὕτω δὴ βοηθέουσι ἐπ' αὐτόν. καὶ οὗτοί
τε πανστρατιῇ ἦσαν ἐπὶ τοὺς κατιόντας καὶ οἱ ἀμφὶ
Πεισίστρατον, ὥς ὀρμηθέντες ἐκ Μαραθῶνος ἦσαν ἐπὶ
τὸ ἄστυ, ἐς τῶντ' οὖν συνιόντες ἀπικνέονται ἐπὶ Παλληνίδος
Ἀθηναίης ἱρόν, καὶ ἀντία ἔθεντο τὰ ὄπλα. ἐνθαῦτα θείῃ
πομπῇ χρεώμενος παρίσταται Πεισιστράτῳ Ἀμφίλυτος
ὁ Ἀκαρνὰν χρησμολόγος ἀνὴρ, ὅς οἱ προσιῶν χρᾶ ἐν
ἑξαμέτρῳ τόνῳ τάδε λέγων·

«ἔρριπται δ' ὁ βόλος, τὸ δὲ δίκτυον ἐκπεπέτασται, θύννοι
δ' οἰμήσουσι σεληναίης διὰ νυκτός.»

1.63

ὁ μὲν δὴ οἱ ἐνθεάζων χρᾶ τάδε, Πεισίστρατος δὲ συλλαβὼν
τὸ χρηστήριον καὶ φὰς δέκεσθαι τὸ χρησθὲν ἐπήγε τὴν
στρατιήν. Ἀθηναῖοι δὲ οἱ ἐκ τοῦ ἄστεος πρὸς ἄριστον

ἐκ τοῦ ἄστεος, ἕως μὲν Πεισίστρατος τὰ χρήματα ἤγειρε,

καὶ |afterward, |thereupon ὥς ἔσχε Μαραθῶνα, λόγον οὐδένα εἶχον·

ἐπεῖτε δὲ ἐπύθοντο ἐκ τοῦ Μαραθῶνος αὐτὸν πορεύεσθαι

ἐπὶ τὸ ἄστυ, οὕτω δὴ βοηθέουσι ἐπ' αὐτόν. καὶ οὗτοί

τε |with the whole ἄrmy ἐπὶ τοὺς |go down, disembark ἄμφι

Πεισίστρατον, ὥς ὀρμηθέντες ἐκ Μαραθῶνος ἦισαν ἐπὶ

τὸ ἄστυ, ἐς τῶντὸ |be with; have sex ἔονται ἐπὶ Παλληνίδος

Ἀθηναίης ἱρόν, καὶ ἀντία ἔθεντο τὰ ὄπλα. |there, here ἔειη

|a sending, |expedition κέόμενος παρίσταται Πεισιστράτῳ Ἀμφίλυτος

ὁ Ἀκαρνὰν |prophesying ἀνὴρ, ὅς οἱ |approach χρᾶ ἐν

|hexameter |pitch, |stretching ἔειπεν λέγων·

«|hurl δ' ὁ |cast (a |net, |fishing |spread out, |be|tuna
|dice) |net |scattered

δ' |rush, |moonlit διὰ νυκτός.»
|spring,
|swoop

1.63

ὁ μὲν δὴ οἱ |be inspired ἄρᾳ τάδε, Πεισίστρατος δὲ |seize, capture;
|understand

τὸ |oracle, καὶ φὰς δέκεσθαι τὸ χρησθὲν |drive game;
|response |induce belief

στρατήν. Ἀθηναῖοι δὲ οἱ ἐκ τοῦ ἄστεος πρὸς ἄριστον

so long as Peisistratos was collecting the money, and afterwards when he took possession of Marathon, made no account of it; but when they heard that he was marching from Marathon towards the city, then they went to the rescue against him. These then were going in full force to fight against the returning exiles, and the forces of Peisistratos, as they went towards the city starting from Marathon, met them just when they came to the temple of Athene Pallenis, and there encamped opposite to them. Then moved by divine guidance there came into the presence of Peisistratos Amphilytos the Arcarnanian, a soothsayer, who approaching him uttered an oracle in hexameter verse, saying thus:

“But now the cast hath been made and the net hath been widely extended, And in the night the tunnies will dart through the moon-lighted waters.”

1.63

This oracle he uttered to him being divinely inspired, and Peisistratos, having understood the oracle and having said that he accepted the prophecy which was uttered, led his army against the enemy. Now the Athenians from the city

vocabulary

ἀλίζω gather, assemble
ἀναβιβάζω make to mount, promote
αὐτόθεν from that place
διασκεδάννυμι (ῥ) scatter, disperse
εἰσπίπτω fall into, rush in
ἐνθαῦτα there, here
ἐντέλλω (mp) command
ἐπίκουρος ally; mercenary ~cereal
ἐπιτεχνάομαι contrive
καταλαμβάνω seize, understand, catch,
 overtake; (mp) happen ~epilepsy

κύβος cube, die
μετεξέτεροι (+gen) some ones of
ὄμηρος insurance, hostage
παραμένω stay with ~remain
προπέμπω send, send ahead ~pomp
ρίζω furnish with roots ~rhizome
σοφός skilled, clever, wise
σύνειμι be with; have sex ~ion
σύνοδος meeting, conjunction
τηνικαῦτα at that time, in that case
τυραννίς -δος (f) tyranny

τετραμμένοι ἦσαν δὴ τηνικαῦτα, καὶ μετὰ τὸ ἄριστον
μετεξέτεροι αὐτῶν οἳ μὲν πρὸς κύβους οἳ δὲ πρὸς ὕπνον.
οἳ δὲ ἀμφὶ Πεισίστρατον ἐσπεσόντες τοὺς Ἀθηναίους
τρέπουσι.

φευγόντων δὲ τούτων βουλὴν ἐνθαῦτα σοφωτάτην
Πεισίστρατος ἐπιτεχνᾷται, ὅπως μήτε ἀλίσθειν¹ ἔτι οἱ
Ἀθηναῖοι διεσκεδασμένοι τε εἶεν· ἀναβιβάσας τοὺς παῖδας
ἐπὶ ἵππους προέπεμπε, οἳ δὲ καταλαμβάνοντες τοὺς
φεύγοντας ἔλεγον τὰ ἐντεταλμένα ὑπὸ Πεισιστράτου,
θαρσέειν τε κελεύοντες καὶ ἀπιέναι ἕκαστον ἐπὶ τὰ
έωντοῦ.

1.64

πειθομένων δὲ τῶν Ἀθηναίων, οὕτω δὴ Πεισίστρατος τὸ
τρίτον σχὼν Ἀθήνας ἐρρίζωσε τὴν τυραννίδα ἐπικούροισί
τε πολλοῖσι καὶ χρημάτων συνόδοισι, τῶν μὲν αὐτόθεν
τῶν δὲ ἀπὸ Στρυμόνος ποταμοῦ συνιόντων, ὁμήρους τε
τῶν παραμεινάντων Ἀθηναίων καὶ μὴ αὐτίκα φεγόντων

¹ the Athenians

τετραμμένοι ἦσαν δὴ |at that time, καὶ μετὰ τὸ ἄριστον
|in that case
|(+gen) some ones of. οἱ μὲν πρὸς |cube, die ἡ δὲ πρὸς ὕπνον.
οἱ δὲ ἀμφὶ Πεισίστρατον |fall into, rush in ὥς Ἀθηναίους
τρέπουσι.

φευγόντων δὲ τούτων βουλὴν |there, here |skilled, clever,
|wise
Πεισίστρατος |contrive , ὅκως μήτε |gather, ¹ ἔτι οἱ
|assemble
Ἀθηναῖοι |scatter, disperse τε εἶεν· |make to mount, ὥς παῖδας
|promote
ἐπὶ ἵππους |send, send ahead δὲ |seize, understand, catch, ὥς
|overtake; (mp) happen
φεύγοντας ἔλεγον τὰ ἐντεταλμένα ὑπὸ Πεισιστράτου,
θαρσέειν τε κελεύοντες καὶ ἀπιέναι ἕκαστον ἐπὶ τὰ
έωντοῦ.

1.64

πειθομένων δὲ τῶν Ἀθηναίων, οὕτω δὴ Πεισίστρατος τὸ
τρίτον σχὼν Ἀθήνας |furnish with|tyranny |ally; mercenary
|roots
τε πολλοῖσι καὶ χρημάτων |meeting, , τῶν μὲν |from that place
|conjunction
τῶν δὲ ἀπὸ Στρυμόνος ποταμοῦ |be with; have|insurance, γε
|sex |hostage
τῶν |stay with Ἀθηναίων καὶ μὴ αὐτίκα φευγόντων

¹ the Athenians

were just at that time occupied with the morning meal, and some of them after their meal with games of dice or with sleep; and the forces of Peisistratos fell upon the Athenians and put them to flight.

Then as they fled, Peisistratos devised a very skilful counsel, to the end that the Athenians might not gather again into one body but might remain scattered abroad. He mounted his sons on horseback and sent them before him; and overtaking the fugitives they said that which was commanded them by Peisistratos, bidding them be of good cheer and that each man should depart to his own home.

1.64

Thus then the Athenians did, and so Peisistratos for the third time obtained possession of Athens, and he firmly rooted his despotism by many foreign mercenaries and by much revenue of money, coming partly from the land itself and partly from about the river Strymon, and also by taking as hostages the sons of those Athenians who had remained in

vocabulary

βασιλεύω be king

ἐξορύσσω dig out

ἐπιτρέπω entrust, decide, allow

~trophy

ἐποψίς view over; oversight

εὐτυχέω be lucky, prosper, succeed

καθαίρω clean

καταστρέφω overturn, subdue

~catastrophe

κατυπέρτερος having the upper hand

λόγιος learned, eloquent; oracle

μεταφορέω transfer; change

προσπταίω batter; be set back

τυραννεύω be an absolute ruler

χῶρος place ~heir

παῖδας λαβὼν καὶ καταστήσας ἐς Νάξον καὶ γὰρ ταύτην
 ὁ Πεισίστρατος κατεστρέψατο πολέμῳ καὶ ἐπέτρεψε
 Λυγδάμῃ πρὸς τε ἔτι τούτοισι τὴν νῆσον Δήλον καθήρας
 ἐκ τῶν λογίων καθήρας δὲ ὤδε· ἐπ' ὅσον ἔποιψις τοῦ ἱροῦ
 εἶχε, ἐκ τούτου τοῦ χώρου παντὸς ἐξορύξας τοὺς νεκροὺς
 μετεφόρεε ἐς ἄλλον χώρον τῆς Δήλου. καὶ Πεισίστρατος
 μὲν ἐτυράννευε Ἀθηνέων, Ἀθηναίων δὲ οἱ μὲν ἐν τῇ μάχῃ
 ἐπεπτώκεσαν, οἱ δὲ αὐτῶν μετ' Ἀλκμεωνιδέων ἔφευγον ἐκ
 τῆς οἰκῆίης.

1.65

τοὺς μὲν νυν Ἀθηναίους τοιαῦτα τὸν χρόνον τοῦτον
 ἐπυνθάνετο ὁ Κροῖσος κατέχοντα, τοὺς δὲ Λακεδαιμονίους
 ἐκ κακῶν τε μεγάλων πεφευγότας καὶ ἐόντας ἤδη τῷ
 πολέμῳ κατυπερτέρους Τεγεγτέων. ἐπὶ γὰρ Λέοντος
 βασιλεύοντος¹ καὶ Ἡγησικλέος ἐν Σπάρτῃ τοὺς ἄλλους
 πολέμους εὐτυχεύοντες οἱ Λακεδαιμόνιοι πρὸς Τεγεγέτας
 μούνοὺς προσέπταιον. τὸ δὲ ἔτι πρότερον τούτων καί

¹ Here ἐπὶ = during the time of.

παῖδας λαβὼν καὶ καταστήσας ἐς Νάξον καὶ γὰρ ταύτην
 ὁ Πεισίστρατος |overturn, subdue πολέμῳ καὶ |entrust, de-
 |cide, allow
 Λυγδάμῃ πρὸς τε ἔτι τούτοισι τὴν νῆσον Δῆλον |clean
 ἐκ τῶν λογίων |clean δὲ ὦδε· ἐπ' ὅσον |view over; oversight
 εἶχε, ἐκ τούτου τοῦ |place παντὸς |dig out τοὺς νεκροὺς
 |transfer; ἐς ἄλλον |place τῆς Δήλου. καὶ Πεισίστρατος
 |change
 μὲν |be an absolute ruler ἄν, Ἀθηναίων δὲ οἱ μὲν ἐν τῇ μάχῃ
 ἐπεπτώκεσαν, οἱ δὲ αὐτῶν μετ' Ἀλκμεωνιδέων ἔφευγον ἐκ
 τῆς οἰκῆς.

1.65

τοὺς μὲν νυν Ἀθηναίους τοιαῦτα τὸν χρόνον τοῦτον
 ἐπυνθάνετο ὁ Κροῖσος κατέχοντα, τοὺς δὲ Λακεδαιμονίους
 ἐκ κακῶν τε μεγάλων πεφευγότας καὶ ἐόντας ἤδη τῷ
 πολέμῳ |having the upper Τεγεητέων. ἐπὶ γὰρ Λέοντος
 |hand
 |be king ¹ καὶ Ἡγησικλέος ἐν Σπάρτῃ τοὺς ἄλλους
 πολέμους |be lucky, pros- |Λακεδαιμόνιοι πρὸς Τεγεήτας
 |per, succeed
 μούνοὺς |batter; be set back ἔτι πρότερον τούτων καί

¹ Here ἐπὶ = during the time of.

the land and had not at once fled, and placing them in the hands of Naxos; for this also Peisistratos conquered by war and delivered into the charge of Lygdamis. Moreover besides this he cleansed the island of Delos in obedience to the oracles; and his cleansing was of the following kind:— so far as the view from the temple extended he dug up all the dead bodies which were buried in this part and removed them to another part of Delos. So Peisistratos was despot of the Athenians; but of the Athenians some had fallen in the battle, and others of them with the sons of Alcmaion were exiles from their native land.

1.65

Such was the condition of things which Croesus heard was prevailing among the Athenians during this time; but as to the Lacedemonians he heard that they had escaped from great evils and had now got the better of the Tegeans in the war. For when Leon and Hegesicles were kings of Sparta, the Lacedemonians, who had good success in all their other wars, suffered disaster in that alone which they waged against the men of Tegea. Moreover in the times before this they had the worst laws of almost all

*vocabulary***ἄδελφιδέος** -οῦ nephew**ἀπρόσμικτος** isolated**βασιλεύω** be king**δίζημαι** seek ~zeal**δίζω** be in doubt ~dilemma**δόκιμος** trustworthy; excellent**εἴσειμι** go in; come in range; come to mind ~ion**Ἑλλην** Greek**ἐπιτροπέω** administrate**εὐνομία** good order or governance

~nemesis

κακόννομος ill-governed**μαντεύομαι** to divine ~mantis**μεθίστημι** change, substitute; withdraw; change sides; (mid) send away ~station

away ~station

μεταβάλλω alter, transform**νηός** temple, shrine**νόμιμος** customary, legal, natural**παραβαίνω** go with; transgress ~basis**πίων** (ῑ) fat, rich, fertile ~pine **χρηστήριον** oracle, response

κακονομώτατοι ἦσαν σχεδὸν πάντων Ἑλλήνων κατὰ τε σφέας αὐτοὺς καὶ ξείνοισι ἀπρόσμικτοι· μετέβαλον δὲ ὧδε ἐς εὐνομίην. Λυκούργου τῶν Σπαρτιητέων δοκίμου ἀνδρὸς ἐλθόντος ἐς Δελφοὺς ἐπὶ τὸ χρηστήριον, ὡς ἐσίη ἐς τὸ μέγαρον, εὐθὺς ἡ Πυθίη λέγει τάδε.

«ἦκεις ὦ Λυκόοργε ἐμὸν ποτὶ πίονα νηὸν Ζηνὶ φίλος καὶ πᾶσιν Ὀλύμπια δώματ' ἔχουσι. δίζω ἢ σε θεὸν μαντεύσομαι ἢ ἄνθρωπον. ἀλλ' ἔτι καὶ μᾶλλον θεὸν ἔλπομαι, ὦ Λυκόοργε.»

οἱ μὲν δὴ τινες πρὸς τούτοις λέγουσι καὶ φράσαι αὐτῷ τὴν Πυθίην τὸν νῦν κατεστεῶτα κόσμον Σπαρτιήτησι. ὥς δ' αὐτοὶ Λακεδαιμόνιοι λέγουσι, Λυκοῦργον ἐπιτροπεύσαντα¹ Λεωβώτew, ἀδελφιδέου μὲν ἑωυτοῦ βασιλεύοντος δὲ Σπαρτιητέων, ἐκ Κρήτης ἀγαγέσθαι ταῦτα.

ὥς γὰρ ἐπετρόπευσε τάχιστα, μετέστησε τὰ νόμιμα πάντα, καὶ ἐφύλαξε ταῦτα μὴ παραβαίνειν· μετὰ δὲ τὰ ἐς

¹ being his guardian

|jill-governed ἦσαν σχεδὸν πάντων |Greek κατὰ τε
σφέας αὐτοὺς καὶ ξείνοισι |isolated |alter, δὲ
|transform
ὥδε ἐς |good order or. |γκούργου τῶν Σπαρτιητέων |trustworthy;
|governance |excellent
ἀνδρὸς ἐλθόντος ἐς Δελφοὺς ἐπὶ τὸ |oracle, , ὡς ἐσήμει
|response
ἐς τὸ μέγαρον, εὐθὺς ἡ Πυθίη λέγει τάδε.

«ἤκεις ὦ Λυκόοργε ἐμὸν ποτὶ |fat |temple Ἰηνὶ φίλος
καὶ πᾶσιν Ὀλύμπια δώματ' ἔχουσι. δίζω ἢ σε θεὸν
|to divine ἢ ἄνθρωπον. ἀλλ' ἔτι καὶ μᾶλλον θεὸν
ἔλπομαι, ὦ Λυκόοργε.»

οἱ μὲν δὴ τινες πρὸς τούτοις λέγουσι καὶ φράσαι
αὐτῷ τὴν Πυθίην τὸν νῦν κατεστεῶτα κόσμον
Σπαρτιήτησι. ὥς δ' αὐτοὶ Λακεδαιμόνιοι λέγουσι,
Λυκούργον |administrate ¹ Λεωβώτῳ, |nephew
μὲν ἐωντοῦ |be king δὲ Σπαρτιητέων, ἐκ Κρήτης
ἀγαγέσθαι ταῦτα.

ὥς γὰρ ἐπετρόπευσε τάχιστα, |change, substitute; |withdraw; change
|sides; (mid) send away
πάντα, καὶ ἐφύλαξε ταῦτα μὴ |go with; transgress. ἀ δὲ τὰ
ἐς

¹ being his guardian

the Hellenes, both in matters which concerned themselves alone and also in that they had no dealings with strangers. And they made their change to a good constitution of laws thus:— Lycurgos, a man of the Spartans who was held in high repute, came to the Oracle at Delphi, and as he entered the sanctuary of the temple, straightway the Pythian prophetess said as follows:

“Lo, thou art come, O Lycurgos, to this rich shrine of my temple, loved thou by Zeus and by all who possess the abodes of Olympos. Whether to call thee a god, I doubt, in my

vocabulary

ἀποκωλύω hinder from/from using
ἀποφέρω carry off, carry back ~bear
ἀποχράω suffice; abuse
βαλανηφάγος acorn-eating
διαμετρέω measure ~metric
ἐνωμοτία army division
εὐθηνέω thrive, flourish
εὐνομέομαι be well ordered
ἔφορος fair wind; guardian; hill
ἡσυχία peace and quiet
ἵζω to seat ~sit
καταφρονέω scorn; think of

μεγαίρω begrudge, be unwilling
μεταβάλλω alter, transform
ὀρχέομαι dance
οὔτις nobody, nothing
ποσσίχροτος kicked, kicking
σέβομαι feel shame, awe
συσσίτιον (ι) dining commons
σχοῖνος rush, bed of rushes; rope,
 measuring line; 10 km
τρέχω run, spin
χρηστηριάζω prophesy
χωρέω withdraw, give way to (+dat)
 ~heir

πόλεμον ἔχοντα, ἐνωμοτίας καὶ τριηκάδας καὶ συσσίτια,
πρὸς τε τούτοισι τοὺς ἐφόρους καὶ γέροντας ἔστησε
Λυκοῦργος.

1.66

οὕτω μὲν μεταβαλόντες εὐνομήθησαν, τῷ δὲ Λυκούργῳ
τελευτήσαντι ἱρὸν εἰσάμενοι σέβονται μεγάλως. οἶα δὲ
ἐν τε χώρῃ ἀγαθῇ καὶ πλήθει οὐκ ὀλίγων ἀνδρῶν, ἀνά
τε ἔδραμον αὐτίκα καὶ εὐθηνήθησαν, καὶ δὴ σφι οὐκέτι
ἀπέχρα ἡσυχίην ἄγειν, ἀλλὰ καταφρονήσαντες Ἀρκάδων
κρέσσονες εἶναι ἐχρηστηριάζοντο ἐν Δελφοῖσι ἐπὶ πάσῃ τῇ
Ἀρκάδων χωρῇ. ἡ δὲ Πυθίῃ σφι χρᾶ τάδε.

«Ἀρκαδίην μ' αἰτεῖς· μέγα μ' αἰτεῖς· οὐ τοι δώσω.
πολλοὶ ἐν Ἀρκαδίῃ βαλανηφάγοι ἄνδρες ἔασιν, οἳ σ'
ἀποκωλύσουσιν. ἐγὼ δὲ τοι οὔτι μεγαίρω· δώσω τοί
Τεγέην ποσσίκροτον ὀρχήσασθαι καὶ καλὸν πεδίον σχοίνῳ
διαμετρήσασθαι.»

ταῦτα ὥς ἀπενειχθέντα ἤκουσαν οἱ Λακεδαιμόνιοι,

πόλεμον ἔχοντα, |army division |ὡς τριηκάδας καὶ |dining commons
 πρόσ τε τούτοισι τοὺς |fair wind; γέροντας ἔστησε
 |guardian; hill
 Λυκούργος.

1.66

οὕτω μὲν |alter, transform |be well ordered, τῷ δὲ Λυκούργῳ
 τελευτήσαντι ἶδον |to seat σέβονται μεγάλως. οἶα δὲ
 ἐν τε χώρῃ ἀγαθῇ καὶ πλήθει οὐκ ὀλίγων ἀνδρῶν, ἀνά
 τε |run, spin αὐτίκα καὶ |thrive, flourish, καὶ δὴ σφι οὐκέτι
 |suffice; |peace and quiet, ἀλλὰ |scorn; think of Ἀρκάδων
 |abuse
 κρέσσονες εἶναι |prophecy ἐν Δελφοῖσι ἐπὶ πάσῃ τῇ
 Ἀρκάδων |withdraw, ὁ δὲ γὰρ ἔπειτα σφι χρᾶ τάδε.
 |way to (+dat)

«Ἀρκαδίην μὲν αἰτεῖς· |big, great, αἰτεῖς· οὐ τοι δώσω.
 |marvelous
 πολλοὶ ἐν Ἀρκαδίῃ |acorn-eating ἄνδρες ἔασιν, οἳ σ'
 |hinder from/from. ἐγὼ δὲ τοι |nobody, begrudge δώσω τοί
 |using |nothing
 Τεγέην |kicked, kicking |dance καὶ καλὸν πεδίον |rush, bed of rushes;
 |measure .» |rope, measuring
 |line; 10 km

ταῦτα ὥς |carry off ἤκουσαν οἱ Λακεδαιμόνιοι,

voices prophetic, god or a man, but rather a god I think, O Lycurgos.”

1.66

Some say in addition to this that the Pythian prophetess also set forth to him the order of things which is now established for the Spartans; but the Lacedemonians themselves say that Lycurgos having become guardian of Leobotes his brother’s son, who was king of the Spartans, brought in these things from Crete.

For as soon as he became guardian, he changed all the prevailing laws, and took measures that they should not transgress his institutions: and after this Lycurgos established that which appertained to war, namely Enomoties and Triecads and Common Meals, and in addition to this the Ephors and the Senate.

Having changed thus, the Spartans had good laws; and to Lycurgos after he was dead they erected a temple, and they pay him great worship. So then, as might be supposed, with a fertile land and with no small number of men dwelling in it, they straightway shot up and became prosperous: and it was no longer sufficient for them to keep still; but presuming that they were superior in strength to the Arcadians, they consulted the Oracle at Delphi respecting conquest of the whole of Arcadia; and the Pythian prophetess gave answer thus:

“The land of Arcadia thou askest; thou askest me much; I refuse it; many there are in Arcadian land, stout men, eating acorns; these will prevent thee from this: but I am not grudging towards thee; tegea beaten with sounding feet I will give thee to dance in, and a fair plain I will give thee to measure with line and

*vocabulary***ἀθλέω** toil ~athlete**ἀλέα** ἀλῆς an escape; warmth of the sun ~swelter**ἀπέχω** ward off, drive off, refrain, be at some distance**διαμετρέω** measure ~metric**ἐξανδραποδίζω** enslave**ἐπειρωτάω** consult, ask**ἐσσάομαι** (pass) be weaker, be overcome; (active) defeat**ζωγρέω** capture, give quarter; revive ~zoo**ἡσάομαι** (pass) be weaker, be overcome; (active) defeat**θεοπρόπος** seer ~theology**ἱλάσκομαι** appease**κατύπερθεν** above, from above**κατυπέρτερος** having the upper hand**κίβδηλος** bogus**κρεμάννυμι** (ῥ) hang**νηός** temple, shrine**πεδάω** impede, chain ~impede**πέδη** shackles ~pedal**πίσυνος** trusting in, relying on (+dat)**συμβολή** encounter; contribution**συνεχής** (ῥ) continuously**σχοῖνος** rush, bed of rushes; rope, measuring line; 10 km**σῶς** safe, alive**τοιόσδε** such**χρησμός** oracular response

Ἀρκάδων μὲν τῶν ἄλλων ἀπείχοντο, οἱ δὲ πέδας φερόμενοι ἐπὶ Τεγεήτας ἐστρατεύοντο, χρησμῶ κιβδήλῳ πίσυνοι, ὥς δὴ ἐξανδραποδιούμενοι τοὺς Τεγεήτας. ἐσωθέντες δὲ τῇ συμβολῇ, ὅσοι αὐτῶν ἐζωγρήθησαν, πέδας τε ἔχοντες τὰς ἐφέροντο αὐτοὶ καὶ σχοίνῳ διαμετρησάμενοι τὸ πεδίον τὸ Τεγεητέων ἐργάζοντο. αἱ δὲ πέδαι αὐταὶ ἐν τῇσι ἐδεδέατο ἔτι καὶ ἐς ἐμὲ ἦσαν σόαι ἐν Τεγέῃ περὶ τὸν νηὸν τῆς Ἀλέης Ἀθηναίης κρεμάμεναι.

1.67

κατὰ μὲν δὴ τὸν πρότερον πόλεμον συνεχέως αἰεὶ κακῶς ἀέθλεον πρὸς τοὺς Τεγεήτας, κατὰ δὲ τὸν κατὰ Κροῖσον χρόνον καὶ τὴν Ἀναξανδρίδεώ τε καὶ Ἀρίστωνος βασιληίην ἐν Λακεδαίμονι ἤδη οἱ Σπαρτιῆται κατυπέρτεροι τῷ πολέμῳ ἐγεγόνεσαν, τρόπῳ τοιῷδε γενόμενοι. ἐπειδὴ αἰεὶ τῷ πολέμῳ ἐσοῦντο ὑπὸ Τεγεητέων, πέμψαντες θεοπρόπους ἐς Δελφούς ἐπειρώτων τίνα ἂν θεῶν ἱλασάμενοι κατύπερθε τῷ πολέμῳ Τεγεητέων γενοίατο. ἡ δὲ Πυθίῃ σφι ἔχρησε

Ἀρκάδων μὲν τῶν ἄλλων |ward off, drive off, refrain, ἴδας
|be at some distance

φερόμενοι ἐπὶ Τεγέτας ἐστρατεύοντο, |oracular |bogus
|response

|trusting , ὥς δὴ |enslave τοὺς Τεγέτας.

|(pass) be weaker, |be|encounter; ἵσοι αὐτῶν |capture
|overcome; (active) de-|contribution
|feat

πέδας τε ἔχοντες τὰς ἐφέροντο αὐτοὶ καὶ |rush, bed of rushes;
|rope, measuring
|line; 10 km
|measure τὸ πεδῖον τὸ Τεγετέων ἐργάζοντο. αἱ

δὲ |shackles ἵται ἐν τῇσι ἐδεδέατο ἔτι καὶ ἐς ἐμὲ ἦσαν |safe

ἐν Τεγέῃ περὶ τὸν |temple ἧς |an escape; , warmth|hang
|of the sun

1.67

κατὰ μὲν δὴ τὸν πρότερον πόλεμον |continuously αἰὲ

κακῶς |toil πρὸς τοὺς Τεγέτας, κατὰ δὲ τὸν

κατὰ Κροῖσον χρόνον καὶ τὴν Ἀναξανδρίδεώ τε

καὶ Ἀρίστωνος βασιληίην ἐν Λακεδαίμονι ἤδη οἱ

Σπαρτιῆται |having the up- τῷ πολέμῳ ἐγεγόνεσαν,
|per hand

τρόπῳ |such γενόμενοι. ἐπειδὴ αἰὲ τῷ πολέμῳ

|(pass) be weaker, be over- τέων, πέμψαντες |seer ἐς
|come; (active) defeat

Δελφοὺς |consult, ask τίνα ἂν θεῶν |appease |above, from above

τῷ πολέμῳ Τεγετέων γενοίαιτο. ἡ δὲ Πυθίῃ σφι ἔχρησε

divide it.”

When the Lacedemonians heard report of this, they held off from the other Arcadians, and marched against the Tegeans with fetters in their hands, trusting to a deceitful oracle and expecting that they would make slaves of the men of Tegea. But having been worsted in the encounter, those of them who were taken alive worked wearing the fetters which they themselves brought with them and having “measured with line and divided” the plain of the Tegeans. And these fetters with which they had been bound were preserved even to my own time at Tegea, hanging about the temple of Athene Alea.

1.67

In the former war then I say they struggled against the Tegeans continually with ill success; but in the time of Croesus and in the reign of Anaxandrides and Ariston at Lacedemon the Spartans had at length become victors in the war; and they became so in the following manner:— As they continued to be always worsted in the war by the men of Tegea, they sent messengers to consult the Oracle at Delphi and inquired what god they should propitiate in order to get the better of the men of Tegea in the war: and the Pythian prophetess made answer to them that

vocabulary

ἀγαθοεργός doing good

ἀνευρίσκω discover

ἀντίτυπος (adj) repelling; (noun)
model, mold

ἀπέχω ward off, drive off, refrain, be at
some distance

διαπέμπω send out/over

δίζημαι seek ~zeal

ἐλινύω (i) rest

ἔξιμι go forth; is possible ~ion

ἐξέυρεσις search, invention, discovery

ἐπάγω drive game; induce belief

~demagogue

ἐπείρομαι ask as well; ask then

ἐπιτάρροθος (f) supporter

θεοπρόπος seer ~theology

θήκη chest, grave

λευρός smooth, level

ὀστέον bone ~osteoporosis

πῆμα -τος (n, 3) woe, bane ~penury

πνέω breathe, blow ~apnea

τύπος mold, form ~type

φυσίζους life-giving ~physics

χῶρος place ~heir

τὰ Ὀρέστω τοῦ Ἀγαμέμνονος¹ ὅστέα ἐπαγαγομένους. ὥς δὲ ἀνευρεῖν οὐκ οἶοί τε ἐγίνοντο τὴν θήκην τοῦ Ὀρέστω ἐπεμπον αὐτίς τὴν ἐς θεὸν² ἐπειρησομένους τὸν χῶρον ἐν τῷ κέοιτο Ὀρέστης. εἰρωτῶσι δὲ ταῦτα τοῖσι θεοπρόποισι λέγει ἡ Πυθίη τάδε.

«ἔστι τις Ἀρκαδίης Τεγέη λευρῷ ἐνὶ χώρῳ, ἔνθ' ἄνεμοι πνέουσιν δύο κρατερῆς ὑπ' ἀνάγκης, καὶ τύπος ἀντίτυπος, καὶ πῆμ' ἐπὶ πῆματι κείται. ἔνθ' Ἀγαμεμνονίδην κατέχει φυσίζοος αἶα, τὸν σὺ κομισσάμενος Τεγέης ἐπιτάρροθος ἔσση.»

ὥς δὲ καὶ ταῦτα ἤκουσαν οἱ Λακεδαιμόνιοι, ἀπείχον τῆς ἐξευρέσιος οὐδὲν ἔλασσον, πάντα διζήμενοι, ἐς οὗ δὴ Λίχης τῶν ἀγαθοεργῶν καλεομένων Σπαρτιητέων ἀνεῦρε, οἱ δὲ ἀγαθοεργοὶ εἰσὶ τῶν ἀστῶν, ἐξιόντες ἐκ τῶν ἰππέων αἰεὶ οἱ πρεσβύτατοι, πέντε ἔτεος ἐκάστου· τοὺς δεῖ τοῦτ' ὅν τὸν ἐνιαυτόν, τὸν ἂν ἐξίωσι ἐκ τῶν ἰππέων, Σπαρτιητέων τῷ κοινῷ διαπεμπομένους μὴ ἐλινύειν ἄλλους ἄλλῃ.

¹ Orestes avenged his father Agamemnon's death. ² the oracle

τὰ Ὀρέστω του Ἀγαμέμνονος¹ |bone |drive game; in- ὡς
 |duce belief
 δὲ |discover οὐκ οἰοί τε ἐγίνοντο τὴν |chest, του Ὀρέστω
 |grave
 ἔπεμπον αὐτίς τὴν ἐς θεὸν² ἐπειρησομένους τὸν |place ἐν
 τῷ κέοιτο Ὀρέστης. εἰρωτῶσι δὲ ταῦτα τοῖσι |seer
 λέγει ἡ Πυθίη τάδε.

«ἔστι τις Ἀρκαδίας Τεγέη |smooth, ἐν |place , ἐνθ' ἄνεμοι
 |level
 |breathe, blow... κρατερῆς ὑπ' ἀνάγκης, καὶ |mold, (adj) repelling; (noun)
 |form |model, mold
 καὶ |woe, bane ἐνθ' Ἀγαμεμνονίδην κατέχει
 φυσιζοος αἶα, τὸν σὺν κομισσάμενος Τεγέης |supporter
 ἔσση.»

ὡς δὲ καὶ ταῦτα ἤκουσαν οἱ Λακεδαιμόνιοι, |ward off, drive off, refrain,
 |be at some distance
 |search, inven- δὲν ἔλασσαν, πάντα |seek , ἐς οὗ δὴ Λίχης
 |tion, discovery
 τῶν ἀγαθοεργῶν καλομένων Σπαρτιητέων |discover, οἱ δὲ
 |doing good εἰσὶ τῶν ἀστῶν, |go forth; κ τῶν ἱππέων αἰεὶ
 |is possible
 οἱ πρεσβύτατοι, πέντε ἔτεος ἐκάστου· τοὺς δεῖ τοῦτὸν τὸν
 ἐνιαυτόν, τὸν ἂν ἐξίωσι ἐκ τῶν ἱππέων, Σπαρτιητέων τῷ
 κοινῷ |send out/over μὴ |rest ἄλλους ἄλλη.

¹ Orestes avenged his father Agamemnon's death. ² the oracle

they should bring into their land the bones of Orestes the son of Agamemnon. Then as they were not able to find the grave of Orestes, they sent men again to go to the god and to inquire about the spot where Orestes was laid: and when the messengers who were sent asked this, the prophetess said as follows:

“Tegea there is, in Arcadian land, in a smooth place founded; where there do blow two blasts by strong compulsion together; stroke too there is and stroke in, and trouble on trouble. there Agamemnon’s son in the life-giving earth is reposing; him if thou bring with thee home, of Tegea thou shalt be master.”

When the Lacedemonians had heard this they were none the less far from finding it out, though they searched all places; until the time that Lichas, one of those Spartans who are called “Well-doers,” discovered it. Now the “Well-doers” are of the citizens the eldest who are passing from the ranks of the “Horsemen,” in each year five; and these are bound during that year in which they pass out from the “Horsemen,” to allow themselves to be sent without ceasing to various places by the Spartan State.

vocabulary

ἄκμων -ονος (m, 3) anvil
ἀνευρίσκω discover
ἀνοίγνυμι (ō) open
ἀπιστία disbelief, distrust
αὐλέω play (blow, toot)
αὐλή courtyard
ἐννοέω consider
ἐξελαύνω drive out, exile ~elastic
ἐπιτυγχάνω meet, attain
ἐπτάπηχυς 7 cubits long
ἐργασία work, business; guild
εὖς good, brave, noble
θεοπρόπιον prophecy ~theology
θιέομαι look at, behold, consider
 ~theater
θῶμα a wonder, feeling of surprise
 ~theater
κάρα very much ~κράτος

μετρέω measure, traverse ~metric
μηδαιμός no one
μήκος -ους (n, 3) length, stature
μίν him, her, it
ῥον οῦ type of fruit
ὀρύσσω dig
σίδηρος iron ~siderite
σορός (f) urn; coffin
σοφία skill; wisdom ~sophistry
συγχρώ cover with dirt
συμβάλλω pit against; compare; mp:
 meet, fall in with ~ballistic
συντυχίη event, accident
σφύρα hammer; unit of land
φρέαρ well
φῦσα bellows
φυσάω (ō) blow, puff, blow out
φύω produce, beget; clasp ~physics
χαλκεύς -ος (m) smith

1.68

τούτων ὦν τῶν ἀνδρῶν Λίχης ἀνεῦρε ἐν Τεγέῃ καὶ
 συντυχίῃ χρησάμενος καὶ σοφίῃ. εὐούσης γὰρ τοῦτον
 τὸν χρόνον ἐπιμιξίης πρὸς τοὺς Τεγεήτας, ἐλθὼν ἐς
 χαλκήιον ἐθηεῖτο σιδήρον ἐξελαυνόμενον, καὶ ἐν θώματι
 ἦν ὀρέων τὸ ποιούμενον. μαθὼν, δέ μιν ὁ χαλκεὺς
 ἀποθωμάζοντα εἶπε παυσάμενος τοῦ ἔργου «ἦ κου ἄν, ὦ
 ξεῖνε Λάκων εἴ περ εἶδες τό περ ἐγώ, κάρτα ἂν ἐθώμαζες,
 ὅκου νῦν οὕτω τυγχάνεις θῶμα ποιούμενος τὴν ἐργασίην
 τοῦ σιδήρου. ἐγὼ γὰρ ἐν τῇδε θέλων τῇ αὐτῇ φρέαρ
 ποιήσασθαι, ὀρύσσων ἐπέτυχον σορῶ ἐπταπήχει· ὑπὸ δὲ
 ἀπιστίας μὴ μὲν γενέσθαι μηδαμὰ μέζοντας ἀνθρώπους
 τῶν νῦν ἄνοιξα αὐτὴν καὶ εἶδον τὸν νεκρὸν μήκει ἴσον
 ἔοντα τῇ σορῶ· μετρήσας δὲ συνέχωσα ὀπίσω.» ὁ μὲν
 δὴ οἱ ἔλεγε τά περ ὀπώπεε, ὁ δὲ ἐννώσας τὰ λεγόμενα
 συνεβάλλετο τὸν Ὀρέστεα κατὰ τὸ θεοπρόπιον τοῦτον
 εἶναι, τῇδε συμβαλλόμενος· τοῦ χαλκέος δύο ὀρέων φύσας
 τοὺς ἀνέμους εὗρισκε ἔοντας, τὸν δὲ ἄκμονα καὶ τὴν
 σφῦραν

1.68 |hammer; unit of land

τούτων ὧν τῶν ἀνδρῶν Δίχης ἐν Τεγέῃ καὶ
 χρησάμενος καὶ σοφίῃ. |discover, |s
 |event, |accident
 ἡν ὁρέων |look at, behold, con- |drive out, |sider, |wonder, |surprise
 ἀποθωμάζοντα εἶπε παυσάμενος τοῦ ἔργου «ἦ καὶ |smith, |
 ξεῖνε Λάκων εἴ περ εἶδες τό περ ἐγώ, ἂν ἐθώμαζες,
 ὅκου νῦν οὕτω τυγχάνεις ποιεῖ |very much, |ἐργασίην
 τοῦ σιδήρου. ἐγὼ γὰρ |wonder, |surprise
 ποιήσασθαι, |well |
 ἀπιστίης μὴ |dig, |meet, |urn; |7 cubits long |ρώπους
 τῶν νῦν ἀνοιξα αὐτὴν καὶ |no one |ἐν νεκρὸν ἴσον
 ἐόντα τῇ |δὲ συνέχωσα ὀπίσθεν |length, |stature
 δὴ οἱ ἔλεγον |urn; |measure, |traverse, |ε, ὁ δὲ τὰ λεγόμενα
 τὸν Ὀρέστεα κατὰ |consider |τοῦτον
 |pit against; compare;
 |mp: meet, fall in with |τοῦ χαλκέ |prophecy, |φύσας
 τοὺς ἀνέμους |pit against; compare;
 |mp: meet, fall in with |τὸν δὲ καὶ τὴν
 |anvil

1.68

Lichas then, being one of these, discovered it in Tegea by means both of fortune and ability. For as there were at that time dealings under truce with the men of Tegea, he had come to a forge there and was looking at iron being wrought; and he was in wonder as he saw that which was being done. The smith therefore, perceiving that he marvelled at it, ceased from his work and said: "Surely, thou stranger of Lacedemon, if thou hadst seen that which I once saw, thou wouldst have marvelled much, since now it falls out that thou dost marvel so greatly at the working of this iron; for I, desiring in this enclosure to make a well, lighted in my digging upon a coffin of seven cubits in length; and not believing that ever there had been men larger than those of the present day, I opened it, and I saw that the dead body was equal in length to the coffin: then after I had measured it, I filled in the earth over it again." He then thus told him of that which he had seen; and the other, having thought upon that which was told, conjectured that this was Orestes according to the saying of the Oracle, forming his conjecture in the following manner:— whereas he saw that the smith had two pairs of bellows, he concluded that these were the winds spoken of, and that the anvil

vocabulary

ἀναγιγνώσκω recognize, read,
 understand, persuade
ἀνευρίσκω discover
ἀνορύσσω dig out
ἀντίτυπος (adj) repelling; (noun)
 model, mold
αὐλή courtyard
εἰκάζω liken; conjecture
ἐκδίδωμι hand over ~donate
ἐνοικίζω implant; (mp) move house to
ἐντέλλω (mp) command
ἐξελαύνω drive out, exile ~elastic
ἐπιφέρω bestow, impute ~bear
εὖς good, brave, noble
καταστρέφω overturn, subdue
 ~catastrophe
κατυπέρτερος having the upper hand
μισθόω rent out; (pass) be hired

ὄον οὓ type of fruit
ὀστέον bone ~osteoporosis
πῆμα -τος (n, 3) woe, bane ~penury
πλάζω make to wander ~plankton
πλάσσω form ~plaster
πλαστός formed, plastic
σίδηρος iron ~siderite
συλλέγω collect, assemble ~legion
συμβάλλω pit against; compare; mp:
 meet, fall in with ~ballistic
συμμαχία alliance
συμφορά collecting; accident,
 misfortune
τάφος (m) funeral, grave; (n)
 astonishment
τοιόσδε such
τύπος mold, form ~type
τύπτω beat, smite ~stupid

τόν τε τύπον καὶ τὸν ἀντίτυπον, τὸν δὲ ἐξελαυνόμενον
 σίδηρον τὸ πῆμα ἐπὶ πῆματι κείμενον, κατὰ τοιόνδε
 τι εἰκάζων, ὥς ἐπὶ κακῷ ἀνθρώπου σίδηρος ἀνεύρηται.
 συμβαλόμενος δὲ ταῦτα καὶ ἀπελθὼν ἐς Σπάρτην ἔφραζε
 Λακεδαιμονίοισι πᾶν τὸ πρῆγμα. οἱ δὲ ἐκ λόγου πλαστοῦ
 ἐπενείκαντες οἱ αἰτίην ἐδίωξαν. ὁ δὲ ἀπικόμενος ἐς Τεγέην
 καὶ φράζων τὴν ἑωυτοῦ συμφορὴν πρὸς τὸν χαλκέα
 ἐμισθοῦτο παρ' οὐκ ἐκδιδόντος τὴν αὐλήν· χρόνῳ δὲ ὥς
 ἀνέγνωσε, ἐνοικίσθη, ἀνορύξας δὲ τὸν τάφον καὶ τὰ ὀστέα
 συλλέξας οἷχετο φέρων ἐς Σπάρτην. καὶ ἀπὸ τούτου τοῦ
 χρόνου, ὅπως πειρώατο ἀλλήλων, πολλῶ κατυπέρτεροι
 τῷ πολέμῳ ἐγίνοντο οἱ Λακεδαιμόνιοι· ἤδη δέ σφι καὶ ἡ
 πολλὰ τῆς Πελοποννήσου ἦν κατεστραμμένη.

1.69

ταῦτα δὴ ὦν πάντα πυνθανόμενος ὁ Κροῖσος ἔπεμπε ἐς
 Σπάρτην ἀγγέλους δῶρά τε φέροντας καὶ δεησομένους
 συμμαχίης, ἐντειλάμενός τε τὰ λέγειν χρῆν. οἱ δὲ ἐλθόντες
 ἔλεγον «ἔπεμψε ἡμέας Κροῖσος ὁ Λυδῶν τε καὶ

τόν τε τύπον καὶ τὸν |(adj) repelling; (noun)|drive out
|model, mold

σίδηρον τὸ |woe, bane ` |woe, bane :είμενον, κατὰ |such

τι |liken; , ὥς ἐπὶ κακῷ ἀνθρώπου |iron |discover
|conjecture

|pit against; compare; ἰῶτα καὶ ἀπελθὼν ἐς Σπάρτην ἔφραζε
|mp: meet, fall in with

Λακεδαιμονίοισι πᾶν τὸ πρῆγμα. οἱ δὲ ἐκ λόγου πλαστοῦ

|bestow, impute οἱ αἰτίην ἐδίωξαν. ὁ δὲ ἀπικόμενος ἐς Τεγέην

καὶ φράζων τὴν ἑωυτοῦ συμφορὴν πρὸς τὸν χαλκέα

|rent out; (pass), οὐκ |hand over τὴν |courtyard, ὥνω δὲ ὥς
|be hired

|read |implant; |dig out δὲ τὸν |(m) funeral, |bone
(mp) move |grave; (n)

|collect, |house to σιχέτο φέρων ἐς Σπάρτην. καὶ ἀπὸ τούτου τοῦ
|assemble

χρόνου, ὅπως πειρώατο ἀλλήλων, πολλῷ |having the up-
|per hand

τῷ πολέμῳ ἐγίνοντο οἱ Λακεδαιμόνιοι· ἤδη δέ σφι καὶ ἡ

πολλὴ τῆς Πελοποννήσου ἦν |overturn, subdue

1.69

ταῦτα δὴ ὦν πάντα πυνθανόμενος ὁ Κροῖσος ἔπεμπε ἐς

Σπάρτην ἀγγέλους δῶρά τε φέροντας καὶ δεησομένους

συμμαχίης, ἐντειλάμενός τε τὰ λέγειν χρῆν. οἱ δὲ ἐλθόντες

ἔλεγον «ἔπεμψε ἡμέας Κροῖσος ὁ Λυδῶν τε καὶ

and the hammer were the stroke and the stroke in, and that the iron which was being wrought was the trouble laid upon trouble, making comparison by the thought that iron has been discovered for the evil of mankind.

Having thus conjectured he came back to Sparta and declared the whole matter to the Lacedemonians; and they brought a charge against him on a fictitious pretext and drove him out into exile. So having come to Tegea, he told the smith of his evil fortune and endeavoured to hire from him the enclosure, but at first he would not allow him to have it: at length however Lichas persuaded him and he took up his abode there; and he dug up the grave and gathered together the bones and went with them away to Sparta. From that time, whenever they made trial of one another, the Lacedemonians had much the advantage in the war; and by now they had subdued to themselves the greater part of Peloponnesus besides.

1.69

Croesus accordingly being informed of all these things was sending messengers to Sparta with gifts in their hands to ask for an alliance, having commanded them what they ought to say: and they when they came said: "Croesus king of the Lydians and also of other nations sent us hither

vocabulary

ἄγαλμα -τος (n, 3) ornament, glory, statue

ἄνευ away from; not having; not needing ~Sp. sin

ἀνίημι urge, impel; release ~jet

ἀπάτη trick, fraud, deceit

~apatosaurus

ἄπιξις arrival

δόλος trick, bait

δολόω trick, trap, disguise

δωτίνη (ι) gift ~donate

Ἑλλην Greek

ἐπικηρυκεύω send a herald, ambassador

ἐτοῖμος ready; fulfilled

εὐεργεσία good deed, public service

~ergonomics

εὖς good, brave, noble

ἡδομαι be pleased, enjoy ~hedonism

θεοπρόπιον prophecy ~theology

ἰδρύω establish

ξείνιος of hospitality

ὄον οὖ type of fruit

ὄρκιον oath ~orc

προίστημι put forward; (+gen) be head of, guard ~station

προκρίνω (ι) choose first

προσδοκάω expect

προσκαλέω call on, summon

συμμαχία alliance

χρηστήριον oracle, response

χρυσός (ο) gold

ὠνέομαι buy

ἄλλων ἐθνέων βασιλεύς, λέγων τάδε. ὦ Λακεδαιμόνιοι, χρήσαντος τοῦ θεοῦ τὸν Ἑλληνα φίλον προσθέσθαι, ὑμέας γὰρ πυνθάνομαι προεστάναι τῆς Ἑλλάδος, ὑμέας ὦν κατὰ τὸ χρηστήριον προσκαλέομαι φίλος τε θέλων γενέσθαι καὶ σύμμαχος ἄνευ τε δόλου καὶ ἀπάτης.» Κροῖσος μὲν δὴ ταῦτα δι' ἀγγέλων ἐπεκηρυκεύετο, Λακεδαιμόνιοι δὲ ἀκηκοότες καὶ αὐτοὶ τὸ θεοπρόπιον τὸ Κροίσῳ γενόμενον ἥσθησάν τε τῇ ἀπίξι τῶν Λυδῶν καὶ ἐποιήσαντο ὅρκια ξεινίης πέρι καὶ συμμαχίης· καὶ γὰρ τινὲς αὐτοὺς εὐεργεσίαι εἶχον ἐκ Κροίσου πρότερον ἔτι γεγυνῆαι. πέμψαντες γὰρ οἱ Λακεδαιμόνιοι ἐς Σάρδεις χρυσὸν ὠνέοντο, ἐς ἄγαλμα βουλόμενοι χρήσασθαι τοῦτο τὸ νῦν τῆς Λακωνικῆς ἐν Θόρνακι ἵδρυται Ἀπόλλωνος· Κροῖσος δέ σφι ὠνεομένοισι ἔδωκε δωτήνην.

1.70

τούτων τε ὦν εἵνεκεν οἱ Λακεδαιμόνιοι τὴν συμμαχίην ἐδέξαντο, καὶ ὅτι ἐκ πάντων σφέας προκρίνας Ἑλλήνων αἰρέετο φίλους. καὶ τοῦτο μὲν αὐτοὶ ᾗσαν ἔτοιμοι

ἄλλων ἐθνέων βασιλεὺς, λέγων τάδε. ὦ Λακεδαιμόνιοι,
 χρήσαντος τοῦ θεοῦ τὸν |Greek φίλον προσθέσθαι,
 ὑμέας γὰρ πυνθάνομαι προεστάναι τῆς Ἑλλάδος, ὑμέας
 ὦν κατὰ τὸ |oracle, |call on, summon φίλος τε θέλων
 |response
 γενέσθαι καὶ σύμμαχος ἄνευ τε δόλου καὶ |trick, »
 |fraud
 Κροῖσος μὲν δὴ ταῦτα δι' ἀγγέλων |send a herald,
 |ambassador
 Λακεδαιμόνιοι δὲ ἀκηκοότες καὶ αὐτοὶ τὸ |prophecy τὸ
 Κροίσῳ γενόμενον |be pleased, enjoy, |arrival τῶν Λυδῶν καὶ
 ἐποιήσαντο ὅρκια ξεινίης πέρι καὶ συμμαχίης· καὶ γὰρ
 τινὲς αὐτοὺς εὐεργεσίαι εἶχον ἐκ Κροίσου πρότερον ἔτι
 γεγонуῖαι. πέμψαντες γὰρ οἱ Λακεδαιμόνιοι ἐς Σάρδεις
 |gold |buy , ἐς |ornament, ἵλόμενοι χρῆσασθαι τοῦτο
 |glory, statue
 τὸ νῦν τῆς Λακωνικῆς ἐν Θόρνακι |establish Ἀπόλλωνος·
 Κροῖσος δέ σφι |buy ἔδωκε |gift .

1.70

τούτων τε ὦν εἵνεκεν οἱ Λακεδαιμόνιοι τὴν συμμαχίην
 ἐδέξαντο, καὶ ὅτι ἐκ πάντων σφέας |choose first |Greek
 αἰρέετο φίλους. καὶ τοῦτο μὲν αὐτοὶ ἦσαν ἔτοιμοι

and saith as follows: O Lacedemonians, whereas the god by an oracle bade me join with myself the Hellene as a friend, therefore, since I am informed that ye are the chiefs of Hellas, I invite you according to the oracle, desiring to be your friend and your ally apart from all guile and deceit.” Thus did Croesus announce to the Lacedemonians through his messengers; and the Lacedemonians, who themselves also had heard of the oracle given to Croesus, were pleased at the coming of the Lydians and exchanged oaths of friendship and alliance: for they were bound to Croesus also by some services rendered to them even before this time; since the Lacedemonians had sent to Sardis and were buying gold there with purpose of using it for the image of Apollo which is now set up on Mount Thornax in the Lacedemonian land; and Croesus, when they desired to buy it, gave it them as a gift.

1.70

For this reason therefore the Lacedemonians accepted the alliance, and also because he chose them as his friends, preferring them to all the other Hellenes. And not only were they ready themselves when he made his offer,

*vocabulary***ἄλίσκομαι** be captured ~helix**ἄμφορεύς** -ος (m) amphora**ἀνατίθῃμι** consecrate, lay on, impute;
(mp) reproach**ἀντιδίδωμι** repay, exchange**ἀπαγγέλλω** announce, order, promise
~angel**ἀφαιρέω** take away ~heresy**διφάσιος** of two kinds**ἐξωθεν** from outside**ζώδιον** statuette; sign of the Zodiac**ιδιώτης** -ου (m, 1) private; a layman**καθαιρέω** take down, close ~heresy**κρητήρ** -ος (m) mixing bowl for wine**μέγαθος** tall, big (person)**μίν** him, her, it**πρίσμαι** buy**στρατηγή** expedition, campaign**τριηκόσιοι** three hundred**ὕστερέω** lag, be too late, fail**χείλος** -εος (n, 3) lip**χρησμός** oracular response**χωρέω** withdraw, give way to (+dat)

~heir

ὠνέομαι buy

ἐπαγγείλαντι, τοῦτο δὲ ποιησάμενοι κρητῆρα χάλκεον
 ζωδίων τε ἕξωθεν πλήσαντες περὶ τὸ χεῖλος καὶ μεγάθει
 τριηκοσίους ἀμφορέας χωρέοντα ἦγον, δῶρον βουλόμενοι
 ἀντιδοῦναι Κροίσῳ. οὗτος ὁ κρητῆρ οὐκ ἀπίκετο ἐς
 Σάρδεις δι' αἰτίας διφασίας λεγομένας τάσδε· οἱ μὲν
 Λακεδαιμόνιοι λέγουσι ὡς ἐπείτε ἀγόμενος ἐς τὰς Σάρδεις
 ὁ κρητῆρ ἐγένετο κατὰ τὴν Σαμίην, πυθόμενοι Σάμιοι
 ἀπελοίατο αὐτὸν νηυσὶ μακρῇσι ἐπιπλώσαντες· αὐτοὶ
 δὲ Σάμιοι λέγουσι ὡς ἐπείτε ὑστέρησαν οἱ ἄγοντες τῶν
 Λακεδαιμονίων τὸν κρητῆρα, ἐπυνθάνοντο δὲ Σάρδεις τε
 καὶ Κροῖσον ἠλωκέναι, ἀπέδοντο τὸν κρητῆρα ἐν Σάμῳ,
 ιδιώτας δὲ ἄνδρας πριαμένους ἀναθεῖναι μιν ἐς τὸ Ἥραιον.
 τάχα δὲ ἂν καὶ οἱ ἀποδόμενοι λέγοιεν ἀπικόμενοι ἐς
 Σπάρτην ὡς ἀπαιρεθείησαν ὑπὸ Σαμίων. κατὰ μὲν νυν
 τὸν κρητῆρα οὕτω ἔσχε.

1.71

Κροῖσος δὲ ἁμαρτῶν τοῦ χρησμοῦ ἐποιέετο στρατηγὴν ἐς
 Καππαδοκίην, ἐλπίσας καταιρήσειν Κῦρόν τε καὶ

ἐπαγγείλαντι, τοῦτο δὲ ποιησάμενοι |mixing bowl for wine

ζωδίων τε |from outside, ἵσαντες περὶ τὸ |lip καὶ |tall, big

|three |amphora |withdraw, give ὃν, δῶρον βουλόμενοι
|hundred |way to (+dat)

|repay, Κροῖσω. οὗτος ὁ |mixing bowl for wine... ὁ ἐς
|exchange

Σάρδεις δι' αἰτίας διφασίας λεγομένας τάσδε· οἱ μὲν

Λακεδαιμόνιοι λέγουσι ὡς ἐπείτε ἀγόμενος ἐς τὰς Σάρδεις

ὁ |mixing bowl for wine... ἃ τὴν Σαμῖν, πυθόμενοι Σάμιοι

|take away αὐτὸν νηυσὶ μακρῇσι ἐπιπλώσαντες· αὐτοὶ

δὲ Σάμιοι λέγουσι ὡς ἐπείτε |lag, be too οἱ ἄγοντες τῶν
|late, fail

Λακεδαιμονίων τὸν |mixing bowl for wine ἵτο δὲ Σάρδεις τε

καὶ Κροῖσον |be captured ἵπέδοντο τὸν |mixing bowl for wine

|private; a layman... πριαμένους |consecrate, lay on, im-Ἱπραιον.
|pute; (mp) reproach

τάχα δὲ ἂν καὶ οἱ ἀποδόμενοι λέγοιεν ἀπικόμενοι ἐς

Σπάρτην ὡς |take away ὑπὸ Σαμίων. κατὰ μὲν νυν

τὸν |mixing bowl for wine

1.71

Κροῖσος δὲ ἀμαρτῶν τοῦ |oracular ἐποιέετο |expedition, ἐς
|response |campaign

Καππαδοκίην, ἐλπίσας |take down, close ἵρόν τε καὶ

but they caused a mixing-bowl to be made of bronze, covered outside with figures round the rim and of such a size as to hold three hundred amphors, and this they conveyed, desiring to give it as a gift in to Croesus.

This bowl never came to Sardis for reasons of which two accounts are given as follows:— The Lacedemonians say that when the bowl was on its way to Sardis and came opposite the land of Samos, the men of Samos having heard of it sailed out with ships of war and took it away; but the Samians themselves say that the Lacedemonians who were conveying the bowl, finding that they were too late and hearing that Sardis had been taken and Croesus was a prisoner, sold the bowl in Samos, and certain private persons bought it and dedicated it as a votive offering in the temple of Hera; and probably those who had sold it would say when they returned to Sparta that it had been taken from them by the Samians.

1.71

Thus then it happened about the mixing-bowl: but meanwhile Croesus, mistaking the meaning of the oracle, was making a march into Cappadokia, expecting to

vocabulary

ἄβρός graceful, delicate, pretty
ἀναξυρίδες Persian pants
ἀποβάλλω throw away, lose
ἀπωστός driven away, able to be
ἀφαιρέω take away ~heresy
γεύω taste ~gusto
διαχρέομαι use habitually; lend out;
 reveal
ἔσθής clothes ~vest
κάρτα very much ~κράτος
καταστρέφω overturn, subdue
 ~catastrophe

πέρθω sack, ravage, plunder
περιέχω (mid) protect
Πέρσης Persian
σιτέομαι (ι) eat ~parasite
σχύτινος (υ) of leather
σοφός skilled, clever, wise
σῦκον fig
συμβουλευώ give advice; (mid) consult
 ~volunteer
τρώγω nibble, crop
ὕδροποτέω drink water
φορέω frequentative of φέρω, to carry
 ~bear

τὴν Περσέων δύναμιν. παρασκευαζομένου δὲ Κροίσου στρατεύεσθαι ἐπὶ Πέρσας, τῶν τις Λυδῶν νομιζόμενος καὶ πρόσθε εἶναι σοφός, ἀπὸ δὲ ταύτης τῆς γνώμης καὶ τὸ κάρτα οὖνομα ἐν Λυδοῖσι ἔχων, συνεβούλευσε Κροίσῳ τάδε· οὖνομά οἱ ἦν Σάνδανις. «ὦ βασιλεῦ, ἐπ' ἄνδρας τοιούτους στρατεύεσθαι παρασκευάζει, οἷ σκυτίνας μὲν ἀναξυρίδας σκυτίνην δὲ τὴν ἄλλην ἐσθῆτα φορέουσι, σιτέονται δὲ οὐκ ὅσα ἐθέλουσι ἀλλ' ὅσα ἔχουσι, χώρην ἔχοντες τρηχέαν. πρὸς δὲ οὐκ οἶνω διαχρέωνται ἀλλὰ ὑδροποτέουσι, οὐ σῦκα δὲ ἔχουσι τρώγειν, οὐκ ἄλλο ἀγαθὸν οὐδέν. τοῦτο μὲν δῆ, εἰ νικήσεις, τί σφέας ἀπαιρήσεται, τοῖσί γε μὴ ἔστι μηδέν; τοῦτο δέ, ἤν νικηθῇς, μάθε ὅσα ἀγαθὰ ἀποβαλέεις· γευσάμενοι γὰρ τῶν ἡμετέρων ἀγαθῶν περιέζονται οὐδὲ ἀπωστοὶ ἔσονται. ἐγὼ μὲν νυν θεοῖσι ἔχω χάριν, οἷ οὐκ ἐπὶ νόον ποιέουσι Πέρσῃσι στρατεύεσθαι ἐπὶ Λυδούς.» ταῦτα λέγων οὐκ ἔπειθε τὸν Κροῖσον. Πέρσῃσι γάρ, πρὶν Λυδοὺς καταστρέψασθαι, ἦν οὔτε ἄβρὸν οὔτε ἀγαθὸν οὐδέν.

τὴν Περσέων δύναμιν. παρασκευαζομένου δὲ Κροίσου
 στρατεύεσθαι ἐπὶ Πέρσας, τῶν τις Λυδῶν νομιζόμενος
 καὶ πρόσθε εἶναι ^{|skilled, , ...ὸ δὲ ταύτης τῆς γνώμης}
^{|clever, wise}
 καὶ τὸ ^{|very much} ῥομα ἐν Λυδοῖσι ἔχων, ^{|give advice;}
^{|(mid) consult}
 Κροίσῳ τάδε· οὐνομά οἱ ἦν Σάνδανις. «ὦ βασιλεῦ,
 ἐπ' ἄνδρας τοιούτους στρατεύεσθαι παρασκευάζει, οἱ
^{|of leather} μὲν ^{|Persian pants} ^{|of leather} δὲ τὴν ἄλλην ^{|clothes}
^{|frequentative of} ^{όνται} δὲ οὐκ ὅσα ἐθέλουσι ἀλλ' ὅσα ἔχουσι,
^{|φέρω, to carry}
 χώρην ἔχοντες τρηχέαν. πρὸς δὲ οὐκ οἶνω ^{|use habitually; lend out;}
^{|reveal}
 ἀλλὰ ^{|drink water} , οὐ ^{|fig} δὲ ἔχουσι ^{|nibble, crop} οὐκ
 ἄλλο ἀγαθὸν οὐδέν. τοῦτο μὲν δῆ, εἰ νικήσεις, τί
 σφέας ^{|take away} , τοῖσί γε μὴ ἔστι μῆδέν; τοῦτο δέ,
 ἦν νικηθῆς, μάθε ὅσα ἀγαθὰ ^{|throw away, lose, υσάμενοι}
 γὰρ τῶν ἡμετέρων ἀγαθῶν ^{|(mid) protect} οὐδὲ ^{|driven away,}
^{|able to be}
 ἔσονται. ἐγὼ μὲν νυν θεοῖσι ἔχω χάριν, οἱ οὐκ ἐπὶ νόον
 ποιέουσι Πέρσῃσι στρατεύεσθαι ἐπὶ Λυδούς.» ταῦτα
 λέγων οὐκ ἔπειθε τὸν Κροῖσον. Πέρσῃσι γάρ, πρὶν Λυδούς
^{|overturn, subdue} , ἦν οὔτε ^{|graceful, deli-} ἀγαθὸν οὐδέν.
^{|cate, pretty}

overthrow Cyrus and the power of the Persians: and while Croesus was preparing to march against the Persians, one of the Lydians, who even before this time was thought to be a wise man but in consequence of this opinion got a very great name for wisdom among the Lydians, had advised Croesus as follows (the name of the man was Sandanis):—"O king, thou art preparing to march against men who wear breeches of leather, and the rest of their clothing is of leather also; and they eat food not such as they desire but such as they can obtain, dwelling in a land which is rugged; and moreover they make no use of wine but drink water; and no figs have they for dessert, nor any other good thing. On the one hand, if thou shalt overcome them, what wilt thou take away from them, seeing they have nothing? and on the other hand, if thou shalt be overcome, consider how many good things thou wilt lose; for once having tasted our good things, they will cling to them fast and it will not be possible to drive them away. I for my own part feel gratitude to the gods that they do not put it into the minds of the Persians to march against the Lydians." Thus he spoke not persuading Croesus: for it is true indeed that the Persians before they subdued the Lydians had no luxury nor any good thing.

*vocabulary***ἀναισιμῶ** spend, use up**ἄνω** (ἄ) accomplish, pass, waste;
upwards, out to sea**ἀποέργω** exclude; divide; confine**ἀποτέμνω** cut off, sever ~tonsure**αὐχὴν** -ένος (m, 3) neck**βορέας** -οῦ (m, 1) north, north wind**Ἑλλήν** Greek**ἐνθεν** thence, whence**ἐντίθημι** load; mp: take to heart
~thesis**εὐζωνος** well-girded ~zone**εὐώνυμος** honored; left-hand**ἔμερος** (ἔ) desire, inclination (+gen)**κατήκοος** hearing; obedient**μῆκος** -ους (n, 3) length, stature**παραμείβω** pass by ~amoeba**Πέρσης** Persian**προσδοκάω** expect**προσκτάομαι** get, win as well**ῥέω** flow ~rheostat**ῥοά** pl: waters of a river ~rheostat**ῥόος** ῥοῦ stream, flow, current
~rheostat

1.72

οἱ δὲ Καππαδόκαι ὑπὸ Ἑλλήνων Σύριοι ὀνομάζονται· ἦσαν δὲ οἱ Σύριοι οὗτοι τὸ μὲν πρότερον ἢ Πέρσας ἄρξαι Μήδων κατήκοι, τότε δὲ Κύρου. ὁ γὰρ οὗρος ἦν τῆς τε Μηδικῆς ἀρχῆς καὶ τῆς Λυδικῆς ὁ Ἄλυς ποταμός, ὃς ῥέει ἐξ Ἀρμενίου ὄρεος διὰ Κιλικῶν, μετὰ δὲ Ματιηνοὺς μὲν ἐν δεξιῇ ἔχει ῥέων, ἐκ δὲ τοῦ ἐτέρου Φρύγας· παραμειβόμενος δὲ τούτους καὶ ῥέων ἄνω πρὸς βορέην ἄνεμον ἔνθεν μὲν Συρίους Καππαδόκας ἀπέργει, ἐξ εὐωνύμου δὲ Παφλαγόνας. οὕτω ὁ Ἄλυς ποταμὸς ἀποτάμνει σχεδὸν πάντα τῆς Ἀσίας τὰ κάτω ἐκ θαλάσσης τῆς ἀντίον Κύπρου ἐς τὸν Εὐξείνιον πόντον. ἔστι δὲ αὐχὴν οὗτος τῆς χώρας ταύτης ἀπάσης· μῆκος ὁδοῦ εὐζώνῳ ἀνδρὶ πέντε ἡμέραι ἀναισιμοῦνται.

1.73

ἐστρατεύετο δὲ ὁ Κροῖσος ἐπὶ τὴν Καππαδοκίην τῶνδε εἵνεκα, καὶ γῆς ἱμέρῳ προσκτήσασθαι πρὸς τὴν

1.72

οἱ δὲ Καππαδόκαι ὑπὸ |Greek Σύριοι ὀνομάζονται·
 ἦσαν δὲ οἱ Σύριοι οὗτοι τὸ μὲν πρότερον ἢ Πέρσας
 ἄρξαι Μήδων |hearing;
 |obedient , τότε δὲ Κύρου. ὁ γὰρ οὗρος
 ἦν τῆς τε Μηδικῆς ἀρχῆς καὶ τῆς Λυδικῆς ὁ Ἄλυσ
 ποταμός, ὃς ῥέει ἐξ Ἀρμενίου ὄρεος διὰ Κιλικίων, μετὰ
 δὲ Ματινηνοὺς μὲν ἐν δεξιῇ ἔχει ῥέων, ἐκ δὲ τοῦ ἐτέρου
 Φρύγας· |pass by δὲ τούτους καὶ ῥέων ἄνω πρὸς
 |north, ἄνεμον ἔνθεν μὲν Συρίους Καππαδόκας |exclude; di-
 |north |vide; confine
 |wind
 ἐξ |honored; left-hand ... φλαγόνας. οὕτω ὁ Ἄλυσ ποταμός
 ἀποτάμνει σχεδὸν πάντα τῆς Ἀσίας τὰ κάτω ἐκ θαλάσσης
 τῆς ἀντίον Κύπρου ἐς τὸν Εὐξείνιον πόντον. ἔστι δὲ |neck
 οὗτος τῆς χώρας ταύτης ἀπάσης· |length, ὁδοῦ |well-girded
 |stature
 ἀνδρὶ πέντε ἡμέραι |spend, use up

1.73

ἐστρατεύετο δὲ ὁ Κροῖσος ἐπὶ τὴν Καππαδοκίην τῶνδε
 εἵνεκα, καὶ γῆς |urge |get, win as well πρὸς τὴν

1.72

Now the Cappadokians are called by the Hellenes Syrians; and these Syrians, before the Persians had rule, were subjects of the Medes, but at this time they were subjects of Cyrus. For the boundary between the Median empire and the Lydian was the river Halys; and this flows from the mountain-land of Armenia through the Kilikians, and afterwards, as it flows, it has the Matienians on the right hand and the Phrygians on the other side; then passing by these and flowing up towards the North Wind, it bounds on the one side the Cappadokian Syrians and on the left hand the Paphlagonians. Thus the river Halys cuts off from the rest almost all the lower parts of Asia by a line extending from the sea that is opposite Cyprus to the Euxine. And this tract is the neck of the whole peninsula, the distance of the journey being such that five days are spent on the way by a man without encumbrance.

1.73

Now for the following reasons Croesus was marching into Cappadokia:— first because he desired to acquire the land in addition to his own possessions, and

*vocabulary***ἄγρᾱ** hunting, prey**ἄεικία** -είας disfiguring; unseemliness
~icon**ἄκρῳ** at the edge, extreme ~acute**ἀνάξιος** unworthy, undeserved**γαμβρός** son-in-law, brother-in-law
~bigamy**γλῶσσα** tongue, language ~glossary**διαδέχομαι** be next, succeed ~doctrine**εἶλω** pack, press, drive ~helix**ἐκμανθάνω** know by heart**ἰκέτης** -ου (m, 1) suppliant, refugee**κάρτα** very much ~κράτος**καταστρέφω** overturn, subdue
~catastrophe**κενός** empty, vain**νομᾶς** -δος (m, 3) roaming, grazing**νοστέω** go home**περιέπω** treat, handle**πίσυνος** trusting in, relying on (+dat)**στασιάζω** revolt, be divided**συμφέρω** bring together; be expedient;
agree; (mp) happen ~bear**τέχνη** craft, art, plan, contrivance
~technology**τίνω** (i) pay, atone for; (mp) punish**τίω** value, honor; mp: exact
recompense for**τραχύς** (ᾱ) rough ~trachea**τυραννεύω** be an absolute ruler**ὑπεξέρχομαι** get out, escape**φοιτέω** go back and forth **χρηστήριον** oracle, response

έωντοῦ μοῖραν βουλόμενος, καὶ μάλιστα τῷ χρηστηρίῳ
 πίσυνος έων καὶ τίσασθαι θέλων ὑπὲρ Ἀστυάγεος
 Κῦρον. Ἀστυάγεα γὰρ τὸν Κναζάρεω, έόντα Κροίσου
 μὲν γαμβρὸν Μήδων δὲ βασιλέα, Κῦρος ὁ Καμβύσεω
 καταστρεψάμενος εἶχε, γενόμενον γαμβρὸν Κροίσῳ
 ὧδε. Σκυθέων τῶν νομάδων εἴλη ἀνδρῶν στασιάσασα
 ὑπεξῆλθε εἰς γῆν τὴν Μηδικήν· έτυράννευε δὲ τὸν χρόνον
 τοῦτον Μήδων Κναζάρης ὁ Φραόρτεω τοῦ Δηióκεω, ὃς
 τοὺς Σκύθας τούτους τὸ μὲν πρῶτον περιείπε εἰς ὡς έόντας
 ίκέτας· ὥστε δὲ περὶ πολλοῦ ποιόμενος αὐτοὺς, παῖδάς
 σφι παρέδωκε τὴν γλῶσσάν τε έκμαθεῖν καὶ τὴν τέχνην
 τῶν τόξων. χρόνου δὲ γενομένου, καὶ αἰεὶ φοιτεόντων
 τῶν Σκυθέων ἐπ' ἄγρην καὶ αἰεὶ τι φερόντων, καὶ κοτε
 συνήνεικε έλεῖν σφεας μηδέν· νοστήσαντας δὲ αὐτοὺς
 κεινῇσι χερσὶ ὁ Κναζάρης ἦν γάρ, ὡς διέδεξε, ὀργὴν
 ἄκρος τρηχέως κάρτα περιέσπε αἰεικήη. οἱ δὲ ταῦτα
 πρὸς Κναζάρεω παθόντες, ὥστε ἀνάξια σφέων αὐτῶν
 πεπονθότες, έβούλευσαν τῶν παρὰ

ἔωντοῦ μοῖραν βουλόμενος, καὶ μάλιστα τῷ ^{|oracle,}
^{|trusting} ἔων καὶ τίσασθαι θέλων ὑπὲρ Ἀστυάγεος ^{|response}
 Κῦρον. Ἀστυάγεα γὰρ τὸν Κναξάρειω, ἔοντα Κροίσου
 μὲν ^{|an in-law} Μήδων δὲ βασιλέα, Κῦρος ὁ Καμβύσειω
^{|overturn, subdue} εἶχε, γενόμενον ^{|an in-law} Κροίσῳ
 ὧδε. Σκυθέων τῶν ^{|roaming,} ^{|pack,} ^{|revolt, be divided}
^{|grazing} ^{|press}
^{|get out, escape} ἦν τὴν Μηδικήν· ^{|be an absolute ruler} χρόνον
 τοῦτον Μήδων Κναξάρης ὁ Φραόρτειω τοῦ Δηϊόκειω, ὃς
 τοὺς Σκύθας τούτους τὸ μὲν πρῶτον περιεῖπε εὖ ὥς ἔοντας
^{|suppliant,} ὥστε δὲ περὶ πολλοῦ ποιόμενος αὐτούς, ^{|refugee} παῖδάς
 σφι παρέδωκε τὴν ^{|tongue,} ^{|language} τε ^{|know by heart} τὴν ^{|craft}
 τῶν τόξων. χρόνου δὲ γενομένου, καὶ αἰεὶ ^{|go back and forth}
 τῶν Σκυθέων ἐπ' ἄγρην καὶ αἰεὶ τι φερόντων, καὶ κοτε
 συνήνευκε ἐλεῖν σφεας μηδέν· ^{|go home} δὲ αὐτοὺς
 κεινῇσι χερσὶ ὁ Κναξάρης ἦν γάρ, ὥς ^{|be next, succeed}
^{|at the edge, extreme} ^{|very much} ^{|disfiguring;} ^{|unseemliness} ^{|unworthy,} ^{|undeserved} ^{|έων} αὐτῶν
 πεπονθότες, ἐβούλευσαν τῶν παρὰ

then especially because he had confidence in the oracle and wished to take vengeance on Cyrus for Astyages. For Cyrus the son of Cambyses had conquered Astyages and was keeping him in captivity, who was brother by marriage to Croesus and king of the Medes: and he had become the brother by marriage of Croesus in this manner:—

A horde of the nomad Scythians at feud with the rest withdrew and sought refuge in the land of the Medes: and at this time the ruler of the Medes was Kyaxares the son of Phraortes, the son of Deïokes, who at first dealt well with these Scythians, being suppliants for his protection; and esteeming them very highly he delivered boys to them to learn their speech and the art of shooting with the bow. Then time went by, and the Scythians used to go out continually to the chase and always brought back something; till once it happened that they took nothing, and when they returned with empty hands Kyaxares (being, as he showed on this occasion, not of an eminently good disposition) dealt with them very harshly and used insult towards them. And they, when they had received this treatment from Kyaxares, considering that they had suffered indignity, planned to kill and to cut up one

*vocabulary***ἄγρᾱ** hunting, prey**δαιτυμῶν** -όνοϛ (m, 3) dinner guest
~demon**δάω** learn ~didactic**δῆθεν** strong form of δῆ**ἐκδίδωμι** hand over ~donate**ἕκτοϛ** sixth ~hexagon**ἐξαιτέω** demand ~etiology**ἐξαπίνης** suddenly**ἱκέτης** -ου (m, 1) suppliant, refugee**κατακόπτω** cut down, shatter**κρέας** -ωϛ (n) meat ~creatine**μεταλλαγῆ** a change; exchange**νυκτομαχία** night battle**ὄροϛ** boundary marker ~horizon**οὖρον** boundary stone; unit of
distance; limit**οὖροϛ** fair wind; guardian; hill**πάσσω** sprinkle; insert in a web**πατέομαι** eat, drink ~pastor**προαγορεύω** declare, predict, order**προτίθημι** prefer, set out ~thesis**σκευάζω** prepare, collect**συμβολή** encounter; contribution**συμφέρω** bring together; be expedient;
agree; (mp) happen ~bear**ώθέω** push

σφίσι διδασκομένων παίδων ἓνα κατακόψαι, σκευάσαντες δὲ αὐτὸν ὥσπερ ἐώθεσαν καὶ τὰ θηρία σκευάζειν, Κυμαζάρη δοῦναι φέροντες ὡς ἄγρην δῆθεν, δόντες δὲ τὴν ταχίστην κομίζεσθαι παρὰ Ἀλυάττεα τὸν Σαδυάττεω ἐς Σάρδεις. ταῦτα καὶ ἐγένετο. καὶ γὰρ Κυμαζάρης καὶ οἱ παρεόντες δαιτυμόνες τῶν κρεῶν τούτων ἐπάσαντο, καὶ οἱ Σκύθαι ταῦτα ποιήσαντες Ἀλυάττεω ἰκέται ἐγένοντο.

1.74

μετὰ δὲ ταῦτα, οὐ γὰρ δὴ ὁ Ἀλυάττης ἐξεδίδου τοὺς Σκύθας ἐξαιτέοντι Κυμαζάρη, πόλεμος τοῖσι Λυδοῖσι καὶ τοῖσι Μήδοις ἐγεγόνεε ἐπ' ἕτεα πέντε, ἐν τοῖσι πολλάκις μὲν οἱ Μῆδοι τοὺς Λυδοὺς ἐνίκησαν, πολλάκις δὲ οἱ Λυδοὶ τοὺς Μῆδους, ἐν δὲ καὶ νυκτομαχίην τινὰ ἐποίησαντο· διαφέρουσι δέ σφι ἐπὶ ἴσης τὸν πόλεμον τῷ ἕκτῳ ἔτει συμβολῆς γενομένης συνήνεικε ὥστε τῆς μάχης συνεστεώσης τὴν ἡμέρην ἐξαπίνης νύκτα γενέσθαι. τὴν δὲ μεταλλαγὴν ταύτην τῇ ἡμέρῃς Θαλῆς ὁ Μιλήσιος τοῖσι Ἴωσι προηγόρευσε ἔσεσθαι, οὖρον προθέμενος

σφίσι διδασκομένων παίδων ἕνα |cut down, |prepare, collect
 |shatter
 δὲ αὐτὸν ὥσπερ |push καὶ τὰ θηρία |prepare, |collect, Κναξάρη
 δοῦναι φέροντες ὡς ἄγρην δῆθεν, δόντες δὲ τὴν ταχίστην
 κομίζεσθαι παρὰ Ἀλυάττεα τὸν Σαδυάττεω ἐς Σάρδεις.
 ταῦτα καὶ ἐγένετο. καὶ γὰρ Κναξάρης καὶ οἱ παρεόντες
 |dinner guest τῶν |meat τούτων ἐπάσαντο, καὶ οἱ Σκύθαι
 ταῦτα ποιήσαντες Ἀλυάττεω |suppliant, ἔνοντο.
 |refugee

1.74

μετὰ δὲ ταῦτα, οὐ γὰρ δὴ ὁ Ἀλυάττης |hand over τοὺς
 Σκύθας |demand Κναξάρη, πόλεμος τοῖσι Λυδοῖσι καὶ
 τοῖσι Μήδοισι ἐγεγόνεε ἐπ' ἔτεα πέντε, ἐν τοῖσι πολλάκις
 μὲν οἱ Μῆδοι τοὺς Λυδοὺς ἐνίκησαν, πολλάκις δὲ οἱ Λυδοὶ
 τοὺς Μήδους, ἐν δὲ καὶ νυκτομαχίην τινὰ ἐποίησαντο·
 διαφέρουσι δέ σφι ἐπὶ ἴσης τὸν πόλεμον τῷ |sixth
 ἔτει |encounter; γενομένης συνήνεικε ὥστε τῆς μάχης
 |contribution
 συνεστεώσης τὴν ἡμέρην |suddenly νύκτα γενέσθαι. τὴν
 δὲ |a change; exchange. ἢν τῇ ἡμέρῃ Θαλῆς ὁ Μιλήσιος τοῖσι
 Ἰῶσι |declare, predict, ἔσεσθαι, οὖρον |prefer, set out
 |order

of the boys who were being instructed among them, and having dressed his flesh as they had been wont to dress the wild animals, to bear it to Kyaxares and give it to him, pretending that it was game taken in hunting; and when they had given it, their design was to make their way as quickly as possible to Alyattes the son of Sadyattes at Sardis. This then was done; and Kyaxares with the guests who ate at his table tasted of that meat, and the Scythians having so done became suppliants for the protection of Alyattes.

1.74

After this, seeing that Alyattes would not give up the Scythians when Kyaxares demanded them, there had arisen war between the Lydians and the Medes lasting five years; in which years the Medes often discomfited the Lydians and the Lydians often discomfited the Medes (and among others they fought also a battle by night): and as they still carried on the war with equally balanced fortune, in the sixth year a battle took place in which it happened, when the fight had begun, that suddenly the day became night. And this change of the day Thales the Milesian had foretold to the Ionians laying

vocabulary

ἀναγκαίη of necessity, by force
ἀναγκαῖος coerced, coercing, slavery
ἀναλείχω lick up
ἄνευ away from; not having; not
 needing ~Sp. sin
ἀνίημι urge, impel; release ~jet
βραχίων -ovos (m, 3) upper arm,
 shoulder
γάμος wedding, sex ~bigamy
Ἑλλην Greek
ἐπαλλαγή dovetailing, overlapping
ἐπιμέμφομαι blame
ἐπιτέμνω cut into; shorten
εὖς good, brave, noble
καταστρέφω overturn, subdue

~catastrophe
μεταβολή change, exchange
ὁμόχροια sameness of color;
 smoothness of skin
ὄον οὖ type of fruit
ὄρκιον oath ~orc
προσδοκάω expect
σημαίνω give orders to; show; mark
 ~semaphore
σπεύδω 'push on,' get going, hurry
 ~repudiate
σύμβασις -τος (f) agreement;
 coinciding
συμβιβάζω put together; infer
συμμένω hold together; hold to an
 agreement

ἐνιαυτὸν τοῦτον ἐν τῷ δὴ καὶ ἐγένετο ἡ μεταβολή.
οἱ δὲ Λυδοί τε καὶ οἱ Μῆδοι ἐπεῖτε εἶδον νύκτα ἀντὶ
ἡμέρης γενομένην, τῆς μάχης τε ἐπαύσαντο καὶ μᾶλλον
τι ἔσπευσαν καὶ ἀμφότεροι εἰρήνην ἐωυτοῖσι γενέσθαι.
οἱ δὲ συμβιβάσαντες αὐτοὺς ἦσαν οἶδε, Σύνενεσίς τε
ὁ Κίλιξ καὶ Λαβύνητος ὁ Βαβυλώνιος. οὗτοί σφι καὶ
τὸ ὄρκιον οἱ σπεύσαντες γενέσθαι ἦσαν καὶ γάμων
ἐπαλλαγὴν ἐποίησαν· Ἀλυάττεα γὰρ ἔγνωσαν δοῦναι τὴν
θυγατέρα Ἀρήνην Ἀστυάγει· τῷ Κναξάρει παιδί· ἄνευ
γὰρ ἀναγκαίης ἰσχυρῆς συμβάσιος ἰσχυραὶ οὐκ ἐθέλουσι
συμμένειν. ὄρκια δὲ ποιεῖται ταῦτα τὰ ἔθνη τὰ πέρ
τε Ἕλληνες, καὶ πρὸς τούτοις, ἐπεὰν τοὺς βραχίονας
ἐπιτάμωνται ἐς τὴν ὁμοχροίην, τὸ αἷμα ἀναλείχουσι
ἀλλήλων.

1.75

τοῦτον δὴ ὦν τὸν Ἀστυάγεα Κῦρος ἑὸντα ἐωυτοῦ
μητροπάτορα καταστρεψάμενος ἔσχε δι' αἰτίην τὴν ἐγὼ ἐν
τοῖσι ὀπίσω λόγοις σημανέω· τὰ Κροῖσος ἐπιμεμφόμενος

ἐνιαυτὸν τοῦτον ἐν τῷ δὴ καὶ ἐγένετο ἡ μεταβολή.
 οἱ δὲ Λυδοί τε καὶ οἱ Μῆδοι ἐπέιτε εἶδον νύκτα ἀντὶ
 ἡμέρης γενομένην, τῆς μάχης τε ἐπαύσαντο καὶ μᾶλλον
 τι |‘push on,’ get going, hurry ἡ ἀμφοτέροι εἰρήνην ἑωυτοῖσι γενέσθαι.
 οἱ δὲ |put together; infer αὐτοὺς ᾗσαν οἶδε, Συνέννεσίς τε
 ὁ Κίλιξ καὶ Λαβύνητος ὁ Βαβυλώνιος. οὗτοί σφι καὶ
 τὸ ὄρκιον οἱ |‘push on,’ get going, hurry γενέσθαι ᾗσαν καὶ |wedding, sex
 |dovetailing, overlapping ἐποίησαν· Ἀλυσάττεα γὰρ ἔγνωσαν δοῦναι τὴν
 θυγατέρα Ἀρύνην Ἀστυάγει· τῷ Κναξάρει παιδί· ἄνευ
 γὰρ ἀναγκαίης ἰσχυρῆς |agreement; coinciding ἰσχυραὶ οὐκ ἐθέλουσι
 |hold together; hold to an agreement δὲ ποιέεται ταῦτα τὰ ἔθνεα τὰ πέρ
 τε |Greek , καὶ πρὸς τούτοις, ἐπεὰν τοὺς |upper arm, shoulder
 |cut into; shorten τὴν |sameness of color; smooth-lick up
 |ness of skin
 ἀλλήλων.

1.75

τοῦτον δὴ ὦν τὸν Ἀστυάγεα Κῦρος ἐόντα ἑωυτοῦ
 μητροπάτορα |overturn, subdue ἔσχε δι’ αἰτίην τὴν ἐγὼ ἐν
 τοῖσι ὀπίσω λόγοισι |give orders to; show; mark Κροῖσος |blame

down as a limit this very year in which the change took place.

The Lydians however and the Medes, when they saw that it had become night instead of day, ceased from their fighting and were much more eager both of them that peace should be made between them. And they who brought about the peace between them were Syennesis the Kilikian and Labynetos the Babylonian: these were they who urged also the taking of the oath by them, and they brought about an interchange of marriages; for they decided that Alyattes should give his daughter Aryenis to Astyages the son of Kyaxares, seeing that without the compulsion of a strong tie agreements are apt not to hold strongly together. Now these nations observe the same ceremonies in taking oaths as the Hellenes, and in addition to them they make incision into the skin of their arms, and then lick up the blood each of the other.

1.75

This Astyages then, being his mother's father, Cyrus had conquered and made prisoner for a reason which I shall declare in the history which comes after. This then was the complaint which

*vocabulary***ἄνωθεν** from above, the beginning**ἀπορέω** be confused, distressed**ἀριστερός** left-hand**ἀρχαῖος** ancient, from the beginning

~oligarch

γέφυρα (ῥ) dam, dike; bridge**διαβαίνω** pass over, cross ~basis**διαβιβάζω** carry over**διῶρυξ** -χος (f) ditch, canal**εἰσβάλλω** throw into ~ballistic**ἐκτρέπω** turn aside**Ἑλλήν** Greek**ἐνθεῦτεν** thence**ἰδρύω** establish**κίβδηλος** bogus**μηνοειδής** crescent-shaped**νώτον** back of the body; rear of an army; top of a box**νώτος** back of the body; rear of an army; top of a box**ὀρύσσω** dig**παραμείβω** pass by ~amoeba**Πέρσης** Persian**ῥεῖθρον** stream ~rheostat**ῥέω** flow ~rheostat**στρατός** common people/soldiers

~strategy

στρατόω be on a campaign ~strategy**σχίζω** split ~schism**χρησμός** oracular response**χρηστήριον** oracle, response

τῷ Κύρῳ ἔς τε τὰ χρηστήρια ἔπεμπε εἰ στρατεύηται
 ἐπὶ Πέρσας, καὶ δὴ καὶ ἀπικομένου χρημοῦ κιβδήλου,
 ἐλπίσας πρὸς ἑωυτοῦ τὸν χρησμὸν εἶναι, ἐστρατεύετο
 ἐς τὴν Περσέων μοῖραν. ὥς δὲ ἀπίκετο ἐπὶ τὸν Ἄλυν
 ποταμὸν ὁ Κροῖσος, τὸ ἐνθεῦτεν, ὥς μὲν ἐγὼ λέγω,
 κατὰ τὰς εἰσέχουσας γεφύρας διεβίβασε τὸν στρατόν, ὥς
 δὲ ὁ πολλὸς λόγος Ἑλλήνων, Θαλῆς οἱ ὁ Μιλήσιος
 διεβίβασε. ἀπορέοντος γὰρ Κροίσου ὅπως οἱ διαβήσεται
 τὸν ποταμὸν ὁ στρατός οὐ γὰρ δὴ εἶναι κω τοῦτον
 τὸν χρόνον τὰς γεφύρας ταύτας λέγεται παρεόντα τὸν
 Θαλῆν ἐν τῷ στρατοπέδῳ ποιῆσαι αὐτῷ τὸν ποταμὸν ἐξ
 ἀριστερῆς χειρὸς ῥέοντα τοῦ στρατοῦ καὶ ἐκ δεξιῆς ῥέειν,
 ποιῆσαι δὲ ᾧδε· ἄνωθεν τοῦ στρατοπέδου ἀρξάμενον
 διώρυχα βαθέαν ὀρύσσειν, ἄγοντα μηνοειδέα, ὅπως ἂν τὸ
 στρατόπεδον ἰδρυμένον κατὰ νώτου λάβοι, ταύτῃ κατὰ
 τὴν διώρυχα ἐκτραπόμενος ἐκ τῶν ἀρχαίων ῥέεθρων,
 καὶ αὐτὶς παραμειβόμενος τὸ στρατόπεδον ἐς τὰ ἀρχαῖα
 ἐσβάλλοι· ὥστε ἐπεῖτε καὶ ἐσχίσθη τάχιστα ὁ ποταμός,

τῷ Κύρῳ ἔς τε τὰ ^{|oracle,}_{|response} ἔπεμπε εἰ στρατεύηται
 ἐπὶ Πέρσας, καὶ δὴ καὶ ἀπικομένου ^{|oracular}_{|response} ^{|bogus} ,
 ἐλπίσας πρὸς ἑωυτοῦ τὸν ^{|oracular}_{|response} εἶναι, ἐστρατεύετο
 ἐς τὴν Περσέων μοῖραν. ὥς δὲ ἀπίκετο ἐπὶ τὸν Ἄλυν
 ποταμὸν ὁ Κροῖσος, τὸ ^{|thence} , ὥς μὲν ἐγὼ λέγω,
 κατὰ τὰς ἐούσας ^{|dam, dike; carry over}_{|bridge} τὸν ^{|army} , ὥς
 δὲ ὁ πολλὸς λόγος ^{|Greek} , Θαλῆς οἱ ὁ Μιλήσιος
^{|carry over} ^{|be confused,}_{|distressed} γὰρ Κροίσου ὅκως οἱ ^{|pass over, cross}
 τὸν ποταμὸν ὁ ^{|army} οὐ γὰρ δὴ εἶναι κω τοῦτον
 τὸν χρόνον τὰς ^{|dam, dike; bridge} λέγεται παρεόντα τὸν
 Θαλῆν ἐν τῷ στρατοπέδῳ ποιῆσαι αὐτῷ τὸν ποταμὸν ἐξ
^{|left-hand} χειρὸς ^{|flow} τοῦ στρατοῦ καὶ ἐκ δεξιῆς ^{|flow} ,
 ποιῆσαι δὲ ὦδε· ^{|from above,}_{|the beginning} στρατοπέδου ἀρξάμενον
^{|ditch,}_{|canal} βαθέαν ^{|dig} , ἄγοντα ^{|crescent-shaped} ἄν τὸ
 στρατόπεδον ^{|establish} κατὰ νώτου λάβοι, ταύτη κατὰ
 τὴν ^{|ditch,}_{|canal} ^{|turn aside} ἐκ τῶν ^{|ancient,}_{|from the} ^{|stream} ,
 καὶ αὐτὶς ^{|pass by} τὸ στρατόπεδον ἐς τὰ ^{|ancient, from the be-}_{|ginning}
 ἐσβάλλοι· ὥστε ἐπείτε καὶ ^{|split} τάχιστα ὁ ποταμός,

Croesus had against Cyrus when he sent to the Oracles to ask if he should march against the Persians; and when a deceitful answer had come back to him, he marched into the dominion of the Persians, supposing that the answer was favourable to himself. And when Croesus came to the river Halys, then, according to my account, he passed his army across by the bridges which there were; but, according to the account which prevails among the Hellenes, Thales the Milesian enabled him to pass his army across. For, say they, when Croesus was at a loss how his army should pass over the river (since, they add, there were not yet at that time the bridges which now there are), Thales being present in the army caused the river, which flowed then on the left hand of the army, to flow partly also on the right; and he did it thus:—beginning above the camp he proceeded to dig a deep channel, directing it in the form of a crescent moon, so that the river might take the camp there pitched in the rear, being turned aside from its ancient course by this way along the channel, and afterwards passing by the camp might fall again into its ancient course; so that as soon as the river was thus parted in two it

vocabulary

ἀγείρω gather ~agora
ἀνάστατος driven out, ruined
ἀναστατώ unsettle, upset
ἀνδραποδίζω enslave
ἀντιόω meet, fight, join
ἀποξηραίνω dry up
ἀρχαῖος ancient, from the beginning
 ~oligarch
διαβαίνω pass over, cross ~basis
διαβατός crossable, fordable
ἐνθαῦτα there, here
ἐξελαύνω drive out, exile ~elastic
κλήρος lot; farm, inheritance; clergy
 ~clergy

κληρώω cast lots, assign
κῦρος -εος (n, 3) authority; validity
κῶας κώως (n, 3) fleece
μεταξύ between
παράπαν completely
περιοικίς -δος (f) neighboring,
 suburban
προσίημι be allowed near
ῥεῖθρον stream ~rheostat
στρατοπεδεύω encamp or take up
 station ~strategy
στρατός common people/soldiers
 ~strategy
στρατώ be on a campaign ~strategy
φθείρω destroy, ruin

ἀμφοτέρῃ διαβατὸς ἐγένετο, οἳ δὲ καὶ τὸ παράπαν λέγουσι καὶ τὸ ἀρχαῖον ῥέθρον ἀποξηρανθῆναι. ἀλλὰ τοῦτο μὲν οὐ προσίεμαι· κῶς γὰρ ὀπίσω πορευόμενοι διέβησαν αὐτόν;

1.76

Κροῖσος δὲ ἐπεῖτε διαβάς σὺν τῷ στρατῷ ἀπῖκετο τῆς Καππαδοκίης ἐς τὴν Πτερίην καλεομένην ἣ δὲ Πτερίη ἐστὶ τῆς χώρας ταύτης τὸ ἰσχυρότατον, κατὰ Σινώπην πόλιν τὴν ἐν Εὐξείνῳ πόντῳ μάλιστά κη κειμένη, ἐνθαῦτα ἐστρατοπεδεύετο φθείρων τῶν Συρίων τοὺς κλήρους· καὶ εἶλε μὲν τῶν Πτερίων τὴν πόλιν καὶ ἡνδραποδίσατο, εἶλε δὲ τὰς περιουκίδας αὐτῆς πάσας, Συρίους τε οὐδὲν ἐόντας αἰτίους ἀναστάτους ἐποίησε. Κῦρος δὲ ἀγείρας τὸν ἐώντοῦ στρατὸν καὶ παραλαβὼν τοὺς μεταξὺ οἰκέοντας πάντας ἡντιοῦτο Κροίσῳ. πρὶν δὲ ἐξελαύνειν ὀρμήσαι τὸν στρατόν, πέμψας κήρυκας ἐς τοὺς Ἴωνας ἐπειράτο σφέας ἀπὸ Κροίσου ἀπιστάναι. Ἴωνες μὲν νυν οὐκ ἐπείθοντο. Κῦρος δὲ ὥς ἀπῖκετο

ἀμφοτέρῃ |crossable, |έγένετο, οἱ δὲ καὶ τὸ |completely |λέγουσι
 |fordable
 καὶ τὸ |ancient, |stream |dry up . ἀλλὰ τοῦτο
 |from the
 μὲν οὐ |beginning
 |be allowed |fleece , ἄρ' ὀπίσω πορευόμενοι |pass over, cross
 |near
 αὐτόν;

1.76

Κροῖσος δὲ ἐπείτε |pass over, cross Ἡ στρατῷ ἀπύκετο τῆς
 Καππαδοκίης ἐς τὴν Πτερίην καλεομένην ἣ δὲ Πτερίη
 ἐστὶ τῆς χώρας ταύτης τὸ ἰσχυρότατον, κατὰ Σινώπην
 πόλιν τὴν ἐν Εὐξείνῳ πόντῳ μάλιστά κη κειμένη, |there, here
 |encamp or take up |destroy, ruin ἢ Συρίων τοὺς κλήρους· καὶ
 |station
 εἶλε μὲν τῶν Πτερίων τὴν πόλιν καὶ |enslave ,
 εἶλε δὲ τὰς |neighboring, αὐτῆς πάσας, Συρίους τε οὐδὲν
 |suburban
 ἐόντας αἰτίους ἀναστάτους ἐποίησε. |authority; |gather τὸν
 |validity
 ἑωυτοῦ |army καὶ παραλαβὼν τοὺς |between οἰκέοντας
 πάντας |meet, Κροίσῳ. πρὶν δὲ |drive out ὀρμήσαι τὸν
 |fight, join
 |army , πέμψας κήρυκας ἐς τοὺς Ἰωνας ἐπειράτο σφέας
 ἀπὸ Κροίσου ἀπιστάναι. Ἴωνες μὲν νυν οὐκ ἐπείθοντο.
 |authority; ὥς ἀπύκετο
 |validity

became fordable by both branches: and some say even that the ancient course of the river was altogether dried up. But this tale I do not admit as true, for how then did they pass over the river as they went back?

1.76

And Croesus, when he had passed over with his army, came to that place in Cappadokia which is called Pteria (now Pteria is the strongest place in this country, and is situated somewhere about in a line with the city of Sinope on the Euxine). Here he encamped and ravaged the fields of the Syrians. Moreover he took the city of the Pterians, and sold the people into slavery, and he took also all the towns that lay about it; and the Syrians, who were not guilty of any wrong, he forced to remove from their homes.

Meanwhile Cyrus, having gathered his own forces and having taken up in addition to them all who dwelt in the region between, was coming to meet Croesus. Before he began however to lead forth his army, he had sent heralds to the Ionians and tried to induce them to revolt from Croesus; but the Ionians would not do as he said. Then when Cyrus was come and

*vocabulary***ἀγωνίζομαι** contend, exert oneself**ἀλίζω** gather, assemble**ἀντιστρατοπεδεύω** encamp against**ἀπαγγέλλω** announce, order, promise
~angel**ἀπελαύνω** expel, exclude, ward off;
(intrans) ride away**βασιλεύω** be king**δίιστημι** stand apart ~stand**ἐνθαῦτα** there, here**καρτερός** strong, staunch**μέμφομαι** blame; reject**μεταπέμπω** send; (mid) summon
~pomp**ὄρκιον** oath ~orc**οὐδέτερος** neither**ῥητός** stated, agreed on ~rhetoric**στράτευμα** -τος (n, 3) army ~strategy**στρατιά** army ~strategy**στρατός** common people/soldiers
~strategy**συλλέγω** collect, assemble ~legion**συμβάλλω** pit against; compare; mp:
meet, fall in with ~ballistic**συμμαχία** alliance**τυραννεύω** be an absolute ruler**ὕστεραῖος** the next; later**χωρέω** withdraw, give way to (+dat)
~heir

καὶ ἀντεστρατοπεδεύσατο Κροίσῳ, ἐνθαῦτα ἐν τῇ Πτερύγῃ
χωρῇ ἐπειρῶντο κατὰ τὸ ἰσχυρὸν ἀλλήλων. μάχης δὲ
καρτερῆς γενομένης καὶ πεσόντων ἀμφοτέρων πολλῶν,
τέλος οὐδέτεροι νικήσαντες διέστησαν νυκτὸς ἐπελθούσης.
καὶ τὰ μὲν στρατόπεδα ἀμφότερα οὕτω ἡγωνίσασατο.

1.77

Κροίσος δὲ μεμφθεὶς κατὰ τὸ πλῆθος τὸ ἐωυτοῦ
στράτευμα ἦν γάρ οἱ ὁ συμβαλὼν στρατὸς πολλὸν
ἐλάσσων ἢ ὁ Κύρου, τοῦτο μεμφθεὶς, ὥς τῇ ὑστεραίῃ
οὐκ ἐπειρᾶτο ἐπιῶν ὁ Κῦρος, ἀπήλαυνε ἐς τὰς Σάρδεις ἐν
νόῳ ἔχων παρακαλέσας μὲν Αἰγυπτίους κατὰ τὸ ὄρκιον
ἐποιήσατο γὰρ καὶ πρὸς Ἄμασιν βασιλεύοντα Αἰγύπτου
συμμαχίην πρότερον ἢ περ πρὸς Λακεδαιμονίους,
μεταπεμψάμενος δὲ καὶ Βαβυλωνίους καὶ γὰρ πρὸς
τούτους αὐτῷ ἐπεποιήτο συμμαχίῃ, ἐτυράννευε δὲ τὸν
χρόνον τοῦτον τῶν Βαβυλωνίων Λαβύνητος, ἐπαγγείλας
δὲ καὶ Λακεδαιμονίοισι παρῆναι ἐς χρόνον ῥητόν ἀλίσας
τε δὴ τούτους καὶ τὴν ἐωυτοῦ συλλέξας στρατιὴν ἐένωντο

καὶ |encamp against Κροίσω, |there, here ' , τῇ Πτερίῃ

|withdraw, give ντο κατὰ τὸ ἰσχυρὸν ἀλλήλων. μάχης δὲ
|way to (+dat)

|strong, γενομένης καὶ πεσόντων ἀμφοτέρων πολλῶν,
|staunch

τέλος |neither νικήσαντες |stand apart νυκτὸς ἐπελθούσης.

καὶ τὰ μὲν στρατόπεδα ἀμφότερα οὕτω |contend, ex-
|ert oneself

1.77

Κροῖσος δὲ |blame;
|reject κατὰ τὸ πλῆθος τὸ ἑωυτοῦ

|army ἦν γάρ οἱ ὁ |pit against; |army πολλὸν
|compare; mp:

ἐλάσσω ἢ ὁ Κύρου, τοῦτο |blame; |the next; later
|with

οὐκ ἐπειράτο ἐπιὼν ὁ Κῦρος, |expel, exclude, ward off; ῥιδὶς ἐν
|(intrans) ride away

νόῳ ἔχων παρακαλέσας μὲν Αἰγυπτίους κατὰ τὸ ὄρκιον

ἐποιήσατο γὰρ καὶ πρὸς Ἀμασιν |be king Αἰγύπτου

συμμαχίην πρότερον ἢ περ πρὸς Λακεδαιμονίους,

|send; (mid) summon Ἦ καὶ Βαβυλωνίους καὶ γὰρ πρὸς

τούτους αὐτῷ ἐπεποίητο συμμαχίη, |be an absolute ruler.

χρόνον τοῦτον τῶν Βαβυλωνίων Λαβύνητος, ἐπαγγείλας

δὲ καὶ Λακεδαιμονίοισι παρῆναι ἐς χρόνον |stated, |gather,
|agreed |assemble

τε δὴ τούτους καὶ τὴν ἑωυτοῦ |collect, στρατὴν ἐνένωτο
|assemble

had encamped over against Croesus, they made trial of one another by force of arms in the land of Pteria: and after hard fighting, when many had fallen on both sides, at length, night having come on, they parted from one the other with no victory on either side.

1.77

Thus the two armies contended with one another: and Croesus being ill satisfied with his own army in respect of number (for the army which he had when he fought was far smaller than that of Cyrus), being dissatisfied with it I say on this account, as Cyrus did not attempt to advance against him on the following day, marched back to Sardis, having it in his mind to call the Egyptians to his help according to the oath which they had taken (for he had made an alliance with Amasis king of Egypt before he made the alliance with the Lacedemonians), and to summon the Babylonians as well (for with these also an alliance had been concluded by him, Labynetos being at that time ruler of the Babylonians), and moreover to send a message to the Lacedemonians bidding them appear at a fixed time: and then after he had got all these together and had gathered his own army, his design was to let

vocabulary

ἀγωνίζομαι contend, exert oneself
ἀναπλώω unfold; explain; simplify
ἀναπλώω sail up, through
ἀπαγγέλλω announce, order, promise
 ~angel
διασκεδάννυμι (ῥ) scatter, disperse
ἔαρ -ος (n) spring (season)
ἐγγίγνομαι live in ~genus
ἐκγίγνομαι be born; be by birth
 ~genus
ἐμπίμπλημι fill with
ἐξηγέομαι lead forth; set out, describe
 ~hegemony
ἐξηγητής -οῦ (m, 1) leader, expounder
ἐπιλέγω say re, say also; choose; (mid)
 think over
θεοπόρος seer ~theology
κατεσθίω devour ~eat
μεθίημι let go, cease; (mid) speed off

~jet

νέμω to allot, to pasture ~nemesis
νομάς -δος (m, 3) roaming, grazing
νομή pasture; distribution
οὐδαμὸς not anyone
ὄφεις ὄφεως (m) serpent ~ophidian
παραπλήσιος similar to
πέμπτος fifth ~pentagon
Πέρσης Persian
προάστειον suburb
σημαίνω give orders to; show; mark
 ~semaphore
στρατός common people/soldiers
 ~strategy
συλλέγω collect, assemble ~legion
συμμαχία alliance
τέρας -ως (n, 3) omen, fetish
φοιτέω go back and forth
χειμών -ος (m, 3) winter, storm

τὸν χειμῶνα παρείς, ἅμα τῷ ἔαρι στρατεύειν ἐπὶ τοὺς Πέρσας. καὶ ὁ μὲν ταῦτα φρονέων, ὥς ἀπύκετο ἐς τὰς Σάρδεις, ἔπεμπε κήρυκας κατὰ τὰς συμμαχίας προερέοντας ἐς πέμπτου μηνὸς συλλέγεσθαι ἐς Σάρδεις· τὸν δὲ παρεόντα καὶ μαχεσάμενον στρατὸν Πέρσῃσι, ὃς ἦν αὐτοῦ ξεινικός, πάντα ἀπείς διεσκέδασε οὐδαμὰ ἐλπίσας μὴ κοτε ἄρα ἀγωνισάμενος οὕτω παραπλησίως Κῦρος ἐλάσῃ ἐπὶ Σάρδεις.

1.78

ταῦτα ἐπιλεγομένῳ Κροίσῳ τὸ προάστειον πᾶν ὀφίων ἐνεπλήσθη· φανέντων δὲ αὐτῶν οἱ ἵπποι μετιέντες τὰς νομὰς νέμεσθαι φοιτέοντες κατήσθιον. ἰδόντι δὲ τοῦτο Κροίσῳ, ὥσπερ καὶ ἦν ἔδοξε τέρας εἶναι· αὐτίκα δὲ ἔπεμπε θεοπρόπους ἐς τῶν ἐξηγητῶν Τελμησσέων. ἀπικομένοισι δὲ τοῖσι θεοπρόποισι καὶ μαθοῦσι πρὸς Τελμησσέων τὸ θέλει σημαίνειν τὸ τέρας, οὐκ ἐξεγένετο Κροίσῳ ἀπαγγεῖλαι· πρὶν γὰρ ἢ ὀπίσω σφέας ἀναπλῶσαι ἐς τὰς Σάρδεις ἦλω ὁ Κροῖσος. Τελμησσέες μέντοι τάδε

τὸν |winter, storm παρείς, ἅμα τῷ |spring (season) ἔτι ἐπὶ τοὺς
 Πέρσας. καὶ ὁ μὲν ταῦτα φρονέων, ὥς ἀπύκετο
 ἐς τὰς Σάρδεις, ἔπεμπε κήρυκας κατὰ τὰς συμμαχίας
 προερέοντας ἐς |fifth μῆνα |collect, assemble ἐς Σάρδεις· τὸν
 δὲ παρεόντα καὶ μαχεσάμενον |army Πέρσησι, ὃς ἦν
 αὐτοῦ ξεινικός, πάντα ἀπείς |scatter, disperse οὐδαμὰ ἐλπίσας
 μὴ κοτε ἄρα |contend, oneself exert οὕτω |similar to Κῦρος
 ἐλάσῃ ἐπὶ Σάρδεις.

1.78

ταῦτα |say, choose, think over Κροίσῳ τὸ |suburb πᾶν |serpent
 |fill with φανέντων δὲ αὐτῶν οἱ ἵπποι |let go, cease; (mid) speed off
 νομᾶς |distribute |go back and|devour |forth ἰδόντι δὲ τοῦτο
 Κροίσῳ, ὥσπερ καὶ ἦν ἔδοξε |omen, εἶναι· αὐτίκα δὲ ἔπεμπε
 |seer ἐς τῶν ἐξηγητέων Τελμησσέων. ἀπικομένοισι
 δὲ τοῖσι |seer καὶ μαθοῦσι πρὸς Τελμησσέων
 τὸ θέλει |give orders to; omen, show; mark |fetish οὐκ ἐξεγένετο Κροίσῳ
 |announce, or- πρὶν γὰρ ἢ ὀπίσω σφέας ἀναπλῶσαι ἐς τὰς
 |der, promise Σάρδεις ἢ ἢ ὁ Κροῖσος. Τελμησσέες μέντοι τάδε

the winter go by and at the coming of spring to march against the Persians. So with these thoughts in his mind, as soon as he came to Sardis he proceeded to send heralds to his several allies to give them notice that by the fifth month from that time they should assemble at Sardis: but the army which he had with him and which had fought with the Persians, an army which consisted of mercenary troops, he let go and disbanded altogether, never expecting that Cyrus, after having contended against him with such even fortune, would after all march upon Sardis.

1.78

When Croesus had these plans in his mind, the suburb of the city became of a sudden all full of serpents; and when these had appeared, the horses leaving off to feed in their pastures came constantly thither and devoured them. When Croesus saw this he deemed it to be a portent, as indeed it was: and forthwith he despatched messengers to the dwelling of the Telmessians, who interpret omens: and the messengers who were sent to consult arrived there and learnt from the Telmessians what the portent meant to signify, but they did not succeed in reporting the answer to Croesus, for before they sailed back to Sardis Croesus had been taken prisoner. The Telmessians however gave decision thus: that an army

*vocabulary***ἀλίζω** gather, assemble**ἀλίσκομαι** be captured ~helix**ἀλλόθροος** speaking an alien tongue**ἀπελαύνω** expel, exclude, ward off;
(intrans) ride away**ἀπορία** difficulty, bottleneck ~pierce**ἀφαιρέω** take away ~heresy**διασκεδάννυμι** (ἴ) scatter, disperse**ἐνθαῦτα** there, here**ἔπηλυσ** strange, foreign**ἐπιχώριος** native**καταδοκέω** suspect, be prejudiced**καταστρέφω** overturn, subdue
~catastrophe**κῦρος** -εος (n, 3) authority; validity**ὄφεις** ὄφεως (m) serpent ~ophidian**προσδόκιμος** expected**στρατός** common people/soldiers

~strategy

τάχος -ους (n, 3) speed ~tachometer**ὑποκρίνομαι** (ι) answer; pretend

ἔγνωσαν, στρατὸν ἀλλόθροον προσδόκιμον εἶναι Κροίσῳ ἐπὶ τὴν χώραν, ἀπικόμενον δὲ τοῦτον καταστρέφεισθαι τοὺς ἐπιχωρίους, λέγοντες ὅφιν εἶναι γῆς παῖδα, ἵππον δὲ πολέμιόν τε καὶ ἐπήλυδα. Τελμησσέες μὲν νυν ταῦτα ὑπεκρίναντο Κροίσῳ ἤδη ἡλωκότι, οὐδὲν κω εἰδότες τῶν ἦν περὶ Σάρδεις τε καὶ αὐτὸν Κροῖσον.

1.79

Κῦρος δὲ αὐτίκα ἀπελαύνοντος Κροίσου μετὰ τὴν μάχην τὴν γενομένην ἐν τῇ Πτερίῃ, μαθὼν ὡς ἀπελάσας μέλλοι Κροῖσος διασκεδᾶν τὸν στρατόν, βουλευόμενος εὔρισκε πρήγμά οἱ εἶναι ἐλαύνειν ὡς δύναιτο τάχιστα ἐπὶ τὰς Σάρδεις, πρὶν ἢ τὸ δεύτερον ἀλισθῆναι τῶν Λυδῶν τὴν δύναμιν. ὡς δέ οἱ ταῦτα ἔδοξε, καὶ ἐποίεε κατὰ τάχος· ἐλάσας γὰρ τὸν στρατὸν ἐς τὴν Λυδίην αὐτὸς ἄγγελος Κροίσῳ ἐληλύθει. ἐνθαῦτα Κροῖσος ἐς ἀπορίην πολλὴν ἀπιγμένος, ὥς οἱ παρὰ δόξαν ἔσχε τὰ πρήγματα ἢ ὡς αὐτὸς κατεδόκει, ὅμως τοὺς Λυδοὺς ἐξῆγε ἐς μάχην. ἦν δὲ τοῦτον τὸν χρόνον ἔθνος οὐδὲν ἐν τῇ Ἀσίῃ οὔτε

ἔγνωσαν, |army |speaking an|expected εἶναι Κροίσῳ
 |alien tongue
 ἐπὶ τὴν χώραν, ἀπικόμενον δὲ τοῦτον |overtake, subdue
 τοὺς |native , λέγοντες |serpent ἵναι γῆς παῖδα, ἵππων
 δὲ πολέμιόν τε καὶ |strange, Τελμησσέες μὲν οὖν ταῦτα
 |foreign
 |answer; Κροίσῳ ἤδη |be captured ἰδὲν κω εἰδότες τῶν
 |pretend
 ἦν περὶ Σάρδεις τε καὶ αὐτὸν Κροῖσον.

1.79

|authority; αὐτίκα |expel, exclude, ward off; ου μετὰ τὴν μάχην
 |validity |(intrans) ride away
 τὴν γενομένην ἐν τῇ Περσίῃ, μαθὼν ὡς ἀπελάσας μέλλοι
 Κροῖσος |scatter, τὸν |army , βουλευόμενος εὗρισκε
 |disperse
 πρὶν οἱ εἶναι ἐλαύνειν ὡς δύναίτο τάχιστα ἐπὶ τὰς
 Σάρδεις, πρὶν ἢ τὸ δεύτερον |gather, τῶν Λυδῶν τὴν
 |assemble
 δύναμιν. ὡς δὲ οἱ ταῦτα ἔδοξε, καὶ ἐποίησε κατὰ |speed
 ἐλάσας γὰρ τὸν |army εἰς τὴν Λυδίην αὐτὸς ἄγγελος
 Κροίσῳ ἐληλύθει. |there, here Κροῖσος εἰς ἀπορίην πολλὴν
 ἀπιγμένος, ὡς οἱ παρὰ δόξαν ἔσχε τὰ πρήγματα ἢ ὡς
 αὐτὸς |suspect, be, ὅμως τοὺς Λυδοὺς ἐξῆγε εἰς μάχην. ἦν
 |prejudiced
 δὲ τοῦτον τὸν χρόνον ἔθνος οὐδὲν ἐν τῇ Ἀσίῃ οὔτε

speaking a foreign tongue was to be looked for by Croesus to invade his land, and that this when it came would subdue the native inhabitants; for they said that the serpent was born of the soil, while the horse was an enemy and a stranger. The men of Telmessos thus made answer to Croesus after he was already taken prisoner, not knowing as yet anything of the things which had happened to Sardis and to Croesus himself.

1.79

Cyrus, however, so soon as Croesus marched away after the battle which had been fought in Pteria, having learnt that Croesus meant after he had marched away to disband his army, took counsel with himself and concluded that it was good for him to march as quickly as possible to Sardis, before the power of the Lydians should be again gathered together. So when he had resolved upon this, he did it without delay: for he marched his army into Lydia with such speed that he was himself the first to announce his coming to Croesus. Then Croesus, although he had come to a great strait, since his affairs had fallen out altogether contrary to his own expectation, yet proceeded to lead forth the Lydians into battle. Now there was at this

vocabulary

ἀλίζω gather, assemble
ἄλκιμος brave; sturdily made
 ~Alexander
ἀφαιρέω take away ~heresy
ἄχθος -εος (n, 3) burden
ἐκδίδωμι hand over ~donate
ἐνθαῦτα there, here
ἐνστέλλω dress in
ἐπιτάσσω enjoin; place near
ἱππᾶς riding coat; order of knights
ἱππεύω ride
κάμηλος (f) camel
καταρρωδέω fear, dread
ὀπισθεν behind, hereafter
προστάσσω post at, attach to, command
ῥέω flow ~rheostat
ῥοά pl: waters of a river ~rheostat

ῥόος ῥοῦ stream, flow, current
 ~rheostat
σιτοφόρος (ι) carrying, producing grain
σκευάζω prepare, collect
σκευοφόρος pack animal, porter
στολή equipment
στρατιά army ~strategy
στρατός common people/soldiers
 ~strategy
στρατώω be on a campaign ~strategy
συνέρχομαι come together
συρρήγνυμι (υῦ) break down the strength of
τοιόσδε such
ὑποτίθημι suggest, advise ~hypothesis
φορέω frequentative of φέρω, to carry
 ~bear
φιλός (ι) naked, bare ~epsilon

ἀνδρηγιότερον οὔτε ἀλκιμώτερον τοῦ Λυδίου. ἡ δὲ μάχη σφέων ἦν ἀπ' ἵππων, δόρατά τε ἐφόρεον μεγάλα, καὶ αὐτοὶ ἦσαν ἱππεύεσθαι ἀγαθοί.

1.80

ἐς τὸ πεδίον δὲ συνελθόντων τοῦτο τὸ πρὸ τοῦ ἄστεος ἐστὶ τοῦ Σαρδιηνοῦ, ἐὼν μέγα τε καὶ ψιλὸν διὰ δὲ αὐτοῦ ποταμοὶ ῥέοντες καὶ ἄλλοι καὶ Ὑλλος συρρηγνῦσι ἐς τὸν μέγιστον, καλεόμενον δὲ Ἑρμον, ὃς ἐξ ὄρεος ἱοῦ μητρὸς Δινδυμήνης ῥέων ἐκδιδοῖ ἐς θάλασσαν κατὰ Φωκαίην πόλιν, ἐνθαῦτα ὁ Κῦρος ὡς εἶδε τοὺς Λυδοὺς ἐς μάχην τασσομένους, καταρρωδήσας τὴν ἵππον ἐποίησε Ἀρπάγου ὑποθεμένου ἀνδρὸς Μήδου τοιόνδε· ὅσαι τῷ στρατῷ τῷ ἐωυτοῦ εἶποντο σιτοφόροι τε καὶ σκευοφόροι κάμηλοι, ταύτας πάσας ἀλίσας καὶ ἀπελὼν τὰ ἄχθεα ἄνδρας ἐπ' αὐτὰς ἀνέβησε ἱππάδα στολὴν ἐνεσταλμένους, σκευάσας δὲ αὐτοὺς προσέταξε τῆς ἄλλης στρατιῆς προιέναι πρὸς τὴν Κροίσου ἵππον, τῇ δὲ καμήλῳ ἔπεσθαι τὸν πεζὸν στρατὸν ἐκέλευσε, ὅπισθε δὲ τοῦ πεζοῦ ἐπέταξε τὴν πᾶσαν

ἀνδρηώτερον οὔτε

brave; sturdily	τοῦ Λυδίου.
made	

 ἡ δὲ μάχη
σφέων ἦν ἀπ' ἵππων, δόρατά τε

frequentative of	λα,
φέρω, to carry	

 καὶ
αὐτοὶ ἦσαν

ride	ἀγαθοί.
------	---------

1.80

ἐς τὸ πεδίον δὲ

come together	τοῦτο τὸ πρὸ τοῦ ἄστεος
---------------	-------------------------

ἐστὶ τοῦ Σαρδιηνοῦ, ἐὼν μέγα τε καὶ

naked, bare	ἔδ' αὐτοῦ
-------------	-----------

ποταμοὶ

flow	καὶ ἄλλοι καὶ Ὑλλος
	break down the
	strength of

 τὸν
μέγιστον, καλεόμενον δὲ Ἑρμον, ὃς ἐξ ὄρεος ἱοῦ μητρὸς
Δινδυμήνης ῥέων

hand over	ῥάλασσαν κατὰ Φωκαίην
-----------	-----------------------

πόλιν,

there, here	Κῦρος ὡς εἶδε τοὺς Λυδοὺς ἐς μάχην
-------------	------------------------------------

τασσομένους,

fear, dread	τὴν ἵππον ἐποίησε Ἀρπάγουν
-------------	----------------------------

suggest	ἀνδρὸς Μήδου	such	ὅσαι τῷ στρατῷ τῷ
---------	--------------	------	-------------------

έωντοῦ εἶποντο

carrying, pro-	καὶ	pack animal, camel	
ducing grain		porter	

,
ταύτας πάσας

gather, assemble	καὶ	take away	τὰ	burden	ἄνδρας ἐπ'
------------------	-----	-----------	----	--------	------------

αὐτὰς ἀνέβησε

riding coat;	equip-	dress in		prepare,
	ment			collect

δὲ αὐτοὺς

post at, attach to, command	ἡς ἄλλης στρατιῆς προϊέναι πρὸς
-----------------------------	---------------------------------

τὴν Κροίσου ἵππον, τῇ δὲ

camel	ἔπεσθαι τὸν πεζὸν
-------	-------------------

army	ἐκέλευσε, ὅπισθε δὲ τοῦ πεζοῦ	enjoin; place near	τὴν πᾶσαν
------	-------------------------------	--------------------	-----------

time no nation in Asia more courageous or more stout in battle than the Lydian; and they fought on horseback carrying long spears, the men being excellent in horsemanship.

1.80

So when the armies had met in that plain which is in front of the city of Sardis,— a plain wide and open, through which flow rivers (and especially the river Hyllos) all rushing down to join the largest called Hermos, which flows from the mountain sacred to the Mother surnamed “of Dindymos” and runs out into the sea by the city of Phocaia,— then Cyrus, when he saw the Lydians being arrayed for battle, fearing their horsemen, did on the suggestion of Harpagos a Mede as follows:— all the camels which were in the train of his army carrying provisions and baggage he gathered together, and he took off their burdens and set men upon them provided with the equipment of cavalry: and having thus furnished them forth he appointed them to go in front of the rest of the army towards the horsemen of Croesus; and after the camel-troop he ordered the infantry to follow; and behind the infantry he placed his whole force

vocabulary

ἀναστρέφω act: overturn; mid: find
 oneself in ~atrophy
ἀποθρόσκω jump off of
ἄχρηστος useless, unprofitable
δειλός wretched, poor, cowardly
 ~Deimos
διατάσσω arrange, array
ἐμποδών getting in the way
ἐνθαῦτα there, here
ἐνθεῦτεν thence
ἐπέχω hold, cover; offer; assail
εὖς good, brave, noble
ιδέα ἰδέης semblance; kind, style
ἱππικός of horses ~hippo

κάμηλος (f) camel
κατειλέω coop up
ὄον οὐ type of fruit
ὀσμή smell ~osmium, odor
ὀσφραίνομαι catch scent of
παραινέω recommend, exhort, warn
Πέρσης Persian
σοφίζω be clever, tricky
συλλαμβάνω seize, capture;
 understand ~epilepsy
συμβάλλω pit against; compare; mp:
 meet, fall in with ~ballistic
σύνειμι be with; have sex ~ion
φείδομαι spare, not use/harm ~aphid

ἵππων. ὥς δέ οἱ πάντες διετετάχατο, παραίνεσε τῶν μὲν ἄλλων Λυδῶν μὴ φειδομένους κτείνειν πάντα τὸν ἐμποδῶν γινόμενον, Κροῖσον δὲ αὐτὸν μὴ κτείνειν, μηδὲ ἦν συλλαμβανόμενος ἀμύνηται. ταῦτα μὲν παραίνεσε, τὰς δὲ καμήλους ἔταξε ἀντία τῆς ἵππου τῶνδε εἵνεκεν· κάμηλον ἵππος φοβέεται, καὶ οὐκ ἀνέχεται οὔτε τὴν ἰδέην αὐτοῦ ὀρέων οὔτε τὴν ὁδμὴν ὀσφραινόμενος. αὐτοῦ δὴ ὦν τούτου εἵνεκεν ἐσεσόφιστο, ἵνα τῷ Κροίσῳ ἄχρηστον ᾗ τὸ ἵππικόν, τῷ δὴ τι καὶ ἐπείχε ἐλλάμψεσθαι ὁ Λυδός. ὥς δὲ καὶ συνήσαν ἐς τὴν μάχην, ἐνθαῦτα ὥς ὠσφροντο τάχιστα τῶν καμήλων οἱ ἵπποι καὶ εἶδον αὐτάς, ὀπίσω ἀνέστρεφον, διέφθαρτό τε τῷ Κροίσῳ ἢ ἐλπίς. οὐ μέντοι οἱ γε Λυδοὶ τὸ ἐνθεῦτεν δειλοὶ ᾗσαν, ἀλλ' ὥς ἔμαθον τὸ γινόμενον, ἀποθορόντες ἀπὸ τῶν ἵππων πεζοὶ τοῖσι Πέρσησι συνέβαλλον. χρόνῳ δὲ πεσόντων ἀμφοτέρων πολλῶν ἐτράποντο οἱ Λυδοί, κατειληθέντες δὲ ἐς τὸ τεῖχος ἐπολιορκέοντο ὑπὸ τῶν Περσέων.

ἵππων. ὥς δέ οἱ πάντες |arrange, array, |recommend, τῶν
 |exhort, warn
 μὲν ἄλλων Λυδῶν μὴ |spare κτείνειν πάντα τὸν
 |getting in the way...ον, Κροῖσον δὲ αὐτὸν μὴ κτείνειν, μηδὲ
 ἦν |seize, capture; under- ἀμύνηται. ταῦτα μὲν |recommend,
 |stand |exhort, warn
 τὰς δὲ |camel ἔταξε ἀντία τῆς ἵππου τῶνδε εἵνεκεν·
 |camel ἵππος φοβέεται, καὶ οὐκ ἀνέχεται οὔτε τὴν |semblance; kind,
 |style
 αὐτοῦ ὀρέων οὔτε τὴν |smell |catch scent of . αὐτοῦ δὴ
 ὦν τούτου εἵνεκεν |be clever, tricky" α τῷ Κροίσῳ |useless, un-
 |profitable
 ἥ τὸ |of horses, τῷ δὴ τι καὶ ἐπείχε ἐλλάμψεσθαι ὁ Λυδός.
 ὥς δὲ καὶ |be with; have sex, μάχην, |there, here...ς ὠσφροντο
 τάχιστα τῶν |camel οἱ ἵπποι καὶ εἶδον αὐτάς, ὀπίσω
 |act: overturn; mid; |ἄρτό τε τῷ Κροίσῳ ἢ ἐλπίς. οὐ μέντοι
 |find oneself in
 οἱ γε Λυδοὶ τὸ |thence |wretched, |σαν, ἀλλ' ὥς ἔμαθον
 τὸ γινόμενον, |jump off of ἀπὸ τῶν ἵππων πεζοὶ τοῖσι
 Πέρσησι |pit against; comparé; π δὲ πεσόντων ἀμφοτέρων
 |mp: meet, fall in with
 πολλῶν ἐτράποντο οἱ Λυδοί, κατειληθέντες δὲ ἐς τὸ τεῖχος
 ἐπολιορκέοντο ὑπὸ τῶν Περσέων.

of cavalry. Then when all his men had been placed in their several positions, he charged them to spare none of the other Lydians, slaying all who might come in their way, but Croesus himself they were not to slay, not even if he should make resistance when he was captured. Such was his charge: and he set the camels opposite the horsemen for this reason,— because the horse has a fear of the camel and cannot endure either to see his form or to scent his smell: for this reason then the trick had been devised, in order that the cavalry of Croesus might be useless, that very force wherewith the Lydian king was expecting most to shine. And as they were coming together to the battle, so soon as the horses scented the camels and saw them they turned away back, and the hopes of Croesus were at once brought to nought. The Lydians however for their part did not upon that act as cowards, but when they perceived what was coming to pass they leapt from their horses and fought with the Persians on foot. At length, however, when many had fallen on either side, the Lydians turned to flight; and having been driven within the wall of their fortress they were besieged by the Persians.

*vocabulary***ἀποτέμνω** cut off, sever ~tonsure**διαπέμπω** send out/over**ἐνθαῦτα** there, here**ἐσπέρα** evening, west**εὖς** good, brave, noble**ἡπειρος** (f) mainland, continent**ὄον** οὖ type of fruit**πέμπτος** fifth ~pentagon**πολιορκία** siege**συλλέγω** collect, assemble ~legion**συμμαχία** alliance**σφέτερος** their**χωρέω** withdraw, give way to (+dat)

~heir

χῶρος place ~heir

1.81

τοῖσι μὲν δὴ κατεστήκεε πολιορκίῃ. Κροῖσος δὲ δοκέων οἱ χρόνον ἐπὶ μακρὸν ἔσεσθαι τὴν πολιορκίην ἔπεμπε ἐκ τοῦ τείχεος ἄλλους ἀγγέλους ἐς τὰς συμμαχίας. οἱ μὲν γὰρ πρότεροι διεπέμποντο ἐς πέμπτον μῆνα προερέοντες συλλέγεσθαι ἐς Σάρδεις, τούτους δὲ ἐξέπεμπε τὴν ταχίστην δέεσθαι βοηθέειν ὥς πολιορκεομένου Κροίσου.

1.82

ἔς τε δὴ ὦν τὰς ἄλλας ἔπεμπε συμμαχίας καὶ δὴ καὶ ἐς Λακεδαίμονα. τοῖσι δὲ καὶ αὐτοῖσι τοῖσι Σπαρτιήτησι κατ' αὐτὸν τοῦτον τὸν χρόνον συνεπεπτώκεε ἔρις ἐοῦσα πρὸς Ἀργείους περὶ χώρου καλεομένου Θυρέης· τὰς γὰρ Θυρέας ταύτας ἐοῦσα τῆς Ἀργολίδος μοίρης ἀποταμόμενοι ἔσχον οἱ Λακεδαιμόνιοι. ἦν δὲ καὶ ἡ μέχρι Μαλέων ἡ πρὸς ἐσπέρην Ἀργείων, ἥ τε ἐν τῇ ἡπίρῳ χώρῃ καὶ ἡ Κυθηρίῃ νῆσος καὶ αἱ λοιπαὶ τῶν νήσων. βοηθησάντων δὲ Ἀργείων τῇ σφετέρῃ ἀποταμνομένῃ, ἐνθαῦτα συνέβησαν ἐς λόγους

1.81

τοῖσι μὲν δὴ κατεστήκεε πολιορκίη. Κροῖσος δὲ δοκέων
οἱ χρόνον ἐπὶ μακρὸν ἔσεσθαι τὴν πολιορκίην ἔπεμπε ἐκ
τοῦ τείχεος ἄλλους ἀγγέλους ἐς τὰς συμμαχίας. οἱ μὲν
γὰρ πρότεροι |send out/over ἐς |fifth μῆνα προερέοντες
|collect, ἐς Σάρδεις, τούτους δὲ ἐξέπεμπε τὴν ταχίστην
|assemble
δέεσθαι βοηθέειν ὡς πολιορκεομένου Κροίσου.

1.82

ἔς τε δὴ ὦν τὰς ἄλλας ἔπεμπε συμμαχίας καὶ δὴ καὶ ἐς
Λακεδαίμονα. τοῖσι δὲ καὶ αὐτοῖσι τοῖσι Σπαρτιήτησι κατ'
αὐτὸν τοῦτον τὸν χρόνον συνεπεπτώκεε ἕρις ἐούσα πρὸς
Ἀργείους περὶ |place καλεομένου Θυρέης· τὰς γὰρ Θυρέας
ταύτας ἐούσα τῆς Ἀργολίδος μοίρης |cut off, sever ἔσχον
οἱ Λακεδαιμόνιοι. ἦν δὲ καὶ ἡ μέχρι Μαλέων ἡ πρὸς
ἐσπέρην Ἀργείων, ἥ τε ἐν τῇ |mainland, withdraw, give ὑθηρίῃ
|continent |way to (+dat)
νῆσος καὶ αἱ λοιπαὶ τῶν νήσων. βοηθησάντων δὲ Ἀργείων
τῇ |their ἀποταμνομένη, |there, here_ συνέβησαν ἐς λόγους

1.81

By these then a siege had been established: but Croesus, supposing that the siege would last a long time, proceeded to send from the fortress other messengers to his allies. For the former messengers were sent round to give notice that they should assemble at Sardis by the fifth month, but these he was sending out to ask them to come to his assistance as quickly as possible, because Croesus was being besieged.

1.82

So then in sending to his other allies he sent also to Lacedemon. But these too, the Spartans I mean, had themselves at this very time (for so it had fallen out) a quarrel in hand with the Argives about the district called Thyrea. For this Thyrea, being part of the Argive possessions, the Lacedemonians had cut off and taken for themselves. Now the whole region towards the west extending as far down as Malea was then possessed by the Argives, both the parts situated on the mainland and also the island of Kythera with the other islands. And when the Argives had come to the rescue to save their territory from being cut

vocabulary

ἀγωνίζομαι contend, exert oneself
ἀπαλλάσσω free from, remove; be freed, depart
ἑξαχόσιοι 600
ἑσσόομαι (pass) be weaker, be overcome; (active) defeat
θέω run, run for
ἰσοπαλῆς competing equally; equivalent
ἰσόπαλος competing equally; equivalent
λογάς -δος (m, 3) picked, chosen
ὁπότερος which of two, either of two
παραιμένω stay with ~remain

περιγίγνομαι surpass; survive; attain ~genus
προσφορέω bring to, in
στρατός common people/soldiers ~strategy
στρατόω be on a campaign ~strategy
συμβάλλω pit against; compare; mp: meet, fall in with ~ballistic
συνέρχομαι come together
συντίθημι hearken, mark ~thesis
σφέτερος their
τριηκόσιοι three hundred
ὑπολείπω leave as a leftover; leave a person behind ~eclipse
χῶρος place ~heir

συνελθόντες ὥστε τριηκοσίους ἐκατέρων μαχέσασθαι,
 ὁκότεροι δ' ἂν περιγένωνται, τούτων εἶναι τὸν χώρον·
 τὸ δὲ πλῆθος τοῦ στρατοῦ ἀπαλλάσσεσθαι ἐκάτερον
 ἐς τὴν ἑωυτοῦ μηδὲ παραμένειν ἀγωνιζομένων, τῶνδε
 εἵνεκεν ἵνα μὴ παρεόντων τῶν στρατοπέδων ὀρώντες
 οἱ ἕτεροι ἐσσουμενους τοὺς σφετέρους ἀπαμύνοιεν.
 συνθέμενοι ταῦτα ἀπαλλάσσοντο, λογάδες δὲ ἐκατέρων
 ὑπολειφθέντες συνέβαλον. μαχομένων δὲ σφέων
 καὶ γινομένων ἰσοπαλέων ὑπελείποντο ἐξ ἀνδρῶν
 ἑξακοσίων τρεῖς, Ἀργείων μὲν Ἀλκίηνωρ τε καὶ Χρομῖος,
 Λακεδαιμονίων δὲ Ὀθρυάδης· ὑπελείφθησαν δὲ οὗτοι
 νυκτὸς ἐπελθούσης. οἱ μὲν δὴ δύο τῶν Ἀργείων ὥς
 νενικηκότες ἔθρον ἐς τὸ Ἄργος, ὁ δὲ τῶν Λακεδαιμονίων
 Ὀθρυάδης σκυλεύσας τοὺς Ἀργείων νεκροὺς καὶ
 προσφορήσας τὰ ὄπλα πρὸς τὸ ἑωυτοῦ στρατόπεδον
 ἐν τῇ τάξιν εἶχε ἑωυτόν. ἡμέρη δὲ δευτέρῃ παρήσαν
 πυνθανόμενοι ἀμφότεροι. τέως μὲν δὴ αὐτοὶ ἐκάτεροι
 ἔφασαν νικᾶν, λέγοντες οἱ μὲν ὥς ἑωυτῶν πλεῖνες

|come together ὥστε |three ἐκατέρων μαχέσασθαι,
 |hundred
 |which of two, ἂν περιγέωνται, τούτων εἶναι τὸν |place
 |either of two
 τὸ δὲ πλῆθος τοῦ στρατοῦ |free from, remove; ἐκάτερον
 |be freed, depart
 ἐς τὴν ἐωυτοῦ μηδὲ |stay with |contend, exert, τῶνδε
 |oneself
 εἵνεκεν ἵνα μὴ παρεόντων τῶν στρατοπέδων ὁρῶντες
 οἱ ἕτεροι |(pass) be weaker, |be|their ἀπαμύνοιν.
 |overcome; (active) defeat
 |hearken, mark ἡῦτα |free from, remove;|picked, δὲ ἐκατέρων
 |be freed, depart |chosen
 |leave (food, person)|pit against; compare; χομένων δὲ σφέων
 |mp: meet, fall in with
 καὶ γινομένων ἰσοπαλέων |leave (food, person) ἀνδρῶν
 |600 τρεῖς, Ἀργείων μὲν Ἀλκίνοω τε καὶ Χρομῖος,
 Λακεδαιμονίων δὲ Ὀθρυάδης· |leave (food, person) οὔτοι
 νυκτὸς ἐπελθούσης. οἱ μὲν δὴ δύο τῶν Ἀργείων ὥς
 νενικηκότες |run ἐς τὸ Ἄργος, ὁ δὲ τῶν Λακεδαιμονίων
 Ὀθρυάδης σκυλεύσας τοὺς Ἀργείων νεκροὺς καὶ
 |bring to, in τὰ ὄπλα πρὸς τὸ ἐωυτοῦ στρατόπεδον
 ἐν τῇ τάξιν εἶχε ἐωυτόν. ἡμέρη δὲ δευτέρῃ παρήσαν
 πυνθανόμενοι ἀμφοτέρω. τέως μὲν δὴ αὐτοὶ ἐκάτεροι
 ἔφασαν νικᾶν, λέγοντες οἱ μὲν ὥς ἐωυτῶν πλεῖνες

off from them, then the two sides came to a parley together and agreed that three hundred should fight of each side, and whichever side had the better in the fight that nation should possess the disputed land: they agreed moreover that the main body of each army should withdraw to their own country, and not stand by while the contest was fought, for fear lest, if the armies were present, one side seeing their countrymen suffering defeat should come up to their support. Having made this agreement they withdrew; and chosen men of both sides were left behind and engaged in fight with one another. So they fought and proved themselves to be equally matched; and there were left at last of six hundred men three, on the side of the Argives Alkenor and Chromios, and on the side of the Lacedemonians Othryades: these were left alive when night came on. So then the two men of the Argives, supposing that they were the victors, set off to run to Argos, but the Lacedemonian Othryades, after having stripped the corpses of the Argives and carried their arms to his own camp, remained in his place. On the next day both the two sides came thither to inquire about the result; and for some time both claimed the victory for themselves, the one side saying that of them more

vocabulary

αἰσχύνω (ō) spoil, disgrace, disfigure, mar

ἀνασώζω rescue, recover

ἀπονοστέω go home

ἀποφαίνω display, declare

ἐνίστημι install; threaten; block

ἐπανάγκης (impers) it is compulsory

καταίρω swoop; land

κατακείρω ravage, pillage

κατάρσ curse

καταχράομαι (mp) abuse, use up;
(act) be enough

κομάω have long hair

κόμη hair ~comet

μίν him, her, it

παραμένω stay with ~remain

περιγίγνομαι surpass; survive; attain
~genus

συλλοχίτης -ου (ī, m, f) comrade,
unit-mate

συμπίπτω fall together, happen

σφέτερος their

τριηκόσιοι three hundred

χρυσοφορέω (ō) wear gold

περιγεγόνασι, οἳ δὲ τοὺς μὲν ἀποφαίνοντες πεφευγότας,
 τὸν δὲ σφέτερον παραμείναντα καὶ σκυλεύσαντα τοὺς
 ἐκείνων νεκρούς· τέλος δὲ ἐκ τῆς ἔριδος συμπεσόντες
 ἐμάχοντο, πεσόντων δὲ καὶ ἀμφοτέρων πολλῶν ἐνίκων
 Λακεδαιμόνιοι. Ἀργεῖοι μὲν νυν ἀπὸ τούτου τοῦ χρόνου
 κατακειράμενοι τὰς κεφαλὰς, πρότερον ἐπάναγκες
 κομῶντες, ἐποιήσαντο νόμον τε καὶ κατάρην μὴ
 πρότερον θρέψειν κόμην Ἀργείων μηδένα, μηδὲ τὰς
 γυναικάς σφι χρυσοφορήσειν, πρὶν Θυρέας ἀνασώσωνται.
 Λακεδαιμόνιοι δὲ τὰ ἐναντία τούτων ἔθεντο νόμον· οὐ
 γὰρ κομῶντες πρὸ τούτου ἀπὸ τούτου κομᾶν. τὸν
 δὲ ἓνα λέγουσι τὸν περιλειφθέντα τῶν τριηκοσίων
 Ὀθρυάδην, αἰσχυνόμενον ἀπονοστέειν ἐς Σπάρτην τῶν
 οἱ συλλοχιτέων διεφθαρμένων, αὐτοῦ μιν ἐν τῇσι Θυρέῃσι
 καταχρήσασθαι ἑωυτόν.

1.83

τοιούτων δὲ τοῖσι Σπαρτιήτησι ἐνεστεώτων πρηγμάτων
 ἦκε ὁ Σαρδιηνὸς κῆρυξ δεόμενος Κροίσῳ βοηθέειν

|surpass; sur-, οἱ δὲ τοὺς μὲν |display, declare πεφευγότας,
|vive; attain

τὸν δὲ |their |stay with καὶ σκυλεύσαντα τοὺς

ἐκείνων νεκρούς· τέλος δὲ ἐκ τῆς ἔριδος |συμπίπτω?: fall together,
|happen; or συμπίπτω?: fall
ἐμάχοντο, πεσόντων δὲ καὶ ἀμφοτέρων πολλῶν ἐνίκων
|together, happen

Λακεδαιμόνιοι. Ἀργεῖοι μὲν νυν ἀπὸ τούτου τοῦ χρόνου

|ravage, pillage τὰς κεφαλὰς, πρότερον |(impers) it is
|compulsory

|have long hair ᾠποιήσαντο νόμον τε καὶ κατάρην μὴ

πρότερον θρέψειν |hair Ἀργείων μηδένα, μηδὲ τὰς

γυναικάς σφι |wear gold , πρὶν Θυρέας |rescue, recover

Λακεδαιμόνιοι δὲ τὰ ἐναντία τούτων ἔθεντο νόμον· οὐ

γὰρ |have long hair , ὁ τούτου ἀπὸ τούτου |have long hair

δὲ ἓνα λέγουσι τὸν περιλειφθέντα τῶν |three
|hundred

ᾠθρυάδην, |spoil, disgrace |go home ἐς Σπάρτην τῶν

οἱ |comrade, unit-mate τ' Ἰαρμένων, αὐτοῦ μιν ἐν τῇσι Θυρέῃσι

καταχρήσασθαι ἐωντόν.

1.83

τοιούτων δὲ τοῖσι Σπαρτιήτησι |install; threaten; ηγμάτων
|block

ἦκε ὁ Σαρδιηνὸς κῆρυξ δεόμενος Κροίσῳ βοηθέειν

had remained alive, and the others declaring that these had fled away, whereas their own man had stood his ground and had stripped the corpses of the other party: and at length by reason of this dispute they fell upon one another and began to fight; and after many had fallen on both sides, the Lacedemonians were the victors. The Argives then cut their hair short, whereas formerly they were compelled by law to wear it long, and they made a law with a curse attached to it, that from that time forth no man of the Argives should grow the hair long nor their women wear ornaments of gold, until they should have won back Thyrea. The Lacedemonians however laid down for themselves the opposite law to this, namely that they should wear long hair from that time forward, whereas before that time they had not their hair long. And they say that the one man who was left alive of the three hundred, namely Othryades, being ashamed to to Sparta when all his comrades had been slain, slew himself there in Thyrea.

1.83

Such was the condition of things at Sparta when the herald from Sardis arrived asking them to come to the assistance of Croesus, who was being

vocabulary

ἀγγελία message, news ~angel
ἀκρόπολις -εως (f) citadel, high part of
 a city ~acute
ἀλίσκομαι be captured ~helix
ἄμαχος unconquerable; noncombatant
ἀπότομος cut off; severe
διαπέμπω send out/over
δικάζω judge
ἐνθαῦτα there, here
ἐτοῖμος ready; fulfilled
ζωγρέω capture, give quarter; revive
 ~zoo
ἡλόω sharpen
παλλακή sex slave

περιφέρω carry around
προαγορεύω declare, predict, order
προεῖπον foretell, proclaim, order
 before
προλέγω prophecy, proclaim; preselect
 ~legion
προσβαίνω proceed; step on ~basis
προχωρέω proceed, come forward
στρατιά army ~strategy
συμφορά collecting; accident,
 misfortune
τεσσερεσκαιδέκατος fourteenth
φύλαξ -χος (m) guard; sentry
 ~phylactery

πολιορκεομένω. οἱ δὲ ὅμως, ἐπεῖτε ἐπύθοντο τοῦ κήρυκος, ὀρμέατο βοηθέειν. καὶ σφί ἤδη παρεσκευασμένοισι καὶ νεῶν ἐουσέων ἐτοίμων ἦλθε ἄλλη ἀγγελίη, ὥς ἡλώκοι τὸ τείχος τῶν Λυδῶν καὶ ἔχοιτο Κροῖσος ζωγρηθείς. οὕτω δὴ οὗτοι μὲν συμφορὴν ποιησάμενοι μεγάλην ἐπέπαντο.

1.84

Σάρδιες δὲ ἤλωσαν ὧδε. ἐπειδὴ τεσσερεσκαιδεκάτῃ ἐγένετο ἡμέρῃ πολιορκεομένω Κροίσῳ, Κῦρος τῇ στρατιῇ τῇ ἐωυτοῦ διαπέμψας ἱππέας προεῖπε τῷ πρώτῳ ἐπιβάντι τοῦ τείχεος δῶρα δώσειν. μετὰ δὲ τοῦτο πειρησαμένης τῆς στρατιῆς ὥς οὐ προεχώρεε, ἐνθαῦτα τῶν ἄλλων πεπαυμένων ἀνὴρ Μάρδος ἐπειρᾶτο προσβαίνων, τῷ οὐνομα ἦν Ὑροιάδης, κατὰ τοῦτο τῆς ἀκροπόλιος τῇ οὐδεὶς ἐτέτακτο φύλακος· οὐ γὰρ ἦν δεινὸν κατὰ τοῦτο μὴ ἀλῶ κοτέ. ἀπότομός τε γὰρ ἐστὶ ταύτῃ ἡ ἀκρόπολις καὶ ἄμαχος· τῇ οὐδὲ Μήλης ὁ πρότερον βασιλεὺς Σαρδίων μούνη οὐ περιήνεικε τὸν λέοντα τὸν οἱ ἡ παλλακὴ ἔτεκε, Τελμησσέων δικασάντων ὥς περιενειχθέντος τοῦ

πολιορκεομένῳ. οἱ δὲ ὅμως, ἐπεῖτε ἐπύθοντο τοῦ κήρυκος,
 ὀρμέατο βοηθέειν. καί σφι ἤδη παρεσκευασμένοισι καὶ
 νεῶν ἐουσέων ἐτοίμων ἦλθε ἄλλη |message, news |be captured
 τείχος τῶν Λυδῶν καὶ ἔχοιτο Κροῖσος |capture οὕτω
 δὴ οὗτοι μὲν συμφορὴν ποιησάμενοι μεγάλην ἐπέπαινοντο.

1.84

Σάρδιες δὲ |sharpen ὦδε. ἐπειδὴ |fourteenth
 ἐγένετο ἡμέρη πολιορκεομένῳ Κροίσῳ, Κῦρος τῇ στρατιῇ
 τῇ ἐώντου |send out/over ἰπέας προεῖπε τῷ πρώτῳ ἐπιβάντι
 τοῦ τείχεος δῶρα δώσειν. μετὰ δὲ τοῦτο περρησαμένης
 τῆς στρατιῆς ὥς οὐ |proceed, come|there, here ὦν ἄλλων
 πεπαυμένων ἀνὴρ Μάρδος ἐπειρᾶτο |proceed; step on ὦ
 οὔνομα ἦν Ὑροιάδης, κατὰ τοῦτο τῆς |citadel τῇ
 οὐδεὶς ἐτέτακτο |guard; sentry οὐ γὰρ ἦν δεινὸν κατὰ τοῦτο
 μὴ |be captured |cut off; severe γὰρ ἐστὶ ταύτῃ ἡ |citadel
 καὶ |unconquerable; noncombatant ὁ δὲ Μήλης ὁ πρότερον βασιλεὺς Σαρδίων
 μούνη οὐ |carry around τὸν λέοντα τὸν οἱ ἡ |sex slave ἔτεκε,
 Τελμησσέων |judge ὥς |carry around τοῦ

besieged. And they notwithstanding their own difficulties, as soon as they heard the news from the herald, were eager to go to his assistance; but when they had completed their preparations and their ships were ready, there came another message reporting that the fortress of the Lydians had been taken and that Croesus had been made prisoner. Then (and not before) they ceased from their efforts, being grieved at the event as at a great calamity.

1.84

Now the taking of Sardis came about as follows:— When the fourteenth day came after Croesus began to be besieged, Cyrus made proclamation to his army, sending horsemen round to the several parts of it, that he would give gifts to the man who should first scale the wall. After this the army made an attempt; and when it failed, then after all the rest had ceased from the attack, a certain Mardian whose name was Hyroiades made an attempt to approach on that side of the citadel where no guard had been set; for they had no fear that it would ever be taken from that side, seeing that here the citadel is precipitous and unassailable. To this part of the wall alone Meles also, who formerly was king of Sardis, did not carry round the lion which his concubine bore to him, the Telmessians having given decision that if the lion

vocabulary

ἀκρόπολις -εως (f) citadel, high part of a city ~acute

ἀλίσκομαι be captured ~helix

ἄμαχος unconquerable; noncombatant

ἀνάλωτος impregnable

ἄνωθεν from above, the beginning

ἀπότομος cut off; severe

ἄφωνος voiceless

ἐπιεικής fitting ~icon

ἐπίμαχος easily attacked

ἐπιμνήσκειν remember, speak about ~mnemonic

ἐπιφράζω realize, think of ~frenzy

εὖς good, brave, noble

κατακυλίνδω roll down, throw off

κατηλογέω ignore, neglect

κυνέα -ῆς helmet ~hound

κύνεος doglike, shameless ~hound

ὄον οὖ type of fruit

περιφέρω carry around

Πέρσης Persian

πορθέω sack, ravage, plunder

προσβαίνω proceed; step on ~basis

προτεράϊος previous to

συχνός long; many; extensive

λέοντος τὸ τεῖχος ἔσονται Σάρδιες ἀνάλωτοι. ὁ δὲ Μήλης κατὰ τὸ ἄλλο τεῖχος περιενείκας, τῇ ἦν ἐπίμαχον τὸ χωρίον τῆς ἀκροπόλιος, κατηλόγησε τοῦτο ὡς ἐὼν ἄμαχόν τε καὶ ἀπότομον· ἔστι δὲ πρὸς τοῦ Τμώλου τετραμμένον τῆς πόλιος. ὁ ὦν δὴ Ὑροιάδης οὗτος ὁ Μάρδος ἰδὼν τῇ προτεραίῃ τῶν τινα Λυδῶν κατὰ τοῦτο τῆς ἀκροπόλιος καταβάντα ἐπὶ κυνέην ἄνωθεν κατακυλισθεῖσαν καὶ ἀνελόμενον, ἐφράσθη καὶ ἐς θυμὸν ἐβάλετο· τότε δὲ δὴ αὐτός τε ἀναβεβήκεε καὶ κατ' αὐτὸν ἄλλοι Περσέων ἀνέβαινον· προσβάντων δὲ συχνῶν οὕτω δὴ Σάρδιές τε ἠλώκεσαν καὶ πᾶν τὸ ἄστυ ἐπορθέετο.

1.85

κατ' αὐτὸν δὲ Κροῖσον τάδε ἐγίνετο. ἦν οἱ παῖς, τοῦ καὶ πρότερον ἐπεμνήσθην, τὰ μὲν ἄλλα ἐπιεικής, ἄφρωνος δέ. ἐν τῇ ὦν παρελθούσῃ εὖεστοῖ ὁ Κροῖσος τὸ πᾶν ἐς αὐτὸν ἐπεποιήκεε, ἄλλα τε ἐπιφραζόμενος, καὶ δὴ καὶ ἐς Δελφοὺς περὶ αὐτοῦ ἐπεπόμενε χρησομένους. ἡ δὲ Πυθίη οἱ εἶπε τάδε.

λέοντος τὸ τεῖχος ἔσονται Σάρδιες |impregnable ὁ δὲ
 Μήλης κατὰ τὸ ἄλλο τεῖχος |carry around , τῇ ἦν |easily
 |attacked
 τὸ χωρίον τῆς |citadel , |ignore, neglect τοῦτο ὥς ἔον
 |unconquerable; |cut off; severe ἔστι δὲ πρὸς τοῦ Τμώλου
 |noncombatant
 τετραμμένον τῆς πόλιος. ὁ ὦν δὴ Ὑροιάδης οὗτος
 ὁ Μάρδος ἰδὼν τῇ |previous to τῶν τινα Λυδῶν κατὰ
 τοῦτο τῆς |citadel καταβάντα ἐπὶ κυνέην |from above, the be-
 |ginning
 |roll down, throw off :αὶ ἀνελόμενον, ἐφράσθη καὶ ἐς θυμὸν
 ἐβάλετο· τότε δὲ δὴ αὐτός τε ἀναβέβηκε καὶ κατ' αὐτὸν
 ἄλλοι Περσέων ἀνέβαινον· |proceed; step on |long; many; ὦ
 |extensive
 δὴ Σαρδιές τε |be captured καὶ πᾶν τὸ ἄστυ |sack .

1.85

κατ' αὐτὸν δὲ Κροῖσον τάδε ἐγίνετο. ἦν οἱ παῖς,
 τοῦ καὶ πρότερον |remember, |fitting
 |speak about
 |voiceless δέ. ἐν τῇ ὦν παρελθούσῃ εὖεστοῖ ὁ
 Κροῖσος τὸ πᾶν ἐς αὐτὸν ἐπεποιήκεε, ἄλλα τε
 |realize, think of , καὶ δὴ καὶ ἐς Δελφούς περὶ αὐτοῦ
 ἐπεπόμφεε χρησομένους. ἡ δὲ Πυθίη οἱ εἶπε τάδε.

should be carried round the wall, Sardis should be safe from capture: and Meles having carried it round the rest of the wall, that is to say those parts of the citadel where the fortress was open to attack, passed over this part as being unassailable and precipitous: now this is a part of the city which is turned towards Tmolos. So then this Mardian Hyroiades, having seen on the day before how one of the Lydians had descended on that side of the citadel to recover his helmet which had rolled down from above, and had picked it up, took thought and cast the matter about in his own mind. Then he himself ascended first, and after him came up others of the Persians, and many having thus made approach, Sardis was finally taken and the whole city was given up to plunder.

1.85

Meanwhile to Croesus himself it happened thus:— He had a son, of whom I made mention before, who was of good disposition enough but deprived of speech. Now in his former time of prosperity Croesus had done everything that was possible for him, and besides other things which he devised he had also sent messengers to Delphi to inquire concerning him. And the Pythian prophetess spoke to him thus:

vocabulary

ἁλίσκομαι be captured ~helix
ἅμφις around, apart from
ἄνολβος unfortunate, wretched
αὐδάω speak, declare, shout
 ~Theravada
ἄφωνος voiceless
δέος fear ~Deimos
ζωγρέω capture, give quarter; revive
 ~zoo
ἰά (ī) voice, cry

καταπαύω stop, restrain ~pause
λωίων more desirable
Πέρσης Persian
πλήσσω hit ~plectrum
πολύευκτος prayed for
ρήγνυμι (ῥ) to break
συμφορά collecting; accident, misfortune
φθέγγομαι make a sound, utter
 ~diphthong
 χρηστήριον oracle, response

Λυδὲ γένος, πολλῶν βασιλεῦ, μέγα νήπιε Κροῖσε, μὴ
βούλου πολύευκτον ἰὴν ἀνὰ δώματ' ἀκούειν παιδὸς
φθεγγομένου. τὸ δέ σοι πολὺ λώιον ἀμφὶς ἔμμεναι·
αὐδήσει γὰρ ἐν ἡματι πρῶτον ἀνόλβω.

ἀλίσκομένου δὴ τοῦ τείχεος, ἦε γὰρ τῶν τις Περσέων
ἀλλογνώσας Κροῖσον ὡς ἀποκτενέων, Κροῖσος μέν
νυν ὀρέων ἐπιόντα ὑπὸ τῆς παρεούσης συμφορῆς
παρημελήκεε, οὐδὲ τί οἱ διέφερε πληγέντι ἀποθανεῖν· ὁ
δὲ παῖς οὗτος ὁ ἄφωνος ὡς εἶδε ἐπιόντα τὸν Πέρσην, ὑπὸ
δέους τε καὶ κακοῦ ἔρρηξε φωνήν, εἶπε δὲ «ὦνθρώπε, μὴ
κτεῖνε Κροῖσον.» οὗτος μὲν δὴ τοῦτο πρῶτον ἐφθέγγετο,
μετὰ δὲ τοῦτο ἤδη ἐφώνεε τὸν πάντα χρόνον τῆς ζόης.

1.86

οἱ δὲ Πέρσαι τάς τε δὴ Σάρδεις ἔσχον καὶ αὐτὸν
Κροῖσον ἐζώγρησαν, ἄρξαντα ἔτεα τεσσερεσκαῖδεκα
καὶ τεσσερεσκαῖδεκα ἡμέρας πολιορκηθέντα, κατὰ τὸ
χρηστήριόν τε καταπαύσαντα τὴν ἐωυτοῦ μεγάλην ἀρχήν.

Λυδὲ γένος, πολλῶν βασιλεῦ, μέγα νήπιε Κροῖσε, μὴ
 βούλου |prayed for |voice, cry δώματ' ἀκούειν παιδὸς
 |make a sound, utter ἔ δέ σοι πολὺ |more |around, ἔμμεναι
 |speak γὰρ ἐν ἡματι πρῶτον |desir- |apart
 |unfor-
 |tunate, |from
 |wretched
 |be captured δὴ τοῦ τείχεος, ἦιε γὰρ τῶν τις Περσέων
 ἀλλογνώσας Κροῖσον ὥς ἀποκτενέων, Κροῖσος μὲν
 νυν ὀρέων ἐπιόντα ὑπὸ τῆς παρεούσης συμφορῆς
 παρημελήκεε, οὐδὲ τί οἱ διέφερε |hit ἀποθανεῖν· ὁ
 δὲ παῖς οὗτος ὁ |voiceless ὥς εἶδε ἐπιόντα τὸν Πέρσην, ὑπὸ
 |fear τε καὶ κακοῦ |to break ῥωνήν, εἶπε δὲ «ὦνθρώπε, μὴ
 κτεῖνε Κροῖσον.» οὗτος μὲν δὴ τοῦτο πρῶτον |make a sound, utter
 μετὰ δὲ τοῦτο ἤδη ἐφώνεε τὸν πάντα χρόνον τῆς ζόης.

1.86

οἱ δὲ Πέρσαι τάς τε δὴ Σάρδεις ἔσχον καὶ αὐτὸν
 Κροῖσον |capture , ἄρξαντα ἕτα τεσσερεσκαῖδεκα
 καὶ τεσσερεσκαῖδεκα ἡμέρας πολιορκηθέντα, κατὰ τὸ
 |oracle, τε |stop, restrain τὴν ἑωυτοῦ μεγάλην ἀρχήν.
 |response

“Lydian, master of many, much blind to destiny, Croesus, Do not desire to hear in thy halls that voice which is prayed for, Voice of thy son; much better if this from thee were removed, Since he shall first utter speech in an evil day of misfortune.”

Now when the fortress was being taken, one of the Persians was about to slay Croesus taking him for another; and Croesus for his part, seeing him coming on, cared nothing for it because of the misfortune which was upon him, and to him it was indifferent that he should be slain by the stroke; but this voiceless son, when he saw the Persian coming on, by reason of terror and affliction burst the bonds of his utterance and said: “Man, slay not Croesus.” This son, I say, uttered voice then first of all, but after this he continued to use speech for the whole time of his life.

1.86

The Persians then had obtained possession of Sardis and had taken Croesus himself prisoner, after he had reigned fourteen years and had been besieged fourteen days, having fulfilled the oracle in that he had brought to an end his own great empire. So

vocabulary

ἀχροθίνιον first-fruit sacrifice; the best
ἀναβιβάζω make to mount, promote
ἀναστενάζω groan
ἀναφέρω bring up ~bear
δαίμων -ονος (m, 3) a god, fate, doom
 ~demon
δῖς twice
ἐπείρομαι ask as well; ask then
ἐπειρωτάω consult, ask
ἐπικαλέω call upon
ἐπιτελέω complete; do a religious duty
ἐρμηνεύς -ος (m) interpreter
εὐχή prayer; vow ~vow
ἡσυχία peace and quiet
θεοσεβής revering the gods

καίπερ even if
καταγίζω devote, dedicate
κατακαίω burn down ~caustic
μὴν him, her, it
ὄλβιος happy, wealthy
πέδη shackles ~pedal
Πέρσης Persian
προσίστημι set against; (mp) stand
 near
πυρά pyre ~pyre
σιγά silence
σόλος lump of iron for throwing
συννέω swim together; pile together
τρίς 3 times
τύραννος tyrant

λαβόντες δὲ αὐτὸν οἱ Πέρσαι ἤγαγον παρὰ Κῦρον. ὁ
 δὲ συννήσας πυρὴν μεγάλην ἀνεβίβασε ἐπ' αὐτὴν τὸν
 Κροῖσόν τε ἐν πέδησι δεδεμένον καὶ δις ἑπτὰ Λυδῶν
 παρ' αὐτὸν παῖδας, ἐν νόῳ ἔχων εἴτε δὴ ἀκροθίνια ταῦτα
 καταγιεῖν θεῶν ὅτεω δῆ, εἴτε καὶ εὐχὴν ἐπιτελέσαι θέλων,
 εἴτε καὶ πυθόμενος τὸν Κροῖσον εἶναι θεοσεβέα τοῦδε
 εἵνεκεν ἀνεβίβασε ἐπὶ τὴν πυρὴν, βουλόμενος εἰδέναι εἴ
 τίς μιν δαιμόνων ρύσεται τοῦ μὴ ζῶντα κατακαυθῆναι.
 τὸν μὲν δὴ ποιεῖν ταῦτα· τῷ δὲ Κροίσῳ ἐστεῶτι ἐπὶ τῆς
 πυρῆς ἐσελθεῖν, καίπερ ἐν κακῷ ἐόντι τοσούτῳ, τὸ τοῦ
 Σόλωνος ὥς οἱ εἶη σὺν θεῷ εἰρημένον, τὸ μηδένα εἶναι
 τῶν ζώντων ὄλβιον. ὥς δὲ ἄρα μιν προσστήναι τοῦτο,
 ἀνενεικάμενόν τε καὶ ἀναστενάξαντα ἐκ πολλῆς ἡσυχίης
 ἐς τρὶς ὀνομάσαι «Σόλων.» καὶ τὸν Κῦρον ἀκούσαντα
 κελεῦσαι τοὺς ἐρμηνέας ἐπειρέσθαι τὸν Κροῖσον τίνα
 τοῦτον ἐπικαλέοιτο, καὶ τοὺς προσελθόντας ἐπειρωτᾶν·
 Κροῖσον δὲ τέως μὲν σιγὴν ἔχειν εἰρωτώμενον, μετὰ δὲ
 ὥς ἡναγκάζετο, εἰπεῖν «τὸν ἂν ἐγὼ πᾶσι τυράννοισι

λαβόντες δὲ αὐτὸν οἱ Πέρσαι ἤγαγον παρὰ Κῦρον. ὁ

δὲ |swim to-pyre μεγάλην |make to mount, αὐτήν τὸν
 |gether; pile |promote
 Κροῖσον τε ἐν |shackles δεδεμένον καὶ |twice-πτὰ Λυδῶν

παρ' αὐτὸν παῖδας, ἐν νόῳ ἔχων εἴτε δὴ |first-fruit sac- ὕτα
 |rifice; the best

|devote, θεῶν ὅτεω δὴ, εἴτε καὶ |prayer; complete; do ἅλων,
 |dedicate |vow |religious duty

εἴτε καὶ πυθόμενος τὸν Κροῖσον εἶναι |revering the gods

εἵνεκεν |make to mount, τὴν |pyre , βουλόμενος εἰδέναι εἴ
 |promote

τίς μιν |a god, fate, doom αἰ τοῦ μὴ ζῶντα |burn down

τὸν μὲν δὴ ποιέειν ταῦτα· τῷ δὲ Κροίσῳ ἐστεῶτι ἐπὶ τῆς

|pyre ἐσελθεῖν, |even if ἐν κακῷ ἐόντι τοσοῦτω, τὸ τοῦ

Σόλωνος ὥς οἱ εἶη σὺν θεῷ εἰρημένον, τὸ μηδένα εἶναι

τῶν ζώντων |happy, ὥς δὲ ἄρα μιν |set against; (mp) ὕτο,
 |wealthy |stand near

|bring up τε καὶ |groan ἐκ πολλῆς |peace and quiet

ἐς |3 ἰνομάσαι «|lump of iron αἰ τὸν Κῦρον ἀκούσαντα
 |times

κελεύσαι τοὺς |interpreter |ask as well; τὸν Κροῖσον τίνα
 |ask then

τοῦτον |call upon , καὶ τοὺς προσελθόντας |consult, ask

Κροῖσον δὲ τέως μὲν σιγὴν ἔχειν εἰρωτώμενον, μετὰ δὲ

ὥς ἠναγκάζετο, εἰπεῖν «τὸν ἂν ἐγὼ πᾶσι |tyrant

the Persians having taken him brought him into the presence of Cyrus: and he piled up a great pyre and caused Croesus to go up upon it bound in fetters, and along with him twice seven sons of Lydians, whether it was that he meant to dedicate this offering as first-fruits of his victory to some god, or whether he desired to fulfil a vow, or else had heard that Croesus was a god-fearing man and so caused him to go up on the pyre because he wished to know if any one of the divine powers would save him, so that he should not be burnt alive. He, they say, did this; but to Croesus as he stood upon the pyre there came, although he was in such evil case, a memory of the saying of Solon, how he had said with divine inspiration that no one of the living might be called happy. And when this thought came into his mind, they say that he sighed deeply and groaned aloud, having been for long silent, and three times he uttered the name of Solon. Hearing this, Cyrus bade the interpreters ask Croesus who was this person on whom he called; and they came near and asked. And Croesus for a time, it is said, kept silence when he was asked this, but afterwards being pressed he said: "One whom more than much wealth I should have desired

*vocabulary***ἄνθρωπινος** human**ἀπηγέομαι** lead; tell, relate**ἀποφλαυρίζω** make little of**ἄσημος** not marked; unclear**ἐννοέω** consider**ἐπειρωτάω** consult, ask**ἐπικρατέω** rule over**ἐπιλέγω** say re, say also; choose; (mid)
think over**ἐρμηνεύς** -ος (m) interpreter**εὐδαιμονία** prosperity**θεάομαι** look at, behold, consider

~theater

καταβιβάζω bring down**λιπαρέω** (ι) persist**μεταγινώσκω** change one's mind

~gnostic

ὄλβιος happy, wealthy**ὄλβος** happiness, wealth**περιέσχατα** extremities, edges**προτιμάω** (ι) prefer, pay attention to**πυρά** pyre ~pyre**σβέννυμι** (υ) extinguish, go out

προετίμησα μεγάλων χρημάτων ἐς λόγους ἐλθεῖν.» ὥς δέ σφι ἄσημα ἔφραζε, πάλιν ἐπειρώτων τὰ λεγόμενα. λιπαρεόντων δὲ αὐτῶν καὶ ὄχλον παρεχόντων, ἔλεγε δὴ ὥς ἦλθε ἀρχὴν ὁ Σόλων ἐὼν Ἀθηναῖος, καὶ θεησάμενος πάντα τὸν ἑωυτοῦ ὄλβον ἀποφλαυρίσειε οἷα δὴ εἶπας, ὥς τε αὐτῷ πάντα ἀποβεβήκοι τῇ περ ἐκεῖνος εἶπε, οὐδέν τι μᾶλλον ἐς ἑωυτὸν λέγων ἢ οὐκ ἐς ἅπαν τὸ ἀνθρώπινον καὶ μάλιστα τοὺς παρὰ σφίσι αὐτοῖσι ὀλβίους δοκέοντας εἶναι. τὸν μὲν Κροῖσον ταῦτα ἀπηγέεσθαι, τῆς δὲ πυρῆς ἤδη ἀμμένης καίεσθαι τὰ περιέσχατα. καὶ τὸν Κῦρον ἀκούσαντα τῶν ἐρμηνέων τὰ Κροῖσος εἶπε, μεταγρόντα τε καὶ ἐννώσαντα ὅτι καὶ αὐτὸς ἄνθρωπος ἐὼν ἄλλον ἄνθρωπον, γενόμενον ἑωυτοῦ εὐδαιμονίῃ οὐκ ἐλάσσω, ζῶντα πυρὶ διδοίῃ, πρὸς τε τούτοισι δείσαντα τὴν τίσιν καὶ ἐπιλεξάμενον ὥς οὐδὲν εἴη τῶν ἐν ἀνθρώποισι ἀσφαλέως ἔχον, κελεύειν σβεννύναι τὴν ταχίστην τὸ καιόμενον πῦρ καὶ καταβιβάζειν Κροῖσόν τε καὶ τοὺς μετὰ Κροῖσον. καὶ τοὺς πειρωμένους οὐ δύνασθαι ἔτι τοῦ πυρὸς ἐπικρατῆσαι.

|prefer, pay at-attention to μεγάλων χρημάτων ἐς λόγους ἐλθεῖν.» ὥς

δέ σφι |not marked; unclear ἔλιν |consult, ask τὰ λεγόμενα.

|persist δὲ αὐτῶν καὶ ὄχλον παρεχόντων, ἔλεγε δὴ

ὥς ἦλθε ἀρχὴν ὁ Σόλων ἐὼν Ἀθηναῖος, καὶ θεσάμενος

πάντα τὸν ἑωυτοῦ |happiness, little of οἶα δὴ εἶπας, ὥς
|wealth

τε αὐτῷ πάντα ἀποβεβήκοι τῇ περ ἐκείνος εἶπε, οὐδέν τι

μᾶλλον ἐς ἑωυτὸν λέγων ἢ οὐκ ἐς ἅπαν τὸ |human

καὶ |very τοὺς παρὰ σφίσι αὐτοῖσι |happy, δοκέοντας
|wealthy

εἶναι. τὸν μὲν Κροῖσον ταῦτα |lead; tell, relate ἧς δὲ |pyre

ἤδη ἀμμένης καίεσθαι τὰ |extremities,
|edges

ἀκούσαντα τῶν |interpreter τὰ Κροῖσος εἶπε, |change one's mind

τε καὶ |consider ὅτι καὶ αὐτὸς ἄνθρωπος ἐὼν ἄλλον

ἄνθρωπον, γενόμενον ἑωυτοῦ εὐδαιμονίῃ οὐκ ἐλάσσω,

ζῶντα πυρὶ διδοίῃ, πρὸς τε τούτοις δείσαντα τὴν τίσιν καὶ

|say, choose, ὥς οὐδὲν εἶη τῶν ἐν ἀνθρώποις ἀσφαλῶς
|think over

ἔχον, κελεύειν |extinguish, go out ιχίστην τὸ καιόμενον πῦρ

καὶ |bring down Κροῖσόν τε καὶ τοὺς μετὰ Κροῖσον. καὶ

τοὺς πειρωμένους οὐ δύνασθαι ἔτι τοῦ πυρὸς |rule over

to have speech with all monarchs.” Then, since his words were of doubtful import, they asked again of that which he said; and as they were urgent with him and gave him no peace, he told how once Solon an Athenian had come, and having inspected all his wealth had made light of it, with such and such words; and how all had turned out for him according as Solon had said, not speaking at all especially with a view to Croesus himself, but with a view to the whole human race and especially those who seem to themselves to be happy men. And while Croesus related these things, already the pyre was lighted and the edges of it round about were burning. Then they say that Cyrus, hearing from the interpreters what Croesus had said, changed his purpose and considered that he himself also was but a man, and that he was delivering another man, who had been not inferior to himself in felicity, alive to the fire; and moreover he feared the requital, and reflected that there was nothing of that which men possessed which was secure; therefore, they say, he ordered them to extinguish as quickly as possible the fire that was burning, and to bring down Croesus and those who were with him from the pyre; and they using endeavours were not able now to get the mastery of the flames.

*vocabulary***αἰθρία** clear air**ἀναγιγνώσκω** recognize, read,
understand, persuade**ἀνόητος** foolish**δακρύω** weep**δωρέω** give ~donate**Ἑλλήν** Greek**ἐμεωυτοῦ** myself**ἐνθαῦτα** there, here**ἐξαπίνης** suddenly**ἐπαείρω** raise, place on ~aorta**ἐπιβοάω** call to for help**ἐπικαλέω** call upon**εὐδαιμονία** prosperity**θεοφιλῆς** beloved by the gods; loving
God**κακοδαιμονία** misfortune; demonic
possession**καταβιβάζω** bring down**καταλαμβάνω** seize, understand, catch,
overtake; (mp) happen ~epilepsy**καταρρήγνυμι** (ῥ) break down**κατασβέννυμι** (ῥ) extinguish**λάβρος** blustering, torrential**μεταγιγνώσκω** change one's mind
~gnostic**νέφος** -εος (n, 3) cloud ~nebula**νηνέμιος** still, windless ~anemometer**πυρά** pyre ~pyre**σβέννυμι** (ῥ) extinguish, go out**συντρέχω** rush together**ὕω** (ῥ) to rain**χειμών** -ος (m, 3) winter, storm

1.87

ἐνθαῦτα λέγεται ὑπὸ Λυδῶν Κροῖσον μαθόντα τὴν Κύρου μετὰγνωσιν, ὥς ὥρα πάντα μὲν ἄνδρα σβεννύντα τὸ πῦρ, δυναμένους δὲ οὐκέτι καταλαβεῖν, ἐπιβώσασθαι τὸν Ἀπόλλωνα ἐπικαλούμενον, εἴ τί οἱ κεχαρισμένον ἐξ αὐτοῦ ἔδωρήθη, παραστήναι καὶ ρύσασθαι αὐτὸν ἐκ τοῦ παρεόντος κακοῦ. τὸν μὲν δακρύνοντα ἐπικαλέεσθαι τὸν θεόν, ἐκ δὲ αἰθρίης τε καὶ νηνεμῆς συνδραμεῖν ἑξαπίνης νέφεα καὶ χειμῶνά τε καταρραγῆναι καὶ ὕσαι ὕδατι λαβροτάτῳ, κατασβεσθῆναί τε τὴν πυρὴν. οὕτω δὴ μαθόντα τὸν Κῦρον ὥς εἴη ὁ Κροῖσος καὶ θεοφιλὴς καὶ ἀνὴρ ἀγαθός, καταβιβάσαντα αὐτὸν ἀπὸ τῆς πυρῆς εἰρέσθαι τάδε. «Κροῖσε, τίς σε ἀνθρώπων ἀνέγνωσε ἐπὶ γῆν τὴν ἐμὴν στρατευσάμενον πολέμιον ἀντὶ φίλου ἐμοὶ καταστήναι; ὁ δὲ εἶπε »ὦ βασιλεῦ, ἐγὼ ταῦτα ἔπρηξα τῇ σῇ μὲν εὐδαιμονίῃ, τῇ ἐμεωυτοῦ δὲ κακοδαιμονίῃ, αἷτιος δὲ τούτων ἐγένετο ὁ Ἑλλήνων θεὸς ἐπαείρας ἐμὲ στρατεῦεσθαι. οὐδεὶς γὰρ οὕτω ἀνόητος ἐστὶ ὅστις

1.87

|there, here ἔγεται ὑπὸ Λυδῶν Κροῖσον μαθόντα τὴν Κύρου
 μετάγνωσιν, ὥς ὥρα πάντα μὲν ἄνδρα |extinguish, go out
 πῦρ, δυναμένους δὲ οὐκέτι |seize, under-|call to for help
 |stand, catch,
 τὸν Ἀπόλλωνα |call upon |overtake; (mp)
 |happen εἰ τί οἱ κεχαρισμένον
 ἐξ αὐτοῦ |give , παραστήναι καὶ ρύσασθαι αὐτὸν ἐκ
 τοῦ παρεόντος κακοῦ. τὸν μὲν |weep |call upon
 τὸν θεόν, ἐκ δὲ αἰθρίης τε καὶ |still, |rush together
 |windless
 |suddenly |cloud καὶ |winter, τε |break down καὶ |to rain
 |storm
 ὕδατι |blustering, tor-|extinguish τε τὴν |pyre οὕτω
 |rential
 δὴ μαθόντα τὸν Κῦρον ὥς εἴη ὁ Κροῖσος καὶ |beloved by the gods;
 |loving God
 καὶ ἀνὴρ ἀγαθός, |bring down αὐτὸν ἀπὸ τῆς |pyre
 εἰρέσθαι τάδε. «Κροῖσε, τίς σε ἀνθρώπων |read ἐπὶ
 γῆν τὴν ἐμὴν στρατευσάμενον πολέμιον ἀντὶ φίλου ἐμοὶ
 καταστήναι; ὁ δὲ εἶπε »ὦ βασιλεῦ, ἐγὼ ταῦτα ἔπραξα
 τῇ σῇ μὲν εὐδαιμονίῃ, τῇ |myself δὲ κακοδαιμονίῃ,
 αἴτιος δὲ τούτων ἐγένετο ὁ |Greek θεὸς |raise, ἐμὲ
 |place on
 στρατεύεσθαι. οὐδεὶς γὰρ οὕτω |foolish ἐστὶ ὅστις

1.87

Then it is related by the Lydians that Croesus, having learned how Cyrus had changed his mind, and seeing that every one was trying to put out the fire but that they were no longer able to check it, cried aloud entreating Apollo that if any gift had ever been given by him which had been acceptable to the god, he would come to his aid and rescue him from the evil which was now upon him. So he with tears entreated the god, and suddenly, they say, after clear sky and calm weather clouds gathered and a storm burst, and it rained with a very violent shower, and the pyre was extinguished. Then Cyrus, having perceived that Croesus was a lover of the gods and a good man, caused him to be brought down from the pyre and asked him as follows: “Croesus, tell me who of all men was it who persuaded thee to march upon my land and so to become an enemy to me instead of a friend?” and he said: “O king, I did this to thy felicity and to my own misfortune, and the causer of this was the god of the Hellenes, who incited me to march with my army. For no one is so senseless as to choose of his

vocabulary

δαίμων -ονος (m, 3) a god, fate, doom
 ~demon
διαρπάζω make prey of ~harpoon
ἐπιστρέφω turn towards ~atrophy
ἥσυχος quiet
θάπτω bury ~epitaph
θαρσέω be of good heart
κάρτα very much ~κράτος
κεραίζω slay, ravage ~caries

κότερος which, whichever of two
κῦρος -εος (n, 3) authority; validity
μὴν him, her, it
ὄμιλος (ἰ) crowd, throng ~homily
Πέρσης Persian
προμηθία foresight
σιγάω (ἰ) be silent
σπουδή zeal; (dat) with difficulty,
 hastily ~repudiate
σύννοια meditation; worry

πόλεμον πρὸ εἰρήνης αἰρέεται· ἐν μὲν γὰρ τῇ οἱ παῖδες τοὺς πατέρας θάπτουσι, ἐν δὲ τῷ οἱ πατέρες τοὺς παῖδας. ἀλλὰ ταῦτα δαίμοσί κου φίλον ἦν οὕτω γενέσθαι.»

1.88

ὁ μὲν ταῦτα ἔλεγε, Κῦρος δὲ αὐτὸν λύσας κατέϊσέ τε ἐγγὺς ἑωντοῦ καὶ κάρτα ἐν πολλῇ προμηθίῃ εἶχε, ἀπεθώμαζέ τε ὀρέων καὶ αὐτὸς καὶ οἱ περὶ ἐκείνον ἐόντες πάντες. ὁ δὲ συννοίῃ ἐχόμενος ἤσυχος ἦν· μετὰ δὲ ἐπιστραφεῖς τε καὶ ἰδόμενος τοὺς Πέρσας τὸ τῶν Λυδῶν ἄστει κεραῖζοντας εἶπε «ὦ βασιλεῦ, κότερον λέγειν πρὸς σὲ τὰ νοέων τυγχάνω ἢ σιγᾶν ἐν τῷ παρεόντι χρή;» Κῦρος δέ μιν θαρσέοντα ἐκέλευε λέγειν ὅ τι βούλοιτο. ὁ δὲ αὐτὸν εἰρώτα λέγων «οὗτος ὁ πολλὸς ὄμιλος τί ταῦτα πολλῇ σπουδῇ ἐργάζεται;» ὁ δὲ εἶπε «πόλιν τε τὴν σὴν διαρπάζει καὶ χρήματα τὰ σὰ διαφορέει.» Κροῖσος δὲ ἀμείβετο «οὔτε πόλιν τὴν ἐμὴν οὔτε χρήματα τὰ ἐμὰ διαρπάζει· οὐδὲν γὰρ ἐμοὶ ἔτι τούτων μέτα· ἀλλὰ φέρουσί τε καὶ ἄγουσι τὰ σά.»

πόλεμον πρὸ εἰρήνης αἰρέεται· ἐν μὲν γὰρ τῇ οἱ παῖδες
 τοὺς πατέρας |bury , ἐν δὲ τῷ οἱ πατέρες τοὺς παῖδας.
 ἀλλὰ ταῦτα |a god, fate, doom[^] .ον ἦν οὕτω γενέσθαι.«

1.88

ὁ μὲν ταῦτα ἔλεγε, |authority;[^] αὐτὸν λύσας κατείσέ τε ἐγγὺς
 |validity
 ἑωυτοῦ καὶ |very much πολλῇ |foresight εἶχε, ἀπεθώμαζέ τε
 ὀρέων καὶ αὐτὸς καὶ οἱ περὶ ἐκείνον ἑόντες πάντες. ὁ δὲ
 |meditation;[^] ὤμενος |quiet ἦν· μετὰ δὲ |turn towards τε καὶ
 |worry
 ἰδόμενος τοὺς Πέρσας τὸ τῶν Λυδῶν ἄστρῳ κεραΐζοντας
 εἶπε «ὦ βασιλεῦ, |which, λέγειν πρὸς σέ τὰ νοέων
 |whichever
 τυγχάνω ἢ |be silent ’ τῷ παρεόντι χρή;» Κῦρος δέ μιν
 |be of good heart[^] .ευε λέγειν ὅ τι βούλοιτο. ὁ δὲ αὐτὸν εἰρώτα
 λέγων «οὗτος ὁ πολλὸς |crowd τί ταῦτα πολλῇ |zeal; (dat) with diffi-
 |culty, hastily
 ἐργάζεται;» ὁ δὲ εἶπε «πόλιν τε τὴν σὴν |make prey of ἢ
 χρήματα τὰ σὰ διαφορέει.» Κροῖσος δὲ ἀμείβετο «οὔτε
 πόλιν τὴν ἐμὴν οὔτε χρήματα τὰ ἐμὰ |make prey of ἰδὲν γὰρ
 ἐμοὶ ἔτι τούτων μέτα· ἀλλὰ φέρουσί τε καὶ ἄγουσι τὰ σά.»

own will war rather peace, since in peace the sons bury their fathers, but in war the fathers bury their sons. But it was pleasing, I suppose, to the divine powers that these things should come to pass thus.”

1.88

So he spoke, and Cyrus loosed his bonds and caused him to sit near himself and paid to him much regard, and he marvelled both himself and all who were about him at the sight of Croesus. And Croesus wrapt in thought was silent; but after a time, turning round and seeing the Persians plundering the city of the Lydians, he said: “O king, must I say to thee that which I chance to have in my thought, or must I keep silent in this my present fortune?” Then Cyrus bade him say boldly whatsoever he desired; and he asked him saying: “What is the business that this great multitude of men is doing with so much eagerness?” and he said: “They are plundering thy city and carrying away thy wealth.” And Croesus answered: “Neither is it my city that they are plundering nor my wealth which they are carrying away; for I have no longer any property in these things: but it is thy wealth that they are carrying and driving away.”

vocabulary

ἀναγκάιος coerced, coercing, slavery
ἀρέσκω please, satisfy; make amends
ἀφαιρέω take away ~heresy
ἀχρήματος poor
βιόω live; (mp) make a living ~biology
δεκατεύω take a tenth
διαρπάζω make prey of ~harpoon
δικαιόω demand/make justice
δορυφόρος spear-bearing
ἐκφέρω carry off ~bear
ἐκών willingly, on purpose; giving in too easily
ἐνοράω look at, notice something in
ἐνόρνυμι (ὑ) stir up, inspire ~hormone
ἐπανάστημι rise up ~station
ἐπίδοξος likely; famous
ἐπιμελής careful, cared for
ἐύς good, brave, noble

κάτισος equal
μεθίστημι change, substitute; withdraw; change sides; (mid) send away ~station
ὄον οὖ type of fruit
πάσσω sprinkle; insert in a web
πέρθω sack, ravage, plunder
περίοιδα have great, greater skill
περιοράω look around; watch; permit
Πέρσης Persian
προσδέχομαι await, expect; suppose
σημαίνω give orders to; show; mark ~semaphore
συγγιγνώσκω acknowledge; pardon
ὕβριστης -οῦ (m, 1) wanton, savage
φυλακός guard; sentry
φύσις -εως (f) nature (of a thing) ~physics
φύω produce, beget; clasp ~physics

1.89

Κύρῳ δὲ ἐπιμελὲς ἐγένετο τὰ Κροῖσος εἶπε· μεταστησάμενος δὲ τοὺς ἄλλους, εἶρετο Κροῖσον ὅτι οἱ ἐνορώη ἐν τοῖσι ποιευμένοισι. ὁ δὲ εἶπε «ἐπέιτε με θεοὶ ἔδωκαν δοῦλον σοί, δικαίῳ, εἴ τι ἐνορέω πλέον, σημαίνειν σοί. Πέρσαι φύσιν ἐόντες ὑβρισταὶ εἰς ἀχρήματοι. ἦν ὧν σὺ τούτους περιύδης διαρπάσαντας καὶ κατασχόντας χρήματα μεγάλα, τάδε τοὶ ἐξ αὐτῶν ἐπίδοξα γενέσθαι. ὃς ἂν αὐτῶν πλείστα κατάσχη, τούτον προσδέκεσθαί τοι ἐπαναστησόμενον. νῦν ὧν ποίησον ὦδε, εἰ τοι ἀρέσκει τὰ ἐγὼ λέγω· κάτισον τῶν δορυφόρων ἐπὶ πάσῃσι τῇσι πύλῃσι φυλάκους, οἳ λεγόντων πρὸς τοὺς ἐκφέροντας τὰ χρήματα ἀπαιρεόμενοι ὥς σφέα ἀναγκαίως ἔχει δεκατευθῆναι τῷ Δίῳ. καὶ σύ τέ σφι οὐκ ἀπεχθήσῃ βίῃ ἀπαιρεόμενος τὰ χρήματα, καὶ ἐκεῖνοι συγγνόντες ποιέειν σε δίκαια ἐκόντες προήσουσι.»

1.89

Κύρω δὲ |careful, ἐγένετο τὰ Κροῖσος εἶπε·
 |cared for
 |change, substitute; withdraw; ἄλλους, εἶρετο Κροῖσον ὅ
 |change sides; (mid) send away
 τι οἱ |look at, notice οἷσι ποιευμένοισι. ὁ δὲ εἶπε «ἐπεῖτε
 |something in
 με θεοὶ ἔδωκαν δούλον σοί, |demand/make |stir up, inspire ,
 |justice
 |give orders to; ἴ. Πέρσαι φύσιν ἐόντες |wanton, εἰσὶ
 |show; mark |savage
 |poor . ἦν ὧν σὺ τούτους περιύδης |make prey of
 καὶ κατασχόντας χρήματα μεγάλα, τάδε τοὶ ἐξ αὐτῶν
 |likely; γένεσθαι. ὃς ἂν αὐτῶν πλείστα κατάσχη, τοῦτον
 |famous
 |await, expect; τοι |rise up . νῦν ὧν ποίησον
 |suppose
 ὥδε, εἰ τοι |please, satisfy; ὡ λέγω· |equal τῶν |spear-bearing
 |make amends
 ἐπὶ |sprinkle τῇσι πύλῃσι |guard; , οἱ λεγόντων πρὸς
 |sentry
 τοὺς |carry off τὰ χρήματα |take away ὥς σφέα
 |coerced, coercing; |take a tenth τῷ Διί. καὶ σύ τέ σφι οὐκ
 |slavery
 ἀπεχθήσεται βίῃ |take away τὰ χρήματα, καὶ ἐκείνοι
 συγγνόντες ποιεῖν σε δίκαια |willingly προήσουσι.»

1.89

And Cyrus was concerned by that which Croesus had said, and he caused all the rest to withdraw and asked Croesus what he discerned for his advantage as regards that which was being done; and he said: “Since the gods gave me to thee as a slave, I think it right if I discern anything more than others to signify it to thee. The Persians, who are by nature unruly, are without wealth: if therefore thou shalt suffer them to carry off in plunder great wealth and to take possession of it, then it is to be looked for that thou wilt experience this result, thou must expect namely that whosoever gets possession of the largest share will make insurrection against thee. Now therefore, if that which I say is pleasing to thee, do this:— set spearmen of thy guard to watch at all the gates, and let these take away the things, and say to the men who were bearing them out of the city that they must first be tithed for Zeus: and thus thou on the one hand wilt not be hated by them for taking away the things by force, and they on the other will willingly let the things go, acknowledging within themselves that thou art doing that which is just.”

vocabulary

αἰνέω praise, assent, acquiesce in
 ἀνάθημα -τος (n, 3) consecrated gift
 ~thesis
 ἀνάρτημαι attach to, make dependent
 upon
 γελάω laugh, smile, laugh at
 δεσπότης -ου (m, 1) master, despot
 διάνοια a thought; intelligence
 δορυφόρος spear-bearing
 δόσις -εως (f) gift, loan ~donate
 ἐκάστοτε each time
 Ἑλλήν Greek
 ἐντέλλω (mp) command
 ἐξαπατάω trick, cheat ~apatosaurus
 ἐπαίρω raise, place on ~aorta
 ἐπείρομαι ask as well; ask then

ἐπιτελέω complete; do a religious duty
 ἐπιτέλλω order ~apostle
 κῦρος -εος (n, 3) authority; validity
 μαντεῖον prophetic warning ~mantis
 ὀνειδίζω upbraid, reproach
 παλιλλογέω repeat
 παραιτέομαι entreat; beg for; decline
 παραυτίκα immediately
 πεδάω impede, chain ~impede
 πέδη shackles ~pedal
 Πέρσης Persian
 ὑπερήδομαι rejoice greatly
 ὑπόκρισις -εως (f) answer; acting,
 hypocrisy
 ὑποτίθημι suggest, advise ~hypothesis
 χρηστήριον oracle, response
 χρηστός useful; brave, worthy

1.90

ταῦτα ἀκούων ὁ Κῦρος ὑπερήδeto, ὥς οἱ ἐδόκεε εὖ
 ὑποτίθeσθαι· αἰνέσας δὲ πολλά, καὶ ἐντειλάμενος τοῖσι
 δορυφόροισι τὰ Κροῖσος ὑπεθήκατο ἐπιτελέειν, εἶπε πρὸς
 Κροῖσον τάδε. «Κροῖσε, ἀναρτημένου σεῦ ἀνδρὸς
 βασιλέος χρηστὰ ἔργα καὶ ἔπεα ποιέειν, αἰτέο δόσιν
 ἥντινα βούλεαί τοι γενέσθαι παραντίκα.» ὁ δὲ εἶπε «ὦ
 δέσποτα, ἔασας με χαριεῖ μάλιστα τὸν θεὸν τῶν Ἑλλήνων,
 τὸν ἐγὼ ἐτίμησα θεῶν μάλιστα, ἐπειρέσθαι πέμψαντα
 τάσδε τὰς πέδας, εἰ ἔξαπατᾶν τοὺς εὖ ποιεῦντας νόμος
 ἐστὶ οἷ.» Κῦρος δὲ εἴρετο ὅ τι οἱ τοῦτο ἐπηγορέων
 παραιτέοιτο. Κροῖσος δέ οἱ ἐπαλιλλόγησε πᾶσαν τὴν
 ἑωυτοῦ διάνοιαν καὶ τῶν χρηστηρίων τὰς ὑποκρίσιας καὶ
 μάλιστα τὰ ἀναθήματα, καὶ ὥς ἐπαερθεῖς τῷ μαντηίῳ
 ἐστρατεύσατο ἐπὶ Πέρσας· λέγων δὲ ταῦτα κατέβαινε
 αὐτὶς παραιτέόμενος ἐπεῖναί οἱ τῷ θεῷ τοῦτο ὀνειδίσαι.
 Κῦρος δὲ γελάσας εἶπε «καὶ τούτου τεύξεαι παρ' ἐμεῦ,
 Κροῖσε, καὶ ἄλλου παντὸς τοῦ ἂν ἐκάστοτε δέῃ.» ὥς δὲ

1.90

ταῦτα ἀκούων ὁ ^{|authority|rejoice} , ὥς οἱ ἐδόκεε εὖ
^{|validity|greatly}
^{|suggest} ^{|praise, assent} δὲ πολλά, καὶ ἐντειλάμενος τοῖσι
^{|spear-bearing} τὰ Κροῖσος ^{|suggest} ἐπιτελέειν, εἶπε πρὸς
 Κροῖσον τάδε. «Κροῖσε, ^{|attach to, make} ^{|dependent upon} τεῦ ἀνδρὸς
 βασιλέος ^{|useful; brave, a} καὶ ἔπεα ποιέειν, αἰτέο ^{|gift, loan}
^{|worthy}
 ἥντινα βούλεαί τοι γενέσθαι ^{|immediately} .» ὁ δὲ εἶπε «ᾧ
^{|master, despot} , ἑάσας με χαριεῖ μάλιστα τὸν θεὸν τῶν ^{|Greek} ,
 τὸν ἐγὼ ἐτίμησα θεῶν μάλιστα, ^{|ask as well; πέμψαντα}
^{|ask then}
 τάσδε τὰς πέδας, εἰ ^{|trick, cheat} τοὺς εὖ ποιεῦντας νόμος
 ἐστί οἱ.» Κῦρος δὲ εἶρετο ὅ τι οἱ τοῦτο ἐπηγορέων
^{|entreat; beg} Κροῖσος δέ οἱ ^{|repeat} πᾶσαν τὴν
^{|for; decline}
 ἑωυτοῦ ^{|a thought; intelligence} ^{|oracle, response} τὰς ^{|answer; acting, αἰ}
^{|hypocrisy}
 μάλιστα τὰ ^{|consecrated gift} . καὶ ὥς ^{|raise, place} τῷ ^{|prophetic}
^{|on} ^{|warning}
 ἐστρατεύσατο ἐπὶ Πέρσας· λέγων δὲ ταῦτα κατέβαινε
 αὐτῖς ^{|entreat; beg for; decline} ἐπεῖναί οἱ τῷ θεῷ τοῦτο ^{|reproach}
^{|decline}
 Κῦρος δὲ ^{|laugh, smile} εἶπε «καὶ τούτου τεύξεαι παρ' ἐμεῦ,
 Κροῖσε, καὶ ἄλλου παντὸς τοῦ ἂν ^{|each time} δέη.» ὥς δὲ

1.90

Hearing this, Cyrus was above measure pleased, because he thought that Croesus advised well; and he commended him much and enjoined the spearmen of his guard to perform that which Croesus had advised: and after that he spoke to Croesus thus: "Croesus, since thou art prepared, like a king as thou art, to do good deeds and speak good words, therefore ask me for a gift, whatsoever thou desirest to be given thee forthwith." And he said: "Master, thou wilt most do me a pleasure if thou wilt permit me to send to the god of the Hellenes, whom I honoured most of all gods, these fetters, and to ask him whether it is accounted by him right to deceive those who do well to him." Then Cyrus asked him what accusation he made against the god, that he thus requested; and Croesus repeated to him all that had been in his mind, and the answers of the Oracles, and especially the votive offerings, and how he had been incited by the prophecy to march upon the Persians: and thus speaking he came back again to the request that it might be permitted to him to make this reproach against the god. And Cyrus laughed and said: "Not this only shalt thou obtain from me, Croesus, but also whatsoever thou mayst desire of me at any time." Hearing this Croesus

vocabulary

ἄδύνατος unable; impossible
ἄκροθίνιον first-fruit sacrifice; the best
ἀποφεύγω avoid, escape, go free
ἀχάριστος ungracious, unpleasant
 ~eucharist
γονεύς -ος (m) parent
γυναικίης of women
δεσπότης -ου (m, 1) master, despot
δόλος trick, bait
δορυφόρος spear-bearer
ἐκτίμηναι fulfil, accomplish
ἐντέλλω (mp) command
ἐπαίρω raise, place on ~aorta
ἐπαισχύνομαι be ashamed of
ἐπειρωτάω consult, ask

ἐφάπω drive, meet, follow ~sequel
καταπαύω stop, restrain ~pause
μαντεῖον prophetic warning ~mantis
νηέω pile up, load a ship
νηός temple, shrine
πάθος -ους (n, 3) an experience, passion, condition
πεδάω impede, chain ~impede
πέδη shackles ~pedal
πέμπτος fifth ~pentagon
Πέρσης Persian
πόρω aor. give, pf. be fated
προθυμέομαι (ῥ) be eager
προσήκω belong to, it befits
πρόσω forward, in the future; far
φονεύω kill

ταῦτα ἤκουσε ὁ Κροῖσος, πέμπων τῶν Λυδῶν ἐς Δελφούς
 ἐνετέλλετο τιθέντας τὰς πέδας ἐπὶ τοῦ νηοῦ τὸν οὐδὸν
 εἰρωτᾶν εἰ οὐ τι ἐπαισχύνεται τοῖσι μαντηίοισι ἐπαείρας
 Κροῖσον στρατεύεσθαι ἐπὶ Πέρσας ὥς καταπαύσοντα τὴν
 Κύρου δύναμιν, ἀπ' ἧς οἱ ἀκροθίνια τοιαῦτα γενέσθαι,
 δεικνύντας τὰς πέδας· ταῦτά τε ἐπειρωτᾶν, καὶ εἰ
 ἀχαρίστοις νόμος εἶναι τοῖσι Ἑλληνικοῖσι θεοῖσι.

1.91

ἀπικομένοις δὲ τοῖσι Λυδοῖσι καὶ λέγουσι τὰ ἐντεταλμένα
 τὴν Πυθίην λέγεται εἰπεῖν τάδε. «τὴν πεπρωμένην
 μοῖραν ἀδύνατα ἐστὶ ἀποφυγεῖν καὶ θεῶ· Κροῖσος δὲ
 πέμπτου γονέος ἀμαρτάδα ἐξέπλησε, ὃς ἔων δορυφόρος
 Ἡρακλιδέων, δόλῳ γυναικίῳ ἐπισπόμενος ἐφόνευσε
 τὸν δεσπότηα καὶ ἔσχε τὴν ἐκείνου τιμὴν οὐδὲν οἱ
 προσήκουσαν. προθυμεομένου δὲ Λοξίῳ¹ ὅκως ἂν κατὰ²
 τοὺς παῖδας τοῦ Κροῖσου γένοιτο τὸ Σαρδίῳ πάθος καὶ
 μὴ κατ' αὐτὸν Κροῖσον, οὐκ οἶόν τε ἐγίνετο

¹ epithet of Apollo, "oblique" ² i.e., that the punishment be delayed

ταῦτα ἤκουσε ὁ Κροῖσος, πέμπων τῶν Λυδῶν ἐς Δελφοὺς
 ἐνετέλλετο τιθέντας τὰς πέδας ἐπὶ τοῦ νηοῦ τὸν οὐδὸν
 εἰρωτᾶν εἰ οὔ τι |be ashamed of τοῖσι |prophetic |raise,
 |warning |place on
 Κροῖσον στρατεύεσθαι ἐπὶ Πέρσας ὥς |stop, restrain τὴν
 Κύρου δύναμιν, ἀπ' ἧς οἱ |first-fruit sac- |maῦτα γενέσθαι,
 |rifice; the best
 δεικνύντας τὰς πέδας· ταῦτά τε |consult, ask , καὶ εἰ
 |ungracious, νόμος εἶναι τοῖσι Ἑλληνικοῖσι θεοῖσι.
 |unpleasant

1.91

ἀπικομένοισι δὲ τοῖσι Λυδοῖσι καὶ λέγουσι τὰ ἐντεταλμένα
 τὴν Πυθίην λέγεται εἰπεῖν τάδε. «τὴν πεπρωμένην
 μοῖραν |unable; ἐστὶ |avoid, escape, αἰ θεῶ· Κροῖσος δὲ
 |impossible |go free
 |fifth |parent ἀμαρτάδα |fulfil, , ὃς ἐὼν |spear-brearing
 |accomplish
 Ἡρακλιδέων, |trick, |of women |drive, meet, fol-|kill
 |bait |low
 τὸν |master, καὶ ἔσχε τὴν ἐκείνου τιμὴν οὐδέν οἱ
 |despot
 |belong to, it be- |be eager δὲ Λοξίεω¹ ὅκως ἂν κατὰ²
 |seems
 τοὺς παῖδας τοῦ Κροῖσου γένοιτο τὸ Σαρδίων |an experience, passion,
 |condition
 μὴ κατ' αὐτὸν Κροῖσον, οὐκ οἶόν τε ἐγίνετο

¹ epithet of Apollo, "oblique" ² i.e., that the punishment be delayed

sent certain of the Lydians to Delphi, enjoining them to lay the fetters upon the threshold of the temple and to ask the god whether he felt no shame that he had incited Croesus by his prophecies to march upon the Persians, persuading him that he should bring to an end the empire of Cyrus, seeing that these were the first-fruits of spoil which he had won from it,— at the same time displaying the fetters. This they were to ask, and moreover also whether it was thought right by the gods of the Hellenes to practice ingratitude.

1.91

When the Lydians came and repeated that which they were enjoined to say, it is related that the Pythian prophetess spoke as follows: “The fated destiny it is impossible even for a god to escape. And Croesus paid the debt due for the sin of his fifth ancestor, who being one of the spearmen of the Heracleidai followed the treacherous device of a woman, and having slain his master took possession of his royal dignity, which belonged not to him of right. And although Loxias eagerly desired that the calamity of Sardis might come upon the sons of Croesus and not upon Croesus himself, it was not possible for him to draw the Destinies aside from their course; but so

vocabulary

ἀλίσκομαι be captured ~helix
ἄλλομαι to jump ~sally
ἄλωσις -τος (f) being conquered
ἀνύω accomplish, pass over, complete
ἀποφαίνω display, declare
ἐνδίδωμι hand over, lend, show, allow
ἐπαναβάλλω throw on, over; (mp)
 postpone
ἐπανείρομαι ask over and over
ἐπανεύρομαι ask over and over
ἐπαρκέω ward off
ἐπείρομαι ask as well; ask then
ἡμίονος (f) mule ~hemisphere

κότερος which, whichever of two
μαντεῖον prophetic warning ~mantis
μέμφομαι blame; reject
ὁμοεθνής of the same tribe
παράγω deflect; bring forward
Πέρσης Persian
πόρω aor. give, pf. be fated
προαγορεύω declare, predict, order
πρόσω forward, in the future; far
συλλαμβάνω seize, capture;
 understand ~epilepsy
τελευταῖος last, final
ὕποδεής inferior; fearful
χρηστηριάζω prophesy

παραγαγεῖν Μοίρας. ὅσον δὲ ἐνέδωκαν αὐται, ἦνυσέ τε καὶ ἐχαρίσατό οἱ· τρία γὰρ ἔτεα ἐπανεβάλετο¹ τὴν Σαρδίων ἄλωσιν, καὶ τοῦτο ἐπιστάσθω Κροῖσος ὡς ὕστερον τοῖσι ἔτεσι τούτοισι ἀλοὺς τῆς πεπρωμένης.

Δευτέρα δὲ τούτων καιομένῳ αὐτῷ ἐπήρκεσε. κατὰ δὲ τὸ μαντήιον τὸ γενόμενον οὐκ ὀρθῶς Κροῖσος μέμφεται. προηγόρευε γὰρ οἱ Λοξίης, ἣν στρατεύηται ἐπὶ Πέρσας, μεγάλην ἀρχὴν αὐτὸν καταλύσειν. τὸν δὲ πρὸς ταῦτα χρῆν εὖ μέλλοντα βουλεύεσθαι ἐπειρέσθαι πέμψαντα κότερα, τὴν ἑωυτοῦ ἢ τὴν, Κύρου λέγοι ἀρχήν. οὐ συλλαβὼν δὲ τὸ ῥηθὲν οὐδ' ἐπανειρόμενος ἑωυτὸν αἴτιον ἀποφαινέτω·

τῷ καὶ τὸ τελευταῖον χρηστηριαζομένῳ εἶπε Λοξίης περὶ² ἡμίονου, οὐδὲ τοῦτο συνέλαβε. ἦν γὰρ δὴ ὁ Κῦρος οὗτος ἡμίονος· ἐκ γὰρ δυῶν οὐκ ὁμοεθνέων ἐγγεγόνεε, μητρὸς ἀμείνονος, πατρὸς δὲ ὑποδεεστέρου· ἡ μὲν γὰρ ἦν Μηδὶς καὶ Ἀστυάγεος θυγάτηρ τοῦ Μήδων βασιλέως, ὁ δὲ

¹ Apollo ² 1.55, "when a mule becomes king of the Medes"

|deflect; bring forward Μοίρας. ὅσον δὲ |hand over, lend, show; accomplish
|allow

τε καὶ ἐχαρίσατό οἱ· τρία γὰρ ἔτεα |throw on, over;¹ τὴν
|(mp) postpone

Σαρδίων ἄλωσιν, καὶ τοῦτο ἐπιστάσθω Κροῖσος ὥς

ὑστερον τοῖσι ἔτεσι τούτοισι |be captured· τεπρωμένης.

Δευτέρα δὲ τούτων καιομένῳ αὐτῷ |ward off . κατὰ δὲ

τὸ |prophetic τὸ γενόμενον οὐκ ὀρθῶς Κροῖσος |blame;
|warning |reject

|declare, pre- γὰρ οἱ Λοξίης, ἣν στρατεύεται ἐπὶ Πέρσας,
|dict, order

μεγάλην ἀρχὴν αὐτὸν καταλύσειν. τὸν δὲ πρὸς ταῦτα

χρῆν εὖ μέλλοντα βουλευέσθαι |ask as well; πέμψαντα
|ask then

|which, , τὴν ἑωυτοῦ ἢ τὴν, Κύρου λέγοι ἀρχήν. οὐ
|whichever

|seize, capture; τὸ ῥηθὲν οὐδ' ἐπανειρόμενος ἑωυτὸν αἴτιον
|understand

|display,
|declare

τῷ καὶ τὸ |last, final |prophesy εἶπε Λοξίης περὶ²

|mule , οὐδὲ τοῦτο |seize, capture; γὰρ δὴ ὁ Κῦρος οὗτος
|understand

|mule ἐκ γὰρ δυῶν οὐκ |of the same tribe, ὅνεε, μητρὸς

ἀμείνονος, πατρὸς δὲ |inferior; fearful ἡ μὲν γὰρ ἦν Μηδὶς

καὶ Ἀστυάγειος θυγάτηρ τοῦ Μήδων βασιλέως, ὁ δὲ

¹ Apollo ² 1.55, "when a mule becomes king of the Medes"

much as these granted he brought to pass, and gave it as a gift to Croesus: for he put off the taking of Sardis by three years; and let Croesus be assured that he was taken prisoner later by these years than the fated time: moreover secondly, he assisted him when he was about to be burnt. And as to the oracle which was given, Croesus finds fault with good ground: for Loxias told him beforehand that if he should march upon the Persians he should destroy a great empire: and he upon hearing this, if he wished to take counsel well, ought to have sent and asked further whether the god meant his own empire or that of Cyrus: but as he did not comprehend that which was uttered and did not ask again, let him pronounce himself to be the cause of that which followed.

To him also when he consulted the Oracle for the last time Loxias said that which he said concerning a mule; but this also he failed to comprehend: for Cyrus was in fact this mule, seeing that he was born of parents who were of two different races, his mother being of nobler descent and his father of less noble: for she was a Median woman, daughter of Astyages and king of the Medes, but he was a Persian, one

vocabulary

ἀνάθημα -τος (n, 3) consecrated gift
 ~thesis
ἀνατίθῃμι consecrate, lay on, impute;
 (mp) reproach
ἀναφέρω bring up ~bear
ἀπαγγέλλω announce, order, promise
 ~angel
δέσποινα lady
ἔνερθε beneath, below
ἐξάπολλυμι (ῥ) disappear from

καταστροφή end, conclusion
κίων κίονος (ι, f) pillar
πέρθω sack, ravage, plunder
περίειμι be superior to; be left over;
 still exist
Πέρσης Persian
σταθμός cottage; post
συγγιγνώσκω acknowledge; pardon
συνοικέω live together
τρίπους three-legged cauldron
ὑποκρίνομαι (ι) answer; pretend

Πέρσης τε ἦν καὶ ἀρχόμενος ὑπ' ἐκείνοισι καὶ ἔνερθε ἑὼν τοῖσι ἅπασι δεσποίνῃ τῇ ἑωυτοῦ συνοίκεε. «ταῦτα μὲν ἡ Πυθίῃ ὑπεκρίνατο τοῖσι Λυδοῖσι, οἳ δὲ ἀνήνεικαν ἐς Σάρδεις καὶ ἀπήγγειλαν Κροίσῳ. ὁ δὲ ἀκούσας συνέγνω ἑωυτοῦ εἶναι τὴν ἀμαρτάδα καὶ οὐ τοῦ θεοῦ. κατὰ μὲν δὴ τὴν Κροίσου τε ἀρχὴν καὶ Ἰωνίης τὴν πρώτην καταστροφὴν ἔσχε οὕτω.

1.92

Κροίσῳ δὲ ἐστὶ ἄλλα ἀναθήματα ἐν τῇ Ἑλλάδι πολλὰ καὶ οὐ τὰ εἰρημένα μούνα. ἐν μὲν γὰρ Θήβησι τῇσι Βοιωτῶν τρίπους χρύσεος, τὸν ἀνέθηκε τῷ Ἀπόλλωνι τῷ Ἰσμηνίῳ, ἐν δὲ Ἐφέσῳ αἶ τε βόες αἱ χρύσειαι καὶ τῶν κιόνων αἱ πολλαί, ἐν δὲ Προνηίης τῆς ἐν Δελφοῖσι ἀσπίς χρυσέῃ μεγάλη. ταῦτα μὲν καὶ ἔτι ἐς ἐμὲ ἦν περιέοντα, τὰ δ' ἐξαπόλωλε τῶν ἀναθημάτων· τὰ δ' ἐν Βραγχίδησι τῇσι Μιλησίων ἀναθήματα Κροίσῳ, ὥς ἐγὼ πυνθάνομαι, ἴσα τε σταθμὸν καὶ ὅμοια τοῖσι ἐν Δελφοῖσι.... τὰ μὲν νυν ἔς τε Δελφοὺς καὶ ἐς τοῦ Ἀμφιάρεω ἀνέθηκε οἰκῆιά

Πέρσης τε ἦν καὶ ἀρχόμενος ὑπ' ἐκείνοισι καὶ |beneath, 'ὦν
 |below
 τοῖσι ἅπασιν |lady τῇ ἐωντοῦ |live together . αὐτα μὲν ἦ
 Πυθίῃ |answer; τούτοι Λυδοῖσι, οἳ δὲ |bring up ἐς Σάρδεις
 |pretend
 καὶ |announce, or- Κροίσῳ. ὁ δὲ ἀκούσας |acknowledge; τοῦ
 |der, promise |pardon
 εἶναι τὴν ἀμαρτάδα καὶ οὐ τοῦ θεοῦ. κατὰ μὲν δὴ τὴν
 Κροίσου τε ἀρχὴν καὶ Ἰωνίης τὴν πρώτην |end, conclusion
 ἔσχε οὕτω.

1.92

Κροίσῳ δὲ ἐστὶ ἄλλα |consecrated gift τῇ Ἑλλάδι πολλὰ καὶ
 οὐ τὰ εἰρημένα μούνα. ἐν μὲν γὰρ Θήβησι τῇσι Βοιωτῶν
 |cauldron χρύσεος, τὸν |consecrate, lay' on, 'im-
 |pute; (mp) reproach
 ἐν δὲ Ἐφέσῳ αἶ τε βόες αἶ χρύσειαι καὶ τῶν |pillar αἶ
 πολλαί, ἐν δὲ Προνηίης τῆς ἐν Δελφοῖσι ἀσπὶς χρυσέῃ
 μεγάλη. ταῦτα μὲν καὶ ἔτι ἐς ἐμὲ ἦν |be superior to; be left over; still
 |exist
 |disappear from ὧν |consecrated gift τὰ δ' ἐν Βραγχίδησι τῇσι
 Μιλησίων |consecrated gift, -ροίσῳ, ὥς ἐγὼ πυνθάνομαι, ἴσα
 τε |cottage; post... ὅμοια τοῖσι ἐν Δελφοῖσι.... τὰ μὲν νυν ἔς
 τε Δελφοὺς καὶ ἐς τοῦ Ἀμφιάρεω |consecrate, lay' on, im-
 |pute; (mp) reproach

of a race subject to the Medes, and being inferior in all respects he was the husband of one who was his royal mistress.” Thus the Pythian prophetess replied to the Lydians, and they brought the answer back to Sardis and repeated it to Croesus; and he, when he heard it, acknowledged that the fault was his own and not that of the god. With regard then to the empire of Croesus and the first conquest of Ionia, it happened thus.

1.92

Now there are in Hellas many other votive offerings made by Croesus and not only those which have been mentioned: for first at Thebes of the Boeotians there is a tripod of gold, which he dedicated to the Ismenian Apollo; then at Ephesos there are the golden cows and the greater number of the pillars of the temple; and in the temple of Athene Pronaia at Delphi a large golden shield. These were still remaining down to my own time, but others of his votive offerings have perished: and the votive offerings of Croesus at Branchidai of the Milesians were, as I am told, equal in weight and similar to those at Delphi. Now those which he sent to Delphi and to the temple of Amphiaraos he dedicated of his own goods and as first-fruits

vocabulary

ἀνάθημα -τος (n, 3) consecrated gift
 ~thesis
ἀνατίθῃμι consecrate, lay on, impute;
 (mp) reproach
ἀντιπράσσω act against
ἀντιστασιώτης -ου (m, 1) partisan
 adversary
ἀπαρχή ἀπώρχης first offering
αὐτόθι on the spot
βασιλεύω be king
θῶμα a wonder, feeling of surprise
 ~theater
καταφέρω bring down, kill ~bear
κνάφος plant; carding comb; torture
 implement

κνάφω card wool; mangle by torturing
ὁμομήτριος with the same mother
οὐσία property; essence
πάρεξ alongside, diverging from; (+ῆ
 or gen) except; (+acc) beyond,
 alongside
πατρώιος of the father(s), ancestral
 ~paternal
πατρῷος of the father(s), ancestral
σημία -τος (n, 3) mark, sign, grave
 mound ~semaphore
συγγραφή writing down
συσπρεύδω assist zealously
χωρίς separately; except, other than
 ~heir
ψῆγμα gold dust; shavings, scrapings

τε ἔόντα καὶ τῶν πατρώϊων χρημάτων ἀπαρχήν· τὰ δὲ ἄλλα ἀναθήματα ἐξ ἀνδρὸς ἐγένετο οὐσίης ἐχθροῦ, ὅς οἱ πρὶν ἢ βασιλεῦσαι ἀντιστασιώτης κατεστήκειε, συσπεύδων Πανταλέοντι γενέσθαι τὴν Λυδῶν ἀρχήν. ὁ δὲ Πανταλέων ἦν Ἀλυάττεω μὲν παῖς, Κροίσου δὲ ἀδελφεὸς οὐκ ὁμομήτριος· Κροῖσος μὲν γὰρ ἐκ Καείρης ἦν γυναικὸς Ἀλυάττη, Πανταλέων δὲ ἐξ Ἰάδος. ἐπεῖτε δὲ δόντος τοῦ πατρὸς ἐκράτησε τῆς ἀρχῆς ὁ Κροῖσος, τὸν ἄνθρωπον τὸν ἀντιπρήσσοντα ἐπὶ κνάφου ἔλκων διέφθειρε, τὴν δὲ οὐσίην αὐτοῦ ἔτι πρότερον κατιρώσας τότε τρόπῳ τῷ εἰρημένῳ ἀνέθηκε ἐς τὰ εἴρηται. καὶ περὶ μὲν ἀναθημάτων τοσαῦτα εἰρήσθω.

1.93

θώματα δὲ γῇ ἢ Λυδίῃ ἐς συγγραφὴν οὐ μάλα ἔχει, οἷά τε καὶ ἄλλη χώρα, πάρεξ τοῦ ἐκ τοῦ Τμώλου καταφερομένου ψήγματος. ἐν δὲ ἔργον πολλὸν μέγιστον παρέχεται χωρὶς τῶν τε Αἰγυπτίων ἔργων καὶ τῶν Βαβυλωνίων· ἔστι αὐτόθι Ἀλυάττεω τοῦ Κροίσου πατρὸς σῆμα, τοῦ ἢ

τε ^έόντα καὶ τῶν πατρώϊων χρημάτων ^{|first} τὰ ^{|offering}
 δὲ ἄλλα ^{|consecrated gift} ἀνδρὸς ἐγένετο ^{|property; essence} χθροῦ,
 ὅς οἱ πρὶν ἦ ^{|be king} ^{|partisan} κατεστήκεε, ^{|adversary}
^{|assist} Πανταλέοντι γενέσθαι τὴν Λυδῶν ἀρχήν. ὁ δὲ ^{|zealously}
 Πανταλέον ἦν Ἀλυάττεω μὲν παῖς, Κροίσου δὲ ἀδελφεὸς
 οὐκ ^{|with the same mother} μὲν γὰρ ἐκ Καείρης ἦν γυναικὸς
 Ἀλυάττη, Πανταλέον δὲ ἐξ Ἰάδος. ἐπεῖτε δὲ δόντος τοῦ
 πατρὸς ἐκράτησε τῆς ἀρχῆς ὁ Κροῖσος, τὸν ἄνθρωπον τὸν
^{|act against} ἐπὶ κνάφου ἔλκων διέφθειρε, τὴν δὲ ^{|property; essence}
 αὐτοῦ ἔτι πρότερον κατιρώσας τότε τρόπῳ τῷ εἰρημένῳ
^{|consecrate, lay on, im-pute; (mp) reproach} καὶ περὶ μὲν ^{|consecrated gift} οσαῦτα
 εἰρήσθω.

1.93

^{|wonder, surprise} δὲ γῇ ἡ Λυδὴ ἐς ^{|writing down} μάλα ἔχει, οἷά τε
 καὶ ἄλλη χώρα, πάρεξ τοῦ ἐκ τοῦ Τμώλου ^{|bring down, kill}
^{|gold dust} ἐν δὲ ἔργον πολλὸν μέγιστον παρέχεται ^{|separately; except, other than}
 τῶν τε Αἰγυπτίων ἔργων καὶ τῶν Βαβυλωνίων· ἔστι
^{|on the spot} ἵαττεω τοῦ Κροίσου πατρὸς ^{|mark, sign, grave mound}

of the wealth inherited from his father; but the other offerings were made of the substance of a man who was his foe, who before Croesus became king had been factious against him and had joined in endeavouring to make Pantaleon ruler of the Lydians. Now Pantaleon was a son of Alyattes and a brother of Croesus, but not by the same mother, for Croesus was born to Alyattes of a Carian woman, but Pantaleon of an Ionian. And when Croesus had gained possession of the kingdom by the gift of his father, he put to death the man who opposed him, drawing him upon the carding-comb; and his property, which even before that time he had vowed to dedicate, he then offered in the manner mentioned to those shrines which have been named. About his votive offerings let it suffice to have said so much.

1.93

Of marvels to be recorded the land of Lydia has no great store as compared with other lands, excepting the gold-dust which is carried down from Tmolos; but one work it has to show which is larger far than any other except only those in Egypt and Babylon: for there is there the sepulchral monument of Alyattes the father of Croesus, of which the base is made of larger

vocabulary

ἀγοραῖος frequenting the market
ἀείνας ever-flowing
ἄνω (ἄ) accomplish, pass, waste;
 upwards, out to sea
γράμμα -τος (n, 3) writing, letter
ἐκδίδωμι hand over ~donate
Ἑλλην Greek
ἐνεργάζομαι make in; work in
ἕξ six ~hexagon
ἐξεργάζομαι accomplish; undo;
 destroy someone
εὖρος -εος (n, 3) width; (caps) the east
 wind
θηλυς female; (rare) abundant ~female
καταπορνεύω treat as a prostitute
κρηπίς (ι) boot; foundation
λίμνη lake, marsh, basin, sea ~limnic
μετρέω measure, traverse ~metric
μίν him, her, it
ὄρος boundary marker ~horizon

οὔρος fair wind; guardian; hill
παιδίσκη young girl, slave, prostitute
παραπλήσιος similar to
περίοδος picket, circuit
πλέθρον 30 meters or its square
 ~plethora
πορνεύω prostitute
προσδοκάω expect
σημα -τος (n, 3) mark, sign, grave
 mound ~semaphore
στάδιον 200 meters (pl also masc)
στάδιος (adj) standing upright, firm;
 (pl noun) 200 meters
συλλέγω collect, assemble ~legion
συνοικέω live together
φερνά dowry
χειρῶναξ artisan, engineer
χῶμα -τος (n, 3) mound of dirt
χωρίς separately; except, other than
 ~heir

κρηπὶς μὲν ἐστὶ λίθων μεγάλων, τὸ δὲ ἄλλο σῆμα χῶμα γῆς. ἐξεργάσαντο δέ μιν οἱ ἀγοραῖοι ἄνθρωποι καὶ οἱ χειρώνακτες καὶ αἱ ἐνεργαζόμεναι παιδίσκαι. οὗροι δὲ πέντε ἐόντες ἔτι καὶ ἐς ἐμὲ ἦσαν ἐπὶ τοῦ σήματος ἄνω, καὶ σφί γράμματα ἐνεκεκόλαπτο τὰ ἕκαστοι ἐξεργάσαντο, καὶ ἐφαίνετο μετρεόμενον τὸ τῶν παιδισκέων ἔργον ἐὼν μέγιστον. τοῦ γὰρ δὴ Λυδῶν δήμου αἱ θυγατέρες πορνεύονται πᾶσαι, συλλέγουσαι σφίσι φερνάς, ἐς ὃ ἂν συνοικήσωσι τοῦτο ποιέουσαι· ἐκδιδοῦσι δὲ αὐταὶ ἐωυτάς. ἡ μὲν δὴ περίοδος τοῦ σήματός εἰσὶ στάδιοι ἕξ καὶ δύο πλέθρα, τὸ δὲ εὖρος ἐστὶ πλέθρα τρία καὶ δέκα. λίμνη δὲ ἔχεται τοῦ σήματος μεγάλη, τὴν λέγουσι Λυδοὶ αἰίναον εἶναι· καλέεται δὲ αὕτη Γυγαίη. τοῦτο μὲν δὴ τοιοῦτο ἐστί.

1.94

Λυδοὶ δὲ νόμοισι¹ μὲν παραπλησίοισι χρέωνται καὶ Ἑλληνές, χωρὶς ἣ ὅτι τὰ θήλεα τέκνα καταπορνεύουσι,

¹ Beginning a section about Lydia and its people, and the origins of the Tyrsenians. He begins with a list of three unrelated thoughts.

|boot; foundation· ἡ λίθων μεγάλων, τὸ δὲ ἄλλο |mark, |mound of dirt
 γῆς. |accomplish; undo; μιν οἱ |frequenting |grave mound καὶ οἱ
 |destroy someone |the market
 |artisan, καὶ αἱ |make in; work in |young girl, slave, ἥροι δὲ
 |engineer |prostitute
 πέντε εὐόντες ἔτι καὶ ἐς ἐμὲ ἦσαν ἐπὶ τοῦ |mark, sign, ὡ,
 |grave mound
 καὶ σφί |writing, ἐνεκεκόλαπτο τὰ ἕκαστοι |accomplish; undo;
 |letter |destroy someone
 καὶ ἐφαίνετο |measure, τὸ τῶν |young girl, slave, ἥρων
 |traverse |prostitute
 ἐὼν μέγιστον. τοῦ γὰρ δὴ Λυδῶν δήμον αἱ θυγατέρες
 |prostitute πᾶσαι, |collect, σφίσι φερνάς, ἐς ὃ ἂν
 |assemble
 |live together τοῦτο ποιέουσιν· |hand over δὲ αὐταὶ ἐωντάς.
 ἡ μὲν δὲ |picket, τοῦ |mark, sign, ἡ στάδιοι ἕξ καὶ δύο
 |circuit |grave mound
 |30 meters· ὁρ· ἡ its |width; (caps) 30 me-· ῥία καὶ δέκα. |lake, marsh, basin,
 |square |the east wind |ters or its |sea
 δὲ ἔχεται τοῦ |mark, sign, ἡ αἰη, τὴν λέγουσι Λυδοὶ |ever-flowing
 |grave mound
 εἶναι· καλέεται δὲ αὕτη Γυγαίη. τοῦτο μὲν δὴ τοιοῦτο ἐστί.

1.94

Λυδοὶ δὲ νόμοισι¹ μὲν |similar to χρέωνται καὶ
 |Greek , |separately; except; |female; · (rare) |treat as a prostitute.
 |other than |abundant

¹ Beginning a section about Lydia and its people, and the origins of the Tyrsenians. He begins with a list of three unrelated thoughts.

stones and the rest of the monument is of earth piled up. And this was built by contributions of those who practised trade and of the artisans and the girls who plied their traffic there; and still there existed to my own time boundary-stones five in number erected upon the monument above, on which were carved inscriptions telling how much of the work was done by each class; and upon measurement it was found that the work of the girls was the greatest in amount. For the daughters of the common people in Lydia practice prostitution one and all, to gather for themselves dowries, continuing this until the time when they marry; and the girls give themselves away in marriage. Now the circuit of the monument is six furlongs and two hundred feet, and the breadth is thirteen hundred feet. And adjoining the monument is a great lake, which the Lydians say has a never-failing supply of water, and it is called the lake of Gyges. Such is the nature of this monument.

1.94

Now the Lydians have very nearly the same customs as the Hellenes, with the exception that they prostitute their female children; and they were the first

*vocabulary***ἄκος** ἄκεος (n, 3) cure, remedy**ἀποικίζω** send away, resettle

~economics

ἄργυρος silver, money ~Argentina**ἀστράγαλος** neck vertebra, die**διάγω** lead through; pass a time

~demagogue

δίζημαι seek ~zeal**εἶδος** -ους (n, 3) appearance, form

~-oid

Ἑλλην Greek

ἐξεύρεσις search, invention, discovery**ἐξεύρημα** invention, discovery**ἐξευρίσκω** find; discover ~eureka**ἐπιμηχανάομαι** plan for; devise

besides

εὖς good, brave, noble**κάπηλος** merchant**κόπτω** beat, cut, strike**κύβος** cube, die**λιμός** (i, f) famine**λιπαρέω** (i) persist**νόμισμα** -τος (n, 3) institution; coin**οἰκηιόω** adopt, adapt**ὄον** οὖ type of fruit**παιγνία** game, play**παίγνιον** game, toy**παίγνιος** playful**παίζω** play ~pediatrician**πεσσός** pebble, game piece**σιτέομαι** (i) eat ~parasite**σιτοδεία** (i) famine**σφαῖρα** ball

πρώτοι δὲ ἀνθρώπων τῶν ἡμεῖς ἴδμεν νόμισμα χρυσοῦ καὶ ἀργύρου κοψάμενοι ἐχρήσαντο, πρώτοι δὲ καὶ κάπηλοι ἐγένοντο.

φασὶ δὲ αὐτοὶ Λυδοὶ καὶ τὰς παιγνίας τὰς νῦν σφίσι τε καὶ Ἑλλήσι κατεστεώσας ἐωντῶν ἐξεύρημα γενέσθαι· ἅμα δὲ ταύτας τε ἐξευρεθῆναι παρὰ σφίσι λέγουσι καὶ Τυρσηνὴν ἀποικίσαι, ὧδε περὶ αὐτῶν λέγοντες. ἐπὶ Ἄττος τοῦ Μάνεω βασιλέος σιτοδείην ἰσχυρὴν ἀνὰ τὴν Λυδίην πᾶσαν γενέσθαι, καὶ τοὺς Λυδοὺς τέως μὲν διάγειν λιπαρέοντας, μετὰ δὲ ὥς οὐ παύεσθαι, ἅκεα δίξῃσθαι, ἄλλον δὲ ἄλλο ἐπιμηχανᾶσθαι αὐτῶν. ἐξευρεθῆναι δὴ ὧν τότε καὶ τῶν κύβων καὶ τῶν ἀστραγάλων καὶ τῆς σφαίρης καὶ τῶν ἀλλέων πασέων παιγνιέων τὰ εἶδεα, πλὴν πεσσῶν τούτων γὰρ ὧν τὴν ἐξέυρεσιν οὐκ οἰκηιοῦνται Λυδοί. ποιέειν δὲ ὧδε πρὸς τὸν λιμὸν ἐξευρόντας, τὴν μὲν ἐτέρην τῶν ἡμερέων¹ παίζειν πᾶσαν, ἵνα δὴ μὴ ζητέοιεν σιτία, τὴν δὲ ἐτέρην σιτέεσθαι παυομένους τῶν παιγνιέων. τοιούτω

¹ They alternate days.

πρῶτοι δὲ ἀνθρώπων τῶν ἡμεῖς ἴδμεν |institution; coin ὕ και
 ἀργύρου |beat, cut, strike ᾤήσαντο, πρῶτοι δὲ και |merchant
 ἐγένοντο.

φασὶ δὲ αὐτοὶ Λυδοὶ και τὰς παιγνίας τὰς νῦν σφίσι τε και
 |Greek κατεστεώσας ἐωντῶν |invention, γενέσθαι· ἅμα δὲ
 |discovery
 ταύτας τε |find; discover παρὰ σφίσι λέγουσι και Τυρσηνίην
 |send away, resettlement περὶ αὐτῶν λέγοντες. ἐπὶ Ἄττος τοῦ
 Μάνεω βασιλέος |famine ἰσχυρὴν ἀνὰ τὴν Λυδίην πᾶσαν
 γενέσθαι, και τοὺς Λυδοὺς τέως μὲν |lead |persist
 |through;
 μετὰ δὲ ὥς οὐ παύεσθαι, |cure, |seek |pass
 |remedy |time a ἄλλον δὲ ἄλλο
 |plan for; devise αὐτῶν. |find; discover δὴ ὦν τότε και τῶν
 |besides
 κύβων και τῶν |neck vertebra, die... ἰ τῆς |ball και τῶν
 ἀλλέων πασέων παιγνιέων τὰ |form , πλὴν |pebble τούτων
 γὰρ ὦν τὴν |search, invention, |adopt, adapt Λυδοί. ποιέειν
 |discovery
 δὲ ὧδε πρὸς τὸν |famine |find;
 |discover , τὴν μὲν ἐτέρην τῶν
 ἡμερέων¹ |play πᾶσαν, ἵνα δὴ μὴ ζητέοιεν σιτία, τὴν δὲ
 ἐτέρην σιτέεσθαι πανομένους τῶν παιγνιέων. τοιούτῳ

¹ They alternate days.

of men, so far as we know, who struck and used coin of gold or silver; and also they were the first retail-traders.

And the Lydians themselves say that the games which are now in use among them and among the Hellenes were also their invention. These they say were invented among them at the same time as they colonised Tyrnesia, and this is the account they give of them:— In the reign of Atys the son of Manes their king there came to be a grievous dearth over the whole of Lydia; and the Lydians for a time continued to endure it, but afterwards, as it did not cease, they sought for remedies; and one devised one thing and another of them devised another thing. And then were discovered, they say, the ways of playing with the dice and the knucklebones and the ball, and all the other games excepting draughts (for the discovery of this last is not claimed by the Lydians). These games they invented as a resource against the famine, and thus they used to do:— on one of the days they would play games all the time in order that they might not feel the want of food, and on the next they ceased

vocabulary

ἀνίημι urge, impel; release ~jet
ἀπαλλάσσω free from, remove; be freed, depart
ἀποπλέω sail away ~float
βιάζω use force on, violate
διάγω lead through; pass a time ~demagogue
διαιρέω divide, distinguish, distribute
δουλόω enslave
εἰστίθημι put in
ἐνιδρύω establish
ἔξιμι go forth; is possible ~ion
ἐξίημι send forth, allow forth ~jet
ἔξοδος (f) leaving, way out

ἐπίπλοος sailing against; aboard
ἐπωνύμιος called, named
ζήτησις -εως (f) search, inquiry
κληρώω cast lots, assign
λαγχάνω be allotted; (esp. λελα- forms) allot; receive
μετονομάζω rename
μηχανάομαι build, contrive ~mechanism
παραμείβω pass by ~amoeba
Πέρσης Persian
προστάσσω post at, attach to, command
χρηστός useful; brave, worthy

τρόπῳ διάγειν ἐπ' ἕτεα δυῶν δέοντα εἴκοσι.

ἐπεῖτε δὲ οὐκ ἀνιέναι τὸ κακὸν ἀλλ' ἔτι ἐπὶ μᾶλλον
βιάζεσθαι οὕτω δὴ τὸν βασιλέα αὐτῶν δύο μοίρας
διελόντα Λυδῶν πάντων κληρῶσαι τὴν μὲν ἐπὶ μόνη
τὴν δὲ ἐπὶ ἐξόδῳ ἐκ τῆς χώρας, καὶ ἐπὶ μὲν τῇ μένειν
αὐτοῦ λαγχανούσῃ τῶν μοιρέων ἑωυτὸν τὸν βασιλέα
προστάσσειν, ἐπὶ δὲ τῇ ἀπαλλασσομένη τὸν ἑωυτοῦ
παῖδα, τῷ οὖνομα εἶναι Τυρσηνόν. λαχόντας δὲ αὐτῶν
τοὺς ἐτέρους ἐξιέναι ἐκ τῆς χώρας καταβῆναι ἐς Σμύρνην
καὶ μηχανήσασθαι πλοῖα, ἐς τὰ ἐσθεμένους τὰ πάντα
ὅσα σφι ἦν χρηστὰ ἐπίπλοα, ἀποπλέειν κατὰ βίου τε
καὶ γῆς ζήτησιν, ἐς ὃ ἔθνεα πολλὰ παραμειψαμένους
ἀπικέσθαι ἐς Ὀμβρικούς, ἔνθα σφέας ἐνιδρύσασθαι πόλις
καὶ οἰκέειν τὸ μέχρι τοῦδε. ἀντὶ δὲ Λυδῶν μετονομασθῆναι
αὐτοὺς ἐπὶ τοῦ βασιλέως τοῦ παιδός, ὅς σφας ἀνήγαγε,
ἐπὶ τούτου τὴν ἐπωνυμίην ποιευμένους ὀνομασθῆναι
Τυρσηνοὺς. Λυδοὶ μὲν δὴ ὑπὸ Πέρσῃσι ἐδεδούλωντο.

τρόπῳ |lead through; |pass a time
|pass a time

ἐπεῖτε δὲ οὐκ |urge, τὸ κακὸν ἀλλ' ἔτι ἐπὶ μάλλον
|impel;
|release
|βιάζω?: use force on; or τὸν βασιλέα αὐτῶν δύο μοίρας
|βιάζω?: use force on

|divide, |distinguish, |cast lots, assign, |μεν ἐπὶ μόνῃ
|guish, distribute

τὴν δὲ ἐπὶ |leaving, way out χώρας, καὶ ἐπὶ μὲν τῇ μένειν

αὐτοῦ |be allotted; (esp. λαλῶν- |be freed, depart
|forms) allot; receive

|post at, attach, ἐπὶ δὲ τῇ |free from, remove; τὸν ἐαυτοῦ
|to, command |be freed, depart

παῖδα, τῷ οὐνομα εἶναι Τυρσηνόν. |be allotted; (esp. λαλῶν- |be allotted; (esp. λαλῶν- forms) allot;
|receive

τοὺς ἑτέρους ἐξίεναι ἐκ τῆς χώρας καταβῆναι ἐς Σμύρνην

καὶ |build, contrive πλοῖα, ἐς τὰ |put in τὰ πάντα

ὅσα σφι ἦν |useful; |sailing, |sail away κατὰ βίου τε
|brave, |against;
|worthy |aboard

καὶ γῆς |search, |ἐς ὃ εὐνεα πολλὰ |pass by
|inquiry

ἀπικέσθαι ἐς Ὀμβρικούς, ἔνθα σφέας |establish πόλις

καὶ οἰκέειν τὸ μέχρι τοῦδε. ἀντὶ δὲ Λυδῶν |rename

αὐτοὺς ἐπὶ τοῦ βασιλέως τοῦ παιδός, ὅς σφέας ἀνήγαγε,

ἐπὶ τούτου τὴν |called, ποιευμένους ὀνομασθῆναι
|named

Τυρσηνούς. Λυδοὶ μὲν δὴ ὑπὸ Πέρσῃσι |enslave

from their games and had food: and thus they went on for eighteen years.

As however the evil did not slacken but pressed upon them ever more and more, therefore their king divided the whole Lydian people into two parts, and he appointed by lot one part to remain and the other to go forth from the land; and the king appointed himself to be over that one of the parts which had the lot to stay in the land, and his son to be over that which was departing; and the name of his son was Tyrsenos. So the one party of them, having obtained the lot to go forth from the land, went down to the sea at Smyrna and built ships for themselves, wherein they placed all the movable goods which they had and sailed away to seek for means of living and a land to dwell in; until after passing by many nations they came at last to the land of the Ombricans, and there they founded cities and dwell up to the present time: and changing their name they were called after the king's son who led them out from home, not Lydians but Tyrsenians, taking the name from him.

vocabulary

ἄνω (ἄ) accomplish, pass, waste;
 upwards, out to sea
 ἀπωθέω repel, reject
 αὐτόνομος autonomous
 δουλοσύνη slavery
 ἐλευθερία freedom
 ἐλευθερόω set free
 ἐνθεῦτεν thence
 εὖς good, brave, noble
 ἡπειρος (f) mainland, continent

καθαιρέω take down, close ~heresy
 μετεξέτεροι (+gen) some ones of
 ὄον οὓ type of fruit
 πεντακόσιοι 500
 περιέρχομαι go around; come next to
 Πέρσης Persian
 προσδοκάω expect
 σεμνών exalt
 τριφάσιος triple
 τυραννίς -δος (f) tyranny

1.95

ἐπιδίξῃται δὲ δὴ τὸ ἐνθεῦτεν ἡμῖν ὁ λόγος τόν τε Κῦρον
 ὅστις ἐὼν τὴν Κροίσου ἀρχὴν κατεῖλε, καὶ τοὺς Πέρσας
 ὅτεω τρόπῳ ἡγήσαντο τῆς Ἀσίης. ὥς ὦν Περσέων
 μετεξέτεροι λέγουσι, οἱ μὴ βουλόμενοι σεμνοῦν τὰ περὶ
 Κῦρον ἀλλὰ τὸν ἐόντα λέγειν λόγον, κατὰ ταῦτα γράψω,
 ἐπιστάμενος περὶ Κύρου καὶ τριφασίας ἄλλας λόγων
 ὁδοὺς φῆναι.

Ἀσσυρίων ἀρχόντων τῆς ἄνω Ἀσίης ἐπ' ἔτεα εἴκοσι
 καὶ πεντακόσια, πρῶτοι ἀπ' αὐτῶν Μῆδοι ἤρξαντο
 ἀπίστασθαι, καὶ κως οὗτοι περὶ τῆς ἐλευθερίας
 μαχεσάμενοι τοῖσι Ἀσσυρίοισι ἐγένοντο ἄνδρες ἀγαθοί,
 καὶ ἀπωσάμενοι τὴν δουλοσύνην ἐλευθερώθησαν. μετὰ δὲ
 τούτους καὶ τὰ ἄλλα ἔθνεα ἐποίεε τὸντὸ τοῖσι Μήδοισι.

1.96

ἐόντων δὲ αὐτονόμων πάντων ἀνὰ τὴν ἡπειρον, ὧδε αὖτις
 εἰς τυραννίδα περιῆλθον. ἀνὴρ ἐν τοῖσι Μήδοισι

1.95

ἐπιδίξεται δὲ δὴ τὸ |thence ἡμῖν ὁ λόγος τὸν τε Κῦρον
 ὅστις ἐὼν τὴν Κροίσου ἀρχὴν |take down, close ὑς Πέρσας
 ὅτεω τρόπῳ ἡγήσαντο τῆς Ἀσίης. ὥς ὦν Περσέων
 |(+gen) some ones, of η, οἱ μὴ βουλόμενοι |exalt τὰ περὶ
 Κῦρον ἀλλὰ τὸν ἐόντα λέγειν λόγον, κατὰ ταῦτα γράψω,
 ἐπιστάμενος περὶ Κύρου καὶ |triple ἄλλας λόγων
 ὁδοὺς φῆναι.

Ἀσσυρίων ἀρχόντων τῆς ἄνω Ἀσίης ἐπ' ἕτα εἴκοσι
 καὶ |500 , πρῶτοι ἀπ' αὐτῶν Μῆδοι ἤρξαντο
 ἀπίστασθαι, καὶ κως οὗτοι περὶ τῆς ἐλευθερίας
 μαχεσάμενοι τοῖσι Ἀσσυρίοισι ἐγένοντο ἄνδρες ἀγαθοί,
 καὶ |repel, reject τὴν |slavery |set free . μετὰ δὲ
 τούτους καὶ τὰ ἄλλα ἔθνεα ἐποίηε τῶντ' οὗτοι Μήδοισι.

1.96

ἐόντων δὲ |autonomous πάντων ἀνὰ τὴν |mainland, ὅδε αὖτις
 |continent
 ἐς |tyranny |go around; ἀνὴρ ἐν τοῖσι Μήδοισι
 |come next to

1.95

The Lydians then had been made subject to the Persians as I say, and after this our history proceeds to inquire about Cyrus, who he was that destroyed the empire of Croesus, and about the Persians, in what manner they obtained the lead of Asia. Following then the report of some of the Persians,— those I mean who do not desire to glorify the history of Cyrus but to speak that which is in fact true,— according to their report, I say, I shall write; but I could set forth also the other forms of the story in three several ways.

The Assyrians ruled Upper Asia for five hundred and twenty years, and from them the Medes were the first who made revolt. These having fought for their freedom with the Assyrians proved themselves good men, and thus they pushed off the yoke of slavery from themselves and were set free; and after them the other nations also did the same as the Medes: and when all on the continent were thus independent, they returned again to despotic rule as follows:—

1.96

There appeared among the Medes a man of great ability whose name was Deïokes, and this man was the son of

*vocabulary***ἀνομία** lawlessness**ἀσκέω** work on**δικάζω** judge**δόκιμος** trustworthy; excellent**ἔπαινος** (noun) praise**ἐπιτρέπω** entrust, decide, allow

~trophy

ἐπιφοιτέω come habitually**ἔραμαι** love, aor. fall in love; long for,
covet ~erotic**ἡδομαι** be pleased, enjoy ~hedonism**κώμη** village**μίν** him, her, it**μνάομαι** be mindful of, woo, take for
sex ~mnemonic**περιπίπτω** embrace; fall in with**πρόθυμος** (ὑ) willing, eager ~fume**σοφός** skilled, clever, wise**τοιόσδε** such**τυραννίς** -δος (f) tyranny**φοιτάω** go back and forth

ἐγένετο σοφὸς τῷ οὐνόμα ἦν Δηϊόκης, παῖς δ' ἦν Φραόρτεω. οὗτος ὁ Δηϊόκης ἐρασθεὶς τυραννίδος ἐποίεε τοιάδε. κατοικημένων τῶν Μήδων κατὰ κώμας, ἐν τῇ ἐωντοῦ ἐὼν καὶ πρότερον δόκιμος καὶ μᾶλλον τι καὶ προθυμότερον δικαιοσύνην ἐπιθέμενος ἤσκει· καὶ ταῦτα μέντοι ἐούσης ἀνομίης πολλῆς ἀνὰ πᾶσαν τὴν Μηδικὴν ἐποίεε, ἐπιστάμενος ὅτι τῷ δικαίῳ τὸ ἄδικον πολέμιον ἐστί. οἱ δ' ἐκ τῆς αὐτῆς κώμας Μῆδοι ὀρώντες αὐτοῦ τοὺς τρόπους δικαστὴν μιν ἐωντῶν αἰρέοντο. ὁ δὲ δῆ, οἷα μνώμενος ἀρχήν, ἰθύς τε καὶ δίκαιος ἦν, ποιέων τε ταῦτα ἔπαινον εἶχε οὐκ ὀλίγον πρὸς τῶν πολιητέων, οὕτω ὥστε πυνθανόμενοι οἱ ἐν τῇσι ἄλλησι κώμησι ὡς Δηϊόκης εἶη ἀνὴρ μῶνος κατὰ τὸ ὀρθὸν δικάζων, πρότερον περιπίπτοντες ἀδίκουσι γνώμησι, τότε ἐπέιτε ἤκουσαν ἄσμενοι, ἐφοίτων παρὰ τὸν Δηϊόκεα καὶ αὐτοὶ δικασόμενοι, τέλος δὲ οὐδενὶ ἄλλω ἐπετράποντο.

1.97

πλεῖνος δὲ αἰεὶ γινομένου τοῦ ἐπιφουτέοντος, οἷα

ἐγένετο |skilled, clever, wise οὖνομα ἦν Δηϊόκης, παῖς δ' ἦν
 Φραόρτεω. οὗτος ὁ Δηϊόκης |love; longtyranny ἐποίεε
 |such . κατοικημένων τῶν Μήδων κατὰ |village , ἐν τῇ
 ἑωυτοῦ ἐὼν καὶ πρότερον |trustworthy; ἰ μᾶλλον τι καὶ
 |willing, eager δικαιοσύνην ἐπιθέμενος |work on :αὶ ταῦτα
 μέντοι εὐούσης ἀνομίης πολλῆς ἀνὰ πᾶσαν τὴν Μηδικὴν
 ἐποίεε, ἐπιστάμενος ὅτι τῷ δικαίῳ τὸ ἄδικον πολέμιον
 ἐστί. οἱ δ' ἐκ τῆς αὐτῆς |village Μῆδοι ὀρώντες αὐτοῦ
 τοὺς τρόπους δικαστὴν μιν ἑωυτῶν αἰρέοντο. ὁ δὲ δῆ,
 οἷα |be mindful of, woo, take for sex ἦν, ἰθύς τε καὶ δίκαιος ἦν, ποιέων
 τε ταῦτα |(noun) praise οὐκ ὀλίγον πρὸς τῶν ποληιτέων,
 οὕτω ὥστε πυνθανόμενοι οἱ ἐν τῇσι ἄλλησι |village
 ὡς Δηϊόκης εἶη ἀνὴρ μούνος κατὰ τὸ ὀρθὸν |judge ,
 πρότερον |embrace; fall in with ἀδίκοις γνώμῃσι, τότε ἐπέιτε
 ἤκουσαν |be pleased, go back and forth ὃν Δηϊόκεα καὶ αὐτοὶ
 |judge , τέλος δὲ οὐδενὶ ἄλλῳ |entrust, decide, allow

1.97

πλεῦνος δὲ αἰεὶ γινομένου τοῦ |come habitually , οἷα

Phraortes. This Deïokes, having formed a desire for despotic power, did thus:—whereas the Medes dwelt in separate villages, he, being even before that time of great repute in his own village, set himself to practise just dealing much more and with greater zeal than before; and this he did although there was much lawlessness throughout the whole of Media, and although he knew that injustice is ever at feud with justice. And the Medes of the same village, seeing his manners, chose him for their judge. So he, since he was aiming at power, was upright and just, and doing thus he had no little praise from his fellow-citizens, insomuch that those of the other villages learning that Deïokes was a man who more than all others gave decision rightly, whereas before this they had been wont to suffer from unjust judgments, themselves also when they heard it came gladly to Deïokes to have their causes determined, and at last they trusted the business to no one else.

1.97

Then, as more and more continually kept coming to him, because men

*vocabulary***ἀνάκειμαι** be dedicated, be put up**ἀνάστατος** driven out, ruined**ἀνομία** lawlessness**ἄρπαγή** seizure; rape**βασιλεύω** be king**δικάζω** judge**διχεῖν** throw, cast, strike**δίκω** throw, cast, strike**ἐξαμελέω** be utterly careless of**εὐνομέομαι** be well ordered**εὖς** good, brave, noble**καθήκω** come down, (a day) to fall,

arrive; be proper

κώμη village**λυσιτελέω** (ῶ) be useful**ὄον** οὖ type of fruit**πέλας** near, close**προβάλλω** throw before; propose;

(mp) pretend, abandon, nominate

~ballistic

προκαθίζω keep settling forward ~sit**συλλέγω** collect, assemble ~legion**χωρέω** withdraw, give way to (+dat)

~heir

πυνθανομένων τὰς δίκας ἀποβαίνειν κατὰ τὸ ἐόν, γνούς
 ὁ Δηϊόκης ἐς ἑωυτὸν πᾶν ἀνακείμενον οὔτε κατίζειν¹ ἔτι
 ἤθελε ἔνθα περ πρότερον προκατίζων ἐδίκαζε, οὔτ' ἔφη
 δίκαν² ἔτι· οὐ γὰρ οἱ λυσιτελέειν τῶν ἑωυτοῦ ἐξημεληκότα
 τοῖσι πέλας δι' ἡμέρης δικάζειν. εὐούσης ὦν ἀρπαγῆς καὶ
 ἀνομίης ἔτι πολλῶ μᾶλλον ἀνὰ τὰς κόμας ἢ πρότερον
 ἦν, συνελέχθησαν οἱ Μῆδοι ἐς τῶντὸ καὶ ἐδίδοσαν σφίσι
 λόγον, λέγοντες περὶ τῶν κατηκόντων. ὥς δ' ἐγὼ δοκέω,
 μάλιστα ἔλεγον οἱ τοῦ Δηϊόκεω φίλοι «οὐ γὰρ δὴ τρόπῳ
 τῷ παρεόντι χρεώμενοι δυνατοὶ εἶμὲν οἰκέειν τὴν χώραν,
 φέρε στήσωμεν ἡμέων αὐτῶν βασιλέα· καὶ οὕτω ἢ τε
 χωρῇ εὐνομήσεται καὶ αὐτοὶ πρὸς ἔργα τρεψόμεθα, οὐδὲ
 ὑπ' ἀνομίης ἀνάστατοι ἐσόμεθα.» ταῦτά κη λέγοντες
 πείθουσι ἑωυτοὺς βασιλεύεσθαι.

1.98

αὐτίκα δὲ προβαλλομένων³ ὄντινα στήσονται βασιλέα, ὁ
 Δηϊόκης ἦν πολλὸς ὑπὸ παντὸς ἀνδρὸς

¹ convene hearings ² give rulings ³ having raised the issue of

πυνθανομένων τὰς δίκας ἀποβαίνειν κατὰ τὸ εἶν, γνοὺς
 ὁ Δηϊόκης ἐς ἐωυτὸν πᾶν |be dedicated, οὔτε κατίζειν¹ ἔτι
 |be put up
 ἤθελε ἔνθα περ πρότερον |keep settling|judge , οὔτ' ἔφη
 |forward
 δίκαν² ἔτι· οὐ γὰρ οἱ |be useful τῶν ἐωυτοῦ |be utterly care-
 |less of
 τοῖσι |near, δι' ἡμέρης |judge . εὐούσης ὧν |seizure; rape ἰ
 |close
 ἀνομίας ἔτι πολλῶ μᾶλλον ἀνὰ τὰς |village ἢ πρότερον
 ἦν, |collect, assemble οἱ Μῆδοι ἐς τῶντὸ καὶ ἐδίδουσαν σφίσι
 λόγον, λέγοντες περὶ τῶν |come down, (a day) τὸ ἰγὼ δοκέω,
 |fall, arrive; be proper
 |very ἔλεγον οἱ τοῦ Δηϊόκεω φίλοι «οὐ γὰρ δὴ τρόπῳ
 τῷ παρεόντι χρεώμενοι δυνατοὶ εἰμὲν οἰκέειν τὴν χώραν,
 φέρε στήσωμεν ἡμέων αὐτῶν βασιλέα· καὶ οὕτω ἢ τε
 |with- |be well ordered ἢ αὐτοὶ πρὸς ἔργα τρεψόμεθα, οὐδὲ
 |draw,
 |give
 |way to
 |(+dat)
 ἀνομίας |driven out, ruined ἔθα.» ταῦτά κη λέγοντες
 πείθουσι ἐωυτοὺς |be king

1.98

αὐτίκα δὲ |throw before; propose³; (mp) πτήσονται βασιλέα, ὁ
 |pretend, abandon, nominate
 Δηϊόκης ἦν πολλὸς ὑπὸ παντὸς ἀνδρὸς

¹ convene hearings ² give rulings ³ having raised the issue of

learnt that his decisions proved to be according to the truth, Deïokes perceiving that everything was referred to himself would no longer sit in the place where he used formerly to sit in public to determine causes, and said that he would determine causes no more, for it was not profitable for him to neglect his own affairs and to determine causes for his neighbours all through the day. So then, since robbery and lawlessness prevailed even much more in the villages than they did before, the Medes having assembled together in one place considered with one another and spoke about the state in which they were: and I suppose the friends of Deïokes spoke much to this effect: “Seeing that we are not able to dwell in the land under the present order of things, let us set up a king from among ourselves, and thus the land will be well governed and we ourselves shall turn to labour, and shall not be ruined by lawlessness.” By some such words as these they persuaded themselves to have a king.

1.98

And when they straightway proposed the question whom they should set up to be king, Deïokes was

vocabulary

αἰνέω praise, assent, acquiesce in
 δορυφόρος spear-bearer
 ἐνίστημι install; threaten; block
 ἐπιτηδεύω practice, pursue
 ἐπιτρέπω entrust, decide, allow
 ~trophy
 καρτερός strong, staunch
 καταινέω agree, promise, grant
 καταλέγω relate in detail, choose;
 enroll ~legion
 κολωνός hill, mound
 κρατύνω strengthen

κύκλος circle, wheel ~cycle
 μηχανάομαι build, contrive
 ~mechanism
 οἰκοδομέω build, build a house
 περιστέλλω lay out
 πόλισμα buildings of a city
 προβάλλω throw before; propose;
 (mp) pretend, abandon, nominate
 ~ballistic
 προμαχεών breastwork, battlement
 συμμαχέω be an ally
 συνάπας (αἶ) all together

καὶ προβαλλόμενος¹ καὶ αἰνεόμενος, ἐς ὃ τοῦτον²
καταινέουσι βασιλέα σφίσι εἶναι. ὃ δ' ἐκέλευε αὐτοὺς
οἰκία τε ἐωυτῷ ἄξια τῆς βασιληίης οἰκοδομῆσαι καὶ
κρατῦναι αὐτὸν δορυφόροις· ποιεῦσι δὴ ταῦτα οἱ Μῆδοι.
οἰκοδομέουσιν τε γὰρ αὐτῷ οἰκία μεγάλα τε καὶ ἰσχυρά,
ἵνα αὐτὸς ἔφρασε τῆς χώρας, καὶ δορυφόρους αὐτῷ
ἐπιτρέπουσι ἐκ πάντων Μήδων καταλέξασθαι.

ὁ δὲ ὡς ἔσχε τὴν ἀρχήν, τοὺς Μήδους ἠνάγκασε ἐν
πόλισμα ποιήσασθαι καὶ τοῦτο περιστέλλοντας τῶν
ἄλλων ἦσσαν ἐπιμέλεσθαι. πειθομένων δὲ καὶ ταῦτα
τῶν Μήδων οἰκοδομέει τείχεα μεγάλα τε καὶ καρτερά
ταῦτα τὰ νῦν Ἀγβάτανα κέκληται, ἕτερον ἐτέρῳ κύκλῳ
ἐνεστεῶτα. μεμηχάνηται δὲ οὕτω τοῦτο τὸ τεῖχος ὥστε
ὁ ἕτερος τοῦ ἐτέρου κύκλος τοῖσι προμαχεῶσι μούνοισι
ἐστι ὑψηλότερος. τὸ μὲν κού τι καὶ τὸ χωρίον συμμαχέει³
κολωνὸς ἐὼν ὥστε τοιοῦτο εἶναι, τὸ δὲ καὶ μᾶλλον τι
ἐπετηδεύθη. κύκλων δ' ἐόντων τῶν συναπάντων ἐπτά,
ἐν

¹ nominated ² until ... ³ the hill

καὶ ¹throw before; propose; (mp)|praise, pretend, abandon, nominate|assent, ἐς ὃ τοῦτον²
 |agree, promise, grant βασιλέα σφίσι εἶναι. ὃ δ' ἐκέλευε αὐτοὺς
 οἰκία τε ἐωυτῷ ἄξια τῆς βασιληίης |build, build a |house καὶ
 |strengthen αὐτὸν |spear-brearing ποιεῦσι δὴ ταῦτα οἱ Μῆδοι.
 |build, build a τε γὰρ αὐτῷ οἰκία μεγάλα τε καὶ ἰσχυρά,
 |house
 ἵνα αὐτὸς ἔφρασε τῆς χώρας, καὶ |spear-brearing αὐτῷ
 |entrust, de- ἐκ πάντων Μήδων |relate in detail, |cide, allow |choose; enroll
 ὁ δὲ ὥς ἔσχε τὴν ἀρχήν, τοὺς Μήδους ἠνάγκασε ἐν
 |buildings of a city ἵσθαι καὶ τοῦτο |lay out τῶν
 ἄλλων ἥσσον ἐπιμέλестhai. πειθομένων δὲ καὶ ταῦτα
 τῶν Μήδων |build, build τείχεα μεγάλα τε καὶ |strong, |a house |staunch
 ταῦτα τὰ νῦν Ἀγβάτανα κέκληται, ἕτερον ἑτέρῳ |circle, |wheel
 |install; |build, contrive δὲ οὕτω τοῦτο τὸ τεῖχος ὥστε
 |threaten; block
 ὁ ἕτερος τοῦ ἑτέρου |circle, τοῖσι |breastwork, μούνουσι
 |wheel |battlement
 ἐστι ὑψηλότερος. τὸ μὲν κού τι καὶ τὸ χωρίον |be an ally ³
 |hill, ἐὼν ὥστε τοιοῦτο εἶναι, τὸ δὲ καὶ μαλλόν τι
 |mound
 |practice, |circle, δ' ἐόντων τῶν συναπάντων ἐπτά,
 |pursue |wheel
 ἐν

¹ nominated ² until ... ³ the hill

much put forward and commended by every one, until at last they agreed that he should be their king. And he bade them build for him a palace worthy of the royal dignity and strengthen him with a guard of spearmen. And the Medes did so: for they built him a large and strong palace in that part of the land which he told them, and they allowed him to select spearmen from all the Medes.

And when he had obtained the rule over them, he compelled the Medes to make one fortified city and pay chief attention to this, having less regard to the other cities. And as the Medes obeyed him in this also, he built large and strong walls, those which are now called Agbatana, standing in circles one within the other. And this wall is so contrived that one circle is higher than the next by the height of the battlements alone. And to some extent, I suppose, the nature of the ground, seeing that it is on a hill, assists towards this end; but much more was it produced by art, since the circles are in all seven

*vocabulary***αἰσχρός** shameful**βασιλῆιος** kingly**γελάω** laugh, smile, laugh at**εἴσειμι** go in; come in range; come to mind ~ion**εἰσίημι** (mid) speed to ~jet**ἔνειμι** be in ~ion**θησαυρός** treasury ~treasure**καταχρυσόω** (ῶ) gild**κυάνεος** dark ~cyan**κύκλος** circle, wheel ~cycle**κυκλόω** circle, encircle**μέγαθος** tall, big (person)**οἰκοδομέω** build, build a house**πέμπτος** fifth ~pentagon**πέριξ** all around**προμαχεών** breastwork, battlement**πτύω** (ῶ) spit out**σανδράκινος** orange in color**σεμνύνω** exalt**τειχέω** build**τελευταῖος** last, final**τέταρτος** fourth ~trapezoid**φάρμακον** drug, potion ~pharmacy**φοινίκεος** (ι) purple, red

δὴ τῷ τελευταίῳ τὰ βασιλῆα ἔνεστι καὶ οἱ θησαυροί. τὸ δ' αὐτῶν μέγιστον ἐστὶ τείχος κατὰ τὸν Ἀθηνέων κύκλον μάλιστά κη τὸ μέγαθος. τοῦ μὲν δὴ πρώτου κύκλου οἱ προμαχεῶνες εἰσὶ λευκοί, τοῦ δὲ δευτέρου μέλανες, τρίτου δὲ κύκλου φοινίκεοι, τετάρτου δὲ κυάνεοι, πέμπτου δὲ σανδαράκινοι. οὕτω τῶν πέντε κύκλων οἱ προμαχεῶνες ἡνθισμένοι εἰσὶ φαρμάκοισι· δύο δὲ οἱ τελευταῖοι εἰσὶ ὃ μὲν καταργυρωμένους ὃ δὲ κατακεχρυσωμένους ἔχων τοὺς προμαχεῶνας.

1.99

ταῦτα μὲν δὴ ὁ Δηϊόκης ἑωυτῷ τε ἐτείχεε καὶ περὶ τὰ ἑωυτοῦ οἰκία, τὸν δὲ ἄλλον δῆμον πέριξ ἐκέλευε τὸ τείχος οἰκέειν. οἰκοδομηθέντων δὲ πάντων κόσμον τόνδε Δηϊόκης πρῶτος ἐστὶ ὁ καταστησάμενος, μήτε ἐσιέναι παρὰ βασιλέα μηδένα, δι' ἀγγέλων δὲ πάντα χρᾶσθαι, ὀρᾶσθαι τε βασιλέα ὑπὸ μηδενός, πρὸς τε τούτοις ἔτι γελᾶν τε καὶ ἀντίον πτύειν καὶ ἅπασιν εἶναι τοῦτό γε αἰσχρόν. ταῦτα δὲ περὶ ἑωυτὸν ἐσέμνυνε τῶνδε εἵνεκεν,

δὴ τῷ |last, final τὰ |kingly |be in καὶ οἱ |treasury . τὸ

δ' αὐτῶν μέγιστον ἐστὶ τείχος κατὰ τὸν Ἀθηνέων |circle,
|wheel

μάλιστά κη τὸ |tall, big . τοῦ μὲν δὴ πρώτου κύκλου οἱ

|breastwork, bat- εἰςὶ λευκοί, τοῦ δὲ δευτέρου μέλανες, τρίτου
|tment

δὲ κύκλου |purple, red |fourth δὲ |dark , |fifth δὲ

|orange in color . οὕτω τῶν πέντε |circle, οἱ |breastwork, bat-
|wheel |tment

ἡνθισμένοι εἰςὶ φαρμάκοισι· δύο δὲ οἱ |last, final εἰςὶ ὃ μὲν

καταργυρωμένους ὁ δὲ |gild ἔχων τοὺς

|breastwork, bat-
|tment

1.99

ταῦτα μὲν δὴ ὁ Δηϊόκης ἐωυτῷ τε |build καὶ περὶ

τὰ ἐωυτοῦ οἰκία, τὸν δὲ ἄλλον δῆμον |all around· ἔλεγε τὸ

τείχος οἰκέειν. |build, build a δὲ πάντων κόσμον τόνδε
|house

Δηϊόκης πρώτος ἐστὶ ὁ καταστησάμενος, μήτε ἐσιέναι

παρὰ βασιλέα μηδένα, δι' ἀγγέλων δὲ πάντα χρᾶσθαι,

ὀρᾶσθαι τε βασιλέα ὑπὸ μηδενός, πρὸς τε τούτοις ἔτι

|laugh, τε καὶ ἀντίον |spit out καὶ ἅπασιν εἶναι τοῦτό γε
|smile

|shameful . ταῦτα δὲ περὶ ἐωυτὸν |exalt τῶνδε εἵνεκεν,

in number. And within the last circle are the royal palace and the treasure-houses. The largest of these walls is in size about equal to the circuit of the wall round Athens; and of the first circle the battlements are white, of the second black, of the third crimson, of the fourth blue, of the fifth red: thus are the battlements of all the circles coloured with various tints, and the two last have their battlements one of them overlaid with silver and the other with gold.

1.99

These walls then Deïokes built for himself and round his own palace, and the people he commanded to dwell round about the wall. And after all was built, Deïokes established the rule, which he was the first to establish, ordaining that none should enter into the presence of the king, but that they deal with him always through messengers; and that the king should be seen by no one; and moreover that to laugh or to spit in his presence is unseemly, and this last for every one without exception. Now he surrounded himself with this state to the end that

vocabulary

ἀδίκημα -τος (n, 3) wrong, misdeed
ἀνδραγαθία bravery
διακοσμέω marshal ~cosmos
διακρίνω (ι) separate, sort ~critic
εἰσπέμπω send in
εἰσφέρω carry into, carry along ~bear
ἐπιβουλεύω plot, plan, harm
 ~volunteer
ἑτεροῖος different; diverse
κατάσκοπος spy, inspector
κατήκοος hearing; obedient

κοσμέω marshal, array ~cosmos
κρατύνω strengthen
λυπέω (ῥ) annoy, distress
μεταπέμπω send; (mid) summon
 ~pomp
ὁμηλικίς -κος (m) of the same age
σύντροφος fellow; habitual
συστρέφω get together; condense
τοσόσδε this much
τυραννίς -δος (f) tyranny
ὕβριζω insult, treat outrageously
φλαῦρος trifling

ὅκως ἂν μὴ ὀρώντες οἱ ὀμήλικες, ἐόντες σύντροφοί τε
ἐκείνῳ καὶ οἰκίῃς οὐ φλαυροτέρῃς οὐδὲ ἐς ἀνδραγαθίην
λειπόμενοι, λυπεοῖατο καὶ ἐπιβουλεύοιεν, ἀλλ' ἑτεροῖός
σφι δοκέοι εἶναι μὴ ὀρώσι.

1.100

ἐπεῖτε δὲ ταῦτα διεκόσμησε καὶ ἐκράτυνε ἑωυτὸν τῇ
τυραννίδι, ἦν τὸ δίκαιον φυλάσσων χαλεπός· καὶ τὰς
τε δίκας γράφοντες ἔσω παρ' ἐκείνων ἐσπέμπεσκον,
καὶ ἐκεῖνος διακρίνων τὰς ἐσφερομένας ἐκπέμπεσκε.
ταῦτα μὲν κατὰ τὰς δίκας ἐποίεε, τάδε δὲ ἄλλα
ἐκεκοσμέατ' οἱ· εἴ τινα πυνθάνοιτο ὑβρίζοντα, τοῦτον
ὅκως μεταπέμφαιτο κατ' ἀξίην ἐκάστου ἀδικήματος
ἐδικαίεω, καὶ οἱ κατάσκοποί τε καὶ κατήκοοι ἦσαν ἀνὰ
πᾶσαν τὴν χώραν τῆς ἡρχε.

1.101

Δηϊόκης μὲν νυν τὸ Μηδικὸν ἔθνος συνέστρεψε μῶνον καὶ
τοῦτον ἡρξε· ἔστι δὲ Μήδων τοσάδε γένηα, Βοῦσαι

ὅκως ἂν μὴ ὁρῶντες οἱ |of the same age |fellow; |habitual τε
 ἐκείνῳ καὶ οἰκίῃς οὐ |trifling οὐδὲ ἐς ἀνδραγαθίην
 λειπόμενοι, |annoy, |distress καὶ |plot, plan, harm, ἀλλ' |different; |diverse
 σφι δοκέοι εἶναι μὴ ὁρῶσι.

1.100

ἐπεῖτε δὲ ταῦτα |marshal καὶ |strengthen ἐώντων τῇ
 |tyranny , ἦν τὸ δίκαιον φυλάσσων χαλεπός· καὶ τάς
 τε δίκας γράφοντες ἔσω παρ' ἐκείνον |send in ,
 καὶ ἐκείνος |separate, sort :ὰς ἐσφερομένας ἐκπέμπεσκε.
 ταῦτα μὲν κατὰ τὰς δίκας ἐποίεε, τάδε δὲ ἄλλα
 |marshal, array οἱ· εἴ τινα πυνθάνοιτο |insult , τοῦτον
 ὅκως |send; (mid) summon... ' ἀξίην ἐκάστου |wrong, |misdeed
 ἐδικαίεν, καὶ οἱ |spy, inspector τε καὶ |hearing; |obedient ἦσαν ἀνὰ
 πᾶσαν τὴν χώραν τῆς ἡρχε.

1.101

Δηϊόκης μὲν νυν τὸ Μηδικὸν ἔθνος |get together; |condense μόνον καὶ
 τοῦτον ἡρξε· ἔστι δὲ Μήδων |this much ἵνα, Βοῦσαι

his fellows, who had been brought up with him and were of no meaner family nor behind him in manly virtue, might not be grieved by seeing him and make plots against him, but that being unseen by them he might be thought to be of different mould.

1.100

Having set these things in order and strengthened himself in his despotism, he was severe in preserving justice; and the people used to write down their causes and send them in to his presence, and he determined the questions which were brought in to him and sent them out again. Thus he used to do about the judgment of causes; and he also took order for this, that is to say, if he heard that any one was behaving in an unruly manner, he sent for him and punished him according as each act of wrong deserved, and he had watchers and listeners about all the land over which he ruled.

1.101

Deïokes then united the Median race alone, and was ruler of this: and of the Medes there are the tribes which here follow, namely,

*vocabulary***ἀποχράω** suffice; abuse**ἀποχρέω** suffice; abuse**ἄτε** as if; since**βασιλεύω** be king**καταστρέφω** overturn, subdue

~catastrophe

μουνόω leave, not aid**παραδείκνυμι** (ὁ) receive, admit**Πέρσης** Persian**στρατός** common people/soldiers

~strategy

τοσόσδε this much**ὕπήκοος** heeding, subject

Παρητακηνοὶ Στρούχατες Ἀριζαντοὶ Βούδιοι Μάγοι.
γένεα μὲν δὴ Μήδων ἐστὶ τοσάδε.

1.102

Δηϊόκεω δὲ παῖς γίνεται Φραόρτης, ὃς τελευτήσαντος
Δηϊόκεω, βασιλεύσαντος τρία καὶ πεντήκοντα ἔτεα,
παρεδέξατο τὴν ἀρχήν, παραδεξάμενος δὲ οὐκ ἀπεχρᾶτο
μούνων Μήδων ἄρχειν, ἀλλὰ στρατευσάμενος ἐπὶ τοὺς
Πέρσας πρώτοισί τε τούτοισι ἐπεθήκατο καὶ πρώτους
Μήδων ὑπηκόους ἐποίησε.

μετὰ δὲ ἔχων δύο ταῦτα ἔθνεα καὶ ἀμφοτέρα ἰσχυρά,
κατεστρέφετο τὴν Ἀσίην ἀπ' ἄλλου ἐπ' ἄλλο ἰὼν ἔθνος,
ἐς ὃ στρατευσάμενος ἐπὶ τοὺς Ἀσσυρίους καὶ Ἀσσυρίων,
τούτους οἱ Νίνον εἶχον καὶ ἦρχον πρότερον πάντων, τότε
δὲ ἦσαν μεμουνωμένοι μὲν συμμάχων ἅτε ἀπεστεώτων,
ἄλλως μέντοι ἐωυτῶν εὖ ἦκοντες.

Ἐπὶ τούτους δὴ στρατευσάμενος ὁ Φραόρτης αὐτὸς τε
διεφθάρη, ἄρξας δύο καὶ εἴκοσι ἔτεα, καὶ ὁ στρατὸς αὐτοῦ

Busai, Paretakenians, Struchates, Arizantians, Budians, Magians: the tribes of the Medes are so many in number.

1.102

Now the son of Deïokes was Phraortes, who when Deïokes was dead, having been king for three and fifty years, received the power in succession; and having received it he was not satisfied to be ruler of the Medes alone, but marched upon the Persians; and attacking them first before others, he made these first subject to the Medes.

After this, being ruler of these two nations and both of them strong, he proceeded to subdue Asia going from one nation to another, until at last he marched against the Assyrians, those Assyrians I mean who dwelt at Nineveh, and who formerly had been rulers of the whole, but at that time they were left without support their allies having revolted from them, though at home they were prosperous enough.

Phraortes marched, I say, against these, and was both himself slain, after he had reigned two and twenty years, and the greater part of his

*vocabulary***αἰχμοφόρος** spearman**ἄλκιμος** brave; sturdily made

~Alexander

ἀναμίξ indiscriminately**ἀναφύρω** (ῶ) confuse; defile**ἄνω** (ᾶ) accomplish, pass, waste;
upwards, out to sea**διατάσσω** arrange, array**εἰσβάλλω** throw into ~ballistic**ἐκδέχομαι** receive; succeed to a
position**ἐξαιρέω** pick, steal; dedicate; destroy
~heresy**λοχίζω** put soldiers in units; lie in wait**περικάθημαι** be seated all around**πρόγονος** elder, ancestor ~genus**προσδοκάω** expect**στρατός** common people/soldiers

~strategy

συλλέγω collect, assemble ~legion**συμβάλλω** pit against; compare; mp:
meet, fall in with ~ballistic**τιμωρέω** (ι) (+dat) take vengeance,

punish; aid one who has been attacked

τοξοφόρος (f) archer ~toxic**χωρίς** separately; except, other than

~heir

ὁ πολλός.

1.103

Φραόρτεω δὲ τελευτήσαντος ἐξεδέξατο Κναξάρης ὁ Φραόρτεω τοῦ Δηϊόκεω παῖς. οὗτος λέγεται πολλὸν ἔτι γενέσθαι ἀλκιμώτερος τῶν προγόνων, καὶ πρῶτός τε ἐλόχισε κατὰ τέλεα τοὺς ἐν τῇ, Ἀσίῃ καὶ πρῶτος διέταξε χωρὶς ἐκάστους εἶναι, τοὺς τε αἰχμοφόρους καὶ τοὺς τοξοφόρους καὶ τοὺς ἱππέας· πρὸ τοῦ δὲ ἀναμῖξ ἦν πάντα ὁμοίως ἀναπεφυρμένα. οὗτος ὁ τοῖσι Λυδοῖσι ἐστὶ μαχεσάμενος ὅτε νύξ ἢ ἡμέρη ἐγένετό σφι μαχομένοισι, καὶ ὁ τὴν Ἄλυσ ποταμοῦ ἄνω Ἀσίην πᾶσαν συστήσας ἑωυτῷ. συλλέξας δὲ τοὺς ὑπ' ἑωυτῷ ἀρχομένους πάντας ἐστρατεύετο ἐπὶ τὴν Νίνον, τιμωρέων τε τῷ πατρὶ καὶ τὴν πόλιν ταύτην θέλων ἐξελεῖν. καὶ οἱ, ὥς συμβαλὼν ἐνίκησε τοὺς Ἀσσυρίους, περικατημένῳ τὴν Νίνον ἐπῆλθε Σκυθέων¹ στρατὸς μέγας, ἦγε δὲ αὐτοὺς βασιλεὺς ὁ Σκυθέων Μαδύης Προτοθύεω παῖς· οἱ ἐσέβαλον μὲν ἐς τὴν

¹ not allied with either side

ὁ πολλός.

1.103

Φραόρτεω δὲ τελευτήσαντος |receive; succeed ἱξάρης ὁ
|to a position
Φραόρτεω τοῦ Δηϊόκεω παῖς. οὗτος λέγεται πολλὸν
ἔτι γενέσθαι |brave; sturdily τῶν |elder, , καὶ πρῶτός
|made |ancestor
τε |put soldiers in τέλεα τοὺς ἐν τῇ, Ἀσίῃ καὶ πρῶτος
|units; lie in wait
|arrange, |separately; ἑξ- ἵς εἶναι, τοὺς τε |spearman καὶ
|array |cept, other than
τοὺς |archer καὶ τοὺς ἱππέας· πρὸ τοῦ δὲ |indiscriminately
πάντα ὁμοίως |confuse; defile . οὗτος ὁ τοῖσι Λυδοῖσι ἐστὶ
μαχεσάμενος ὅτε νύξ ἡ ἡμέρη ἐγένετό σφι μαχομένοισι,
καὶ ὁ τὴν Ἄλυνος ποταμοῦ ἄνω Ἀσίην πᾶσαν συστήσας
ἑωυτῷ. |collect, δὲ τοὺς ὑπ' ἑωυτῷ ἀρχομένους πάντας
|assemble
ἐστρατεύετο ἐπὶ τὴν Νίνον, |take vengeance, γῶ πατρὶ καὶ
|punish, aid
τὴν πόλιν ταύτην θέλων |pick, steal; dedicate; de- |pit against; compare;
|stroy |mp: meet, fall in with
ἐνίκησε τοὺς Ἀσσυρίους, περικατημένῳ τὴν Νίνον ἐπῆλθε
Σκυθέων¹ |army μέγας, ἦγε δὲ αὐτοὺς βασιλεὺς ὁ
Σκυθέων Μαδύης Προτοθύεω παῖς· οἱ ἐσέβαλον μὲν ἐς
τὴν

¹ not allied with either side

army was destroyed.

1.103

When Phraortes had brought his life to an end, Kyaxares the son of Phraortes, the son of Deïokes, received the power. This king is said to have been yet much more warlike than his forefathers; and he first banded the men of Asia into separate divisions, that is to say, he first arrayed apart from one another the spearmen and the archers and the horsemen, for before that time they were all mingled together without distinction. This was he who fought with the Lydians when the day became night as they fought, and who also united under his rule the whole of Asia above the river Halys. And having gathered together all his subjects he marched upon Nineveh to avenge his father, and also because he desired to conquer that city. And when he had fought a battle with the Assyrians and had defeated them, while he was sitting down before Nineveh there came upon him a great army of Scythians, and the leader of them was Madyas the son of Protohyas, king of the Scythians. These had invaded

vocabulary

εἰσβάλλω throw into ~ballistic
ἐκτρέπω turn aside
ἐνθαῦτα there, here
ἐπέχω hold, cover; offer; assail
εὖζωνος well-girded ~zone
ἐφέπω drive, meet, follow ~sequel
ἡσάομαι (pass) be weaker, be

overcome; (active) defeat
κατύπερθε above, from above
λίμνη lake, marsh, basin, sea ~limnic
παραμείβω pass by ~amoeba
συμβάλλω pit against; compare; mp:
 meet, fall in with ~ballistic
ὑπερβαίνω pass, transgress ~basis

Ἀσίην Κιμμερίους ἐκβαλόντες ἐκ τῆς Εὐρώπης, τούτοις
δὲ ἐπισπόμενοι φεύγουσι οὕτω ἐς τὴν Μηδικὴν χώραν
ἀπίκοντο.

1.104

ἔστι δὲ ἀπὸ τῆς λίμνης τῆς Μαιήτιδος ἐπὶ Φᾶσιν¹ ποταμὸν
καὶ ἐς Κόλχους² τριήκοντα ἡμερέων εὐζώνῳ ὁδός, ἐκ δὲ
τῆς Κολχίδος οὐ πολλὸν ὑπερβῆναι ἐς τὴν Μηδικήν, ἀλλ'
ἐν τῷ διὰ μέσου ἔθνος αὐτῶν ἐστι, Σάσπειρες, τοῦτο δὲ
παραμειβομένοις εἶναι ἐν τῇ Μηδικῇ. οὐ μέντοι οἱ γε
Σκύθαι ταύτῃ ἐσέβαλον, ἀλλὰ τὴν κατύπερθε ὁδὸν πολλῶ
μακροτέραν ἐκτραπόμενοι, ἐν δεξιῇ ἔχοντες τὸ Καυκάσιον
ὄρος. ἐνθαῦτα οἱ μὲν Μῆδοι συμβαλόντες τοῖσι Σκύθησι
καὶ ἐσωθέντες τῇ μάχῃ τῆς ἀρχῆς κατελύθησαν. οἱ δὲ
Σκύθαι τὴν Ἀσίην πᾶσαν ἐπέσχον.

¹ flowing from the Caucasian Mountains into the eastern shores of the
Black Sea ² on the Black Sea coast

Ἀσίην Κιμμερίους ἐκβαλόντες ἐκ τῆς Εὐρώπης, τούτοις
 δὲ |drive, meet, follow...| γουσι οὕτω ἐς τὴν Μηδικὴν χώραν
 ἀπίκοντο.

1.104

ἔστι δὲ ἀπὸ τῆς |lake, marsh, Μαιήτιδος ἐπὶ Φᾶσιν¹ ποταμὸν
 |basin, sea
 καὶ ἐς Κόλχους² τριήκοντα ἡμερέων |well-girded| δός, ἐκ δὲ
 τῆς Κολχίδος οὐ πολλὸν |pass, transgress| ἣν Μηδικήν, ἀλλ'
 ἐν τῷ διὰ μέσου ἔθνος αὐτῶν ἐστι, Σάσπειρες, τοῦτο δὲ
 |pass by| εἶναι ἐν τῇ Μηδικῇ. οὐ μέντοι οἱ γε
 Σκύθαι ταύτῃ ἐσέβαλον, ἀλλὰ τὴν |above, from above| πολλῶ
 μακροτέρην |turn aside|, ἐν δεξιῇ ἔχοντες τὸ Καυκάσιον
 ὄρος. |there, here...| μὲν Μῆδοι |pit against; compare; Σκύθησι
 |mp: meet, fall in with|
 καὶ |(pass) be weaker, be over-| τῆς ἀρχῆς κατελύθησαν. οἱ δὲ
 |come; (active) defeat|
 Σκύθαι τὴν Ἀσίην πᾶσαν |hold, cover;
 |offer; assail|

¹ flowing from the Caucasian Mountains into the eastern shores of the Black Sea ² on the Black Sea coast

Asia after driving the Kimmerians out of Europe, and in pursuit of them as they fled they had come to the land of Media.

1.104

Now from the Maiotian lake to the river Phasis and to the land of the Colchians is a journey of thirty days for one without encumbrance; and from Colchis it is not far to pass over to Media, for there is only one nation between them, the Saspeirians, and passing by this nation you are in Media. However the Scythians did not make their invasion by this way, but turned aside from it to go by the upper road which is much longer, keeping Mount Caucasus on their right hand. Then the Medes fought with the Scythians, and having been worsted in the battle they lost their power, and the Scythians obtained rule over all Asia.

vocabulary

ἀναχωρέω return, retreat ~heir
ἀντιάζω meet, fight, join
ἀντιάω meet, fight, join
ἀρχαῖος ancient, from the beginning
 ~oligarch
ἀσινής unharmed
ἔκγονος offspring, descendant ~genus
ἐνθεῦτεν thence
ἐνσκήπτω throw, fall at
θηλέω abound in ~thallium
ἰδρύω establish

λίσσομαι beg, beseech ~litany
λιτή prayer ~litany
νοσέω be sick, be mad, suffer
νόσος (f) plague, pestilence ~noisome
νοῦσος (f) plague, pestilence ~noisome
οὐράνιος heavenly
παρεξέρχομαι pass by, slip past
προσώτερω farther
συλάω (ὄ) take off, despoil ~asylum
ὑπολείπω leave as a leftover; leave a person behind ~eclipse

1.105

ἐνθεῦτεν δὲ ἦσαν ἐπ' Αἴγυπτον. καὶ ἐπεῖτε ἐγένοντο ἐν τῇ Παλαιστίνῃ Συρίῃ, Ψαμμήτιχος σφέας Αἰγύπτου βασιλεὺς ἀντιάσας δώροισί τε καὶ λιτῇσι ἀποτράπει τὸ προσωτέρω μὴ πορεύεσθαι. οἳ δὲ ἐπεῖτε ἀναχωρέοντες ὀπίσω ἐγένοντο τῆς Συρίας ἐν Ἀσκάλῳ πόλι, τῶν πλεόνων Σκυθέων παρεξελθόντων ἀσυνέων, ὀλίγοι τινὲς αὐτῶν ὑπολειφθέντες ἐσύλησαν τῆς οὐρανίης Ἀφροδίτης τὸ ἱρόν. ἔστι δὲ τοῦτο τὸ ἱρόν, ὡς ἐγὼ πυνθανόμενος εὐρίσκω, πάντων ἀρχαιότατον ἱρῶν ὅσα ταύτης τῆς θεοῦ· καὶ γὰρ τὸ ἐν Κύπρῳ ἱρόν ἐνθεῦτεν ἐγένετο, ὡς αὐτοὶ Κύπριοι λέγουσι, καὶ τὸ ἐν Κυθήροισι¹ Φοίνικές εἰσὶ οἱ ἰδρυσάμενοι ἐκ ταύτης τῆς Συρίας ἔοντες. τοῖσι δὲ τῶν Σκυθέων συλήσασι τὸ ἱρόν τὸ ἐν Ἀσκάλῳ καὶ τοῖσι τούτων αἰεὶ ἐκγόνοισι ἐνέσκηψε ὁ θεὸς θήλεαν² νοῦσον· ὥστε ἅμα λέγουσίν τε οἱ Σκύθαι διὰ τοῦτο σφέας νοσέειν, καὶ ὁρᾶν παρ' ἑωυτοῖσι τοὺς ἀπικνεομένους ἐς τὴν

¹ an island off the southern coast of the Peloponnesus ² The disease feminized them.

1.105

|thence δὲ ἦσαν ἐπ' Αἴγυπτον. καὶ ἐπεῖτε ἐγένοντο
 ἐν τῇ Παλαιστίνῃ Συρίῃ, Ψαμμήτιχος σφέας Αἰγύπτου
 βασιλεὺς ἀντιάσας δάωροισί τε καὶ λιτῇσι ἀποτράπει τὸ
 |farther μὴ πορεύεσθαι. οἱ δὲ ἐπεῖτε |return, retreat
 ὀπίσω ἐγένοντο τῆς Συρίης ἐν Ἀσκάλῳ πόλιν, τῶν
 πλεόνων Σκυθέων |pass by, slip past |unharmed ὀλίγοι τινὲς
 αὐτῶν |leave (food, per-|take off, despoil |heavenly Ἀφροδίτης
 |son)
 τὸ ἱρόν. ἔστι δὲ τοῦτο τὸ ἱρόν, ὡς ἐγὼ πυνθανόμενος
 εὐρίσκω, πάντων |ancient, from ἱρῶν ὅσα ταύτης τῆς θεοῦ·
 |the beginning
 καὶ γὰρ τὸ ἐν Κύπρῳ ἱρόν |thence ἐγένετο, ὡς αὐτοὶ
 Κύπριοι λέγουσι, καὶ τὸ ἐν Κυθήροισι¹ Φοίνικες εἰσὶ οἱ
 |establish ἐκ ταύτης τῆς Συρίης ἐόντες. τοῖσι δὲ τῶν
 Σκυθέων |take off, despoil ἱρόν τὸ ἐν Ἀσκάλῳ καὶ τοῖσι
 τούτων αἰεὶ |offspring |throw, fall at' θεὸς |abound in² οὖσον·
 ὥστε ἅμα λέγουσιν τε οἱ Σκύθαι διὰ τοῦτο σφέας |be sick, be
 |mad, suffer
 καὶ ὅρᾱν παρ' ἐωυτοῖσι τοὺς ἀπικνεομένους ἐς τὴν

¹ an island off the southern coast of the Peloponnesus ² The disease feminized them.

1.105

Thence they went on to invade Egypt; and when they were in Syria which is called Palestine, Psammetichos king of Egypt met them; and by gifts and entreaties he turned them from their purpose, so that they should not advance any further: and as they retreated, when they came to the city of Ascalon in Syria, most of the Scythians passed through without doing any damage, but a few of them who had stayed behind plundered the temple of Aphrodite Urania. Now this temple, as I find by inquiry, is the most ancient of all the temples which belong to this goddess; for the temple in Cyprus was founded from this, as the people of Cyprus themselves report, and it was the Phenicians who founded the temple in Kythera, coming from this land of Syria. So these Scythians who had plundered the temple at Ascalon, and their descendants for ever, were smitten by the divinity with a disease which made them women instead of men: and the Scythians say that it was for this reason that they were diseased, and that for this reason travellers who visit Scythia now, see

vocabulary

ἀνάστατος driven out, ruined
ἀνασώζω rescue, recover
ἀρπάζω carry off, seize ~harpoon
βασιλεύω be king
διάκειμαι be in a condition
ἐπιβάλλω throw upon, head for
 ~ballistic
ἐπικρατέω rule over
καταμεθύω rave drunkenly
καταφονεύω slaughter
ξεινίζω be host, treat as a guest

ὀκτώ eight ~octopus
ὀλιγωρία contempt; neglect
περιελαύνω drive around
ὔβρις -εως (f) pride, insolence, outrage
ὑποχείριος under one's hand ~chiral
φορέω frequentative of φέρω, to carry
 ~bear
φόρον forum
φόρος tribute, revenue
χωρίς separately; except, other than
 ~heir

Σκυθικὴν χώραν ὡς διακέαται τοὺς καλέουσι Ἐνάρεας¹ οἱ
Σκύθαι.

1.106

ἐπὶ μὲν νυν ὀκτὼ καὶ εἴκοσι ἔτεα ἦρχον τῆς Ἀσίας οἱ
Σκύθαι, καὶ τὰ πάντα σφι ὑπὸ τε ὕβριος καὶ ὀλιγωρίας
ἀνάστατα ἦν· χωρὶς μὲν γὰρ φόρον ἔπρησσον παρ'
ἐκάστων τὸν ἐκάστοισι ἐπέβαλλον, χωρὶς δὲ τοῦ φόρου
ἥρπαζον περιελάνοντες τοῦτο ὃ τι ἔχοιεν ἕκαστοι. καὶ
τούτων μὲν τοὺς πλεῦνας Κναξάρης² τε καὶ Μῆδοι
ξεινίσαντες καὶ καταμεθύσαντες κατεφόνευσαν, καὶ οὕτω
ἀνεσώσαντο τὴν ἀρχὴν Μῆδοι καὶ ἐπεκράτεον τῶν περ
καὶ πρότερον, καὶ τήν τε Νίνον εἶλον ὡς δὲ εἶλον ἐν
ἐτέροισι λόγοισι δηλώσω καὶ τοὺς Ἀσσυρίους ὑποχειρίους
ἐποίησαντο πλὴν τῆς Βαβυλωνίης μοίρης. μετὰ δὲ ταῦτα
Κναξάρης μὲν, βασιλεύσας τεσσεράκοντα ἔτεα σὺν τοῖσι
Σκύθαι ἦρξαν, τελευτᾷ.

¹ Scythian shamans with nonstandard gender roles.
previously abused Scythian refugees, 1.73

² who

Σκυθικὴν χώραν ὥς |be in a condition¹ καλέουσι Ἐνάρεας¹ οἱ
Σκύθαι.

1.106

ἐπὶ μὲν νυν |eight καὶ εἴκοσι ἔτεα ἦρχον τῆς Ἀσίης οἱ
Σκύθαι, καὶ τὰ πάντα σφι ὑπὸ τε |hubris καὶ ὀλιγωρίας
|driven out, ruined |separately; ex- ἰρ φόρον ἔπρησσον παρ'
|cept, other than
ἐκάστων τὸν ἐκάστοισι |throw upon , |separately; ex- φόρου
|cept, other than
|carry off, |drive around τοῦτο ὅ τι ἔχοιεν ἕκαστοι. καὶ
|seize
τούτων μὲν τοὺς πλεῦνας Κυαξάρης² τε καὶ Μῆδοι
|be host καὶ |rave drunkenly |slaughter , καὶ οὕτω
|rescue, recover τὴν ἀρχὴν Μῆδοι καὶ |rule over τῶν περ
καὶ πρότερον, καὶ τήν τε Νίνον εἶλον ὥς δὲ εἶλον ἐν
ἐτέροισι λόγοισι δηλώσω καὶ τοὺς Ἀσσυρίους |under one's hand
ἐποιήσαντο πλὴν τῆς Βαβυλωνίης μοίρης. μετὰ δὲ ταῦτα
Κυαξάρης μὲν, |be king τεσσεράκοντα ἔτεα σὺν τοῖσι
Σκύθαι ἦρξαν, τελευτᾷ.

¹ Scythian shamans with nonstandard gender roles.
previously abused Scythian refugees, 1.73

² who

among them the affection of those who by the Scythians are called Enareës.

1.106

For eight and twenty years then the Scythians were rulers of Asia, and by their unruliness and reckless behaviour everything was ruined; for on the one hand they exacted that in tribute from each people which they laid upon them, and apart from the tribute they rode about and carried off by force the possessions of each tribe. Then Kyaxares with the Medes, having invited the greater number of them to a banquet, made them drunk and slew them; and thus the Medes recovered their power, and had rule over the same nations as before; and they also took Nineveh,—the manner how it was taken I shall set forth in another history, —and made the Assyrians subject to them excepting only the land of Babylon.

*vocabulary***αἰδοῖον** genitals**αἰδοῖος** modest, honored**ἄμπελος** (f) vine**ἐκδέχομαι** receive; succeed to a position**ἐνερθε** beneath, below**ἐνύπνιος** seen in dreams**ἐπικατακλύζω** overflow besides**ἡσύχιος** at peace**ὄνειροπόλος** interpreter of dreams**οὔρέω** piss**ὄψις** ὄψεως (f) sight, view

~thanatopsis

Πέρσης Persian**συνοικέω** live together**ὑπερτίθημι** hand over; excel; defer**φύω** produce, beget; clasp ~physics**ώραῖος** ripe; young adult

1.107

ἐκδέκεται δὲ Ἀστυάγης Κναξάρῳ παῖς τὴν βασιλείην.
καὶ οἱ ἐγένετο θυγάτηρ τῇ οὐνομα ἔθετο Μανδάνην· τὴν
ἐδόκεε Ἀστυάγης ἐν τῷ ὕπνῳ οὐρῆσαι τοσοῦτον ὥστε
πλῆσαι μὲν τὴν ἐωυτοῦ πόλιν, ἐπικατακλύσαι δὲ καὶ
τὴν Ἀσίην πᾶσαν. ὑπερθέμενος δὲ τῶν Μάγων τοῖσι
ὀνειροπόλοισι τὸ ἐνύπνιον, ἐφοβήθη παρ' αὐτῶν αὐτὰ
ἐκαστα μαθών.

μετὰ δὲ τὴν Μανδάνην ταύτην ἐοῦσαν ἤδη ἀνδρὸς ὠραίην
Μήδων μὲν τῶν ἐωυτοῦ ἀξίων οὐδενὶ διδοῖ γυναῖκα,
δεδοικώς¹ τὴν ὄψιν· ὁ δὲ Πέρση διδοῖ τῷ οὐνομα ἦν
Καμβύσης, τὸν εὔρισκε οἰκίης μὲν ἐόντα ἀγαθῆς τρόπου δὲ
ἡσυχίου, πολλῶ ἐνερθε ἄγων αὐτὸν μέσου ἀνδρὸς Μήδου.

1.108

συνοικεούσης δὲ τῷ Καμβύσῃ τῆς Μανδάνης, ὁ Ἀστυάγης
τῷ πρώτῳ ἔτει εἶδε ἄλλην ὄψιν, ἐδόκεε δὲ οἱ ἐκ τῶν
αἰδοίων τῆς θυγατρὸς ταύτης φῦναι ἄμπελον, τὴν δὲ

¹ verb δεῖδω

1.107

|receive; succeed Ἀστυάγης Κναξάρῳ παῖς τὴν βασιλείην.
|to a position

καὶ οἱ ἐγένετο θυγάτηρ τῇ οὐνομα ἔθετο Μανδάνην· τὴν

ἐδόκεε Ἀστυάγης ἐν τῷ ὕπνῳ |piss τοσοῦτον ὥστε

πλῆσαι μὲν τὴν ἐωυτοῦ πόλιν, |overflow besides δὲ καὶ

τὴν Ἀσίην πᾶσαν. |hand over; ex- δὲ τῶν Μάγων τοῖσι
|cel; defer

|seer τὸ ἐνύπνιον, ἐφοβήθη παρ' αὐτῶν αὐτὰ

ἕκαστα μαθών.

μετὰ δὲ τὴν Μανδάνην ταύτην ἐοῦσαν ἤδη ἀνδρὸς |ripe;
|young
|adult

Μήδων μὲν τῶν ἐωυτοῦ ἀξίων οὐδενὶ διδοῖ γυναῖκα,

δεδοικώς¹ τὴν |sight ὁ δὲ Πέρσῃ διδοῖ τῷ οὐνομα ἦν

Καμβύσης, τὸν εὔρισκε οἰκίης μὲν ἐόντα ἀγαθῆς τρόπου δὲ

|at peace , πολλῶ |beneath, ὧν αὐτὸν μέσου ἀνδρὸς Μήδου.
|below

1.108

|live together δὲ τῷ Καμβύσῃ τῆς Μανδάνης, ὁ Ἀστυάγης

τῷ πρώτῳ ἔτει εἶδε ἄλλην |sight, ἐδόκεε δὲ οἱ ἐκ τῶν

αἰδοίων τῆς θυγατρὸς ταύτης |pro- |vine , τὴν δὲ
|duce,
|beget;
|clasp

¹ verb δεῖδω

1.107

After this Kyaxares died, having reigned forty years including those years during which the Scythians had rule, and Astyages son of Kyaxares received from him the kingdom. To him was born a daughter whom he named Mandane; and in his sleep it seemed to him that there passed from her so much water as to fill his city and also to flood the whole of Asia. This dream he delivered over to the Magian interpreters of dreams, and when he heard from them the truth at each point he became afraid.

And afterwards when this Mandane was of an age to have a husband, he did not give her in marriage to any one of the Medes who were his peers, because he feared the vision; but he gave her to a Persian named Cambyses, whom he found to be of a good descent and of a quiet disposition, counting him to be in station much below a Mede of middle rank.

1.108

And when Mandane was married to Cambyses, in the first year Astyages saw another vision. It seemed to him that from the womb of this daughter a vine grew, and this vine overspread the whole

vocabulary

ἄλλοτε at another time ~alien
ἄμπελος (f) vine
ἄχαρις -δος (f) ungracious
βασιλεύω be king
γόνος offspring ~genus
ἐξαμαρτάνω miss; err, do wrong
ἐπέχω hold, cover; offer; assail
ἐπίσχω aim; restrain
ἐπίτεξ pregnant
ἐπίτροπος agent, officer
εὖς good, brave, noble
θάπτω bury ~epitaph
μεταπέμπω send; (mid) summon
 ~pomp
μετέπειτα afterward, next
μηδαμὸς no one

ὄνειροπόλος interpreter of dreams
ὄον οὓ type of fruit
ὄψιος late, in evening
ὄψις ὄψεως (f) sight, view
 ~thanatopsis
παραβάλλω put at risk ~ballistic
παραχράομαι abuse, treat
 contemptuously
παροράω notice; overlook, neglect
περιπίπτω embrace; fall in with
Πέρσης Persian
σημαίνω give orders to; show; mark
 ~semaphore
τοιόσδε such
ὑπερτίθημι hand over; excel; defer
ὑπηρετέω serve
ὕστέρα womb; ovary

ἄμπελον ἐπισχεῖν τὴν Ἀσίην πᾶσαν. ἰδὼν δὲ τοῦτο καὶ ὑπερθέμενος τοῖσι ὀνειροπόλοισι, μετεπέμψατο ἐκ τῶν Περσέων τὴν θυγατέρα ἐπίτεκα ἐοῦσαν, ἀπικομένην δὲ ἐφύλασσε βουλόμενος τὸ γενόμενον ἐξ αὐτῆς διαφθεῖραι· ἐκ γάρ οἱ τῆς ὄψιος οἱ τῶν Μάγων ὀνειροπόλοι ἐσήμαινον ὅτι μέλλοι ὁ τῆς θυγατρὸς αὐτοῦ γόνος βασιλεύσειν ἀντὶ ἐκείνου. ταῦτα δὴ ὦν φυλασσόμενος ὁ Ἀστυάγης, ὥς ἐγένετο ὁ Κῦρος, καλέσας Ἄρπαγον ἄνδρα οἰκίῳ καὶ πιστότατόν τε Μήδων καὶ πάντων ἐπίτροπον τῶν ἐωυτοῦ, ἔλεγέ οἱ τοιάδε. «Ἄρπαγε, πρῆγμα τὸ ἂν τοι προσθέω, μηδαμῶς παραχρήση, μηδὲ ἐμέ τε παραβάλη καὶ ἄλλους ἐλόμενος ἐξ ὑστέρης σοὶ αὐτῷ περιπέσης· λάβε τὸν Μανδάνη ἔτεκε παῖδα, φέρων δὲ ἐς σεωυτοῦ¹ ἀπόκτεινον, μετὰ δὲ θάψον τρόπῳ ὅτεω αὐτὸς βούλει.» ὁ δὲ ἀμείβεται «ὦ βασιλεῦ, οὔτε ἄλλοτε κω παρείδες ἀνδρὶ τῷδε ἄχαρι οὐδέν, φυλασσόμεθα δὲ ἐς σὲ καὶ ἐς τὸν μετέπειτα χρόνον μηδὲν ἐξαμαρτεῖν. ἀλλ' εἰ τοι φίλον τοῦτο οὔτω γίνεσθαι, χρὴ δὴ τό γε ἐμὸν ὑπηρετέεσθαι

¹ your house

|vine ἐπισχεῖν τὴν Ἀσίην πᾶσαν. ἰδὼν δὲ τοῦτο καὶ
 |hand over; ex- τοῖσι |seer , |send; (mid) summon . ὁν
 |cel; defer
 Περσέων τὴν θυγατέρα |pregnant ἐοῦσαν, ἀπικομένην δὲ
 ἐφύλασσε βουλόμενος τὸ γενόμενον ἐξ αὐτῆς διαφθεῖραι·
 ἐκ γὰρ οἱ τῆς ὄψιμος οἱ τῶν Μάγων |seer |give orders to;
 |show; mark
 ὅτι μέλλοι ὁ τῆς θυγατρὸς αὐτοῦ |off- |be king
 |spring
 ἀντὶ ἐκείνου. ταῦτα δὴ ὦν φυλασσόμενος ὁ Ἀστυάγης,
 ὡς ἐγένετο ὁ Κῦρος, καλέσας Ἄρπαγον ἄνδρα οἰκίῳ
 καὶ πιστότατόν τε Μήδων καὶ πάντων |agent, officer τῶν
 ἑωυτοῦ, ἔλεγέ οἱ |such . «Ἄρπαγε, πρῆγμα τὸ ἂν τοι
 προσθέω, |no one παραχρήσῃ, μηδὲ ἐμέ τε |put at risk
 καὶ ἄλλους ἐλόμενος ἐξ ὑστέρης σοὶ αὐτῷ |embrace;
 |fall in with
 λάβε τὸν Μανδάνη ἔτεκε παῖδα, φέρων δὲ ἐς σεωυτοῦ¹
 ἀπόκτεινον, μετὰ δὲ θάψον τρόπῳ ὅτε αὐτὸς βούλεαι.»
 ὁ δὲ ἀμείβεται «ὦ βασιλεῦ, οὔτε |at another time |notice; over-
 |look, neglect
 ἀνδρὶ τῷδε |ungracious ἔν, φυλασσόμεθα δὲ ἐς σὲ καὶ ἐς
 τὸν |afterward, next ἕνον μηδὲν |miss; err, do wrong ἔτι τοι φίλον
 τοῦτο οὔτω γίνεσθαι, χρὴ δὴ τό γε ἐμὸν |serve

¹ your house

of Asia. Having seen this vision and delivered it to the interpreters of dreams, he sent for his daughter, being then with child, to come from the land of the Persians. And when she had come he kept watch over her, desiring to destroy that which should be born of her; for the Magian interpreters of dreams signified to him that the offspring of his daughter should be king in his room. Astyages then desiring to guard against this, when Cyrus was born, called Harpagos, a man who was of kin near him and whom he trusted above all the other Medes, and had made him manager of all his affairs; and to him he said as follows: "Neglect not by any means, Harpagos, the matter which I shall lay upon thee to do, and beware lest thou set me aside, and choosing the advantage of others instead, bring thyself afterwards to destruction. Take the child which Mandane bore, and carry it to thy house and slay it; and afterwards bury it in whatsoever manner thou thyself desirest." To this he made answer: "O king, never yet in any past time didst thou discern in me an offence against thee, and I keep watch over myself also with a view to the time that comes after, that I may not commit any error towards thee. If it is indeed thy pleasure that this should so be done, my service at least must be

*vocabulary***ἄπαις** childless**γόνος** offspring ~genus**ἐνθεῦτεν** thence**ἐντέλλω** (mp) command**ἐπιτηδέως** usefully, conveniently**ἔρσην** male**ἐύς** good, brave, noble**κοσμέω** marshal, array ~cosmos**μαίνομαι** be berserk ~maenad**μίν** him, her, it**ὄον** οὖ type of fruit**παραφρόνησις** derangement, delirium**συγγενής** inborn, kin to**τυραννίς** -δος (f) tyranny**ὑπηρετέω** serve**φονεύω** kill

ἐπιτηδέως.»

1.109

τούτοισι ἀμειψάμενος ὁ Ἄρπαγος, ὥς οἱ παρεδόθη τὸ παιδίον κεκοσμημένον τὴν ἐπὶ θανάτῳ ἦε κλαίων ἐς τὰ οἰκία· παρελθὼν δὲ ἔφραζε τῇ ἑωυτοῦ γυναικὶ τὸν πάντα Ἄστυάγεος ῥηθέντα λόγον. ἡ δὲ πρὸς αὐτὸν λέγει «νῦν ὦν τί σοὶ ἐν νόῳ ἐστὶ ποιέειν;»

Ὁ δὲ ἀμείβεται «οὐ τῇ ἐνετέλλετο Ἄστυάγης, οὐδ' εἰ παραφρονήσει τε καὶ μανέεται κάκιον ἢ νῦν μαίνεται, οὐ οἱ ἔγωγε προσθήσομαι τῇ γνώμῃ οὐδὲ ἐς φόνον τοιοῦτον ὑπηρετήσω. πολλῶν δὲ εἵνεκα οὐ φονεύσω μιν, καὶ ὅτι αὐτῷ μοι συγγενής ἐστὶ ὁ παῖς, καὶ ὅτι Ἄστυάγης μὲν ἐστὶ γέρων καὶ ἄπαις ἔρσηνος γόνου· εἰ¹ δ' ἐθελήσει τούτου τελευτήσαντος ἐς τὴν θυγατέρα ταύτην ἀναβῆναι ἢ τυραννίς, τῆς νῦν τὸν υἱὸν κτείνει δι' ἐμεῦ, ἄλλο τι ἢ λείπεται τὸ ἐνθεῦτεν ἐμοὶ κινδύνων ὁ μέγιστος; ἀλλὰ τοῦ μὲν ἀσφαλέος εἵνεκα ἐμοὶ δεῖ τοῦτον τελευτᾶν τὸν παῖδα,

¹ if it happens

|usefully, con- >
|veniently

1.109

τούτοισι ἀμειψάμενος ὁ Ἄρπαγος, ὥς οἱ παρεδόθη τὸ
παιδίον |marshal, array τὴν ἐπὶ θανάτῳ ἦε κλαίων ἐς τὰ
οἰκία· παρελθὼν δὲ ἔφραζε τῇ ἑωυτοῦ γυναικὶ τὸν πάντα
Ἄστυάγεος ῥηθέντα λόγον. ἡ δὲ πρὸς αὐτὸν λέγει «νῦν
ὦν τί σοὶ ἐν νόῳ ἐστὶ ποιέειν;»

Ὁ δὲ ἀμείβεται «οὐ τῇ ἐνετέλλετο Ἄστυάγης, οὐδ' εἰ

|derangement, τε καὶ |be berserk .ἀκίον ἢ νῦν |be berserk, οὐ
|delirium

οἱ ἔγωγε προσθήσομαι τῇ γνώμῃ οὐδὲ ἐς φόνον τοιοῦτον

|serve πολλῶν δὲ εἵνεκα οὐ |kill μιν, καὶ

ὅτι αὐτῷ μοι |inborn, kin τὸ ἰὸ παῖς, καὶ ὅτι Ἄστυάγης

μὲν ἐστὶ γέρων καὶ |child- |male |offspring¹ δ' ἐθελήσει
|less

τούτου τελευτήσαντος ἐς τὴν θυγατέρα ταύτην ἀναβῆναι

ἢ |tyranny , τῆς νῦν τὸν υἱὸν κτείνει δι' ἐμεῦ, ἄλλο τι ἢ

λείπεται τὸ |thence ἐμοὶ κινδύνων ὁ μέγιστος; ἀλλὰ τοῦ

μὲν ἀσφαλέος εἵνεκα ἐμοὶ δεῖ τοῦτον τελευτᾶν τὸν παῖδα,

¹ if it happens

fitly rendered.”

1.109

Thus he made answer, and when the child had been delivered to him adorned as for death, Harpagos went weeping to his wife all the words which had been spoken by Astyages. And she said to him: “Now, therefore, what is it in thy mind to do?”

And he made answer: “Not according as Astyages enjoined: for not even if he shall come to be yet more out of his senses and more mad than he now is, will I agree to his will or serve him in such a murder as this. And for many reasons I will not slay the child; first because he is a kin to me, and then because Astyages is old and without male issue, and if his daughter takes the throne after he dies, does not the greatest of dangers then await me? To secure me, this child must die; but one of the servants of Astyages

*vocabulary***ἄπεδος** level, flat**βορέας** -οῦ (m, 1) north, north wind**βουκόλος** herdsman ~bovine**γλῶσσα** tongue, language ~glossary**Ἕλληγ** Greek**ἐπίσταμαι** know how, understand
~station**εὖς** good, brave, noble**θηριώδης** savage, wild**κάρτα** very much ~κράτος**νέμω** to allot, to pasture ~nemesis**νομάς** -δος (m, 3) roaming, grazing**νομή** pasture; distribution**ὄον** οὔ type of fruit**ὄρεινός** mountainous**σπουδή** zeal; (dat) with difficulty,
hastily ~repudiate**συνηρεφής** shaded; covering**συνοικέω** live together**φονεύς** -ως (m) killer ~offend**χωρέω** withdraw, give way to (+dat)
~heir

δεῖ μέντοι τῶν τινα Ἀστυάγεος αὐτοῦ φονέα γενέσθαι καὶ μὴ τῶν ἐμῶν.»

1.110

ταῦτα εἶπε καὶ αὐτίκα ἄγγελον ἔπεμπε ἐπὶ τῶν βουκόλων τῶν Ἀστυάγεος τὸν ἡπίστατο νομὰς τε ἐπιτηδεοτάτας νέμοντα καὶ ὄρεα θηριωδέστατα· τῷ οὖνομα ἦν Μιτραδάτης, συνοίκεε δὲ ἐωυτοῦ συνδούλῃ, οὖνομα δὲ τῇ γυναικὶ ἦν τῇ συνοίκεε Κυνὼ κατὰ τὴν Ἑλλήνων γλώσσαν, κατὰ δὲ τὴν Μηδικὴν Σπακώ· τὴν γὰρ κύνα καλέουσι σπάκα Μῆδοι. αἱ δὲ ὑπώρεαί εἰσὶ τῶν ὀρέων, ἔνθα τὰς νομὰς τῶν βοῶν εἶχε οὗτος δὴ ὁ βουκόλος, πρὸς βορέω τε ἀνέμου τῶν Ἀγβατάνων καὶ πρὸς τοῦ πόντου τοῦ Εὐξείνου· ταύτῃ μὲν γὰρ ἡ Μηδικὴ χωρὴ πρὸς Σασπείρων ὀρεινὴ ἐστὶ κάρτα καὶ ὑψηλὴ τε καὶ ἴδῃσι συνηρεφής, ἡ δὲ ἄλλη Μηδικὴ χωρὴ ἐστὶ πᾶσα ἄπεδος. ἐπεὶ ὦν ὁ βουκόλος σπουδῇ πολλῇ καλεόμενος ἀπύκετο, ἔλεγε ὁ Ἄρπαγος τάδε. «κελεύει σε Ἀστυάγης τὸ παιδίον τοῦτο λαβόντα θείναι ἐς τὸ

δεῖ μέντοι τῶν τινα Ἀστυάγεος αὐτοῦ |killer γενέσθαι καὶ
μὴ τῶν ἐμῶν.»

1.110

ταῦτα εἶπε καὶ αὐτίκα ἄγγελον ἔπεμπε ἐπὶ τῶν
|herdsman τῶν Ἀστυάγεος τὸν |know νομάς τε
ἐπιτηδεοτάτας |distribute καὶ ὄρεα |savage, wild τῷ
οὔνομα ἦν Μιτραδάτης, |live together ἑωυτοῦ συνδούλῃ,
οὔνομα δὲ τῇ γυναικὶ ἦν τῇ |live together ἑνὸς κατὰ τὴν
|Greek |tongue, , κατὰ δὲ τὴν Μηδικὴν Σπακώ· τὴν
|language
γὰρ κύνα καλέουσι σπάκα Μῆδοι. αἱ δὲ ὑπώρεαί εἰσὶ
τῶν ὀρέων, ἔνθα τὰς νομάς τῶν βοῶν εἶχε οὗτος δὴ ὁ
|herdsman , πρὸς |north, τε ἀνέμου τῶν Ἀγβατάνων καὶ
|north
πρὸς τοῦ πόντου τοῦ Εὐξείνου· ταύτῃ μὲν γὰρ ἡ Μηδικὴ
|wind
|withdraw, ἑῷ ασπείρων ὀρεινὴ ἐστὶ |very much ὑψηλὴ τε
|way to (+dat)
καὶ ἰδοῖσι |shaded; , ἡ δὲ ἄλλη Μηδικὴ |withdraw, ἑῷ σα
|covering |way to (+dat)
ἄπεδος. ἐπεὶ ὦν ὁ |herdsman |zeal; (dat) with καλεόμενος
|difficulty, hastily
ἀπύκετο, ἔλεγε ὁ Ἄρπαγος τάδε. «κελεύει σε Ἀστυάγης
τὸ παιδίον τοῦτο λαβόντα θείναι ἐς τὸ

must be the slayer of it, and not one of mine.”

1.110

Thus he spoke, and straightway sent a messenger to that one of the herdsmen of Astyages who he knew fed his herds on the pastures which were most suitable for his purpose, and on the mountains most haunted by wild beasts. The name of this man was Mitradatae, and he was married to one who was his fellow-slave; and the name of the woman to whom he was married was Kyno in the tongue of the Hellenes and in the Median tongue Spaco, for what the Hellenes call kynai (bitch) the Medes call spaca. Now, it was on the skirts of the mountains that this herdsman had his cattle-pastures, from Agbatana towards the North Wind and towards the Euxine Sea. For here in the direction of the Saspeirians the Median land is very mountainous and lofty and thickly covered with forests; but the rest of the land of Media is all level plain. So when this herdsman came, being summoned with much urgency, Harpagos said these words: “Astyages bids thee take this child and place it on the most

*vocabulary***ἄελπτος** not hoped for**ἀναλαμβάνω** take up, recover, resume**ἀπονοστέω** go home**βουκόλος** herdsman ~bovine**δαίμων** -ονος (m, 3) a god, fate, doom
~demon**δεσπότης** -ου (m, 1) master, despot**διαχρέομαι** use habitually; lend out;
reveal**ἐκχειμαι** expose, set forth**ἐπαυλὶς** -τος (f) farmhouse**ἐπίτεξ** pregnant**ἐρήμος** empty**ἐφοράω** look upon ~panorama**ἔωθα** be accustomed, in the habit**μεταπέμπω** send; (mid) summon

~pomp

μὶν him, her, it**ὄλεθρος** ruin, destruction, death**ὀρρωδέω** dread, shrink from**ὀφείλω** owe, should, if only**περιποιέω** preserve; obtain**πρόθυμος** (ῶ) willing, eager ~fume**τόκος** childbirth ~oxytocin**φροντίζ** -τος (f) thought, care

ἐρημότατον τῶν ὀρέων, ὅκως ἂν τάχιστα διαφθαρείη· καὶ τάδε τοὶ ἐκέλευσε εἰπεῖν, ἣν μὴ ἀποκτείνῃς αὐτὸ ἀλλὰ τεῶ τρόπῳ περιποιήσης, ὀλέθρῳ τῷ κακίστῳ σε διαχρήσεσθαι. ἐπορᾶν δὲ ἐκκείμενον τέταγμαί ἐγώ.»

1.111

ταῦτα ἀκούσας ὁ βουκόλος καὶ ἀναλαβὼν τὸ παιδίον ἦε τὴν αὐτὴν ὀπίσω ὁδὸν καὶ ἀπικνέεται ἐς τὴν ἔπαυλιν. τῷ δ' ἄρα καὶ αὐτῷ ἡ γυνή, ἐπίτεξ ἐοῦσα πᾶσαν ἡμέρην, τότε κως κατὰ δαίμονα τίκτει οἰχομένου τοῦ βουκόλου ἐς πόλιν. ἦσαν δὲ ἐν φροντίδι ἀμφοτέρω ἀλλήλων πέρι, ὁ μὲν τοῦ τόκου τῆς γυναικὸς ἀρρωδέων, ἡ δὲ γυνὴ ὅ τι οὐκ ἔωθως ὁ Ἄρπαγος μεταπέμψαιτο αὐτῆς τὸν ἄνδρα. ἐπεῖτε δὲ ἀπονοστήσας ἐπέστη, οἷα ἐξ ἀέλπτου ἰδοῦσα ἡ γυνὴ εἶρετο προτέρη ὅ τι μιν οὕτω προθύμως Ἄρπαγος μετεπέμψατο.

Ὁ δὲ εἶπε «ᾧ γύναι, εἰδὼν τε ἐς πόλιν ἐλθὼν καὶ ἤκουσα τὸ μῆτε ἰδεῖν ὄφελον μῆτε κοτὲ γενέσθαι ἐς δεσπότης τοὺς

ἐρημότατον τῶν ὁρέων, ὅκως ἂν τάχιστα διαφθαρείη·
καὶ τάδε τοὶ ἐκέλευσε εἰπεῖν, ἦν μὴ ἀποκτείνῃς αὐτὸ
ἀλλὰ τεῶ τρόπῳ |preserve; , |ruin τῶ κακίστῳ σε
|obtain
|use habitually; |look upon ἔγῳ |expose, set forth ἱγμαι ἐγώ.»
|lend out; reveal

1.111

ταῦτα ἀκούσας ὁ |herdsman καὶ |take up, re- ὁ παιδίον ἦε
|cover, resume
τὴν αὐτὴν ὀπίσω ὁδὸν καὶ ἀπικνέεται ἐς τὴν |farmhouse ὦ
δ' ἄρα καὶ αὐτῷ ἡ γυνή, |pregnant ὤσα πᾶσαν ἡμέρην,
τότε κως κατὰ |a god, fate, doom ῥιχομένου τοῦ |herdsman
ἐς πόλιν. ἦσαν δὲ ἐν |thought, care φότεροι ἀλλήλων πέρι,
ὁ μὲν τοῦ |childbirth ῥς γυναικὸς |dread, , ἡ δὲ γυνὴ ὅ τι
|shrink from
οὐκ |be accustomed, |αγος |send; (mid) summon ῥς τὸν ἄνδρα.
|in the habit
ἐπεῖτε δὲ |go home ἐπέστη, οἷα ἐξ |not hoped for ῥσα ἡ
γυνὴ εἶρετο προτέρη ὅ τι μιν οὕτω |willing, Ἄρπαγος
|eager
|send; (mid) summon

Ὁ δὲ εἶπε «ὦ γύναι, εἰδὼν τε ἐς πόλιν ἐλθὼν καὶ ἤκουσα
τὸ μήτε ἰδεῖν ὄφελον μήτε κοτὲ γενέσθαι ἐς |master, τοὺς
|despot

desolate part of the mountains, so that it may perish as quickly as possible. And he bade me to say that if thou do not kill it, but in any way shalt preserve it from death, he will slay thee by the most evil kind of destruction: and I have been appointed to see that the child is laid forth.”

1.111

Having heard this and having taken up the child, the herdsman went back by the way he came, and arrived at his dwelling. And his wife also, as it seems, having been every day on the point of bearing a child, by a providential chance brought her child to birth just at that time, when the herdsman was gone to the city. And both were in anxiety, each for the other, the man having fear about the child-bearing of his wife, and the woman about the cause why Harpagos had sent to summon her husband, not having been wont to do so aforetime. So as soon as he returned and stood before her, the woman seeing him again beyond her hopes was the first to speak, and asked him for what purpose Harpagos had sent for him so urgently.

And he said: “Wife, when I came to the city I saw and heard that which I would I had not seen, and which I should wish had never chanced to those whom we

vocabulary

ἀναλαμβάνω take up, recover, resume
ἀπειλέω vow, threaten, boast
ἀσπαίρω writhe ~spur
βρέφος -ους (n, 3) fetus, baby
ἐγχειρίζω entrust
εἶμα -τος (n, 3) garment ~vest
ἐκπλήσσω panic, be knocked out
 ~plectrum
ἐμφανής visible
ἐνθεν thence, whence
ἐντέλλω (mp) command
ἐντίθημι load; mp: take to heart
 ~thesis
ἐσθής clothes ~vest
θαμβέω be amazed

θεράπων -οντος (m, 3) helper,
 henchman, servant ~therapy
θηριώδης savage, wild
καταδοκέω suspect, be prejudiced
κλαυθμός weeping
κοσμέω marshal, array ~cosmos
μίν him, her, it
οἰκέτης -ου (m, 1) household; house
 slave
ποικίλλω make elaborately
ποικίλος ornamented; various
προκαίω burn before
πρόκειμαι be placed by; be devoted to
προπέμπω send, send ahead ~pomp
χρυσός (ῥ) gold
χρυσόω (ῥ) make golden, gild

ἡμετέρους. οἶκος μὲν πᾶς Ἀρπάγου κλαυθμῷ κατείχετο,
 ἐγὼ δὲ ἐκπλαγεῖς ἦα ἔσω. ὥς δὲ τάχιστα ἐσῆλθον, ὀρέω
 παιδίον προκείμενον ἀσπαῖρόν τε καὶ κραυγανόμενον,
 κεκοσμημένον χρυσῷ τε καὶ ἐσθῆτι ποικίλῃ. Ἄρπαγος
 δὲ ὥς εἶδέ με, ἐκέλευε τὴν ταχίστην ἀναλαβόντα τὸ
 παιδίον οἷχεσθαι φέροντα καὶ θεῖναι ἔνθα θηριωδέστατον
 εἶη τῶν ὀρέων, φᾶς Ἀστυάγεα εἶναι τὸν ταῦτα ἐπιθέμενόν
 μοι, πόλλ' ἀπειλήσας εἰ μή σφεα ποιήσαιμι. καὶ ἐγὼ
 ἀναλαβὼν ἔφερον, δοκέων τῶν τινος οἰκετέων εἶναι·
 οὐ γὰρ ἂν κοτὲ κατέδοξα ἔνθεν γε ἦν. ἐθάμβεον δὲ
 ὀρέων χρυσῷ τε καὶ εἵμασι κεκοσμημένον, πρὸς δὲ καὶ
 κλαυθμὸν κατεστεῶτα ἐμφανέα ἐν Ἀρπάγου. καὶ πρόκατε
 δὴ κατ' ὁδὸν πυνθάνομαι τὸν πάντα λόγον θεράπωντος,
 ὃς ἐμὲ προπέμπων ἔξω πόλιος ἐνεχείρισε τὸ βρέφος,
 ὥς ἄρα Μανδάνης τε εἶη παῖς τῆς Ἀστυάγεος θυγατρὸς
 καὶ Καμβύσειω τοῦ Κύρου, καί μιν Ἀστυάγης ἐντέλλεται
 ἀποκτεῖναι. νῦν τε ὅδε ἐστί.»

ἡμετέρους. οἶκος μὲν πᾶς Ἀρπάγου |weeping κατείχετο,
 ἐγὼ δὲ |panic, be |για ἔσω. ὥς δὲ τάχιστα ἐσῆλθον, ὀρέω
 |knocked out
 παιδίον |be placed by; be |writhe τε καὶ κραυγανόμενον,
 |devoted to
 |marshal, array χρυσῶ τε καὶ |clothes ποικίλῃ. Ἄρπαγος
 δὲ ὥς εἶδέ με, ἐκέλευε τὴν ταχίστην |take up, re- τὸ
 |cover, resume
 παιδίον οἴχεσθαι φέροντα καὶ θεῖναι ἔνθα |savage, wild
 εἷη τῶν ὀρέων, φὰς Ἀστυάγεα εἶναι τὸν ταῦτα ἐπιθέμενόν
 μοι, πόλλ' |vow, threaten, boast σφεα ποιήσαιμι. καὶ ἐγὼ
 |take up, re- |φέρων, δοκέων τῶν τινος |household; εἶναι
 |cover, resume |house slave
 οὐ γὰρ ἂν κοτὲ |suspect, be ἔνθεν γε ἦν. |be amazed δὲ
 |prejudiced
 ὀρέων χρυσῶ τε καὶ |garment |marshal, array , πρὸς δὲ καὶ
 |weeping κατεστεῶτα |visible ἐν Ἀρπάγου. καὶ πρόκατε
 δὴ κατ' ὁδὸν πυνθάνομαι τὸν πάντα λόγον |companion ,
 ὃς ἐμὲ |send, send ahead |πολίος |entrust τὸ |fetus, baby
 ὥς ἄρα Μανδάνης τε εἷη παῖς τῆς Ἀστυάγεος θυγατρὸς
 καὶ Καμβύσειω τοῦ Κύρου, καί μιν Ἀστυάγης ἐντέλλεται
 ἀποκτεῖναι. νῦν τε ὅδε ἐστί.»

serve. For the house of Harpagos was all full of mourning, and I being astonished thereat went within: and as soon as I entered I saw laid out to view an infant child gasping for breath and screaming, which was adorned with gold ornaments and embroidered clothing: and when Harpagos saw me he bade me forthwith to take up the child and carry it away and lay it on that part of the mountains which is most haunted by wild beasts, saying that it was Astyages who laid this task upon me, and using to me many threats, if I should fail to do this.

And I took it up and bore it away, supposing that it was the child of some one of the servants of the house, for never could I have supposed whence it really was; but I marvelled to see it adorned with gold and raiment, and I marvelled also because mourning was made for it openly in the house of Harpagos. And straightway as we went by the road, I learnt the whole of the matter from the servant who went with me out of the city and placed in my hands the babe, namely that it was in truth the son of Mandane the daughter of Astyages, and of Cambyses the son of Cyrus, and that Astyages bade slay it. And now here it is.”

*vocabulary***ἁλίσκομαι** be captured ~helix**βουκόλος** herdsman ~bovine**δακρύω** weep**δεσπότης** -ου (m, 1) master, despot**ἐκκαλύπτω** disclose, reveal**ἐκκειμαι** expose, set forth**ἐκτίθημι** place outside at a spot ~thesis**ἐπιφοιτάω** come habitually**εὐειδής** good-looking ~wit**ἐφοράω** look upon ~panorama**κατάσκοπος** spy, inspector**κυρέω** come upon, come up against;
obtain**μίν** him, her, it**περίειμι** be superior to; be left over;
still exist**προθέω** run from, lead to the fray**προτίθημι** prefer, set out ~thesis**ταφή** burial, grave**τέχνη** craft, art, plan, contrivance
~technology

1.112

ἄμα δὲ ταῦτα ἔλεγε ὁ βουκόλος καὶ ἐκκαλύψας ἀπεδείκνυε.
 ἦ δὲ ὡς εἶδε τὸ παιδίον μέγα τε καὶ εὐειδὲς ἐόν, δακρύσασα
 καὶ λαβομένη τῶν γουνάτων τοῦ ἀνδρὸς ἐχρήριζε μηδεμιῇ
 τέχνῃ ἐκθεῖναί μιν. ὁ δὲ οὐκ ἔφη οἷός τ' εἶναι ἄλλως
 αὐτὰ ποιέειν· ἐπιφοιτήσιν γὰρ κατασκόπους ἐξ Ἀρπάγου
 ἐποψομένους, ἀπολέεσθαί τε κάκιστα ἦν μὴ σφεα ποιήσῃ.
 Ὡς δὲ οὐκ ἔπειθε ἄρα τὸν ἄνδρα, δευτέρα λέγει ἡ γυνὴ
 τάδε. «ἐπεὶ τοίνυν οὐ δύναμαί σε πείθειν μὴ ἐκθεῖναι, σὺ
 δὲ ὦδε ποιήσον, εἰ δὴ πᾶσα ἀνάγκη ὀφθῆναι ἐκκείμενον.
 τέτοκα γὰρ καὶ ἐγώ, τέτοκα δὲ τεθνεὺς. τοῦτο μὲν
 φέρων πρόθεες, τὸν δὲ τῆς Ἀστυάγεος θυγατρὸς παῖδα ὡς
 ἐξ ἡμέων ἐόντα τρέφωμεν. καὶ οὕτω οὔτε σὺ ἀλώσσαι
 ἀδικέων τοὺς δεσπότας οὔτε ἡμῖν κακῶς βεβουλευμένα
 ἔσται· ὃ τε γὰρ τεθνεὺς βασιληῆς ταφῆς κυρήσει καὶ ὁ
 περιεὼν οὐκ ἀπολέει τὴν ψυχὴν.»

1.112

ἄμα δὲ ταῦτα ἔλεγε ὁ |herdsman καὶ |disclose, ἀπεδείκνυε.
|reveal

ἡ δὲ ὥς εἶδε τὸ παιδίον μέγα τε καὶ |good-looking |weep

καὶ λαβομένη τῶν γουνάτων τοῦ ἀνδρὸς ἐχρήριζε μηδεμιῇ

|craft |place outside . ὁ δὲ οὐκ ἔφη οἷός τ' εἶναι ἄλλως
|at a spot

αὐτὰ ποιέειν· |come habitually, ἄρ |spy, inspector ἐξ Ἀρπάγου

|look upon , ἀπολέεσθαί τε κάκιστα ἦν μὴ σφεα ποιήσῃ.

Ὡς δὲ οὐκ ἔπειθε ἄρα τὸν ἄνδρα, δευτέρα λέγει ἡ γυνή

τάδε. «ἐπεὶ τοίνυν οὐ δύναμαί σε πείθειν μὴ |place outside
|at a spot

δὲ ὦδε ποιήσον, εἰ δὴ πᾶσα ἀνάγκη ὀφθῆναι |expose, set forth

τέτοκα γὰρ καὶ ἐγώ, τέτοκα δὲ τεθνεός. τοῦτο μὲν

φέρων πρόθεσ, τὸν δὲ τῆς Ἀστυάγεος θυγατρὸς παῖδα ὥς

ἐξ ἡμέων ἔοντα τρέφωμεν. καὶ οὕτω οὔτε σὺ |be captured

ἀδικέων τοὺς |master, οὔτε ἡμῖν κακῶς βεβουλευμένα
|despot

ἔσται· ὅ τε γὰρ τεθνεὼς βασιληίης |burial, κυρήσει καὶ ὁ
|grave

|be superior to; |be |λέει τὴν ψυχὴν.»
|left over; still exist

1.112

And as he said this the herdsman uncovered it and showed it to her. And she, seeing that the child was large and of fair form, wept and clung to the knees of her husband, beseeching him by no means to lay it forth. But he said that he could not do otherwise than so, for watchers would come backwards and forwards sent by Harpagos to see that this was done, and he would perish by a miserable death if he should fail to do this. And as she could not after all persuade her husband, the wife next said as follows: "Since then I am unable to persuade thee not to lay it forth, do thou this which I shall tell thee, if indeed it needs must be seen laid forth. I also have borne a child, but I have borne it dead. Take this and expose it, and let us rear the child of the daughter of Astyages as if it were our own. Thus thou wilt not be found out doing a wrong to those whom we serve, nor shall we have taken ill counsel for ourselves; for the dead child will obtain a royal burial and the surviving one will not lose his life."

vocabulary

ἄγγος -εος (n, 3) container
 ἀποδείκνυμι (ῶ) show, point out;
 appoint; (mid) declare
 βουκόλος herdsman ~bovine
 δορυφόρος spear-bearing
 ἔκκειμαι expose, set forth
 ἐρῆμος empty

ἐτοιῖμος ready; fulfilled
 θανατόω kill ~euthanasia
 θάπτω bury ~epitaph
 κάρτα very much ~χράτος
 κοσμέω marshal, array ~cosmos
 νέκυς (ῶ) corpse, ghost ~necro
 προβοσκός assistant herdsman

1.113

κάρτα τε ἔδοξε τῷ, βουκόλῳ πρὸς τὰ παρεόντα εἰδὲ λέγειν ἢ γυνή, καὶ αὐτίκα ἐποίεε ταῦτα· τὸν μὲν ἔφερε θανατώσων παῖδα, τοῦτον μὲν παραδιδοῖ τῇ ἑωυτοῦ γυναικί, τὸν δὲ ἑωυτοῦ ἔοντα νεκρὸν λαβὼν ἔθηκε ἐς τὸ ἄγγος ἐν τῷ ἔφερε τὸν ἕτερον· κοσμήσας δὲ τῷ κόσμῳ παντὶ τοῦ ἑτέρου παιδός, φέρων ἐς τὸ ἐρημότατον τῶν ὀρέων τίθει. ὥς δὲ τρίτῃ ἡμέρῃ τῷ παιδίῳ ἐκκειμένῳ ἐγένετο, ἦγε ἐς πόλιν ὁ βουκόλος, τῶν τινα προβοσκῶν φύλακον αὐτοῦ καταλιπὼν, ἐλθὼν δὲ ἐς τοῦ Ἀρπάγου ἀποδεικνύναι ἔφη ἕτοιμος εἶναι τοῦ παιδίου τὸν νέκυν. πέμψας δὲ ὁ Ἄρπαγος τῶν ἑωυτοῦ δορυφόρων τοὺς πιστοτάτους εἶδὲ τε διὰ τούτων καὶ ἔθαιψε τοῦ βουκόλου τὸ παιδίον, καὶ τὸ μὲν ἐτέθαπτο, τὸν δὲ ὕστερον τούτων Κῦρον ὀνομασθέντα παραλαβοῦσα ἔτρεφε ἢ γυνὴ τοῦ βουκόλου, οὖνομα ἄλλο κού τι καὶ οὐ Κῦρον θεμένη.

1.113

|very much ὥδοξε τῷ, |herdsman πρὸς τὰ παρεόντα εὖ λέγειν ἢ
 γυνή, καὶ αὐτίκα ἐποίεε ταῦτα· τὸν μὲν ἔφερε |kill
 παῖδα, τοῦτον μὲν παραδιδοῖ τῇ ἑωυτοῦ γυναικί, τὸν
 δὲ ἑωυτοῦ ἐόντα νεκρὸν λαβὼν ἔθηκε ἐς τὸ |container·
 τῷ ἔφερε τὸν ἕτερον· |marshal, δὲ τῷ κόσμῳ παντὶ
 |array
 τοῦ ἑτέρου παιδός, φέρων ἐς τὸ ἐρημότατον τῶν ὁρέων
 τίθει. ὥς δὲ τρίτῃ ἡμέρῃ τῷ παιδίῳ |expose, set forth· ετο,
 ἥτε ἐς πόλιν ὁ |herdsman , τῶν τινα |assistant φύλακον
 |herdsman
 αὐτοῦ καταλιπὼν, ἐλθὼν δὲ ἐς τοῦ Ἀρπάγου |show, point out; appoint;
 |(mid) declare
 ἔφη ἕτοιμος εἶναι τοῦ παιδίου τὸν |corpse, πέμψας δὲ ὁ
 |ghost
 Ἄρπαγος τῶν ἑωυτοῦ |spear-bearing τοὺς πιστοτάτους εἰδέ
 τε διὰ τούτων καὶ |bury τοῦ |herdsman τὸ παιδίον, καὶ τὸ
 μὲν |bury , τὸν δὲ ὕστερον τούτων Κῦρον ὀνομασθέντα
 παραλαβοῦσα ἔτρεφε ἢ γυνὴ τοῦ |herdsman , οὖνομα ἄλλο
 κού τι καὶ οὐ Κῦρον θεμένη.

1.113

To the herdsman it seemed that, the case standing thus, his wife spoke well, and forthwith he did so. The child which he was bearing to put to death, this he delivered to his wife, and his own, which was dead, he took and placed in the chest in which he had been bearing the other; and having adorned it with all the adornment of the other child, he bore it to the most desolate part of the mountains and placed it there. And when the third day came after the child had been laid forth, the herdsman went to the city, leaving one of his under-herdsmen to watch there, and when he came to the house of Harpagos he said that he was ready to display the dead body of the child; and Harpagos sent the most trusted of his spearmen, and through them he saw and buried the herdsman's child. This then had had burial, but him who was afterwards called Cyrus the wife of the herdsman had received, and was bringing him up, giving him no doubt some other name, not Cyrus.

vocabulary

ἀγγελία message, news ~angel
 ἀνάξιος unworthy, undeserved
 ἀντάω meet face to face
 ἀποικτιζομαι complain loudly about
 βουκολία herd
 βουκόλος herdsman ~bovine
 γέρας -ως (n, 3) reward, honor
 δεκαέτης of 10 years
 διαλαμβάνω distribute
 διατάσσω arrange, array
 δόκιμος trustworthy; excellent
 δορυφόρος spear-bearing
 ἐκφαίνω bring to light ~photon
 ἐπίκλησις -τος (f) nickname;
 nominally ~gallo

ἥλιξ -κος (m) of the same age
 κάρτα very much ~κράτος
 κατέρχομαι come down, out from
 κώμη village
 μαστιγώω (i) whip
 μάστιξ -γος (f) whip
 μίν him, her, it
 οἰκοδομέω build, build a house
 παίζω play ~pediatrician
 περιημεκτέω be aggrieved
 προστάσσω post at, attach to,
 command
 συμπαίζω play with
 τοιόσδε such
 τραχύς (ᾱ) rough ~trachea

1.114

καὶ ὅτε ἦν δεκαέτης ὁ παῖς, πρῆγμα ἐς αὐτὸν τοιόνδε γενόμενον ἐξέφηνέ μιν. ἔπαιζε ἐν τῇ κώμῃ ταύτῃ ἐν τῇ ἦσαν καὶ αἱ βουκολίαι αὐται, ἔπαιζε δὲ μετ' ἄλλων ἡλίκων ἐν ὁδῷ. καὶ οἱ παῖδες παίζοντες εἴλοντο ἐωυτῶν βασιλέα εἶναι τοῦτον δὴ τὸν τοῦ βουκόλου ἐπίκλησιν παῖδα. ὁ δὲ αὐτῶν διέταξε τοὺς μὲν οἰκίας οἰκοδομέειν, τοὺς δὲ δορυφόρους εἶναι, τὸν δὲ κου τινὰ αὐτῶν ὀφθαλμὸν βασιλέος εἶναι, τῷ δὲ τινὶ τὰς ἀγγελίας φέρειν ἐδίδου γέρας, ὡς ἐκάστω ἔργον προστάσων.

εἰς δὴ τούτων τῶν παίδων συμπαίζων, ἐὼν Ἀρτεμβάρεος παῖς ἀνδρὸς δοκίμου ἐν Μήδοισι, οὐ γὰρ δὴ ἐποίησε τὸ προσταχθὲν ἐκ τοῦ Κύρου, ἐκέλευε αὐτὸν τοὺς ἄλλους παῖδας διαλαβεῖν, πειθομένων δὲ τῶν παίδων ὁ Κῦρος τὸν παῖδα τρηχέως κάρτα περιέσπε μαστιγέων. ὁ δὲ ἐπεῖτε μετείθη τάχιστα, ὡς γε δὴ ἀνάξια ἐωυτοῦ παθῶν, μᾶλλον τι περιημέκτεε, κατελθὼν δὲ ἐς πόλιν πρὸς τὸν πατέρα ἀποικτιζέτο τῶν ὑπὸ Κύρου ἦντησε, λέγων δὲ οὐ Κύρου

1.114

καὶ ὅτε ἦν |of 10 years ὁ παῖς, πρῆγμα ἐς αὐτὸν |such
γενόμενον |bring to light . |play ἐν τῇ |village ταύτῃ ἐν
τῇ ἦσαν καὶ αἱ |herd αὖται, |play δὲ μετ' ἄλλων
ἡλίκων ἐν ὁδῷ. καὶ οἱ παῖδες |play εἵλοντο ἐωντῶν
βασιλέα εἶναι τοῦτον δὴ τὸν τοῦ |herdsman |nickname;
|nominally
παῖδα. ὁ δὲ αὐτῶν |arrange, τοὺς μὲν οἰκίας |build, build a,
|array |house
τοὺς δὲ |spear-bearring εἶναι, τὸν δὲ κου τινὰ αὐτῶν ὀφθαλμὸν
βασιλέος εἶναι, τῷ δὲ τινὶ τὰς |message, news', εἰν ἐδίδου
|reward, ὡς ἐκάστω ἔργον |post at, attach
|honor |to, command
εἰς δὴ τούτων τῶν παίδων |play with , ἐὼν Ἀρτεμβάρεος
παῖς ἀνδρὸς |trustworthy; Μήδοισι, οὐ γὰρ δὴ ἐποίησε τὸ
|excellent
|post at, attach ἐκ τοῦ Κύρου, ἐκέλευε αὐτὸν τοὺς ἄλλους
|to, command
παῖδας |distribute , πειθομένων δὲ τῶν παίδων ὁ Κύρος τὸν
παῖδα τρηχέως |very much , μέσπε μαστιγέων. ὁ δὲ ἐπέιτε
μετείθη τάχιστα, ὡς γε δὴ |unworthy, ... τοῦ παθῶν, μᾶλλον
|undeserved
τι |be aggrieved , |come down, οὐδὲ ἀπὸ τῶν πατέρων
|complain τῶν ὑπὸ Κύρου |meet face to face δὲ οὐ Κύρου
|loudly about

1.114

And when the boy was ten years old, it happened with regard to him as follows, and this made him known. He was playing in the village in which were stalls for oxen, he was playing there, I say, with other boys of his age in the road. And the boys in their play chose as their king this one who was called the son of the herdsman: and he set some of them to build palaces and others to be spearmen of his guard, and one of them no doubt he appointed to be the eye of the king, and to one he gave the office of bearing the messages, appointing a work for each one severally.

Now one of these boys who was playing with the rest, the son of Artembares a man of repute among the Medes, did not do that which Cyrus appointed him to do; therefore Cyrus bade the other boys seize him hand and foot, and when they obeyed his command he dealt with the boy very roughly, scourging him. But he, so soon as he was let go, being made much more angry because he considered that he had been treated with indignity, went down to the city and complained to his father of the treatment which he had met with from

*vocabulary***ἄεικία** -είας disfiguring; unseemliness

~icon

ἀνάρσιος hostile, harmful ~harmony**βουκόλος** herdsman ~bovine**δεσπότης** -ου (m, 1) master, despot**κώμη** village**μεταπέμπω** send; (mid) summon

~pomp

παίζω play ~pediatrician**περιυβρίζω** insult wantonly**τιμωρέω** (i) (+dat) take vengeance,
punish; aid one who has been attacked**τοιόσδε** such

οὐ γάρ κω ἦν τοῦτο τοῦνομα, ἀλλὰ πρὸς τοῦ βουκόλου τοῦ Ἀστυάγεος παιδός. ὁ δὲ Ἀρτεμβάρης ὀργῇ ὥς εἶχε ἐλθὼν παρὰ τὸν Ἀστυάγεα καὶ ἅμα ἀγόμενος τὸν παῖδα ἀνάρσια πρήγματα ἔφη πεπονθέναι, λέγων «ὦ βασιλεῦ, ὑπὸ τοῦ σοῦ δούλου, βουκόλου δὲ παιδὸς ὧδε περιωβρίσμεθα,» δεικνὺς τοῦ παιδὸς τοὺς ὤμους.

1.115

ἀκούσας δὲ καὶ ἰδὼν Ἀστυάγης, θέλων τιμωρῆσαι τῷ παιδί τιμῆς τῆς Ἀρτεμβάρους εἵνεκα, μετεπέμπετο τὸν τε βουκόλον καὶ τὸν παῖδα. ἐπεῖτε δὲ παρήσαν ἀμφότεροι, βλέψας πρὸς τὸν Κῦρον ὁ Ἀστυάγης ἔφη «σὺ δὴ ἐὼν τοῦδε τοιούτου ἐόντος παῖς ἐτόλμησας τὸν τοῦδε παῖδα ἐόντος πρώτου παρ' ἐμοὶ ἀεικεῖν τοιγῆδε περισπεῖν;» ὁ δὲ ἀμείβετο ὧδε.

«ὦ δέσποτα, ἐγὼ ταῦτα τοῦτον ἐποίησα σὺν δίκῃ. οἱ γάρ με ἐκ τῆς κώμης παῖδες, τῶν καὶ ὅδε ἦν, παίζοντες σφέων αὐτῶν ἐστήσαντο βασιλέα· ἐδόκεον γὰρ σφί εἶναι ἐς τοῦτο

οὐ γάρ κω ἦν τοῦτο τοῦνομα, ἀλλὰ πρὸς τοῦ |herdsman τοῦ
 Ἀστυάγεος παιδός. ὁ δὲ Ἀρτεμβάρης ὀργῇ ὥς εἶχε ἐλθὼν
 παρὰ τὸν Ἀστυάγεα καὶ ἅμα ἀγόμενος τὸν παῖδα |hostile,
 |harmful
 πρήγματα ἔφη πεπονθέναι, λέγων «ὦ βασιλεῦ, ὑπὸ τοῦ
 σοῦ δούλου, |herdsman δὲ παιδὸς ὧδε |insult wantonly ,»
 δεικνὺς τοῦ παιδὸς τοὺς ὤμους.

1.115

ἀκούσας δὲ καὶ ἰδὼν Ἀστυάγης, θέλων |take vengeance, |
 |punish, aid
 παιδὶ τιμῆς τῆς Ἀρτεμβάρεος εἵνεκα, |send; (mid) summon . -
 |herdsman καὶ τὸν παῖδα. ἐπεῖτε δὲ παρήσαν ἀμφοτέροι,
 βλέψας πρὸς τὸν Κῦρον ὁ Ἀστυάγης ἔφη «σὺ δὴ ἐὼν
 τοῦδε τοιούτου ἐόντος παῖς ἐτόλμησας τὸν τοῦδε παῖδα
 ἐόντος πρώτου παρ' ἐμοὶ |disfig- |such περισπεῖν;» ὁ δὲ
 ἀμείβετο ὧδε. |uring;
 |unseem-
 |liness

«ὦ |master, |despot , ἐγὼ ταῦτα τοῦτον ἐποίησα σὺν δίκῃ. οἱ γάρ
 με ἐκ τῆς |village παῖδες, τῶν καὶ ὅδε ἦν, |play σφέων
 αὐτῶν ἐστήσαντο βασιλέα· ἐδόκεον γὰρ σφί εἶναι ἐς τοῦτο

Cyrus, calling him not Cyrus, for this was not yet his name, but the son of the herdsman of Astyages. And Artembares in the anger of the moment went at once to Astyages, taking the boy with him, and he declared that he had suffered things that were unfitting and said: “O king, by thy slave, the son of a herdsman, we have been thus outraged,” showing him the shoulders of his son.

1.115

And Astyages having heard and seen this, wishing to punish the boy to avenge the honour of Artembares, sent for both the herdsman and his son. And when both were present, Astyages looked at Cyrus and said: “Didst thou dare, being the son of so mean a father as this, to treat with such unseemly insult the son of this man who is first in my favour?”

And he replied thus: “Master, I did so to him with right. For the boys of the village, of whom he also was one, in their play set me up as king over them, for I appeared to them most

vocabulary

ἀνάγνωσις -εως (f) recognition,
reading

ἀναφέρω bring up ~bear

ἀνηκουστέω ignore, disobey ~acoustic

ἄφθογγος speechless

βασανίζω interrogate, test, torture

βουκόλος herdsman ~bovine

εἴσειμι go in; come in range; come to
mind ~ion

ἐκθεσις exposure, exposition

ἐκπλήσσω panic, be knocked out
~plectrum

ἐλεύθερος not enslaved

ἐπιμέμφομαι blame

ἐπιτάσσω enjoin; place near

ἐπιτελέω complete; do a religious duty

εὖς good, brave, noble

ἡλικία time of life, contemporaries

θεράπων -οντος (m, 3) helper,
henchman, servant ~therapy

μόγισ with difficulty, barely

ὄον οὖ type of fruit

ὑπόκρισις -εως (f) answer; acting,
hypocrisy

χαρακτήρ -ος (m) stamp; characteristic

ἐπιτηδεότατος. οἱ μὲν νυν ἄλλοι παῖδες τὰ ἐπιτασσόμενα
ἐπετέλεον, οὗτος δὲ ἀνηκούστεέ τε καὶ λόγον εἶχε οὐδένα,
ἐς ὃ ἔλαβὲ τὴν δίκην. εἰ ὦν δὴ τοῦδε εἵνεκα ἄξιός τευ κακοῦ
εἰμί, ὅδε τοὶ πάρειμι.»

1.116

ταῦτα λέγοντος τοῦ παιδὸς τὸν Ἀστυάγεα ἐσήμει
ἀνάγνωσις αὐτοῦ, καὶ οἱ ὅ τε χαρακτήρ τοῦ προσώπου
προσφέρεσθαι ἐδόκεε ἐς ἑωυτὸν καὶ ἡ ὑπόκρισις
ἐλευθερωτέρη εἶναι, ὅ τε χρόνος τῆς ἐκθέσιος τῇ
ἡλικίῃ τοῦ παιδὸς ἐδόκεε συμβαίνειν. ἐκπλαγεὶς δὲ
τούτοισι ἐπὶ χρόνον ἄφθογγος ἦν· μόγισ δὲ δὴ κοτε
ἀνενειχθεὶς εἶπε, θέλων ἐκπέμψαι τὸν Ἀρτεμβάρεα, ἵνα
τὸν βουκόλον μόνον λαβὼν βασανίσῃ, «Ἀρτέμβαρες,
ἐγὼ ταῦτα ποιήσω ὥστε σὲ καὶ τὸν παῖδα τὸν σὸν μηδὲν
ἐπιμέμψεσθαι.»

τὸν μὲν δὴ Ἀρτεμβάρεα πέμπει, τὸν δὲ Κῦρον ἡγον ἔσω
οἱ θεράποντες κελεύσαντος τοῦ Ἀστυάγεος, ἐπεὶ δὲ

ἐπιτηδεότατος. οἱ μὲν νυν ἄλλοι παῖδες τὰ |enjoin; place
|near
|complete; do a^τος δὲ |ignore, τε καὶ λόγον εἶχε οὐδένα,
|religious duty |disobey
ἐς ὃ ἔλαβὲ τὴν δίκην. εἰ ὦν δὴ τοῦδε εἵνεκα ἄξιός τευ κακοῦ
εἰμί, ὅδε τοὶ πάρεμι.»

1.116

ταῦτα λέγοντος τοῦ παιδὸς τὸν Ἀστυάγεα ἐσήμ
|recognition, αὐτοῦ, καὶ οἱ ὅ τε |stamp; char- οὔ προσώπου
|reading |acteristic
προσφέρεσθαι ἐδόκεε ἐς ἑωυτὸν καὶ ἡ |answer; acting,
|hypocrisy
|not enslaved εἶναι, ὅ τε χρόνος τῆς |exposure, τῇ
|exposition
|time of life, con- αιδὸς ἐδόκεε συμβαίνειν. |panic, be δὲ
|temporaries |knocked out
τούτοισι ἐπὶ χρόνον |speechless ἦν· |with difficulty, |κοτε
|barely
|bring up εἶπε, θέλων ἐκπέμψαι τὸν Ἀρτεμβάρεα, ἵνα
τὸν |herdsman μῶνον λαβὼν |interrogate, «Ἀρτέμβαρες,
|test, torture
ἐγὼ ταῦτα ποιήσω ὥστε σὲ καὶ τὸν παῖδα τὸν σὸν μηδὲν
|blame .»

τὸν μὲν δὴ Ἀρτεμβάρεα πέμπει, τὸν δὲ Κῦρον ἡγον ἔσω
οἱ |companion κελεύσαντος τοῦ Ἀστυάγεος, ἐπεὶ δὲ

fitted for this place. Now the other boys did what I commanded them, but this one disobeyed and paid no regard, until at last he received the punishment due. If therefore for this I am worthy to suffer any evil, here I stand before thee.”

1.116

While the boy thus spoke, there came upon Astyages a sense of recognition of him and the lineaments of his face seemed to him to resemble his own, and his answer appeared to be somewhat over free for his station, while the time of the laying forth seemed to agree with the age of the boy. Being struck with amazement by these things, for a time he was speechless; and having at length with difficulty recovered himself, he said, desiring to dismiss Artembares, in order that he might get the herdsman by himself alone and examine him: “Artembares, I will so order these things that thou and thy son shall have no cause to find fault”; and so he dismissed Artembares, and the servants upon the command of Astyages led Cyrus within. And

vocabulary

βουκόλος herdsman ~bovine

διέξειμι pass through; recount ~ion

δορυφόρος spear-bearing

ἐκφαίνω bring to light ~photon

κόθεν from where?

λιτή prayer ~litany

μέμφομαι blame; reject

μίν him, her, it

μόρος portion, lot in life

σημαίνω give orders to; show; mark

~semaphore

συγγιγνώσκω acknowledge; pardon

συγγνώμη sympathy, leniency

ὑπολείπω leave as a leftover; leave a person behind ~eclipse

ὑπελέλειπτο ὁ βουκόλος μῶνος μουνόθεν, τάδε αὐτὸν εἶρετο ὁ Ἄστυάγεος, κόθην λάβοι τὸν παῖδα καὶ τίς εἴη ὁ παραδούς. ὁ δὲ ἐξ ἑωυτοῦ τε ἔφη γεγονέναι καὶ τὴν τεκοῦσαν αὐτὸν εἶναι ἔτι παρ' ἑωυτῷ. Ἄστυάγης δὲ μιν οὐκ¹ εὖ βουλευέσθαι ἔφη ἐπιθυμέοντα² ἐς ἀνάγκας³ μεγάλας ἀπικνέεσθαι, ἅμα τε λέγων ταῦτα ἐσήμαινε τοῖσι δορυφόροισι λαμβάνειν αὐτόν. ὁ δὲ ἀγόμενος ἐς τὰς ἀνάγκας οὕτω δὴ ἔφαινε τὸν ἔοντα λόγον· ἀρχόμενος δὲ ἀπ' ἀρχῆς διεξήιε τῇ ἀληθείῃ χρεώμενος, καὶ κατέβαινε ἐς λιτάς τε καὶ συγγνώμην ἑωυτῷ κελεύων ἔχειν αὐτόν.

1.117

Ἄστυάγης δὲ τοῦ μὲν βουκόλου τὴν ἀληθείην ἐκφήναντος λόγον ἤδη καὶ ἐλάσσω ἐποιέετο, Ἀρπάγῳ δὲ καὶ μεγάλως μεμφόμενος καλέειν αὐτὸν τοὺς δορυφόρους ἐκέλευε. ὥς δέ οἱ παρήν ὁ Ἄρπαγος, εἶρετό μιν ὁ Ἄστυάγης «Ἄρπαγε, τέῳ δὴ μόρῳ τὸν παῖδα κατεχρήσαο τόν τοι παρέδωκα ἐκ θυγατρὸς γεγονότα τῆς ἐμῆς;»

¹ told him he was making a bad decision ² (ironic) ³ torture

|leave (food, per-|herdsman μούνος μουνόθεν, τάδε αὐτὸν
 |son)
 εἶρετο ὁ Ἀστυάγεος, |from where?.. τὸν παῖδα καὶ τίς εἶη
 ὁ παραδούς. ὁ δὲ ἐξ ἑωυτοῦ τε ἔφη γεγονέναι καὶ τὴν
 τεκοῦσαν αὐτὸν εἶναι ἔτι παρ' ἑωυτῷ. Ἀστυάγης δὲ
 μιν οὐκ¹ εὖ βουλευέσθαι ἔφη ἐπιθυμέοντα² ἐς ἀνάγκας³
 μεγάλας ἀπικνέεσθαι, ἅμα τε λέγων ταῦτα |give orders to; |
 |show; mark
 |spear-brearing λαμβάνειν αὐτόν. ὁ δὲ ἀγόμενος ἐς τὰς
 ἀνάγκας οὕτω δὴ ἔφαινε τὸν ἔοντα λόγον· ἀρχόμενος δὲ
 ἀπ' ἀρχῆς διεξήιε τῇ ἀληθείῃ χρεώμενος, καὶ κατέβαινε ἐς
 |prayer τε καὶ συγγνώμην ἑωυτῷ κελεύων ἔχειν αὐτόν.

1.117

Ἀστυάγης δὲ τοῦ μὲν |herdsman τὴν ἀληθείην |bring to light
 λόγον ἤδη καὶ ἐλάσσω ἐποιέετο, Ἀρπάγω δὲ καὶ
 μεγάλως |blame; reject καλέειν αὐτὸν τοὺς |spear-brearing
 ἐκέλευε. ὥς δέ οἱ παρήν ὁ Ἄρπαγος, εἶρετό μιν ὁ
 Ἀστυάγης «Ἄρπαγε, τέω δὴ |portion, lot in life... κατεχρήσαο
 τόν τοι παρέδωκα ἐκ θυγατρὸς γεγονότα τῆς ἐμῆς;»

¹ told him he was making a bad decision ² (ironic) ³ torture

when the herdsman was left alone with the king, Astyages being alone with him asked whence he had received the boy, and who it was who had delivered the boy to him. And the herdsman said that he was his own son, and that the mother was living with him still as his wife. But Astyages said that he was not well advised in desiring to be brought to extreme necessity, and as he said this he made a sign to the spearmen of his guard to seize him. So he, as he was being led away to the torture, then declared the story as it really was; and beginning from the beginning he went through the whole, telling the truth about it, and finally ended with entreaties, asking that he would grant him pardon.

1.117

So when the herdsman had made known the truth, Astyages now cared less about him, but with Harpagos he was very greatly displeased and bade his spearmen summon him. And when Harpagos came, Astyages asked him thus: “By what death, Harpagos, didst thou destroy the child whom I delivered to thee, born of my

vocabulary

ἁλίσκομαι be captured ~helix
ἀναμάρτητος blameless
ἀπειλέω vow, threaten, boast
αὐθέντης -ου (m, 1) murderer; doer
ἄχρι as far as (+gen); until
βουκόλος herdsman ~bovine
ἐλέγχω shame; try, examine
ἐντέλλω (mp) command
ἐπιτελής accomplished
ἐρῆμος empty
εὐνοῦχος eunuch

θάπτω bury ~epitaph
μίν him, her, it
μóρος portion, lot in life
παντοῖος all kinds of
παραμένω stay with ~remain
σκοπάω watch, observe
σκοπέω behold, consider
σκοπός (f) lookout, overseer, spy,
 target ~telescope
ψευδής lying, false ~pseudo-
ψεύδω be false, deceive; (mid) to lie
 ~pseudo-

Ὁ δὲ Ἄρπαγος ὡς εἶδε τὸν βουκόλον ἔνδον ἐόντα, οὐ
τρέπεται ἐπὶ ψευδέα ὁδόν, ἵνα μὴ ἐλεγχόμενος ἀλίσκηται,
ἀλλὰ λέγει τάδε. «ὦ βασιλεῦ, ἐπεῖτε παρέλαβον τὸ
παιδίον, ἐβούλευον σκοπέων ὅκως σοί τε ποιήσω κατὰ
νόον, καὶ ἐγὼ πρὸς σέ γινόμενος ἀναμάρτητος μήτε
θυγατρὶ τῇ σῇ μήτε αὐτῷ σοὶ εἶην αὐθέντης. ποιέω
δὴ ὧδε· καλέσας τὸν βουκόλον τόνδε παραδίδωμι τὸ
παιδίον, φὰς σέ τε εἶναι τὸν κελεύοντα ἀποκτεῖναι αὐτό.
καὶ λέγων τοῦτό γε οὐκ ἐψευδόμην· σὺ γὰρ ἐνετέλλεο
οὕτω. παραδίδωμι μέντοι τῷδε κατὰ τάδε ἐντειλάμενος,
θεῖναι μιν ἐς ἔρημον ὄρος καὶ παραμένοντα φυλάσσειν
ἄχρι οὗ τελευτήσῃ, ἀπειλήσας παντοῖα τῷδε ἦν μὴ
τάδε ἐπιτελέα ποιήσῃ. ἐπεῖτε δὲ ποιήσαντος τούτου τὰ
κελευόμενα ἐτελεύτησε τὸ παιδίον, πέμψας τῶν εὐνούχων
τοὺς πιστοτάτους καὶ εἶδον δι' ἐκείνων καὶ ἔθαψά μιν.
οὕτω ἔσχε ὦ βασιλεῦ περὶ τοῦ πράγματος τούτου, καὶ
τοιούτῳ μὶν ἔχρησατο ὁ παῖς.»

Ὁ δὲ Ἄρπαγος ὡς εἶδε τὸν |herdsman ἔνδον ἐόντα, οὐ
 τρέπεται ἐπὶ |lying, ὁδόν, ἵνα μὴ |shame; try, ex-|be captured,
 |false |amine
 ἀλλὰ λέγει τάδε. «ὦ βασιλεῦ, ἐπεῖτε παρέλαβον τὸ
 παιδίον, ἐβούλευον σκοπέων ὅκως σοί τε ποιήσω κατὰ
 νόον, καὶ ἐγὼ πρὸς σέ γινόμενος |blameless μήτε
 θυγατρὶ τῇ σῇ μήτε αὐτῷ σοὶ εἶην |murderer; doer. μίῃ
 δὴ ὦδε· καλέσας τὸν |herdsman τόνδε παραδίδωμι τὸ
 παιδίον, φὰς σέ τε εἶναι τὸν κελεύοντα ἀποκτεῖναι αὐτό.
 καὶ λέγων τοῦτό γε οὐκ |be false, deceive; γὰρ ἐνετέλλεο
 |(mid) to lie
 οὕτω. παραδίδωμι μέντοι τῷδε κατὰ τάδε ἐντειλάμενος,
 θεῖναι μιν ἐς ἔρημον ὄρος καὶ |stay with φυλάσσειν
 |as far^ο as λευτήσῃ, |vow, threaten, |all kinds of ὦδε ἦν μὴ
 |(+gen); until |boast
 τάδε |accomplished. ἤσῃ. ἐπεῖτε δὲ ποιήσαντος τούτου τὰ
 κελεύόμενα ἐτελεύτησε τὸ παιδίον, πέμψας τῶν |eunuch
 τοὺς πιστοτάτους καὶ εἶδον δι' ἐκείνων καὶ |bury μιν.
 οὕτω ἔσχε ὦ βασιλεῦ περὶ τοῦ πρήγματος τούτου, καὶ
 τοιούτῳ |portion, lot in life. ὁ παῖς.»

daughter?"

And Harpagos, seeing that the herdsman was in the king's palace, turned not to any false way of speech, lest he should be convicted and found out, but said as follows: "O king, so soon as I received the child, I took counsel and considered how I should do according to thy mind, and how without offence to thy command I might not be guilty of murder against thy daughter and against thyself. I did therefore thus:— I called this herdsman and delivered the child to him, saying first that thou wert he who bade him slay it— and in this at least I did not lie, for thou didst so command. I delivered it, I say, to this man commanding him to place it upon a desolate mountain, and to stay by it and watch it until it should die, threatening him with all kinds of punishment if he should fail to accomplish this. And when he had done that which was ordered and the child was dead, I sent the most trusted of my eunuchs and through them I saw and buried the child. Thus, O king, it happened about this matter, and the child had this death which I say."

vocabulary

ἀπηγέομαι lead; tell, relate
ἀποπέμπω send away ~pomp
βουκόλος herdsman ~bovine
διαβάλλω throw across; slander
 ~ballistic
ἐλαφρός nimble, light on one's feet;
 light, bearable ~elevator
ἐνέχω hold inside
εὖς good, brave, noble
θύω (ῥ) rush; sacrifice ~θύω
κάμνω toil, be tired, acquire by toil; be

troubled; be sick
κρύπτω hide, cover ~cryptic
ὄον οὐ type of fruit
περίειμι be superior to; be left over;
 still exist
πρόκειμαι be placed by; be devoted to
προσκυνέω kow tow to; kiss
σῶστρον reward, offering of thanks
τύχη fortune, act of a god
χόλος gall, anger, wrath, bitterness
 ~choler
χρηστός useful; brave, worthy

1.118

Ἄρπαγος μὲν δὴ τὸν ἰθὺν ἔφαινε λόγον· Ἀστυάγης δὲ κρύπτων τὸν οἱ ἐνείχε χόλον διὰ τὸ γεγονός, πρῶτα μὲν, κατὰ περ ἤκουσε αὐτὸς πρὸς τοῦ βουκόλου τὸ πρῆγμα, πάλιν ἀπηγέετο τῷ Ἀρπάγῳ, μετὰ δὲ ὥς οἱ ἐπαλλλόγητο, κατέβαινε λέγων ὡς περίεστί τε ὁ παῖς καὶ τὸ γεγονός ἔχει καλῶς· «τῷ τε γὰρ πεποιημένῳ» ἔφη λέγων «ἐς τὸν παῖδα τοῦτον ἔκαμνον μέγας, καὶ θυγατρὶ τῇ ἐμῇ διαβεβλημένος οὐκ¹ ἐν ἐλαφρῷ ἐποιεύμην. ὥς ὦν τῆς τύχης εὖ μετεστεώσης, τοῦτο μὲν τὸν σεωυτοῦ παῖδα ἀπόπεμψον παρὰ τὸν παῖδα τὸν νεήλυδα, τοῦτο δὲ σῶστρα γὰρ τοῦ παιδὸς μέλλω θύειν τοῖσι θεῶν τιμὴ αὕτη προσκέεται πάρισθί μοι ἐπὶ δείπνον.»

1.119

Ἄρπαγος μὲν ὡς ἤκουσε ταῦτα, προσκυνήσας καὶ μεγάλα ποιησάμενος ὅτι τε ἡ ἀμαρτὰς οἱ ἐς δέον ἐγεγόνεε καὶ ὅτι ἐπὶ τύχησι χρηστῇσι ἐπὶ δείπνον ἐκέκλητο, ἦι ἐς

¹ not lightly

1.118

So Harpagos declared the truth, and Astyages concealed the anger which he kept against him for that which had come to pass, and first he related the matter over again to Harpagos according as he had been told it by the herdsman, and afterwards, when it had been thus repeated by him, he ended by saying that the child was alive and that that which had come to pass was well, “for,” continued he, “I was greatly troubled by that which had been done to this child, and I thought it no light thing that I had been made at variance with my daughter. Therefore consider that this is a happy change of fortune, and first send thy son to be with the boy who is newly come, and then, seeing that I intend to make a sacrifice of thanksgiving for the preservation of the boy to those gods to whom that honour belongs, be here thyself to dine with me.”

1.119

When Harpagos heard this, he did reverence and thought it a great matter that his offence had turned out for his profit and moreover that he had been invited to dinner with happy augury; and so he went

*vocabulary***ἄκρον** crest, extremity ~acute**ἄκρος** at the edge, extreme ~acute**ἄλις** in plenty; enough ~helix**βορά** meat**βορέας** -οῦ (m, 1) north, north wind**βορός** gluttonous**δαιτυμών** -όνος (m, 3) dinner guest
~demon**διαιρέω** divide, distinguish, distribute**ἐπίπλεος** very full**ἐτοιμός** ready; fulfilled**εὖτυχος** well built; ready**ἔψω** boil, be boiling**ἡδομαι** be pleased, enjoy ~hedonism**θοίνα** meal, feast; food**κάνεον** basket**κάρτα** very much ~κράτος**κατακαλύπτω** cover up**κρέας** -ως (n) meat ~creatine**μέλεος** vain, idle, useless**μέλος** -ους (n, 3) limb; melody**μηλέα** -ῆς apple tree**μῆλον** sheep, small livestock; apple,
tree fruit**μίν** him, her, it**όπτάω** roast, bake**παρατίθηναι** put near, put at risk
~thesis**παραφέρω** serve; carry past; outdo**περιχαρής** very glad**πρόκειμαι** be placed by; be devoted to**συγκυρέω** meet or happen by chance**σφάζω** cut the throat**τράπεζα** a table ~trapezoid**χωρίς** separately; except, other than
~heir

τὰ οἰκία. ἐσελθὼν δὲ τὴν ταχίστην, ἣν γὰρ οἱ παῖς εἷς
μοῦνος ἔτεα τρία καὶ δέκα κου μάλιστα γεγονώς, τοῦτον
ἐκπέμπειν ἵεναι τε κελεύων ἐς Ἀστυάγεος καὶ ποιέειν ὅ
τι ἂν ἐκεῖνος κελεύῃ, αὐτὸς δὲ περιχαρὴς ἔων φράζει τῇ
γυναικὶ τὰ¹ συγκυρήσαντα.

Ἀστυάγης δέ, ὥς οἱ ἀπύκετο ὁ Ἀρπάγου παῖς, σφάξας
αὐτὸν καὶ κατὰ μέλεα διελὼν τὰ μὲν ὥπτησε τὰ δὲ ἤψησε
τῶν κρεῶν, εὖτυκα δὲ ποιησάμενος εἶχε ἔτοιμα.

ἐπεῖτε δὲ τῆς ὥρης γινομένης τοῦ δείπνου παρήσαν οἱ τε
ἄλλοι δαιτυμόνες καὶ ὁ Ἄρπαγος, τοῖσι μὲν ἄλλοισι καὶ
αὐτῷ Ἀστυάγεϊ παρετιθέατο τράπεζαι ἐπίπλεαι μηλέων
κρεῶν, Ἀρπάγῳ δὲ τοῦ παιδὸς τοῦ ἑωυτοῦ, πλὴν κεφαλῆς
τε καὶ ἄκρων χειρῶν τε καὶ ποδῶν, τᾶλλα πάντα· ταῦτα
δὲ χωρὶς ἔκειτο ἐπὶ κανέῳ κατακεκαλυμμένα, ὥς δὲ τῷ
Ἀρπάγῳ ἐδόκεε ἄλλῃς ἔχειν τῆς βορῆς, Ἀστυάγης εἴρετό
μιν εἰ ἡσθείη τι τῇ θοίνῃ. φαμένου δὲ Ἀρπάγου καὶ κάρτα
ἡσθῆναι, παρέφερον τοῖσι προσέκειτο τὴν κεφαλὴν τοῦ

¹ his own house

τὰ οἰκία. ἐσελθὼν δὲ τὴν ταχίστην, ἣν γὰρ οἱ παῖς εἶς
 μῶνος ἔτεα τρία καὶ δέκα κου μάλιστα γεγονώς, τοῦτον
 ἐκπέμπειν ἵεναι τε κελεύων ἐς Ἀστυάγεος καὶ ποιέειν ὅ
 τι ἂν ἐκεῖνος κελεύῃ, αὐτὸς δὲ |very glad ἐὼν φράζει τῇ

γυναικὶ τὰ¹ |συγκυρέω?: meet or happen by chance; or
 |συγκυρέω?: meet or happen by chance

Ἀστυάγης δέ, ὥς οἱ ἀπῖκετο ὁ Ἀρπάγου παῖς, |cut the throat
 αὐτὸν καὶ κατὰ μέλεα |divide, |distin-|roast, bake ἡ δὲ |boil, be boiling
 |guish, distribute
 τῶν |meat |well built; ready, |τάμενος εἶχε ἔτοιμα.

ἐπεῖτε δὲ τῆς ὥρης γινομένης τοῦ δείπνου παρήσαν οἱ τε
 ἄλλοι |dinner guest καὶ ὁ Ἄρπαγος, τοῖσι μὲν ἄλλοισι καὶ
 αὐτῷ Ἀστυάγεϊ |put near, put at|a table |very full |μηλέων
 |risk
 |meat |Ἀρπάγῳ δὲ τοῦ παιδὸς τοῦ ἐωντοῦ, πλὴν κεφαλῆς
 τε καὶ ἄκρων χειρῶν τε καὶ ποδῶν, τᾶλλα πάντα· ταῦτα

δὲ |separately;... except,|basket |cover up , ὥς δὲ τῷ
 |other than

Ἀρπάγῳ ἐδόκεε |in plenty; enough |τορῆς, Ἀστυάγης εἵρετό
 μιν εἰ ἡσθείη τι τῇ θοίνῃ. φαμένου δὲ Ἀρπάγου καὶ |very much

|be pleased,|serve; carry τοῖσι προσέκειτο τὴν κεφαλὴν τοῦ
 |enjoy |past; outdo

¹ his own house

to his house. And having entered it straightway, he sent forth his son, for he had one only son of about thirteen years old, bidding him go to the palace of Astyages and do whatsoever the king should command; and he himself being overjoyed told his wife that which had befallen him.

But Astyages, when the son of Harpagos arrived, cut his throat and divided him limb from limb, and having roasted some pieces of the flesh and boiled others he caused them to be dressed for eating and kept them ready. And when the time arrived for dinner and the other guests were present and also Harpagos, then before the other guests and before Astyages himself were placed tables covered with flesh of sheep; but before Harpagos was placed the flesh of his own son, all but the head and the hands and the feet, and these were laid aside covered up in a basket. Then when it seemed that Harpagos was satisfied with food, Astyages asked him whether he had been pleased with the banquet; and when Harpagos said that he had been very greatly pleased, they who had been commanded to do this brought to him the head of his son

*vocabulary***ἀλίζω** gather, assemble**ἀναλαμβάνω** take up, recover, resume**ἀποκαλύπτω** uncover, reveal**ἀρεστός** satisfactory, pleasing**βασιλεύω** be king**ἐκπλήσσω** panic, be knocked out

~plectrum

ἐνθεῦτεν thence**ἐντός** within**ἐνύπνιος** seen in dreams**ἐπιζώννυμι** (ῥ) gird on**ἔρδω** do, perform ~ergonomics**θάπτω** bury ~epitaph**κατακαλύπτω** cover up**κρέας** -ως (n) meat ~creatine**λεῖμμα** -τος (n, 3) remnant, residue**ὄψις** ὄψεως (f) sight, view

~thanatopsis

προσίστημι set against; (mp) stand
near

παιδὸς κατακεκαλυμμένην καὶ τὰς χεῖρας καὶ τοὺς πόδας,
 Ἄρπαγον δὲ ἐκέλευον προσστάντες ἀποκαλύπτειν τε καὶ
 λαβεῖν τὸ βούλεται αὐτῶν. πειθόμενος δὲ ὁ Ἄρπαγος
 καὶ ἀποκαλύπτων ὁρᾷ τοῦ παιδὸς τὰ λείμματα, ἰδὼν δὲ
 οὔτε ἐξεπλάγη ἐντός τε ἑωυτοῦ γίνεται. εἶρετο δὲ αὐτὸν
 ὁ Ἀστυάγης εἰ γνώσκοι ὅτεν θηρίου κρέα βεβρώκοι. ὁ δὲ
 καὶ γνώσκειν ἔφη καὶ ἀρεστὸν εἶναι πᾶν τὸ ἂν βασιλεὺς
 ἔρδῃ. τούτοισι δὲ ἀμειψάμενος καὶ ἀναλαβὼν τὰ λοιπὰ
 τῶν κρεῶν ἦγε εἰς τὰ οἰκία, ἐνθεῦτεν δὲ ἔμελλε, ὥς ἐγὼ
 δοκέω, ἀλίσσας θάψειν τὰ πάντα.

1.120

Ἀρπάγῳ μὲν Ἀστυάγης δίκην ταύτην ἐπέθηκε, Κύπου
 δὲ πέρι βουλευῶν ἐκάλεε τοὺς αὐτοὺς τῶν Μάγων οἱ
 τὸ ἐνύπνιον οἱ ταύτῃ ἔκριναν. ἀπικομένους δὲ εἶρετο ὁ
 Ἀστυάγης τῇ ἔκρινάν οἱ τὴν ὄψιν. οἱ δὲ κατὰ ταῦτα εἶπαν
 λέγοντες ὥς βασιλεῦσαι χρῆν τὸν παῖδα, εἰ ἐπέζωσε καὶ
 μὴ ἀπέθανε πρότερον. ὁ δὲ ἀμείβεται αὐτοὺς τοῖσιδε.

παιδὸς |cover up καὶ τὰς χεῖρας καὶ τοὺς πόδας,
 Ἄρπαγον δὲ ἐκέλευον |set against; (mp)|uncover, reveal τε καὶ
 |stand near
 λαβεῖν τὸ βούλεται αὐτῶν. πειθόμενος δὲ ὁ Ἄρπαγος
 καὶ |uncover, reveal ὁρᾷ τοῦ παιδὸς τὰ |remnant, , ἰδὼν δὲ
 |residue
 οὔτε |panic, be|within τε ἑωυτοῦ γίνεται. εἶρετο δὲ αὐτὸν
 |knocked
 οὐτ
 ὁ Ἀστυάγης εἰ γινώσκοι ὅτεν θηρίου |meat βεβρώκοι. ὁ δὲ
 καὶ γινώσκειν ἔφη καὶ |satisfactory, |...ναι πᾶν τὸ ἂν βασιλεὺς
 |pleasing
 |do . τούτοισι δὲ ἀμειψάμενος καὶ |take up, re- ἂ λοιπὰ
 |cover, resume
 τῶν |meat ἦε ἐς τὰ οἰκία, |thence δὲ ἔμελλε, ὥς ἐγὼ
 δοκέω, |gather, |bury τὰ πάντα.
 |assemble

1.120

Ἀρπάγῳ μὲν Ἀστυάγης δίκην ταύτην ἐπέθηκε, Κύπου
 δὲ πέρι βουλεύων ἐκάλεε τοὺς αὐτοὺς τῶν Μάγων οἱ
 τὸ ἐνύπνιον οἱ ταύτῃ ἔκριναν. ἀπικομένους δὲ εἶρετο ὁ
 Ἀστυάγης τῇ ἔκρινάν οἱ τὴν |sight. οἱ δὲ κατὰ ταῦτὰ εἶπαν
 λέγοντες ὥς |be king χρῆν τὸν παῖδα, εἰ ἐπέζωσε καὶ
 μὴ ἀπέθανε πρότερον. ὁ δὲ ἀμείβεται αὐτοὺς τοῖσιδε.

covered up, together with the hands and the feet; and standing near they bade Harpagos uncover and take of them that which he desired. So when Harpagos obeyed and uncovered, he saw the remains of his son; and seeing them he was not overcome with amazement but contained himself: and Astyages asked him whether he perceived of what animal he had been eating the flesh: and he said that he perceived, and that whatsoever the king might do was well pleasing to him. Thus having made answer and taking up the parts of the flesh which still remained he went to his house; and after that, I suppose, he would gather all the parts together and bury them.

1.120

On Harpagos Astyages laid this penalty; and about Cyrus he took thought, and summoned the same men of the Magians who had given judgment about his dream in the manner which has been said: and when they came, Astyages asked how they had given judgment about his vision; and they spoke according to the same manner, saying that the child must have become king if he had lived on and had not died before. He made answer to them

vocabulary

ἄγγελιηφόρος messenger

ἀσθενής weak

βασιλεύω be king

διδιτάω treat; live; arbitrate

διατάσσω arrange, array

δορυφόρος spear-bearing

ἔνιοι some

ἐξαχέομαι cure, appease, make up for

θαρσέω be of good heart

θυρωρός doorman, porter

κώμη village

λόγιος learned, eloquent; oracle

μὲν him, her, it

ὄνειρον dream

ὄνειρος dream

περίειμι be superior to; be left over;
still exist

πρόνοια foresight, providence

συμβουλευώ give advice; (mid) consult
~volunteer

τελέεις unblemished (victim)

χωρέω withdraw, give way to (+dat)
~heir

«ἔστι τε ὁ παῖς καὶ περίεστι, καὶ μιν ἐπ' ἀγροῦ
 διαιτώμενον οἱ ἐκ τῆς κώμης παῖδες ἐστήσαντο βασιλέα.
 ὁ δὲ πάντα ὅσα περ οἱ ἀληθεί λόγῳ βασιλέες
 ἐτελέωσε ποιήσας· καὶ γὰρ δορυφόρους καὶ θυρωροὺς καὶ
 ἀγγελιηφόρους καὶ τὰ λοιπὰ πάντα διατάξας ἦρχε. καὶ
 νῦν ἐς τί ὑμῖν ταῦτα φαίνεται φέρειν;»

Εἶπαν οἱ Μάγοι «εἰ μὲν περίεστί τε καὶ ἐβασίλευσε ὁ παῖς
 μὴ ἐκ προνοίης τινός, θάρσέε τε τούτου εἵνεκα καὶ θυμὸν
 ἔχε ἀγαθόν· οὐ γὰρ ἔτι τὸ δεύτερον ἄρχει. παρὰ σμικρὰ
 γὰρ καὶ τῶν λογίων ἡμῖν ἔνια κεχώρηκε, καὶ τά γε τῶν
 ὀνειράτων ἐχόμενα τελέως ἐς ἀσθενὲς ἔρχεται.»

ἀμείβεται ὁ Ἀστυάγης τοῖσιδε. «καὶ αὐτὸς ὦ Μάγοι
 ταύτῃ πλείστος γνώμην εἰμί, βασιλέος ὀνομασθέντος
 τοῦ παιδὸς ἐξήκειν τε τὸν ὄνειρον καὶ μοι τὸν
 παῖδα τοῦτον εἶναι δεινὸν ἔτι οὐδέν. ὅμως μὲν γέ
 τοι συμβουλεύσατέ μοι εὖ περισκεψάμενοι τὰ μέλλει
 ἀσφαλέστατα εἶναι οἴκῳ τε τῷ ἐμῷ καὶ ὑμῖν.»

«ἔστι τε ὁ παῖς καὶ |be superior to; be, |μὲν ἐπ' ἀγροῦ
|left over; still exist

|treat; live; ar- οἱ ἐκ τῆς |village παῖδες ἐστήσαντο βασιλέα.
|bitrate

ὁ δὲ πάντα ὅσα περ οἱ ἀληθεί λόγῳ βασιλέες

ἐτελέωσε ποιήσας· καὶ γὰρ |spear-bearer καὶ |doorman, καὶ
|porter

|messenger καὶ τὰ λοιπὰ πάντα |arrange, ἥρχε. καὶ
|array

νῦν ἐς τί ὑμῖν ταῦτα φαίνεται φέρειν;»

Εἶπαν οἱ Μάγοι «εἰ μὲν |be superior to; be |be king ὁ παῖς
|left over; still exist

μὴ ἐκ |foresight, |πνός, |be of good heart. νῦν εἵνεκα καὶ θυμὸν
|providence

ἔχε ἀγαθόν· οὐ γὰρ ἔτι τὸ δεύτερον ἄρχει. παρὰ σμικρὰ

γὰρ καὶ τῶν λογίων ἡμῖν |some |withdraw, give ἰ τά γε τῶν
|way to (+dat)

|dream ἐχόμενα |unblem- |weak ἔρχεται.»
|ished
(victim)

ἀμείβεται ὁ Ἀστυάγης τοῖσιδε. «καὶ αὐτὸς ὦ Μάγοι

ταύτῃ πλείστος γνώμην εἰμί, βασιλέος ὀνομασθέντος

τοῦ παιδὸς |moderate τε τὸν ὄνειρον καί μοι τὸν

παῖδα τοῦτον εἶναι δεινὸν ἔτι οὐδέν. ὅμως μὲν γέ

τοι |give advice; (mid) μοι εὖ περισκεψάμενοι τὰ μέλλει
|consult

ἀσφαλέστατα εἶναι οἴκῳ τε τῷ ἐμῷ καὶ ὑμῖν.»

thus:

“The child is alive and not dead: and while he was dwelling in the country, the boys of the village appointed him king; and he performed completely all those things which they do who are really kings; for he exercised rule, appointed to their places spearmen of the guard and doorkeepers and bearers of messages and all else. Now therefore, to what does it seem to you that these things tend?”

The Magians said: “If the child is still alive and became king without any arrangement, be thou confident concerning him and have good courage, for he shall not be ruler again the second time; since some even of our oracles have had but small results, and that at least which has to do with dreams comes often in the end to a feeble accomplishment.”

Astyages made answer in these words: “I myself also, O Magians, am most disposed to believe that this is so, namely that since the boy was named king the dream has had its fulfilment and that this boy is no longer a source of danger to me. Nevertheless give counsel to me, having well considered what is likely to be most safe both for my house and for you.”

vocabulary

ἀλλοτριόω estrange from
ἀποπέμπω send away ~pomp
ἀποσκήπτω hurl from above; fall suddenly
δουλόω enslave
ἐνίστημι install; threaten; block
ἐνύπνιος seen in dreams
εὖς good, brave, noble
θαρσέω be of good heart
κατορθόω erect; accomplish
ὄνειρον dream
ὄνειρος dream

ὄον οὓ type of fruit
ὄψις ὄψεως (f) sight, view
 ~thanatopsis
πάντως by all means
παρακελεύομαι recommend, encourage
περίειμι be superior to; be left over; still exist
Πέρσης Persian
προοράω see before oneself
προφράζω tell in advance
φαῦλος trifling
φοβερός frightful, afraid

εἶπαν πρὸς ταῦτα οἱ Μάγοι «ὦ βασιλεῦ, καὶ αὐτοῖσι ἡμῖν
 περὶ πολλοῦ ἐστὶ κατορθοῦσθαι ἀρχὴν τὴν σὴν. κείνως¹
 μὲν γὰρ ἀλλοτριοῦται ἐς τὸν παῖδα τοῦτον περιουῖσα
 ἔοντα Πέρσῃν, καὶ ἡμεῖς ἔοντες Μῆδοι δουλούμεθά τε καὶ
 λόγου οὐδενὸς γινόμεθα πρὸς Περσέων, ἔοντες ξεῖνοι· σέο
 δ' ἐνεστεῶτος βασιλέος, ἔοντος πολιήτεω, καὶ ἄρχομεν
 τὸ μέρος καὶ τιμὰς πρὸς σέο μεγάλας ἔχομεν. οὕτω ὦν
 πάντως ἡμῖν σέο καὶ τῆς σῆς ἀρχῆς προοπτέον ἐστί. καὶ
 νῦν εἰ φοβερὸν τι ἐνωρῶμεν, πᾶν ἂν σοὶ προεφράζομεν.
 νῦν δὲ ἀποσκήψαντος τοῦ ἐνυπνίου ἐς φαῦλον, αὐτοὶ τε
 θαρσέομεν καὶ σοὶ ἕτερα τοιαῦτα παρακελευόμεθα. τὸν
 δὲ παῖδα τοῦτον ἐξ ὀφθαλμῶν ἀπόπεμψαι ἐς Πέρσας τε
 καὶ τοὺς² γειναμένους.»

1.121

ἀκούσας ταῦτα ὁ Ἀστυάγης ἐχάρη τε καὶ καλέσας τὸν
 Κῦρον ἔλεγέ οἱ τάδε. «ὦ παῖ, σέ γὰρ ἐγὼ δι' ὅψιν ὀνείρου
 οὐ τελέην ἡδίκηον, τῇ σεωυτοῦ δὲ μοίρῃ περίεις· νῦν ὦν
 ἴθι

¹ otherwise ² his parents

εἶπαν πρὸς ταῦτα οἱ Μάγοι «ὦ βασιλεῦ, καὶ αὐτοῖσι ἡμῖν
 περὶ πολλοῦ ἐστὶ |erect; ἀρχὴν τὴν σὴν. κείνως¹
 |accomplish
 μὲν γὰρ |estrangle from ἐς τὸν παῖδα τοῦτον |be superior to; be left
 |over; still exist
 ἔοντα Πέρσῃν, καὶ ἡμεῖς ἔοντες Μῆδοι |enslave τε καὶ
 λόγου οὐδενὸς γινόμεθα πρὸς Περσέων, ἔοντες ξεῖνοι· σέο
 δ' |install; threaten; σιλέος, ἔοντος πολίτῃ, καὶ ἄρχομεν
 |block
 τὸ μέρος καὶ τιμὰς πρὸς σέο μεγάλας ἔχομεν. οὕτω ὦν
 |by all means ἂν σέο καὶ τῆς σῆς ἀρχῆς |see before oneself ἔ. καὶ
 νῦν εἰ |frightful, τι ἐνωρῶμεν, πᾶν ἂν σοὶ |tell in advance
 |afraid
 νῦν δὲ |hurl from above; τοῦ ἐνυπνίου ἐς |trifling , αὐτοί τε
 |fall suddenly
 |be of good heart· σοὶ ἕτερα τοιαῦτα |recommend,
 |encourage . τὸν
 δὲ παῖδα τοῦτον ἐξ ὀφθαλμῶν |send away ἐς Πέρσας τε
 καὶ τοὺς² γεναμένους.»

1.121

ἀκούσας ταῦτα ὁ Ἀστυάγης ἐχάρη τε καὶ καλέσας τὸν
 Κῦρον ἔλεγέ οἱ τάδε. «ὦ παῖ, σὲ γὰρ ἐγὼ δι' |sight ὀνείρου
 οὐ τελέην ἡδίκηον, τῇ σεωυτοῦ δὲ μοίρῃ |be superior to; be left over; still
 |exist
 ἵθι

¹ otherwise ² his parents

Replying to this the Magians said: “To us also, O king, it is of great consequence that thy rule should stand firm; for in the other case it is transferred to strangers, coming round to this boy who is a Persian, and we being Medes are made slaves and become of no account in the eyes of the Persians, seeing that we are of different race; but while thou art established as our king, who art one of our own nation, we both have our share of rule and receive great honours from thee. Thus then we must by all means have a care of thee and of thy rule. And now, if we saw in this anything to cause fear, we would declare all to thee beforehand: but as the dream has had its issue in a trifling manner, both we ourselves are of good cheer and we exhort thee to be so likewise: and as for this boy, send him away from before thine eyes to the Persians and to his parents.”

1.121

When he heard this Astyages rejoiced, and calling Cyrus spoke to him thus: “My son, I did thee wrong by reason of a vision of a dream which has not come to pass, but thou art yet alive by thine own destiny; now therefore go in peace to the

*vocabulary***ἀποπέμπω** send away ~pomp**βουκόλος** herdsman ~bovine**ἱστορέω** inquire; relate**κείω** rest, go to rest**μίν** him, her, it**νοστέω** go home**πάθη** passivity, suffering**περιγίγνομαι** surpass; survive; attain
~genus**Πέρσης** Persian**πομπή** a sending, expedition ~pomp**πομπός** escort, guide ~pomp**τοκεύς** -ος (m) parent ~oxytocin

χαίρων ἐς Πέρσας, πομποὺς δὲ ἐγὼ ἅμα πέμψω. ἐλθὼν δὲ ἐκεῖ πατέρα τε καὶ μητέρα εὐρήσεις οὐ κατὰ Μιτραδάτην τε τὸν βουκόλον καὶ τὴν γυναῖκα αὐτοῦ.»

1.122

ταῦτα εἶπας ὁ Ἀστυάγης ἀποπέμπει τὸν Κῦρον. νοστήσαντα δέ μιν ἐς τοῦ Καμβύσεω¹ τὰ οἰκία ἐδέξαντο οἱ γεινόμενοι, καὶ δεξάμενοι ὥς ἐπύθοντο, μέγας ἀσπάζοντο οἷα δὴ ἐπιστάμενοι αὐτίκα τότε τελευτῆσαι, ἱστορεόν τε ὅτεω τρόπῳ περιγένοιτο. ὁ δὲ σφί ἔλεγε, φὰς πρὸ τοῦ μὲν οὐκ εἶδέναι ἀλλ' ἡμαρτηκέναι πλείστον, κατ' ὁδὸν δὲ πυθέσθαι πᾶσαν τὴν ἑωυτοῦ πάθην· ἐπίστασθαι μὲν γὰρ ὥς βουκόλου τοῦ Ἀστυάγεος εἶη παῖς, ἀπὸ δὲ τῆς κείθεν ὁδοῦ τὸν πάντα λόγον τῶν πομπῶν πυθέσθαι. τραφῆναι δὲ ἔλεγε ὑπὸ τῆς τοῦ βουκόλου γυναικός, ἥτις τε ταύτην αἰνέων διὰ παντός, ἦν τέ οἱ ἐν τῷ λόγῳ τὰ πάντα ἡ² Κυνώ. οἱ δὲ τοκέες παραλαβόντες τὸ οὖνομα τοῦτο,

¹ his Persian biological father ² insulting name for the mother who raised him, explained in the following sentence

χαίρων ἐς Πέρσας, |escort,
|guide δὲ ἐγὼ ἅμα πέμψω. ἐλθὼν δὲ
ἐκεῖ πατέρα τε καὶ μητέρα εὐρήσεις οὐ κατὰ Μιτραδάτην
τε τὸν |herdsman καὶ τὴν γυναῖκα αὐτοῦ.»

1.122

ταῦτα εἶπας ὁ Ἀστυάγης |send away τὸν Κῦρον.
|go home δέ μιν ἐς τοῦ Καμβύσεω¹ τὰ οἰκία ἐδέξαντο
οἱ γεινόμενοι, καὶ δεξάμενοι ὥς ἐπύθοντο, μεγάλως
ἀσπάζοντο οἷα δὴ ἐπιστάμενοι αὐτίκα τότε τελευτῆσαι,
|inquire;
|relate τε ὅτεω τρόπῳ περιγένοιτο. ὁ δέ σφι ἔλεγε, φὰς
πρὸ τοῦ μὲν οὐκ εἰδέναι ἀλλ' ἡμαρτηκέναι πλεῖστον, κατ'
ὁδὸν δὲ πυθέσθαι πᾶσαν τὴν ἑωυτοῦ |passivity, |πίστασθαι
|suffering μὲν γὰρ ὥς |herdsman τοῦ Ἀστυάγεος εἴη παῖς, ἀπὸ δὲ
τῆς κείθεν ὁδοῦ τὸν πάντα λόγον τῶν πομπῶν πυθέσθαι.
τραφῆναι δὲ ἔλεγε ὑπὸ τῆς τοῦ |herdsman γυναικός, ἥμέ τε
ταύτην αἰνέων διὰ παντός, ἦν τέ οἱ ἐν τῷ λόγῳ τὰ πάντα
ἡ² Κυνώ. οἱ δὲ |parent παραλαβόντες τὸ οὔνομα τοῦτο,

¹ his Persian biological father ² insulting name for the mother who raised him, explained in the following sentence

land of the Persians, and I will send with thee men to conduct thee: and when thou art come thither, thou shalt find a father and a mother not after the fashion of Mitradates the herdsman and his wife.”

1.122

Thus having spoken Astyages sent Cyrus away; and when he had returned and come to the house of Cambyses, his parents received him; and after that, when they learnt who he was, they welcomed him not a little, for they had supposed without doubt that their son had perished straightway after his birth; and they inquired in what manner he had survived. And he told them, saying that before this he had not known but had been utterly in error; on the way, however, he had learnt all his own fortunes: for he had supposed without doubt that he was the son of the herdsman of Astyages, but since his journey from the city began he had learnt the whole story from those who conducted him. And he said that he had been brought up by the wife of the herdsman, and continued to praise her throughout, so that Kyno was the chief person in his tale. And his parents took up this name from him, and in order that their son might be thought by the Persians to have been preserved

vocabulary

ἀναπειθῶ (aor, plupf) seduce,
 persuade; (mp, pf, aor ppl) trust, obey,
 be confident in
ἄτε as if; since
διαιτάω treat; live; arbitrate
ἐκχειμαι expose, set forth
ἐκτρέφω raise, rear
ἐνθεῦτεν thence
ἐνοράω look at, notice something in
ἐπιτρέφω grow, support
ἐτοῖμος ready; fulfilled
ἥλιξ -χος (m) of the same age
ιδιώτης -ου (m, 1) private; a layman
 ~ballistic
κατεργάζομαι achieve; cultivate; get;
 kill

ὁμοιόω assimilate, liken ~homoerotic
οὐδαμὸς not anyone
πάθη passivity, suffering
περίειμι be superior to; be left over;
 still exist
Πέρσης Persian
πικρός sharp, bitter ~picric
πρόκειμαι be placed by; be devoted to
προσφιλῆς beloved
συμμίγνυμι mix with ~mix
τιμωρία (τι) vengeance, punishment
τίνω (ι) pay, atone for; (mp) punish
τίω value, honor; mp: exact
 recompense for
φάτις -τος (f) report, rumor ~fame
χωρέω withdraw, give way to (+dat)
 ~heir

ἵνα θειοτέρως δοκῇ τοῖσι Πέρσησι περιεῖναί σφι ὁ παῖς,
κατέβαλον φάτιν ὥς ἐκκείμενον Κῦρον κύων ἐξέθρειψε.

1.123

ἐνθεῦτεν μὲν ἡ φάτις αὕτη¹ κεχώρηκε. Κύρῳ δὲ
ἀνδρευμένῳ καὶ ἐόντι τῶν ἡλικίων ἀνδρησιότατῳ καὶ
προσφιλεστάτῳ προσέκειτο ὁ Ἄρπαγος δῶρα πέμπων,
τίσασθαι Ἀστυάγεα ἐπιθυμέων· ἀπ' ἐωυτοῦ γὰρ ἐόντος
ιδιώτεω οὐκ ἐνώρα τιμωρίην ἐσομένην ἐς Ἀστυάγεα,
Κῦρον δὲ ὀρέων ἐπιτρεφόμενον ἐποιέετο σύμμαχον, τὰς
πάθας τὰς Κύρου τῇσι ἐωυτοῦ ὁμοιούμενος. πρὸ δ' ἔτι
τούτου τάδε οἱ κατέργαστο· ἐόντος τοῦ Ἀστυάγεος πικροῦ
ἐς τοὺς Μήδους, συμμίσγων ἐνὶ ἐκάστῳ ὁ Ἄρπαγος τῶν
πρώτων Μήδων ἀνέπειθε ὥς χρὴ Κῦρον προσησαμένους
Ἀστυάγεα παῦσαι τῆς βασιληΐης.

κατεργασμένου δέ οἱ τούτου καὶ ἐόντος ἐτοίμου, οὕτῳ δὴ
τῷ Κύρῳ διαιτωμένῳ ἐν Πέρσησι βουλόμενος Ἄρπαγος
δηλῶσαι τὴν ἐωυτοῦ γνώμην ἄλλως μὲν οὐδαμῶς εἶχε ἄτε

¹ this story has been launched

ἵνα θειοτέρως δοκέῃ τοῖσι Πέρσῃσι |be superior τό; be παῖς,
|left over; still exist
|throw down, |report, ὥς |expose, set forth ἔ-ον κύων |raise, rear .
|cast off |rumor

1.123

|thence μέν ἢ |report, αὕτη¹ |withdraw, give Κύρῳ δὲ
|rumor |way to (+dat)
ἀνδρευμένῳ καὶ εἰσὶν τῶν ἡλικίων ἀνδραιοτάτῳ καὶ
|beloved προσέκειτο ὁ Ἄρπαγος δῶρα πέμπων,
τίσασθαι Ἀστυάγεα ἐπιθυμῶν· ἀπ' ἐωυτοῦ γὰρ εἰσὶν
|private; a layman |look at, notice ρήν ἐσομένην ἐς Ἀστυάγεα,
|something in
Κῦρον δὲ ὀρέων |grow, support ἐποιέετο σύμμαχον, τὰς
|passivity, ἀς Κύρου τῇσι ἐωυτοῦ |liken πρὸ δ' ἔτι
|suffering
τούτου τάδε οἱ |achieve; culti- εἰσὶν τοῦ Ἀστυάγεος |sharp
|vate; get; kill
ἐς τοὺς Μήδους, συμμίσγων ἐνὶ ἐκάστῳ ὁ Ἄρπαγος τῶν
πρώτων Μήδων |(aor, plupf)· seducè, persuade; (mp, pf, aor ppl) trust, obey,
|be confident in
Ἀστυάγεα παῦσαι τῆς βασιλείης.

|achieve; cultivate; δέ οἱ τούτου καὶ εἰσὶν ἐτοίμου, οὕτω δὲ
|get; kill
τῷ Κύρῳ |treat; live; ar- ἐν Πέρσῃσι βουλόμενος Ἄρπαγος
|bitrate

δηλῶσαι τὴν ἐωυτοῦ γνώμην ἄλλως μὲν |not anyone ᾗ |as if; since

¹ this story has been launched

in a more supernatural manner, they set on foot a report that Cyrus when he was exposed had been reared by a bitch: and from that source has come this report.

1.123

Then as Cyrus grew to be a man, being of all those of his age the most courageous and the best beloved, Harpagos sought to become his friend and sent him gifts, because he desired to take vengeance on Astyages. For he saw not how from himself, who was in a private station, punishment should come upon Astyages; but when he saw Cyrus growing up, he endeavoured to make him an ally, finding a likeness between the fortunes of Cyrus and his own. And even before that time he had effected something: for Astyages being harsh towards the Medes, Harpagos communicated severally with the chief men of the Medes, and persuaded them that they must make Cyrus their leader and cause Astyages to cease from being king.

When he had effected this and when all was ready, then Harpagos wishing to make known his design to Cyrus, who lived among the Persians, could do it no other way, seeing that the roads were watched, but

*vocabulary***ἀνασχίζω** rip/open up**ἀπορράπτω** sew up again**ἀποτίλλω** pluck**ἅτε** as if; since**αὐτοχειρία** murder done by one's own hand**αὐτοχείριος** with one's own hand**βυβλίον** paper, book**γαστήρ** -έρος (f) belly ~gastric**γλῶσσα** tongue, language ~glossary**γράμμα** -τος (n, 3) writing, letter**διαίρῃω** divide, distinguish, distribute**δίκτυον** fishing net**εἰστίθῃμι** put in**ἔνιμι** be in ~ion**ἐνός** speechless, dumbfounded**ἐντέλλω** (mp) command**ἐπεῖπον** say besides or afterwards**ἐπιλέγω** say re, say also; choose; (mid) think over**ἐπιτελής** accomplished**ἐπιτεχνάομαι** contrive**ἐποράω** look upon**ἐπόρῃμι** (ῶ) stir up ~hormone**εὖς** good, brave, noble**ἐφοράω** look upon ~panorama**θηρευτής** -οῦ (m, 1) hunter, hunting dog ~fierce**θηρευτός** hunter, hunting dog**λαγός** hare ~lagomorph**λαγών** -όνος (f, 3) flank**μηχανάομαι** build, contrive

~mechanism

μίν him, her, it**οἰκέτης** -ου (m, 1) household; house slave**ὄον** οῦ type of fruit**περίειμι** be superior to; be left over; still exist**Πέρσης** Persian**προθυμία** (ῶ) zeal, alacrity ~fume**τίνω** (ι) pay, atone for; (mp) punish**τοιόσδε** such**τύχη** fortune, act of a god**φονεύς** -ως (m) killer ~offend

τῶν ὁδῶν φυλασσομενέων, ὁ δὲ ἐπιτεχνᾶται τοιόνδε·

λαγὸν μηχανησάμενος, καὶ ἀνασχίσας τούτου τὴν
 γαστέρα καὶ οὐδὲν ἀποτίλας, ὥς δὲ εἶχε οὕτω ἐσέθηκε
 βυβλίον, γράψας τά οἱ ἐδόκεε· ἀπορράψας δὲ τοῦ λαγοῦ
 τὴν γαστέρα, καὶ δίκτυα δοὺς ἅτε θηρευτῇ τῶν οἰκετέων
 τῷ πιστοτάτῳ, ἀπέστελλε ἐς τοὺς Πέρσας, ἐντειλάμενός
 οἱ ἀπὸ γλώσσης διδόντα τὸν λαγὸν Κύρῳ ἐπειπεῖν
 αὐτοχειρὴ μιν διελεῖν καὶ μηδένα οἱ ταῦτα ποιεῖντι
 παρεῖναι.

1.124

ταῦτά τε δὴ ὧν ἐπιτελέα ἐγίνετο καὶ ὁ Κῦρος παραλαβὼν
 τὸν λαγὸν ἀνέσχισε· εὐρῶν δὲ ἐν αὐτῷ τὸ βυβλίον ἐνέον
 λαβὼν ἐπελέγετο, τὰ δὲ γράμματα ἔλεγε τάδε.

«ὦ παῖ Καμβύσεω, σὲ γὰρ θεοὶ ἐπορῶσι· οὐ γὰρ ἂν
 κοτὲ ἐς τοσοῦτο τύχης ἀπίκεν· σύ νυν Ἀστυάγεα τὸν
 σεωντοῦ φονέα τίσαι. κατὰ μὲν γὰρ τὴν τούτου προθυμίην
 τέθνηκας, τὸ δὲ κατὰ θεοὺς τε καὶ ἐμὲ περίεις· τά σε

τῶν ὁδῶν φυλασσομενέων, ὁ δὲ |contrive |such
 λαγὸν |build, contrive , καὶ |rip/open up τούτου τὴν
 |belly καὶ οὐδὲν |pluck , ὥς δὲ εἶχε οὕτω |put in
 |paper, book, ράψας τά οἱ ἐδόκεε· |sew up again δὲ τοῦ |hare
 τὴν |belly , καὶ |fishing net ἵς |as if; ὅτι τῇ τῶν |household;
 |house slave
 τῷ πιστοτάτῳ, ἀπέστειλε ἐς τοὺς Πέρσας, ἐντειλάμενός
 οἱ ἀπὸ |tongue, διδόντα τὸν λαγὸν Κύρω |say besides or
 |language afterwards
 αὐτοχειρίῃ μιν |divide, .distin- |δένα οἱ ταῦτα ποιεῖντι
 |guish, distribute
 παρῆναι.

1.124

ταῦτά τε δὴ ὦν |accomplished ἔτετο καὶ ὁ Κῦρος παραλαβὼν
 τὸν λαγὸν |rip/open up ὑρῶν δὲ ἐν αὐτῷ τὸ |paper, book ἐὼν
 λαβὼν |say, choose, τὰ δὲ |writing, ἔλεγε τάδε.
 |think over |letter
 «ὦ παῖ Καμβύσεω, σὲ γὰρ θεοὶ ἐπορώσι· οὐ γὰρ ἂν
 κοτὲ ἐς τοσοῦτο |fortune, ἀττίκεν· σύ νυν Ἀστυάγεα τὸν
 |of a god
 σεωντοῦ |killer |pay; (mp) punish γὰρ τὴν τούτου προθυμίην
 τέθνηκας, τὸ δὲ κατὰ θεοὺς τε καὶ ἐμὲ |be superior to; be left over; still
 |exist

devised a scheme as follows:—

He made ready a hare, and having cut open its belly but without pulling off any of the fur, he put into it, just as it was, a piece of paper, having written upon it that which he thought good; and then he sewed up again the belly of the hare, and giving nets as if he were a hunter to that one of his servants whom he trusted most, he sent him away to the land of the Persians, enjoining him by word of mouth to give the hare to Cyrus, and to tell him at the same time to open it with his own hands and let no one else be present when he did so.

1.124

This then was accomplished, and Cyrus having received from him the hare, cut it open; and having found within it the paper he took and read it over. And the writing said this:

“Son of Cambyses, over thee the gods keep guard, for otherwise thou wouldst never have come to so much good fortune. Do thou therefore take vengeance on Astyages who is thy murderer, for so far as his will is concerned thou art dead, but by the care of the gods and of me thou art still alive; and this I think thou

*vocabulary***ἄλιος** of the sea; fruitless**ἁλίσκομαι** be captured ~helix**ἀναπείθω** (aor, plupf) seduce, persuade; (mp, pf, aor ppl) trust, obey, be confident in**ἀναπίπτω** fall back**ἀναπτύσσω** unfold**βουκόλος** herdsman ~bovine**βυβλίον** paper, book**δόκιμος** trustworthy; excellent**ἐκμανθάνω** know by heart**ἐτοιμός** ready; fulfilled**εὖς** good, brave, noble**καθαιρέω** take down, close ~heresy**καίριος** deadly**ὄον** οὖ type of fruit**πάλαι** long ago ~paleo**παλαίω** wrestle ~Pallas**πάλη** wrestling ~Pallas**πάλλω** shake, brandish ~Pallas**πέρθω** sack, ravage, plunder**Πέρσης** Persian**σοφός** skilled, clever, wise**στρατηλατέω** lead an army**τάχος** -ους (n, 3) speed ~tachometer**φροντίζω** consider, ponder

καὶ πάλαι δοκέω πάντα ἐκμεμαθηκέναι, σέο τε αὐτοῦ
 περὶ ὡς ἐπρήχθη, καὶ οἶα ἐγὼ ὑπὸ Ἀστυάγεος πέπονθα,
 ὅτι σε οὐκ ἀπέκτεινα ἀλλὰ ἔδωκα τῷ βουκόλῳ. σύ
 νυν, ἣν βούλῃ ἐμοὶ πείθεσθαι, τῆς περ Ἀστυάγης ἄρχει
 χώρας, ταύτης ἀπάσης ἄρξεις. Πέρσας γὰρ ἀναπείσας
 ἀπίστασθαι στρατηλάτῃ ἐπὶ Μήδους· καὶ ἣν τε ἐγὼ ὑπὸ
 Ἀστυάγεος ἀποδεχθῆω στρατηγὸς ἀντία σεῦ, ἔστι τοι τὰ
 σὺ βούλει, ἣν τε τῶν τις δοκίμων ἄλλος Μήδων· πρῶτοι
 γὰρ οὗτοι ἀποστάντες ἀπ' ἐκείνου καὶ γενόμενοι πρὸς σέο
 Ἀστυάγεα καταιρέειν πειρήσονται. ὡς ὦν ἐτοίμου τοῦ γε
 ἐνθάδε ἐόντος, ποίει ταῦτα καὶ ποίει κατὰ τάχος.»

1.125

ἀκούσας ταῦτα ὁ Κῦρος ἐφρόντιζε ὅτεω τρόπῳ
 σοφωτάτῳ Πέρσας ἀναπείσει ἀπίστασθαι, φροντίζων
 δὲ εὐρίσκεται ταῦτα καιριώτατα εἶναι· ἐποίει δὴ ταῦτα.
 γράψας ἐς βυβλίον τὰ ἐβούλετο, ἀλήην τῶν Περσέων
 ἐποιήσατο, μετὰ δὲ ἀναπτύξας τὸ βυβλίον καὶ

καὶ πάλαι δοκέω πάντα |know by heart , σέο τε αὐτοῦ
περὶ ὡς ἐπρήχθη, καὶ οἶα ἐγὼ ὑπὸ Ἀστυάγεος πέπονθα,
ὅτι σε οὐκ ἀπέκτεινα ἀλλὰ ἔδωκα τῷ |herdsman . σὺ
νυν, ἣν βούλῃ ἐμοὶ πείθεσθαι, τῆς περ Ἀστυάγης ἄρχει
χώρης, ταύτης ἀπάσης ἄρξεις. |sack γὰρ |(aor, plupf) seduce, per-
ἀπίστασθαι |lead an army ἐπὶ Μήδους· καὶ ἦν |trust, obey, be confident
Ἀστυάγεος ἀποδεχθέω στρατηγὸς ἀντία σεῦ, ἔστι τοι τὰ
σὺ βούλει, ἣν τε τῶν τις |trustworthy; ἄλως Μήδων· πρῶτοι
|excellent
γὰρ οὗτοι ἀποστάντες ἀπ' ἐκείνου καὶ γενόμενοι πρὸς σέο
Ἀστυάγεα |take down, close, ἥσονται. ὡς ὦν ἐτοίμου τοῦ γε
ἐνθάδε ἑόντος, ποίει ταῦτα καὶ ποίει κατὰ |speed .»

1.125

ἀκούσας ταῦτα ὁ Κῦρος |consider, ὅτεω τρόπῳ
|ponder
|skilled, Πέρσας ἀναπέσει ἀπίστασθαι, |consider,
|clever, wise |ponder
δὲ εὐρίσκεται ταῦτα |deadly εἶναι· ἐποίει δὴ ταῦτα.
γράψας ἐς |paper, book ἵ ἐβούλετο, ἀλήν τῶν Περσέων
ἐποίησατο, μετὰ δὲ |unfold τὸ |paper, book ἵ

hast long ago learnt from first to last, both how it happened about thyself, and also what things I have suffered from Astyages, because I did not slay thee but gave thee to the herdsman. If therefore thou wilt be guided by me, thou shalt be ruler of all that land over which now Astyages is ruler. Persuade the Persians to revolt, and march any army against the Medes: and whether I shall be appointed leader of the army against thee, or any other of the Medes who are in repute, thou hast what thou desirest; for these will be the first to attempt to destroy Astyages, revolting from him and coming over to thy party. Consider then that here at least all is ready, and therefore do this and do it with speed.”

1.125

Cyrus having heard this began to consider in what manner he might most skilfully persuade the Persians to revolt, and on consideration he found that this was the most convenient way, and so in fact he did:— He wrote first on a paper that which he desired to write, and he made an assembly of the Persians. Then he unfolded the paper

*vocabulary***ἀκανθώδης** thorny**ἀναπείθω** (aor, plupf) seduce,
persuade; (mp, pf, aor ppl) trust, obey,
be confident in**ἀποδείκνυμι** (ō) show, point out;
appoint; (mid) declare**ἀροτήρ** -ος (m) plowman ~arable**δρέπανον** sickle ~dermatology**ἐνθαῦτα** there, here**ἐνθεν** thence, whence**ἐντίθημι** load; mp: take to heart
~thesis**ἐπιλέγω** say re, say also; choose; (mid)
think over**κῦρος** -εος (n, 3) authority; validity**μὶν** him, her, it**νομάς** -δος (m, 3) roaming, grazing**ὀκτωκαίδεκα** 18**Πέρσης** Persian**προαγορεύω** declare, predict, order**στάδιον** 200 meters (pl also masc)**στάδιος** (adj) standing upright, firm;
(pl noun) 200 meters**συναλίζω** collect; eat with**συχνός** long; many; extensive**φρήτηρ** brotherhood, sub-tribe
~fraternal**χῶρος** place ~heir

ἐπιλεγόμενος ἔφη Ἀστυάγέα μιν¹ στρατηγὸν Περσέων ἀποδεικνύναι. «νῦν τε,» ἔφη λέγων, «ὦ Πέρσαι, προαγορεύω ὑμῖν παρεῖναι ἕκαστον ἔχοντα δρέπανον.» Κῦρος μὲν ταῦτα προηγόρευσε.

Ἦστι δὲ Πέρσεων συχνὰ γένηα, καὶ τὰ μὲν αὐτῶν ὁ Κῦρος συνάλισε καὶ ἀνέπεισε ἀπίστασθαι ἀπὸ Μήδων. ἔστι δὲ τάδε, ἐξ ὧν ὄλλοι πάντες ἀρτέαται Πέρσαι, Πασαργάδαι Μαράφιοι Μάσπιοι. τούτων Πασαργάδαι εἰσὶ ἄριστοι, ἐν τοῖσι καὶ Ἀχαιμενίδαι εἰσὶ φρήτρη, ἔνθεν οἱ βασιλεῖς οἱ Περσεῖδαι γεγόνασι. ἄλλοι δὲ Πέρσαι εἰσὶ οἷδε, Πανθιαλαῖοι Δηρουσιαῖοι Γερμάνιοι. οὗτοι μὲν πάντες ἀροτῆρες εἰσὶ, οἱ δὲ ἄλλοι νομάδες, Δάοι Μάρδοι Δροπικοὶ Σαγάρτιοι.

1.126

ὥς δὲ παρήσαν ἅπαντες ἔχοντες τὸ προειρημένον, ἐνθαῦτα ὁ Κῦρος, ἦν γάρ τις χώρος τῆς Περσικῆς ἀκανθώδης ὅσον τε ἐπὶ ὀκτωκαῖδεκα σταδίους ἢ εἴκοσι

¹ Cyrus

|say, choose, ἔφη Ἀστυάγέα μιν¹ στρατηγὸν Περσέων
|think over

|show, point out; ap- <νῦν τε,> ἔφη λέγων, «ὦ Πέρσαι,
|point; (mid) declare

|declare, pre- ὑμῖν παρῆναι ἕκαστον ἔχοντα |sickle .>
|dict, order

|authority; ἔν ταῦτα |declare, predict,
|validity |order

Ἔστι δὲ Πέρσεων |long; many; α, καὶ τὰ μὲν αὐτῶν ὁ
|extensive

Κῦρος |collect; eat with (aor, plupf) ἑλκεῖν, πείθειν; (mp, pf, aor ppl) trust,
|obey, be confident in

ἔστι δὲ τάδε, ἐξ ὧν ὅλλοι πάντες ἀρτέαται Πέρσαι,

Πασαργάδαι Μαράφιοι Μάσπιοι. τούτων Πασαργάδαι

εἰσὶ ἄριστοι, ἐν τοῖσι καὶ Ἀχαιμενίδαι εἰσὶ |brotherhood, ἔν οἱ
|sub-tribe

βασιλέες οἱ Περσεῖδαι γεγόνασι. ἄλλοι δὲ Πέρσαι εἰσὶ οἷδε,

Πανθιαλαῖοι Δηρουσιαῖοι Γερμάνιοι. οὗτοι μὲν πάντες

|plowman εἰσὶ, οἱ δὲ ἄλλοι |roaming, Δάοι Μάρδοι Δροπικοὶ
|grazing

Σαγάρτιοι.

1.126

ὥς δὲ παρήσαν ἅπαντες ἔχοντες τὸ προειρημένον,

|there, here ὁ Κῦρος, ἦν γάρ τις |place τῆς Περσικῆς

|thorny ὅσον τε ἐπὶ |18 σταδίου ἢ εἴκοσι

¹ Cyrus

and reading from it said that Astyages appointed him commander of the Persians; “and now, O Persians,” he continued, “I give you command to come to me each one with a reaping-hook.” Cyrus then proclaimed this command.

(Now there are of the Persians many tribes, and some of them Cyrus gathered together and persuaded to revolt from the Medes, namely those, upon which all the other Persians depend, the Pasargadai, the Maraphians and the Maspians, and of these the Pasargadai are the most noble, of whom also the Achaimenidai are a clan, whence are sprung the Perseïd kings. But other Persian tribes there are, as follows:— the Panthaliaians, the Derusiaians and the Germanians, these are all tillers of the soil; and the rest are nomad tribes, namely the Daoi, Mardians, Dropicans and Sagartians.)

1.126

Now there was a certain region of the Persian land which was overgrown with thorns, extending some eighteen or twenty furlongs in each direction; and when all had come with that which

*vocabulary***ἄθλον** ἄέθλου prize ~athlete**ἄθλος** ἄέθλου contest, trial ~athlete**αἰπόλιον** herd of goats**αἰρετός** takeable, desirable ~heresy**βουκόλιον** herd**ἐξημερόω** tame completely**ἐπιτελέω** complete; do a religious duty**εὖωχέω** fete, feed well**θύω** (ῥ) rush; sacrifice ~θύω**κατακλίνω** (ι) lay down ~incline**κότερος** which, whichever of two**λειμών** -ος (m, 3) meadow ~limnic**λούω** wash, bathe**μυρίος** (ῥ) 10,000 ~myriad**πάντη** everywhere**παραγυμνῶ** expose, disclose**Πέρσης** Persian**ποίμνη** flock ~pastor**προαγορεύω** declare, predict, order**προεῖπον** foretell, proclaim, order
before**πρόκειμαι** be placed by; be devoted to**προλέγω** prophecy, proclaim; preselect
~legion**προτεραῖος** previous to**στρατός** common people/soldiers
~strategy**συναλίζω** collect; eat with**ὕστεραῖος** the next; later**χῶρος** place ~heir

πάντη, τοῦτον σφι τὸν χώρον προεῖπε ἐξημερῶσαι ἐν ἡμέρῃ. ἐπιτελεσάντων δὲ τῶν Περσέων τὸν προκείμενον ἄεθλον, δεύτερα σφι προεῖπε ἐς τὴν ὑστεραίην παρῆναι λελουμένους. ἐν δὲ τούτῳ τά τε αἰπόλια καὶ τὰς ποίμνας καὶ τὰ βουκόλια ὁ Κῦρος πάντα τοῦ πατρὸς συναλίσας ἐς τὸντο ἔθυσε καὶ παρεσκεύαζε ὡς δεξόμενος τὸν Περσέων στρατόν, πρὸς δὲ οἶνω τε καὶ σιτίοισι ὡς ἐπιτηδεοτάτοισι. ἀπικομένους δὲ τῇ ὑστεραίῃ τοὺς Πέρσας κατακλίνας ἐς λειμῶνα εὐώχῃε.

Ἐπεῖτε δὲ ἀπὸ δείπνου ἦσαν, εἶρετο σφέας ὁ Κῦρος κότερα τὰ τῇ προτεραίῃ εἶχον ἢ τὰ παρεόντα σφι εἶη αἰρετώτερα. οἱ δὲ ἔφασαν πολλὸν εἶναι αὐτῶν τὸ¹ μέσον· τὴν μὲν γὰρ προτέρην ἡμέρην πάντα σφι κακὰ ἔχειν, τὴν δὲ τότε παρῆσαν πάντα ἀγαθὰ. παραλαβὼν δὲ τοῦτο τὸ ἔπος ὁ Κῦρος παρεγύμνου τὸν πάντα λόγον, λέγων «ἄνδρες Πέρσαι, οὕτω ὑμῖν ἔχει. βουλομένοισι μὲν ἐμέο πείθεσθαι ἔστι τάδε τε καὶ ἄλλα μυρία ἀγαθὰ, οὐδένα πόνον

¹ the difference between

|everywhere ὅπου σφί τόν |place προεῖπε |tame completely³

ἡμέρη. |complete; do a re- δὲ τῶν Περσέων τὸν |be placed by;
|ligious duty |be devoted to

ἄθλον, δεύτερα σφί προεῖπε ἐς τὴν |the next; later. μρεῖναι

|λούω?: wash, bathe; ὁ οὐτῶ τά τε |herd of goats τὰς |flock
|λούω?: wash, bathe

καὶ τὰ |herd ὁ Κῦρος πάντα τοῦ πατρὸς |collect; eat with

τῶντὸ |rush; sacrifice...ρεσκεύαζε ὡς δεξιόμενος τὸν Περσέων

|army , πρὸς δὲ οἴνῳ τε καὶ σιτίοις ὡς ἐπιτηδεοτάτοις.

ἀπικομένους δὲ τῇ |the next; later `s Πέρσας |lay down ἐς

|meadow |fete, feed well

Ἐπεῖτε δὲ ἀπὸ δείπνου ἦσαν, εἶρετο σφέας ὁ Κῦρος |which,
|whichever

τὰ τῇ |previous to εἶχον ἢ τὰ παρεόντα σφί εἶη |takeable,
|desirable

οἱ δὲ ἔφασαν πολλὸν εἶναι αὐτῶν τὸ¹ μέσον· τὴν μὲν

γὰρ προτέρην ἡμέρην πάντα σφί κακὰ ἔχειν, τὴν δὲ τότε

παρεοῦσαν πάντα ἀγαθὰ. παραλαβὼν δὲ τοῦτο τὸ ἔπος

ὁ Κῦρος |expose, τὸν πάντα λόγον, λέγων «ἄνδρες
|disclose

Πέρσαι, οὕτω ὑμῖν ἔχει. βουλομένοις μὲν ἐμέο πείθεσθαι

ἔστι τάδε τε καὶ ἄλλα μυρία ἀγαθὰ, οὐδένα πόνον

¹ the difference between

they had been before commanded to bring, Cyrus bade them clear this region for cultivation within one day: and when the Persians had achieved the task proposed, then he bade them come to him on the next day bathed and clean. Meanwhile Cyrus, having gathered together in one place all the flocks of goats and sheep and the herds of cattle belonging to his father, slaughtered them and prepared with them to entertain the host of the Persians, and moreover with wine and other provisions of the most agreeable kind. So when the Persians came on the next day, he made them recline in a meadow and feasted them.

And when they had finished dinner, Cyrus asked them whether that which they had on the former day or that which they had now seemed to them preferable. They said that the difference between them was great, for the former day had for them nothing but evil, and the present day nothing but good. Taking up this saying Cyrus proceeded to lay bare his whole design, saying: “Men of the Persians, thus it is with you. If ye will do as I say, ye have these and ten thousand other good things, with no servile labour;

*vocabulary***ἀναρίθμητος** countless**ἀπαγγέλλω** announce, order, promise
~angel**ἀποδείκνυμι** (ὁ) show, point out;
appoint; (mid) declare**ἀποδέχομαι** accept ~doctrine**δουλοπρεπής** servile**ἐλεύθερος** not enslaved**ἐλευθερόω** set free**ἐπιλαμβάνω** take, attack, seize**ἔρδω** do, perform ~ergonomics**εὖς** good, brave, noble**ἡδομαι** be pleased, enjoy ~hedonism**θεοβλαβής** god-struck, infatuated**λάω** grip, pin?**λήθη** forgetting ~Lethe**μίν** him, her, it**ὄον** οὓ type of fruit**ὀπλίζω** prepare, arm ~hoplite**πάλαι** long ago ~paleo**παλαίω** wrestle ~Pallas**πάλη** wrestling ~Pallas**πάλλω** shake, brandish ~Pallas**παραπλήσιος** similar to**πέρθω** sack, ravage, plunder**Πέρσης** Persian**προστάτης** -ου (m, 1) leader, protector**συμμίγνυμι** mix with ~mix**φαῦλος** trifling**χθιζός** yesterday's

δουλοπρεπέα ἔχουσι, μὴ βουλομένοισι δὲ ἐμέο πείθεσθαι εἰσὶ ὑμῖν πόνοι τῷ χθιζῷ παραπλήσιοι ἀναρίθμητοι. νῦν ὦν ἐμέο πειθόμενοι γίνεσθε ἐλεύθεροι. αὐτός τε γὰρ δοκέω θείῃ τύχῃ γεγονὼς τάδε ἐς χεῖρας ἄγεσθαι, καὶ ὑμέας ἡγῆμαι ἄνδρας Μήδων εἶναι οὐ φαυλοτέρους οὔτε τᾶλλα οὔτε τὰ πολέμια. ὥς ὦν ἐχόντων ὧδε, ἀπίστασθε ἀπ' Ἀστυάγεος τὴν ταχίστην.»

1.127

Πέρσαι μὲν νυν προστάτew ἐπιλαβόμενοι ἄσμενοὶ ἐλευθεροῦντο, καὶ πάλαι δεινὸν ποιεύμενοι ὑπὸ Μήδων ἄρχεσθαι. Ἀστυάγης δὲ ὥς ἐπύθετο Κῦρον ταῦτα πρήσσοντα, πέμψας ἄγγελον ἐκάλεε αὐτόν. ὁ δὲ Κῦρος ἐκέλευε τὸν ἄγγελον ἀπαγγέλλειν ὅτι πρότερον ἥξει παρ' ἐκεῖνον ἢ Ἀστυάγης αὐτὸς βουλήσεται. ἀκούσας δὲ ταῦτα ὁ Ἀστυάγης Μήδους τε ὥπλισε πάντας, καὶ στρατηγὸν αὐτῶν ὥστε θεοβλαβῆς ἐὼν Ἄρπαγον ἀπέδεξε, λήθην ποιεύμενος τά μιν ἐόργεε. ὥς δὲ οἱ Μῆδοι στρατευσάμενοι τοῖσι Πέρσησι συνέμισγον, οἳ μὲν τινὲς αὐτῶν ἐμάχοντο,

|servile ἔχουσι, μὴ βουλομένοισι δὲ ἐμέο πείθεσθαι
 εἰςὶ ὑμῖν πόνοι τῶ |yester- |similar to |countless . νῦν
 |day's
 ὧν ἐμέο πειθόμενοι γίνεσθε |not enslaved ὑτός τε γὰρ δοκέω
 θείῃ τύχῃ γεγονὼς τάδε ἐς χεῖρας ἄγεσθαι, καὶ ὑμέας
 ἡγῆμαι ἄνδρας Μήδων εἶναι οὐ |trifling οὔτε τᾶλλα
 οὔτε τὰ πολέμα. ὥς ὧν ἐχόντων ὦδε, ἀπίστασθε ἀπ'
 Ἀστυάγεος τὴν ταχίστην.»

1.127

Πέρσαι μὲν νυν |leader, ἐπιλαβόμενοι |be pleased, enjoy
 |protector
 |set free , καὶ πάλαι δεινὸν ποιεύμενοι ὑπὸ Μήδων
 ἄρχεσθαι. Ἀστυάγης δὲ ὥς ἐπύθετο Κῦρον ταῦτα
 πρήσσοντα, πέμψας ἄγγελον ἐκάλεε αὐτόν. ὁ δὲ Κῦρος
 ἐκέλευε τὸν ἄγγελον |announce, or- ὅτι πρότερον ἦξοι παρ'
 |der, promise
 ἐκεῖνον ἢ Ἀστυάγης αὐτὸς βουλήσεται. ἀκούσας δὲ ταῦτα
 ὁ Ἀστυάγης Μήδους τε |prepare, arm' τας, καὶ στρατηγὸν
 αὐτῶν ὥστε |god-struck, ἐὼν Ἄρπαγον ἀπέδεξε, λήθην
 |infatuated
 ποιεύμενος τά μιν |do . ὥς δὲ οἱ Μῆδοι στρατευσάμενοι
 τοῖσι Πέρσησι |mix with , οἱ μὲν τινὲς αὐτῶν ἐμάχοντο,

but if ye will not do as I say, ye have labours like that of yesterday innumerable. Now therefore do as I say and make yourselves free: for I seem to myself to have been born by providential fortune to take these matters in hand; and I think that ye are not worse men than the Medes, either in other matters or in those which have to do with war. Consider then that this is so, and make revolt from Astyages forthwith.”

1.127

So the Persians having obtained a leader willingly attempted to set themselves free, since they had already for a long time been indignant to be ruled by the Medes: but when Astyages heard that Cyrus was acting thus, he sent a messenger and summoned him; and Cyrus bade the messenger report to Astyages that he would be with him sooner than he would himself desire. So Astyages hearing this armed all the Medes, and blinded by divine providence he appointed Harpagos to be the leader of the army, forgetting what he had done to him. Then when the Medes had marched out and began to fight with the Persians, some of them continued the battle,

*vocabulary***αἰσχρός** shameful**αἰχμάλωτος** captive ~acute**ἀναγιγνώσκω** recognize, read, understand, persuade**ἀνασκολοπίζω** impale**ἀπειλέω** vow, threaten, boast**ἀπειλή** boast, threat**ἀποβάλλω** throw away, lose**αὐτομολέω** desert**διαλύω** break up; relax, weaken**ἐθελοκακέω** wimp out; act maliciously**ζωγρέω** capture, give quarter; revive
~zoo**ἡσάομαι** (pass) be weaker, be overcome; (active) defeat**καταχερτομέω** rant**καταχαίρω** exult over, greatly**μέτειμι** be among, go, follow ~ion**μετέχω** partake of**μίν** him, her, it**ὄνειροπόλος** interpreter of dreams**ὀπλίζω** prepare, arm ~hoplite**περίειμι** be superior to; be left over; still exist**Πέρσης** Persian**πρεσβύτης** -ου (ū, m, 1) old person**προσίστημι** set against; (mp) stand near**στράτευμα** -τος (n, 3) army ~strategy**συμβάλλω** pit against; compare; mp: meet, fall in with ~ballistic**ὑπολείπω** leave as a leftover; leave a person behind ~eclipse

ὅσοι μὴ τοῦ¹ λόγου μετέσχον, οἳ δὲ αὐτομόλεον πρὸς τοὺς Πέρσας, οἳ δὲ πλείστοι ἐθελοκάκεόν τε καὶ ἔφευγον.

1.128

διαλυθέντος δὲ τοῦ Μηδικοῦ. στρατεύματος αἰσχροῦς, ὥς ἐπύθετο τάχιστα ὁ Ἄστυάγης, ἔφη ἀπειλέων τῷ Κύρῳ «ἀλλ' οὐδ' ὥς Κῦρός γε² χαιρήσει.» τοσαῦτα εἶπας πρῶτον μὲν τῶν Μάγων τοὺς ὀνειροπόλους, οἳ μιν ἀνέγνωσαν μετεῖναι τὸν Κῦρον, τούτους ἀνεσκολόπισε, μετὰ δὲ ὥπλισε τοὺς ὑπολειφθέντας ἐν τῷ ἄστει τῶν Μήδων, νέους τε καὶ πρεσβύτας ἄνδρας. ἐξαγαγὼν δὲ τούτους καὶ συμβαλὼν τοῖσι Πέρησι ἐσώθη, καὶ αὐτός τε Ἄστυάγης ἐζωγρήθη καὶ τοὺς ἐξήγαγε τῶν Μήδων ἀπέβαλε.

1.129

έόντι δὲ αἰχμαλώτῳ τῷ Ἄστυάγει προσστὰς ὁ Ἄρπαγος κατέχαιρέ τε καὶ κατεκερτόμει, καὶ ἄλλα λέγων ἐς αὐτὸν

¹ the plot ² at least

οἱ μὴ τοῦ¹ λόγου |partake of , οἱ δὲ |desert πρὸς τοὺς

Πέρσας, οἱ δὲ πλείστοι |wimp out; act τε καὶ ἔφευγον.
|maliciously

1.128

|break up; re- δὲ τοῦ Μηδικοῦ. |army |shameful ,
|lax, weaken

ὥς ἐπύθετο τάχιστα ὁ Ἀστυάγης, ἔφη ἀπειλέων τῷ

Κύρῳ «ἀλλ' οὐδ' ὥς Κῦρός γε² χαιρήσει.» τοσαῦτα

εἶπας πρῶτον μὲν τῶν Μάγων τοὺς |seer , οἱ μιν

|read |be among τὸν Κῦρον, τούτους |impale ,

μετὰ δὲ |prepare, arm`s |leave (food, person). τῷ ἄστέϊ τῶν

Μήδων, νέους τε καὶ |old person ἄνδρας. ἐξαγαγὼν δὲ

τούτους καὶ |pit against; compare; mp:(pass) be weaker, be overcome; (ac-
|meet, fall in with |tive) defeat

τε Ἀστυάγης |capture καὶ τοὺς ἐξήγαγε τῶν Μήδων

|throw away, lose

1.129

εἰσὶν δὲ |captive τῷ Ἀστυάγει |set against; (mp)ρπαγος
|stand near

|exult over, greatly ` |rant , καὶ ἄλλα λέγων ἐς αὐτὸν

¹ the plot ² at least

namely those who had not been made partakers in the design, while others went over to the Persians; but the greater number were wilfully slack and fled.

1.128

So when the Median army had been shamefully dispersed, so soon as Astyages heard of it he said, threatening Cyrus: “But not even so shall Cyrus at least escape punishment.” Thus having spoken he first impaled the Magian interpreters of dreams who had persuaded him to let Cyrus go, and then he armed those of the Medes, youths and old men, who had been left behind in the city. These he led out and having engaged battle with the Persians he was worsted, and Astyages himself was taken alive, and he lost also those of the Medes whom he had led forth.

1.129

Then when Astyages was a prisoner, Harpagos came and stood near him and rejoiced over him and insulted him; and besides other things which he said to grieve him, he

*vocabulary***ἀναίτιος** blameless ~etiology**ἀνταείρω** raise against**ἀνταίρω** raise against**ἀποφαίνω** display, declare**δεσπότης** -ου (m, 1) master, despot**δουλοσύνη** slavery**θoinάω** host at a meal**θυμαλγής** (ὅ) heart-grieving ~fume**καταδουλόω** enslave**μίν** him, her, it**πάντως** by all means**περιβάλλω** act: excel; mid: put on clothing ~ballistic**περιτίθημι** put around, endow with ~thesis**Πέρσης** Persian**πρόσοιδα** (+χάριν) be grateful besides**προσοράω** look at**σχαιός** left-hand

θυμαλγέα ἔπεα, καὶ δὴ καὶ εἵρετό μιν πρὸς τὸ ἑωυτοῦ
 δείπνον, τὸ μιν ἐκείνος σαρξὶ τοῦ παιδὸς ἐθοίγησε, ὃ τι
 εἷη ἢ ἐκείνου δουλοσύνη ἀντὶ τῆς βασιληίης. ὁ δέ μιν
 προσιδὼν ἀντείρετο εἰ ἑωυτοῦ ποιέεται τὸ Κύρου ἔργον.
 Ἄρπαγος δὲ ἔφη, αὐτὸς γὰρ γράψαι, τὸ πρῆγμα ἑωυτοῦ
 δὴ δικαίως εἶναι.

Ἄστυάγης δέ μιν ἀπέφαινε τῷ λόγῳ σκαιότατόν τε
 καὶ ἀδικώτατον ἔοντα πάντων ἀνθρώπων, σκαιότατον
 μέν γε, εἰ παρεὼν αὐτῷ βασιλέα γενέσθαι, εἰ δὴ δι'
 ἑωυτοῦ γε ἐπρήχθη τὰ παρεόντα, ἄλλα περιέθηκε τὸ
 κράτος, ἀδικώτατον δέ, ὅτι τοῦ δείπνου εἵνεκεν Μήδους
 κατεδούλωσε. εἰ γὰρ δὴ δεῖν πάντως περιθεῖναι ἄλλῳ
 τεῷ τὴν βασιληίην καὶ μὴ αὐτὸν ἔχειν, δικαιότερον εἶναι
 Μήδων τεῷ περιβαλεῖν τοῦτο τὸ ἀγαθὸν ἢ Περσέων. νῦν
 δὲ Μήδους μὲν ἀναιτίους τούτου ἔοντας δούλους ἀντὶ
 δεσποτέων γεγονέναι, Πέρσας δὲ δούλους ἔοντας τὸ πρὶν
 Μήδων νῦν γεγονέναι δεσπότας.

|heart-grieving|πρεα, καὶ δὴ καὶ εἵρετό μιν πρὸς τὸ ἐωντοῦ
 δείπνον, τὸ μιν ἐκείνος σαρκί τοῦ παιδὸς |host at a meal . ι
 εἷη ἢ ἐκείνου |slavery ἀντὶ τῆς βασιληΐης. ὁ δέ μιν
 προσιδὼν ἀντείρετο εἰ ἐωντοῦ ποιεέται τὸ Κύρου ἔργον.
 Ἄρπαγος δὲ ἔφη, αὐτὸς γὰρ γράψαι, τὸ πρῆγμα ἐωντοῦ
 δὴ δικαίως εἶναι.

Ἀστυάγης δέ μιν |display, τῷ λόγῳ |left-hand τε
 |declare
 καὶ ἀδικώτατον ἔοντα πάντων ἀνθρώπων, |left-hand
 μέν γε, εἰ παρεὼν αὐτῷ βασιλέα γενέσθαι, εἰ δὴ δι'
 ἐωντοῦ γε ἐπρήχθη τὰ παρεόντα, ἄλλω |put around, τὸ
 |endow with
 κράτος, ἀδικώτατον δέ, ὅτι τοῦ δείπνου εἵνεκεν Μήδους
 |enslave . εἰ γὰρ δὴ δεῖν |by all|put around, ἄλλω
 |means |endow with
 τεῷ τὴν βασιληίην καὶ μὴ αὐτὸν ἔχειν, δικαιοτέρον εἶναι
 Μήδων τεῷ |excel; don τοῦτο τὸ ἀγαθὸν ἢ Περσέων. νῦν
 δὲ Μήδους μὲν |blameless τούτου ἔοντας δούλους ἀντὶ
 |master, γεγονέναι, Πέρσας δὲ δούλους ἔοντας τὸ πρὶν
 |despot
 Μήδων νῦν γεγονέναι |master,
 |despot

asked him especially how it pleased him to be a slave instead of a king, making reference to that dinner at which Astyages had feasted him with the flesh of his own son. He looking at him asked him in whether he claimed the work of Cyrus as his own deed: and Harpagos said that since he had written the letter, the deed was justly his.

Then Astyages declared him to be at the same time the most unskilful and the most unjust of men; the most unskilful because, when it was in his power to become king (as it was, if that which had now been done was really brought about by him), he had conferred the chief power on another, and the most unjust, because on account of that dinner he had reduced the Medes to slavery. For if he must needs confer the kingdom on some other and not keep it himself, it was more just to give this good thing to one of the Medes rather than to one of the Persians; whereas now the Medes, who were guiltless of this, had become slaves instead of masters, and the Persians who formerly were slaves of the Medes had now become their masters.

vocabulary

ἀδικία injustice, offence
ἄνω (ἄ) accomplish, pass, waste;
 upwards, out to sea
βασιλεύω be king
ἐπανίστημι rise up ~station
καταπαύω stop, restrain ~pause
καταστρέφω overturn, subdue
 ~catastrophe
μεταμέλομαι (impers.+dat.) cause

regret to; (mp) regret
πάρεξ alongside, diverging from; (+ῥ
 or gen) except; (+acc) beyond,
 alongside
Πέρσης Persian
πικρότης -τος (f, 3) bitterness,
 harshness
προσδοκάω expect
ὑποκύπτω be bowed

1.130

Ἀστυάγης μὲν νυν βασιλεύσας ἐπ' ἔτεα πέντε καὶ
 τριήκοντα οὕτω τῆς βασιλείης κατεπαύσθη, Μῆδοι δὲ
 ὑπέκυψαν Πέρσῃσι διὰ τὴν τούτου πικρότητα, ἄρξαντες
 τῆς ἄνω Ἄλυος ποταμοῦ Ἀσίης ἐπ' ἔτεα τριήκοντα καὶ
 ἑκατὸν δυῶν δέοντα, πάρεξ ἢ ὅσον οἱ Σκύθαι ἦρχον.
 ὑστέρω μέντοι χρόνῳ μετεμέλησέ τέ σφι¹ ταῦτα ποιήσασι
 καὶ ἀπέστησαν ἀπὸ Δαρείου, ἀποστάντες δὲ ὀπίσω
 κατεστράφθησαν μάχῃ νικηθέντες. τότε δὲ ἐπὶ Ἀστυάγεος
 οἱ Πέρσαι τε καὶ ὁ Κῦρος ἐπαναστάντες τοῖσι Μήδοισι
 ἦρχον τὸ ἀπὸ τούτου τῆς Ἀσίης. Ἀστυάγεα δὲ Κῦρος
 κακὸν οὐδὲν ἄλλο ποιήσας εἶχε παρ' ἑωυτῷ, ἐς² ὃ
 ἐτελεύτησε. οὕτω δὴ Κῦρος γενόμενός τε καὶ τραφεὶς
 καὶ ἐβασίλευσε καὶ Κροῖσον ὕστερον τούτων ἄρξαντα
 ἀδικίῃς κατεστρέψατο, ὥς εἴρηταί μοι πρότερον. τοῦτον
 δὲ καταστρεψάμενος οὕτω πάσης τῆς Ἀσίης ἥρξε.

¹ the Medes ² until

1.130

Ἀστυάγης μὲν νυν |be king ἐπ' ἔτεα πέντε καὶ
 τριήκοντα οὕτω τῆς βασιλείης |stop, restrain , Μῆδοι δὲ
 ὑπέκνυσαν Πέρσῃσι διὰ τὴν τούτου |bitterness,
 |harshness , ἄρξαντες
 τῆς ἄνω Ἄλνυος ποταμοῦ Ἀσίης ἐπ' ἔτεα τριήκοντα καὶ
 ἑκατὸν δυῶν δέοντα, πάρεξ ἢ ὅσον οἱ Σκύθαι ἦρχον.
 ὑστέρω μέντοι χρόνῳ μετεμέλησέ τέ σφι¹ ταῦτα ποιήσασι
 καὶ ἀπέστησαν ἀπὸ Δαρείου, ἀποστάντες δὲ ὀπίσω
 |overturn, subdue μάχῃ νικηθέντες. τότε δὲ ἐπὶ Ἀστυάγεος
 οἱ Πέρσαι τε καὶ ὁ Κῦρος |rise up τοῖσι Μήδοισι
 ἦρχον τὸ ἀπὸ τούτου τῆς Ἀσίης. Ἀστυάγεα δὲ Κῦρος
 κακὸν οὐδὲν ἄλλο ποιήσας εἶχε παρ' ἐωυτῷ, ἐς² ὃ
 ἐτελεύτησε. οὕτω δὲ Κῦρος γενόμενός τε καὶ τραφεὶς
 καὶ |be king καὶ Κροῖσον ὕστερον τούτων ἄρξαντα
 ἀδικίᾳ |overturn, subdue, ὥς εἴρηταί μοι πρότερον. τοῦτον
 δὲ |overturn, subdue οὕτω πάσης τῆς Ἀσίης ἤρξε.

¹ the Medes ² until

1.130

Astyages then, having been king for five and thirty years, was thus caused to cease from being king; and the Medes stooped under the yoke of the Persians because of his cruelty, after they had ruled Asia above the river Halys for one hundred and twenty-eight years, except during that period for which the Scythians had rule. Afterwards however it repented them that they had done this, and they revolved from Dareios, and having revolted they were subdued again, being conquered in a battle. At this time then, I say, in the reign of Astyages, the Persians with Cyrus rose up against the Medes and from that time forth were rulers of Asia: but as for Astyages, Cyrus did no harm to him besides, but kept him with himself until he died. Thus born and bred Cyrus became king; and after this he subdued Croesus, who was the first to begin the quarrel, as I have before said; and having subdued him he then became ruler of all Asia.

vocabulary

ἄγαλμα -τος (n, 3) ornament, glory, statue

ἀνακαίω light (a fire) ~caustic

ἀνθρωποφυής of man's nature

ἀρχῆθεν since forever

αὐλός flute, tube, hollow

βωμός altar; stand, pedestal

Ἑλλήν Greek

ἐπιμανθάνω learn besides or after

ἐπιφέρω bestow, impute ~bear

ἔρδω do, perform ~ergonomics

θυσία sacrifice

θύω (ῥ) rush; sacrifice ~θύω

ἱδρύω establish

κύκλος circle, wheel ~cycle

μωρία folly

νηός temple, shrine

οὐκί intensified 'not'

οὐράνιος heavenly

πέρθω sack, ravage, plunder

Πέρσης Persian

σελήνη moon

σπονδή libation, treaty ~spontaneous

τοιόσδε such

1.131

Πέρσας δὲ οἶδα νόμοισι τοιοῖσιδε χρεωμένους, ἀγάλματα μὲν καὶ νηοὺς καὶ βωμοὺς οὐκ ἐν νόμῳ ποιευμένους ἰδρύνεσθαι, ἀλλὰ καὶ τοῖσι ποιεῦσι μωρίην ἐπιφέρουσι, ὥς μὲν ἐμοὶ δοκέειν, ὅτι οὐκ ἀνθρωποφυέας ἐνόμισαν τοὺς θεοὺς κατὰ περ οἱ Ἕλληνες εἶναι· οἱ δὲ νομίζουσι Διὶ μὲν ἐπὶ τὰ ὑψηλότατα τῶν ὀρέων ἀναβαίνοντες θυσίας ἔρδειν, τὸν κύκλον πάντα τοῦ οὐρανοῦ Δία καλέοντες· θύουσι δὲ ἡλίῳ τε καὶ σελήνῃ καὶ γῇ καὶ πυρὶ καὶ ὕδατι καὶ ἀνέμοισι. τούτοις μὲν δὴ θύουσι μούνοισι ἀρχήθεν, ἐπιμεμαθήκασι δὲ καὶ τῇ Οὐρανίῃ θύειν, παρά τε Ἀσσυρίων μαθόντες καὶ Ἀραβίων. καλέουσι δὲ Ἀσσύριοι τὴν Ἀφροδίτην Μύλιττα, Ἀράβιοι δὲ Ἀλιλάτ, Πέρσαι δὲ Μίτραν.

1.132

θυσίῃ δὲ τοῖσι Πέρσῃσι περὶ τοὺς εἰρημένους θεοὺς ἦδε κατέστηκε· οὔτε βωμοὺς ποιεῦνται οὔτε πῦρ ἀνακαίουσι μέλλοντες θύειν, οὐ σπονδῇ χρέωνται, οὐκὶ αὐλῶ, οὐ

1.131

|sack δὲ οἶδα νόμοισι |such χρεωμένους, |ornament,
 |glory, statue
 μὲν καὶ |temple καὶ |altar οὐκ ἐν νόμῳ ποιευμένους
 |establish , ἀλλὰ καὶ τοῖσι ποιεῦσι μωρίην |bestow,
 |impute , ὥς
 μὲν ἐμοὶ δοκέειν, ὅτι οὐκ |of man's nature ἐνόμισαν τοὺς
 θεοὺς κατὰ περ οἱ |Greek εἶναι· οἱ δὲ νομίζουσι Διὶ μὲν
 ἐπὶ τὰ ὑψηλότατα τῶν ὀρέων ἀναβαίνοντες θυσίας |do ,
 τὸν |circle, πάντα τοῦ οὐρανοῦ Δία καλέοντες· |rush; sacrifice
 |wheel
 ἡλίῳ τε καὶ |moon καὶ γῇ καὶ πυρὶ καὶ ὕδατι καὶ ἀνέμοισι.
 τούτοισι μὲν δὴ |rush; sacrifice |ισι |since , |learn besides or
 |forever |after
 δὲ καὶ τῇ |heavenly |rush; sacrifice :· ἐ Ἀσσυρίων μαθόντες καὶ
 Ἀραβίων. καλέουσι δὲ Ἀσσύριοι τὴν Ἀφροδίτην Μύλιττα,
 Ἀράβιοι δὲ Ἀλιλάτ, Πέρσαι δὲ Μίτραν.

1.132

θυσίῃ δὲ τοῖσι Πέρσησι περὶ τοὺς εἰρημένους θεοὺς ἥδε
 κατέστηκε· οὔτε |altar ποιεῦνται οὔτε πῦρ |light (a fire)
 μέλλοντες |rush; , sac-|libation, χρέωνται, |in- |flute, tube, hollow
 |rifice |treaty |ten-
 |sified
 'not'

1.131

These are the customs, so far as I know, which the Persians practise:— Images and temples and altars they do not account it lawful to erect, nay they even charge with folly those who do these things; and this, as it seems to me, because they do not account the gods to be in the likeness of men, as do the Hellenes. But it is their wont to perform sacrifices to Zeus going up to the most lofty of the mountains, and the whole circle of the heavens they call Zeus: and they sacrifice to the Sun and the Moon and the Earth, to Fire and to Water and to the Winds: these are the only gods to whom they have sacrificed ever from the first; but they have learnt also to sacrifice to Aphrodite Urania, having learnt it both from the Assyrians and the Arabians; and the Assyrians call Aphrodite Mylitta, the Arabians Alitta, and the Persians Mitra.

1.132

Now this is the manner of sacrifice for the gods aforesaid which is established among the Persians:— they make no altars neither do they kindle fire; and when they mean to sacrifice they use no libation nor music of the pipe nor chaplets nor meal for

vocabulary

ἄνευ away from; not having; not
needing ~Sp. sin

ἀνίημι urge, impel; release ~jet

ἀποφέρω carry off, carry back ~bear

δαίς -τός (f) feast, banquet ~demon

δαίτη feast, banquet

διαμιστύλλω cut into pieces

διάω blow through

ἐγγίγνομαι live in ~genus

ἐκγίγνομαι be born; be by birth

~genus

ἐπαείδω sing with, to; charm

ἐπαιδή magic words

ἐπέχω hold, cover; offer; assail

ἔπω (mid) follow, accompany; (act,
uncommon) handle, take care of

εὐδαίμων blessed with a good genius

εὖς good, brave, noble

ἔψω boil, be boiling

θεογονία birth of gods

θυσία sacrifice

θύω (ῶ) rush; sacrifice ~θύω

καθαρός clean, pure

κατεύχομαι pray, vow, curse

κρέας -ως (n) meat ~creatine

κτῆνος -ους (n, 3) herd animal

μέλεος vain, idle, useless

μέλος -ους (n, 3) limb; melody

μίν him, her, it

μύρσινος myrtle

ῥον ῥ type of fruit

οὐκί intensified 'not'

οὐλαί barley grains

οὐλή scar

Πέρσης Persian

προσδοκάω expect

στέμμα -τος (n, 3) headband or wreath

στεφανώ crown

τρίφυλλον clover

τρίφυλλος three-leaved

ὑποπάσσω strew under; plaster under

χῶρος place ~heir

στέμμασι, οὐκὶ οὐλήῃσι· τῶν δὲ ὡς ἐκάστω θύειν θέλῃ,
 εἰς χῶρον καθαρὸν ἀγαγὼν τὸ κτήνος καλέει τὸν θεόν,
 ἐστεφανωμένος τὸν τιάραν μυρσίνη μάλιστα. ἐωντῷ μὲν
 δὴ τῷ θύοντι ἰδίῃ μούνῳ οὗ οἱ ἐγγίνεται ἀρᾶσθαι ἀγαθὰ,
 ὁ δὲ τοῖσι πᾶσι Πέρσησι κατεύχεται εὖ γίνεσθαι καὶ τῷ
 βασιλεί· ἐν γὰρ δὴ τοῖσι ἅπασιν Πέρσησι καὶ αὐτὸς γίνεται.
 ἐπεὰν δὲ διαμιστύλας κατὰ μέλεα τὸ ἱρήιον ἐψήσῃ τὰ
 κρέα ὑποπάσας ποιήν ὡς ἀπαλωτάτην, μάλιστα δὲ τὸ
 τρίφυλλον, ἐπὶ ταύτης ἔθηκε ὦν πάντα τὰ κρέα. διαθέντος
 δὲ αὐτοῦ Μάγος ἀνὴρ παρεστεὺς ἐπαεῖδει θεογονίην, οἷην
 δὴ ἐκεῖνοι λέγουσι εἶναι τὴν ἐπαιοιδήν· ἄνευ γὰρ δὴ Μάγου
 οὐ σφί νόμος ἐστὶ θυσίας ποιέεσθαι. ἐπισχὼν δὲ ὀλίγον
 χρόνον ἀποφέρεται ὁ θύσας τὰ κρέα καὶ χρᾶται ὅ τι μιν
 λόγος αἰρέει.

1.133

ἡμέρην δὲ ἀπασέων μάλιστα ἐκείνην τιμᾶν νομίζουσι τῇ
 ἑκάστος ἐγένετο. ἐν ταύτῃ δὲ πλέω δαῖτα τῶν ἀλλέων
 δικαιεῦσι προτίθεσθαι· ἐν τῇ οἱ εὐδαίμονες αὐτῶν βοῦν καὶ

|wreath , |intensified, not' ὧν δὲ ὡς ἐκάστῳ |rush; sacrifice
 ἐς |place |clean, pure ἑγαγὼν τὸ |herd animal ἔειπεν τὸν θεόν,
 |crown τὸν τιάραν |myrtle μάλιστα. ἐωντῷ μὲν
 δὴ τῷ |rush; sacrifice, οὐνῶ οὐ οἱ ἐγγίνεται ἀρᾶσθαι ἀγαθὰ,
 ὁ δὲ τοῖσι πᾶσι Πέρσῃσι |pray, vow, curse ἔγινεσθαι καὶ τῷ
 βασιλείᾳ ἐν γὰρ δὴ τοῖσι ἅπασιν Πέρσῃσι καὶ αὐτὸς γίνεται.
 ἐπεὰν δὲ |cut into pieces κατὰ μέλεα τὸ ἱρήμιον ἐψήσῃ τὰ
 |meat ὑποπάσας ποιήν ὡς ἀπαλωτάτην, μάλιστα δὲ τὸ
 τρίφυλλον, ἐπὶ ταύτης ἔθηκε ὧν πάντα τὰ |meat |blow through
 δὲ αὐτοῦ Μάγος ἀνὴρ παρεστεῶς |sing with, to; charm, οἶν
 δὴ ἐκεῖνοι λέγουσι εἶναι τὴν |magic ἄνευ γὰρ δὴ Μάγους
 |words
 οὐ σφι νόμος ἐστὶ θυσίας ποιέεσθαι. |hold, cover; ὀλίγον
 |offer; assail
 χρόνον |carry off ὁ |rush; sacrificial meat καὶ χρᾶται ὅτι μιν
 |fice
 λόγος αἰρέει.

1.133

ἡμέρην δὲ ἀπασέων μάλιστα ἐκείνην τιμᾶν νομίζουσι τῇ
 ἑκάστος ἐγένετο. ἐν ταύτῃ δὲ πλέω δαῖτα τῶν ἀλλέων
 δικαιοῦσι προτίθεσθαι ἐν τῇ οἱ |blessed with a ὑπὸν καὶ
 |good genius

sprinkling; but when a man wishes to sacrifice to any one of the gods, he leads the animal for sacrifice to an unpolluted place and calls upon the god, having his tiara wreathed round generally with a branch of myrtle. For himself alone separately the man who sacrifices may not request good things in his prayer, but he prays that it may be well with all the Persians and with the king; for he himself also is included of course in the whole body of Persians. And when he has cut up the victim into pieces and boiled the flesh, he spreads a layer of the freshest grass and especially clover, upon which he places forthwith all the pieces of flesh; and when he has placed them in order, a Magian man stands by them and chants over them a theogony (for of this nature they say that their incantation is), seeing that without a Magian it is not lawful for them to make sacrifices. Then after waiting a short time the sacrificer carries away the flesh and uses it for whatever purpose he pleases.

1.133

And of all days their wont is to honour most that on which they were born, each one: on this they think it right to set out a feast more liberal than on other days; and in this feast the wealthier of them set upon the table an

vocabulary

ἀλής crowded; all together

ἀνδάνω please ~hedonism

Ἑλλήν Greek

ἐμέω vomit ~emetic

ἐξιيمي go forth; is possible ~ion

ἐπιδιαγινώσκω consider afresh

ἐπιφόρημα dessert

ἐωθα be accustomed, in the habit

κάμηλος (f) camel

κάμινος (ι, f) oven, furnace

κάρτα very much ~κράτος

λεπτός thin

μεθίημι let go, cease; (mid) speed off

~jet

μεθύσκω (mp) get drunk

μεθύω be soaked, drunk ~mead

νήφω be sober

ὀνίνημι help, please, be available

ὄνομαι blame ~name

ὄνος (f) donkey ~onager

ὀπτός roasted

οὐκί intensified 'not'

οὐρέω piss

παραφέρω serve; carry past; outdo

παραφορέω serve; carry past; outdo

πεινάω be hungry

πένης -τος (m) poor

Πέρσης Persian

πρόβατον cattle, flocks, herds

προβουλεύω take counsel before

πρόκειμαι be placed by; be devoted to

προτίθημι prefer, set out ~thesis

σιτέομαι (ι) eat ~parasite

στέγάρχος master of the house

ὕστεραῖος the next; later

ἵππον καὶ κάμηλον καὶ ὄνον προτιθέεται ὅλους ὀπτούς ἐν καμίνιοις, οἳ δὲ πένητες αὐτῶν τὰ λεπτὰ τῶν προβάτων προτιθέεται. σίτοις δὲ ὀλίγοις χρέωνται, ἐπιφορήμασι δὲ πολλοῖσι καὶ οὐκ ἀλέσι· καὶ διὰ τοῦτο φασὶ Πέρσαι τοὺς Ἑλληνας σιτεομένους πεινῶντας παύεσθαι, ὅτι σφι ἀπὸ δείπνου παραφορέεται οὐδὲν λόγου ἄξιον· εἰ δέ τι παραφέροιτο, ἐσθίοντας ἂν οὐ παύεσθαι.

οἶνω δὲ κάρτα προσκέεται, καὶ σφι οὐκ ἐμέσαι ἔξεστι, οὐκὶ οὐρῆσαι ἀντίον ἄλλου. ταῦτα μὲν νυν οὕτω φυλάσσεται, μεθυσκόμενοι δὲ ἐώθασι βουλεύεσθαι τὰ σπουδαιέστατα¹ τῶν πρηγμάτων· τὸ δ' ἂν ἄδη σφι βουλευομένοις, τοῦτο τῇ ὑστεραίῃ νήφουσι προτιθεῖ² ὁ στέγαρχος, ἐν τοῦ ἂν ἐόντες βουλεύωνται, καὶ ἦν μὲν ἄδη καὶ νήφουσι, χρέωνται αὐτῷ, ἦν δὲ μὴ ἄδη, μετιεῖσι. τὰ δ' ἂν νήφοντες προβουλεύσωνται, μεθυσκόμενοι ἐπιδιαγινώσκουσι.

1.134

ἐντυγχάνοντες δ' ἀλλήλοισι ἐν τῇσι ὁδοῖσι, τῷδε ἂν τις

¹ most important ² brings back up

ἵππον καὶ |camel καὶ ὄνον προτιθέαται ὅλους |roasted ἐν
 |oven, , οἱ δὲ |poor αὐτῶν τὰ |thin τῶν |cattle, flocks,
 |furnace |herds
 προτιθέαται. σίτοις δὲ ὀλίγοις χρέωνται, |dessert
 δὲ πολλοῖς καὶ οὐκ |crowded; ... διὰ τοῦτο φασὶ Πέρσαι
 |all together
 τοὺς |Greek σιτεομένους |be hungry παύεσθαι, ὅτι σφι
 ἀπὸ δείπνου |serve; carry past; οὐδὲν λόγου ἄξιον· εἰ δέ τι
 |outdo
 |serve; carry, ἐσθίοντας ἂν οὐ παύεσθαι.
 |past; outdo
 οἶνω δὲ |very much σκέαται, καὶ σφι οὐκ |vomit ἕξεστι, |intensified 'not'
 |piss ἀντίον ἄλλου. ταῦτα μὲν νυν οὕτω φυλάσσεται,
 μεθυσκόμενοι δὲ |be accustomed, ἔσθαι τὰ σπουδαιέστατα¹
 |in the habit
 τῶν πρηγμάτων· τὸ δ' ἂν |please φι βουλευομένοις, τοῦτο
 τῇ |the next; |be sober |prefer, set out² |master of the house. οὐ
 |later
 ἂν εὐόντες βουλευόνται, καὶ ἦν μὲν |please αἱ |be sober ,
 χρέωνται αὐτῷ, ἦν δὲ μὴ |please |let go, cease; ἕ(mid) |be sober
 |speed off
 |take counsel before , μεθυσκόμενοι |consider afresh .

1.134

ἐντυγχάνοντες δ' ἀλλήλοισι ἐν τῇσι ὁδοῖσι, τῷδε ἂν τις

¹ most important ² brings back up

ox or a horse or a camel or an ass, roasted whole in an oven, and the poor among them set out small animals in the same way. They have few solid dishes, but many served up after as dessert, and these not in a single course; and for this reason the Persians say that the Hellenes leave off dinner hungry, because after dinner they have nothing worth mentioning served up as dessert, whereas if any good dessert were served up they would not stop eating so soon.

To wine-drinking they are very much given, and it is not permitted for a man to vomit or to make water in presence of another. Thus do they provide against these things; and they are wont to deliberate when drinking hard about the most important of their affairs, and whatsoever conclusion has pleased them in their deliberation, this on the next day, when they are sober, the master of the house in which they happen to be when they deliberate lays before them for discussion: and if it pleases them when they are sober also, they adopt it, but if it does not please them, they let it go: and that on which they have had the first deliberation when they are sober, they consider again when they are drinking.

1.134

When they meet one another in the roads, by this you may discern whether those

*vocabulary***ἀγεννής** low-born; sordid**ἄγχι** near, nigh ~angina**ἀντέχω** hold up as protection against
~ischemia**ἀρχός** ruler ~archangel**διάγναια** deliberation**ἐκαστάτω** afar, far off**ἐπιτροπεύω** administrate**ἥκιστος** least; above all**ὄμιουρος** bordering**παρειά** cheeks**Πέρσης** Persian**προβαίνω** surpass, continue ~basis**προσαγορεύω** address, call by name**προσχυνέω** kow tow to; kiss**προσπίπτω** attack; befall; kow-tow**συνάπας** (αᾶ) all together**συντυγχάνω** fall in with; happen**ὕποδεής** inferior; fearful

διαγνοίη εἰ ὅμοιοί εἰσὶ οἱ συντυγχάνοντες· ἀντὶ γὰρ τοῦ
 προσαγορεύειν ἀλλήλους φιλέουσι τοῖσι στόμασι· ἦν δὲ
 ἢ οὔτερος ὑποδεέστερος ὀλίγῳ, τὰς παρειὰς φιλέονται·
 ἦν δὲ πολλῶ ἢ οὔτερος ἀγεννέστερος, προσπίπτων
 προσκυνεῖ τὸν ἕτερον. τιμῶσι δὲ ἐκ πάντων τοὺς
 ἄγχιστα ἑωυτῶν οἰκέοντας μετὰ γε ἑωυτούς, δευτέρα
 δὲ τοὺς δευτέρους· μετὰ δὲ κατὰ λόγον προβαίνοντες
 τιμῶσι· ἥκιστα δὲ τοὺς ἑωυτῶν ἐκαστάτῳ οἰκημένους
 ἐν τιμῇ ἄγονται, νομίζοντες ἑωυτούς εἶναι ἀνθρώπων
 μακρῶ τὰ πάντα ἀρίστους, τοὺς δὲ ἄλλους κατὰ λόγον
 τῆς ἀρετῆς ἀντέχεσθαι, τοὺς δὲ ἐκαστάτῳ οἰκέοντας ἀπὸ
 ἑωυτῶν κακίστους εἶναι. ἐπὶ δὲ Μήδων ἀρχὸν τῶν καὶ
 ἦρχε τὰ ἔθνεα ἀλλήλων, συναπάντων μὲν Μῆδοι καὶ τῶν
 ἄγχιστα οἰκεόντων σφίσι, οὗτοι δὲ καὶ τῶν ὁμούρων, οἱ
 δὲ μάλα τῶν ἐχομένων, κατὰ τὸν αὐτὸν δὴ λόγον καὶ οἱ
 Πέρσαι τιμῶσι· προέβαινε γὰρ δὴ τὸ ἔθνος ἄρχον τε καὶ
 ἐπιτροπεύον.

|deliberation ὅμοιοί εἰσὶ οἱ |fall in with; happen ἰντὶ γὰρ τοῦ

|address, call by ἀλλήλους φιλέουσι τοῖσι στόμασι· ἦν δὲ
|name

ἥ οὐτέρος |inferior; fearful ὀλίγω, τὰς |cheeks φιλέονται·

ἦν δὲ πολλῶ ἥ οὐτέρος |low-born; sordid |attack; befall;
|kow-tow

|kow tow to; kiss ἕτερον. τιμῶσι δὲ ἐκ πάντων τοὺς

|near, nigh ἐωυτῶν οἰκέοντας μετὰ γε ἐωυτούς, δευτέρα

δὲ τοὺς δευτέρους· μετὰ δὲ κατὰ λόγον |surpass

τιμῶσι· |least; δὲ τοὺς ἐωυτῶν |afar, far off οἰκημένους
|above

ἐν τιμῇ |all ἀγονται, νομίζοντες ἐωυτούς εἶναι ἀνθρώπων

μακρῶ τὰ πάντα ἀρίστους, τοὺς δὲ ἄλλους κατὰ λόγον

τῆς ἀρετῆς |hold up as pro- νὺς δὲ |afar, far off οἰκέοντας ἀπὸ
|tection against

ἐωυτῶν κακίστους εἶναι. ἐπὶ δὲ Μήδων |ruler τῶν καὶ

ἡρχε τὰ ἔθνεα ἀλλήλων, συναπάντων μὲν Μῆδοι καὶ τῶν

|near, nigh οἰκέοντων σφίσι, οὗτοι δὲ καὶ τῶν |bordering , οἱ

δὲ μάλα τῶν ἐχομένων, κατὰ τὸν αὐτὸν δὴ λόγον καὶ οἱ

Πέρσαι τιμῶσι· |surpass γὰρ δὴ τὸ ἔθνος ἄρχον τε καὶ

|administrate .

who meet are of equal rank,— for instead of greeting by words they kiss one another on the mouth; but if one of them is a little inferior to the other, they kiss one another on the cheeks, and if one is of much less noble rank than the other, he falls down before him and does worship to him. And they honour of all most after themselves those nations which dwell nearest to them, and next those which dwell next nearest, and so they go on giving honour in proportion to distance; and they hold least in honour those who dwell furthest off from themselves, esteeming themselves to be by far the best of all the human race on every point, and thinking that others possess merit according to the proportion which is here stated, and that those who dwell furthest from themselves are the worst. And under the supremacy of the Medes the various nations used also to govern one another according to the same rule as the Persians observe in giving honour, the Medes governing the whole and in particular those who dwelt nearest to themselves, and these having rule over those who bordered upon them, and those again over the nations that were next to them: for the race went forward thus ever from government by themselves to government through others.

*vocabulary***ἀληθίζω** speak truth**ἀνδραγαθία** bravery**ἀποδείκνυμι** (ō) show, point out;
appoint; (mid) declare**ἀποδέχομαι** accept ~doctrine**εἰκοσαέτης** of 20 years**Ἑλλήν** Greek**ἐπιτηδεύω** practice, pursue**ἐσθής** clothes ~vest**εὐπάθεια** comfort**θώραξ** -ηχος (m) breastplate ~thorax**ἰχνεύω** track, hunt**κουρίδιος** wedded, nuptial**νόμιος** customary**ὄψις** ὄψεως (f) sight, view

~thanatopsis

παιδεύω raise; train**παλλακή** sex slave**παντοδαπής** of every kind, manifold**παντοδαπός** of every kind, manifold**πενταετής** for five years**Πέρσης** Persian**προσίημι** be allowed near**τοξεύω** shoot an arrow at ~toxic**φορέω** frequentative of φέρω, to carry

~bear

1.135

ξεινικὰ δὲ νόμαια Πέρσαι προσίενται ἀνδρῶν μάλιστα.
 καὶ γὰρ δὴ τὴν Μηδικὴν ἐσθῆτα νομίσαντες τῆς ἐωυτῶν
 εἶναι καλλίῳ φορέουσι, καὶ ἐς τοὺς πολέμους τοὺς
 Αἰγυπτίους θώρηκας· καὶ εὐπαθείας τε παντοδαπὰς
 πυνθανόμενοι ἐπιτηδεύουσι, καὶ δὴ καὶ ἀπ' Ἑλλήνων
 μαθόντες παισὶ μίσγονται. γαμέουσι δὲ ἕκαστος αὐτῶν
 πολλὰς μὲν κουριδίας γυναῖκας, πολλῶ δ' ἔτι πλεῦνας
 παλλακὰς κτῶνται.

1.136

ἀνδραγαθίῃ δὲ αὕτη ἀποδέδεκται, μετὰ τὸ μάχεσθαι εἶναι
 ἀγαθόν, ὅς ἂν πολλοὺς ἀποδέξῃ παῖδας· τῷ δὲ τοὺς
 πλείστους ἀποδεικνύντι δῶρα ἐκπέμπει βασιλεὺς ἀνὰ πᾶν
 ἔτος. τὸ πολλὸν δ' ἡγάται ἰσχυρόν εἶναι. παιδεύουσι δὲ
 τοὺς παῖδας ἀπὸ πενταέτεος ἀρξάμενοι μέχρι εἰκοσαέτεος
 τρία μῶνα, ἰχνεύειν καὶ τοξεύειν καὶ ἀληθίζεσθαι. πρὶν δὲ
 ἢ πενταέτης γένηται, οὐκ ἀπικνέεται ἐς ὄψιν τῷ

1.135

ξεινικὰ δὲ |customary^{TT} ἔρσαι |be allowed near² δρῶν μάλιστα.
 καὶ γὰρ δὴ τὴν Μηδικὴν |clothes νομίσαντες τῆς ἐαυτῶν
 εἶναι καλλίῳ |frequentative of² ἔς τοὺς πολέμους τοὺς
 |φέρω, to carry
 Αἰγυπτίους |breastplate καὶ |comfort τε παντοδαπὰς
 πυνθανόμενοι |practice, , καὶ δὴ καὶ ἀπ' |Greek
 |pursue
 μαθόντες παισὶ μίσγονται. γαμέουσι δὲ ἕκαστος αὐτῶν
 πολλὰς μὲν |wedded γυναῖκας, πολλῶ δ' ἔτι πλεῦνας
 |sex slave κτῶνται.

1.136

ἀνδραγαθίῃ δὲ αὕτῃ |show, point out; ap-² τὸ μάχεσθαι εἶναι
 |point; (mid) declare
 ἀγαθόν, ὅς ἂν πολλοὺς ἀποδέξῃ παῖδας· τῷ δὲ τοὺς
 πλείστους |show, point out; ap-² ἡ ἐκπέμπει βασιλεὺς ἀνὰ πᾶν
 |point; (mid) declare
 ἔτος. τὸ πολλὸν δ' ἡγέεται ἰσχυρὸν εἶναι. |raise; train δὲ
 τοὺς παῖδας ἀπὸ |for five years ἱρξάμενοι μέχρι |of 20 years
 τρία μούνα, |track, hunt ἢ |shoot an arrow²|speak truth . πρὶν δὲ
 |at
 ἢ πενταέτης γένηται, οὐκ ἀπικνέεται ἐς |sight τῷ

1.135

The Persians more than any other men admit foreign usages; for they both wear the Median dress judging it to be more comely than their own, and also for fighting the Egyptian corslet: moreover they adopt all kinds of luxuries when they hear of them, and in particular they have learnt from the Hellenes to have commerce with boys. They marry each one several lawful wives, and they get also a much larger number of concubines.

1.136

It is established as a sign of manly excellence next after excellence in fight, to be able to show many sons; and to those who have most the king sends gifts every year: for they consider number to be a source of strength. And they educate their children, beginning at five years old and going on till twenty, in three things only, in riding, in shooting, and in speaking the truth: but before the boy is five years old he does not come into the presence

vocabulary

ἁδίκημα -τος (n, 3) wrong, misdeed
αἰνέω praise, assent, acquiesce in
ἀναζητέω investigate, discover
ἀνευρίσκω discover
ἀνήκεστος not to be cured, soothed, appeased
ἄση woe; nausea, satiety
ἄω aor: to sate ~sate
δίαίτα way of life; home; arbitration
ἐξιμι go forth; is possible ~ion
ἔρδω do, perform ~ergonomics
ἤτοι truly; either, or
λογίζομαι reckon, consider

μοιχίδιος born of adultery
οἰκέτης -ου (m, 1) household; house slave
ὀπόσος as many as, how many, how great
πάθος -ους (n, 3) an experience, passion, condition
Πέρσης Persian
προσβάλλω hit, attack, approach; attach, offer ~ballistic
τοκεύς -ος (m) parent ~oxytocin
ὑποβολιμαῖος illegitimate (child)
ὑπούργημα service
φονεύω kill

πατρί, ἀλλὰ παρὰ τῇσι γυναιξὶ δίαιταν ἔχει. τοῦδε δὲ
 εἵνεκα τοῦτο οὕτω ποιέεται, ἵνα ἦν ἀποθάνῃ τρεφόμενος,
 μηδεμίαν ἄσπιν τῷ πατρὶ προσβάλλῃ.

1.137

αἰνέω μὲν νυν τόνδε τὸν νόμον, αἰνέω δὲ καὶ τόνδε, τὸ
 μὴ μῆς αἰτήης εἵνεκα μήτε αὐτὸν τὸν βασιλέα μηδένα
 φονεύειν, μήτε τῶν ἄλλων Περσέων μηδένα τῶν ἑωυτοῦ
 οἰκετέων ἐπὶ μῇ αἰτῇ ἀνήκεστον πάθος ἔρδειν· ἀλλὰ
 λογισάμενος ἦν εὐρίσκη πλέω τε καὶ μέζω τὰ ἀδικήματα
 ἔόντα τῶν ὑπουργημάτων, οὕτω τῷ θυμῷ χρᾶται.

ἀποκτείνει δὲ οὐδένα κω λέγουσι τὸν ἑωυτοῦ πατέρα οὐδὲ
 μητέρα, ἀλλὰ ὅκόσα ἤδη τοιαῦτα ἐγένετο, πᾶσαν ἀνάγκην
 φασὶ ἀναζητούμενα ταῦτα ἀνευρεθῆναι ἥτοι ὑποβολιμαῖα
 ἔόντα ἢ μοιχίδια· οὐ γὰρ δὴ φασὶ οἶκος εἶναι τόν γε
 ἀληθέως τοκέα ὑπὸ τοῦ, ἑωυτοῦ παιδὸς ἀποθνήσκειν.

1.138

ἄσσα δὲ σφὶ ποιέειν οὐκ ἔξεστι, ταῦτα οὐδὲ λέγειν ἔξεστι.

πατρί, ἀλλὰ παρὰ τῇσι γυναιξί |way of life; home; οὐδὲ δὲ
|arbitration
εἵνεκα τοῦτο οὕτω ποιεῖται, ἵνα ἦν ἀποθάνῃ τρεφόμενος,
μηδεμίαν ἄσιν τῷ πατρὶ |hit, attack, approach;
|attach, offer

1.137

|praise, μέν νυν τόνδε τὸν νόμον, |praise, δὲ καὶ τόνδε, τὸ
|assent
μὴ μῆς αἰτίης εἵνεκα μήτε αὐτὸν τὸν βασιλέα μηδένα
|kill , μήτε τῶν ἄλλων Περσέων μηδένα τῶν ἐωυτοῦ
|household; ἐπὶ μῇ αἰτίῃ |incurable |an expe- |do ἀλλὰ
|house slave |rience,
|reckon, ἦν εὐρίσκη πλέω τε καὶ μέγαν τὰ |passion,
|consider |condi- |wrong,
|tion |misdeed
έόντα τῶν |service , οὕτω τῷ θυμῷ χρᾶται.

ἀποκτεῖναι δὲ οὐδένα κω λέγουσι τὸν ἐωυτοῦ πατέρα οὐδὲ
μητέρα, ἀλλὰ |as/how ᾗ many/great ἡ ἐγένετο, πᾶσαν ἀνάγκην
φασὶ |investigate, dis- ταῦτα |discover |truly; |illegitimate (child)
|cover |either,
έόντα ἣ |born of adultery, ἣρ δὴ φασὶ οἶκος εἶναι τόν γε
|or
ἀληθέως |parent ὑπὸ τοῦ, ἐωυτοῦ παιδὸς ἀποθνήσκειν.

1.138

ἄσσα δὲ σφὶ ποιεῖν οὐκ ἔξεστι, ταῦτα οὐδὲ λέγειν ἔξεστι.

of his father, but lives with the women; and it is so done for this reason, that if the child should die while he is being bred up, he may not be the cause of any grief to his father.

1.137

I commend this custom of theirs, and also the one which is next to be mentioned, namely that neither the king himself shall put any to death for one cause alone, nor any of the other Persians for one cause alone shall do hurt that is irremediable to any of his own servants; but if after reckoning he finds that the wrongs done are more in number and greater than the services rendered, then only he gives vent to his anger.

Moreover they say that no one ever killed his own father or mother, but whatever deeds have been done which seemed to be of this nature, if examined must necessarily, they say, be found to be due either to changelings or to children of adulterous birth; for, say they, it is not reasonable to suppose that the true parent would be killed by his own son.

1.138

Whatever things it is not lawful for them to do, these it is not lawful for them even to

vocabulary

αἰσχρός shameful

ἀναγκαίη of necessity, by force

ἀναγκαῖος coerced, coercing, slavery

γράμμα -τος (n, 3) writing, letter

ἐμπτύω spit into, on

ἐναπονίζω wash in

ἐνουρέω piss in

ἐξελαύνω drive out, exile ~elastic

ἐπιφέρω bestow, impute ~bear

κατέρχομαι come down, out from

λέπρα leprosy

μεγαλοπρέπεια magnificence

μῖν him, her, it

ὀφείλω owe, should, if only

περιοράω look around; watch; permit

περιστερά dove

Πέρσης Persian

σέβομαι feel shame, awe

συμμίγνυμι mix with ~mix

συμπίπτω fall together, happen

ψεῦδος -ους (n, 3) a lie ~pseudo-

ψεύδω be false, deceive; (mid) to lie

~pseudo-

αἰσχιστον δὲ αὐτοῖσι τὸ ψεύδεσθαι νενόμισται, δεύτερα δὲ τὸ ὀφείλειν χρέος, πολλῶν μὲν καὶ ἄλλων εἵνεκα, μάλιστα δὲ ἀναγκαίην φασὶ εἶναι τὸν ὀφείλοντα καί τι ψεῦδος λέγειν. ὅς ἂν δὲ τῶν ἀστῶν λέπρην ἢ λεύκην ἔχῃ, ἐς πόλιν οὗτος οὐ κατέρχεται οὐδὲ συμμίσγεται τοῖσι ἄλλοισι Πέρσησι· φασὶ δέ μιν ἐς τὸν ἥλιον ἀμαρτόντα τι ταῦτα ἔχειν. ξεῖνον δὲ πάντα τὸν λαμβανόμενον ὑπὸ τουτέων¹ πολλοὶ ἐξελαύνουσι ἐκ τῆς χώρας, καὶ τὰς λευκὰς περιστερὰς, τὴν αὐτὴν αἰτίην ἐπιφέροντες.

Ἐς ποταμὸν δὲ οὔτε ἐνουρέουσι οὔτε ἐμπτύουσι, οὐ χεῖρας ἐναπονίζονται, οὐδὲ ἄλλον οὐδένα περιορῶσι, ἀλλὰ σέβονται ποταμοὺς μάλιστα.

1.139

καὶ τόδε ἄλλο σφι ὧδε συμπέπτωκε γίνεσθαι, τὸ Πέρσας μὲν αὐτοὺς λέληθε, ἡμέας μέντοι οὗ· τὰ οὐνόματά σφι ἔοντα ὅμοια τοῖσι σώμασι καὶ τῇ μεγαλοπρεπείῃ τελευτῶσι πάντα ἐς τὸν γράμμα, τὸ Δωριέες μὲν σὰν

¹ those diseases

|shameful δὲ αὐτοῖσι τὸ |be false, deceive; μισται, δεύτερα
 | (mid) to lie
 δὲ τὸ |owe, should, if only ..ολλῶν μὲν καὶ ἄλλων εἵνεκα,
 μάλιστα δὲ ἀναγκαίην φασὶ εἶναι τὸν |owe, should, if only .
 |a lie λέγειν. ὅς ἂν δὲ τῶν ἀστῶν λέπρην ἢ λεύκην
 ἔχῃ, ἐς πόλιν οὗτος οὐ |come down, 'οὐτ' |mix with τοῖσι
 |from
 ἄλλοισι Πέρσῃσι· φασὶ δέ μιν ἐς τὸν ἥλιον ἀμαρτόντα
 τι ταῦτα ἔχειν. ξεῖνον δὲ πάντα τὸν λαμβανόμενον ὑπὸ
 τουτέων¹ πολλοὶ |drive out ἐκ τῆς χώρας, καὶ τὰς
 λευκάς |dove , τὴν αὐτὴν αἰτίην |bestow,
 |impute
 Ἐς ποταμὸν δὲ οὔτε |piss in οὔτε |spit into, on, οὐ
 χεῖρας |wash in , οὐδὲ ἄλλον οὐδένα |look around; ἄλλὰ
 |watch; permit
 σέβονται ποταμοὺς μάλιστα.

1.139

καὶ τόδε ἄλλο σφι ὧδε |fall together, γίνεσθαι, τὸ Πέρσας
 |happen
 μὲν αὐτοὺς λέληθε, ἡμέας μέντοι οὐ· τὰ οὐνόματά
 σφι ἔόντα ὅμοια τοῖσι σώμασι καὶ τῇ |magnificence
 τελευτῶσι πάντα ἐς τῶντὸ |writing, , τὸ Δωριέες μὲν σὰν
 |letter

¹ those diseases

speak of: and the most disgraceful thing in their estimation is to tell an lie, and next to this to owe money, this last for many other reasons, but especially because it is necessary, they say, for him who owes money, also sometimes to tell lies: and whosoever of the men of the city has leprosy or whiteness of skin, he does not come into a city nor mingle with the other Persians; and they say that he has these diseases because he has offended in some way against the Sun: but a stranger who is taken by these diseases, in many regions they drive out of the country altogether, and also white doves, alleging against them the same cause.

And into a river they neither make water nor spit, neither do they wash their hands in it, nor allow any other to do these things, but they reverence rivers very greatly.

1.139

This moreover also has chanced to them, which the Persians have themselves failed to notice but I have not failed to do so:— their names, which are formed to correspond with their bodily shapes or their magnificence of station, end all with the same letter, that letter which the Dorians call

*vocabulary***ἀγνεύω** purify**ἀγώνισμα** -τος (n, 3) contest, feat**ἀτρεκής** precise, certain**αὐτοχειρία** murder done by one's own hand**αὐτοχείριος** with one's own hand**δίζημαι** seek ~zeal**ἐμφανής** visible**ἐμψυχος** (ὅ) animate, animated**ἐρπετόν** able to move ~serpent**εὖς** good, brave, noble**θάπτω** bury ~epitaph**θύω** (ὅ) rush; sacrifice ~θύω**κατακηρόω** cover with wax**κρύπτω** hide, cover ~cryptic**μύρμηξ** ant**νέκυσ** (ὅ) corpse, ghost ~necro**ὄον** ὄ type of fruit**ὄρνις** -θος (ἰ, f) bird ~ornithology**ὄφεις** ὄφεως (m) serpent ~ophidian**Πέρσης** Persian**πετεινός** winged; full-fledged ~petal**σαφηγής** plain truth

καλέουσι, Ἴωνες δὲ σίγμα· ἐς τοῦτο διζήμενος εὐρήσεις
τελευτώντα τῶν Περσέων τὰ οὐνόματα, οὐ τὰ μὲν τὰ δ'
οὐ, ἀλλὰ πάντα ὁμοίως.

1.140

ταῦτα μὲν ἀτρεκέως ἔχω περὶ αὐτῶν εἰδὼς εἰπεῖν· τάδε
μέντοι ὥς κρυπτόμενα λέγεται καὶ οὐ σαφηνέως περὶ τοῦ
ἀποθανόντος, ὥς οὐ πρότερον θάπτεται ἀνδρὸς Πέρσεω
ὁ νέκυς πρὶν ἂν ὑπ' ὄρνιθος ἢ κυνὸς ἐλκυσθῇ. Μάγους
μὲν γὰρ ἀτρεκέως οἶδα ταῦτα ποιέοντας· ἐμφανέως γὰρ
δὴ ποιεῖσι. κατακηρώσαντες δὲ ὦν τὸν νέκυν Πέρσαι γῇ
κρύπτουσι.

Μάγοι δὲ κεχωρίδεται πολλὸν τῶν τε ἄλλων ἀνθρώπων
καὶ τῶν ἐν Αἰγύπτῳ ἱρέων. οἱ μὲν γὰρ ἀγνέουσι
ἐμφυχον μηδὲν κτείνειν, εἰ μὴ ὅσα θύουσι· οἱ δὲ δὴ Μάγοι
αὐτοχειρίῃ πάντα πλὴν κυνὸς καὶ ἀνθρώπου κτείνουσι,
καὶ ἀγώνισμα μέγα τοῦτο ποιεῦνται, κτείνοντες ὁμοίως
μύρμηκας τε καὶ ὄφεις καὶ τᾶλλα ἔρπετὰ καὶ πετεινά. καὶ

καλέουσι, Ἰωνες δὲ σίγμα· ἐς τοῦτο |seek εὐρήσεις
 τελευτῶντα τῶν Περσέων τὰ οὐνόματα, οὐ τὰ μὲν τὰ δ'
 οὔ, ἀλλὰ πάντα ὁμοίως.

1.140

ταῦτα μὲν |precise, |certain ἔχω περὶ αὐτῶν εἰδὼς εἰπεῖν· τάδε
 μέντοι ὥς |hide, cover λέγεται καὶ οὐ |plain truth περὶ τοῦ
 ἀποθανόντος, ὥς οὐ πρότερον |bury ἀνδρὸς |Persian
 ὁ |corpse, τρὶν ἂν ὑπ' |bird ἢ κυνὸς ἐλκυσθῇ. Μάγους
 μὲν γὰρ |precise, |certain οἶδα ταῦτα ποιέοντας· |visible γὰρ
 δὴ ποιεῦσι. |cover with wax δὲ ὦν τὸν |corpse, |ghost Τέρσαι γῇ
 |hide, cover .

Μάγοι δὲ κεχωρίδεται πολλὸν τῶν τε ἄλλων ἀνθρώπων
 καὶ τῶν ἐν Αἰγύπτῳ ἱρέων. οἳ μὲν γὰρ |purify
 |animate, |animated μὴδὲν κτείνειν, εἰ μὴ ὅσα |rush; sacrifice· δὴ Μάγοι
 αὐτοχειρίῃ πάντα πλὴν κυνὸς καὶ ἀνθρώπου κτείνουσι,
 καὶ |contest, feat μέγα τοῦτο ποιεῦνται, κτείνοντες ὁμοίως
 |ant τε καὶ |serpent· ἢ τὰλλα |able to movè |winged . καὶ

san and the Ionians sigma; with this you will find, if you examine the matter, that all the Persian names end, not some with this and others with other letters, but all alike.

1.140

So much I am able to say for certain from my own knowledge about them: but what follows is reported about their dead as a secret mystery and not with clearness, namely that the body of a Persian man is not buried until it has been torn by a bird or a dog. (The Magians I know for a certainty have this practice, for they do it openly.) However that may be, the Persians cover the body with wax and then bury it in the earth.

Now the Magians are distinguished in many ways from other men, as also from the priests in Egypt: for these last esteem it a matter of purity to kill no living creature except the animals which they sacrifice; but the Magians kill with their own hands all creatures except dogs and men, and they even make this a great end to aim at, killing both ants and serpents and all other creeping and flying

vocabulary

ἀμφίβληστρον net for casting
ἄνειμι go up, inland, to, back ~ion
αὐλέω play (blow, toot)
αὐλητής -οῦ (m, 1) flute player
ἐκβαίνω come forth, disembark ~basis
ἐξειρύω draw out, haul off
καταστρέφω overturn, subdue
 ~catastrophe
κατήκοος hearing; obedient

κῦρος -εος (n, 3) authority; validity
ὀρχέομαι dance
πάλλω shake, brandish ~Pallas
περιβάλλω act: excel; mid: put on
 clothing ~ballistic
Πέρσης Persian
προΐσχω be ahead, jut forward; mid:
 have before one
ψεύδω be false, deceive; (mid) to lie
 ~pseudo-

ἀμφὶ μὲν τῷ νόμῳ τούτῳ ἔχέτω ὥς καὶ ἀρχὴν ἐνομίσθη,
ἄνειμι δὲ ἐπὶ τὸν πρότερον λόγον.

1.141

Ἵωνες δὲ καὶ Αἰολέες, ὥς οἱ Λυδοὶ τάχιστα κατεστράφατο
ὑπὸ Περσέων, ἔπεμπον ἀγγέλους ἐς Σάρδεις¹ παρὰ Κῦρον,
ἐθέλοντες ἐπὶ² τοῖσι αὐτοῖσι εἶναι τοῖσι καὶ Κροίσῳ ἦσαν
κατήκοοι. ὁ δὲ ἀκούσας αὐτῶν τὰ προΐσχοντο ἔλεξέ
σφι λόγον, ἄνδρα φὰς αὐλητὴν ἰδόντα³ ἰχθύς ἐν τῇ
θαλάσῃ αὐλέειν, δοκέοντα σφέας ἐξελεύσεσθαι ἐς γῆν·
ὥς δὲ ψευσθῆναι τῆς ἐλπίδος, λαβεῖν ἀμφίβληστρον καὶ
περιβαλεῖν τε πλῆθος πολλὸν τῶν ἰχθύων καὶ ἐξειρύσαι,
ἰδόντα δὲ παλλομένους εἰπεῖν ἄρα αὐτὸν πρὸς τοὺς
ἰχθύς «παύεσθέ μοι ὀρχεόμενοι, ἐπεὶ οὐδ' ἐμέο αὐλέοντος
ἠθέλετε ἐκβαίνειν ὀρχεόμενοι.» Κῦρος μὲν τοῦτον τὸν
λόγον τοῖσι Ἵωσι καὶ τοῖσι Αἰολεῦσι τῶνδε εἵνεκα ἔλεξε,
ὅτι δὴ οἱ Ἵωνες πρότερον αὐτοῦ Κύρου δεηθέντος δι'
ἀγγέλων ἀπίστασθαι σφέας ἀπὸ Κροίσου

¹ the conquered Lydian capital in western Anatolia ² under the same terms ³ plural accusative

ἀμφὶ μὲν τῷ νόμῳ τούτῳ ἐχέτω ὥς καὶ ἀρχὴν ἐνομίσθη,

|go up, inland, ` τὸν πρότερον λόγον.
|to, back

1.141

Ἵωνες δὲ καὶ Αἰολέες, ὥς οἱ Λυδοὶ τάχιστα |overturn, subdue

ὑπὸ Περσέων, ἔπεμπον ἀγγέλους ἐς Σάρδεις¹ παρὰ Κῦρον,

ἐθέλοντες ἐπὶ² τοῖσι αὐτοῖσι εἶναι τοῖσι καὶ Κροίσῳ ἦσαν

|hearing; obedient ὁ δὲ ἀκούσας αὐτῶν τὰ |be ahead, ἔλεξέ
|have before

σφι λόγον, ἄνδρα φὰς |flute ιδόντα³ ἰχθύς ἐν τῇ
|player

θαλάσῃ |play (blow, toot) τα σφέας ἐξελεύσεσθαι ἐς γῆν·

ὥς δὲ |be false, deceive; ἐλπίδος, λαβεῖν |net for casting καὶ
|(mid) to lie

|excel; don τε πλήθος πολλὸν τῶν ἰχθύων καὶ ἐξειρῦσαι,

ιδόντα δὲ |shake, brandish εἰπεῖν ἄρα αὐτὸν πρὸς τοὺς

ἰχθύς «παύεσθέ μοι |dance , ἐπεὶ οὐδ' ἐμέο |play (blow, toot)

ἡθέλετε |come forth |dance » |authority; `ν τοῦτον τὸν
|validity

λόγον τοῖσι Ἵωσι καὶ τοῖσι Αἰολεῦσι τῶνδε εἵνεκα ἔλεξε,

ὅτι δὴ οἱ Ἵωνες πρότερον αὐτοῦ Κύρου δεηθέντος δι'

ἀγγέλων ἀπίστασθαι σφέας ἀπὸ Κροίσου

¹ the conquered Lydian capital in western Anatolia ² under the same terms ³ plural accusative

things. About this custom then be it as it was from the first established; and I now to the former narrative.

1.141

The Ionians and Aiolians, as soon as the Lydians had been subdued by the Persians, sent messengers to Cyrus at Sardis, desiring to be his subjects on the same terms as they had been subjects of Croesus. And when he heard that which they proposed to him, he spoke to them a fable, saying that a certain player on the pipe saw fishes in the sea and played on his pipe, supposing that they would come out to land; but being deceived in his expectation, he took a casting-net and enclosed a great multitude of the fishes and drew them forth from the water: and when he saw them leaping about, he said to the fishes: “Stop dancing I pray you now, seeing that ye would not come out and dance before when I piped.” Cyrus spoke this fable to the Ionians and Aiolians for this reason, because the Ionians had refused to comply before, when Cyrus himself by a messenger requested them to revolt from Croesus,

vocabulary

ἀναφέρω bring up ~bear
ἄνω (ἄ) accomplish, pass, waste;
upwards, out to sea
ἑσπέρα evening, west
ἑτοῖμος ready; fulfilled
ἰδρύω establish
κατεργάζομαι achieve; cultivate; get;

kill

ὄρκιον oath ~orc
περιβάλλω act: excel; mid: put on
clothing ~ballistic
προσδοκάω expect
συλλέγω collect, assemble ~legion
τιμωρέω (ι) (+dat) take vengeance,
punish; aid one who has been attacked

οὐκ ἐπείθοντο, τότε δὲ κατεργασμένων τῶν πρηγμάτων ἦσαν ἔτοιμοι πείθεσθαι Κύρῳ.

ὁ μὲν δὴ ὀργῇ ἐχόμενος ἔλεγέ σφι τάδε· Ἴωνες δὲ ὡς ἤκουσαν τούτων ἀνενειχθέντων ἐς¹ τὰς πόλεις, τείχεά τε περιεβάλοντο ἕκαστοι καὶ συνελέγοντο ἐς Πανιώνιον οἱ ἄλλοι, πλὴν Μιλησίων· πρὸς μούνους γὰρ τούτους ὄρκιον Κῦρος ἐποιήσατο ἐπ' οἷσί περ ὁ Λυδός. τοῖσι δὲ λοιποῖσι Ἴωσι ἔδοξε κοινῶ λόγῳ πέμπειν ἀγγέλους ἐς Σπάρτην δεησομένους Ἴωσι τιμωρέειν.

1.142

οἱ δὲ² Ἴωνες οὗτοι, τῶν καὶ τὸ Πανιώνιον ἐστί, τοῦ μὲν³ οὐρανοῦ καὶ τῶν ὥρέων ἐν τῷ καλλίστῳ ἐτύγχανον ἰδρυσάμενοι πόλεις πάντων ἀνθρώπων τῶν ἡμεῖς ἴδμεν· οὔτε γὰρ τὰ ἄνω αὐτῆς χωρία τῶντὸ ποιεῖ τῇ Ἰωνίῃ οὔτε τὰ κάτω οὔτε τὰ πρὸς τὴν ἡῶ οὔτε τὰ πρὸς τὴν ἐσπέρην,

¹ a league of twelve cities (1.143), which, despite the name, did not include most of the Ionian cities ² Sections 1.142-151 are a long digression on the ethnography of the Ionian colonies in Asia and the ancient grudges that kept them disunited ³ climate

οὐκ ἐπέιθοντο, τότε δὲ |achieve; cultivate; τῶν πρηγμάτων
|get; kill
ἦσαν ἔτοιμοι πείθεσθαι Κύρῳ.

ὁ μὲν δὴ ὀργῇ ἐχόμενος ἔλεγέ σφι τάδε· Ἴωνες δὲ ὥς
ἤκουσαν τούτων |bring up ἐς¹ τὰς πόλεις, τείχεά τε
|excel; don ἕκαστοι καὶ |collect, ἐς Πανιώνιον οἱ
|assemble
ἄλλοι, πλὴν Μιλησίων· πρὸς μούρους γὰρ τούτους ὄρκιον
Κῦρος ἐποιήσατο ἐπ' οἰσί περ ὁ Λυδός. τοῖσι δὲ λοιποῖσι
Ἴωσι ἔδοξε κοινῶ λόγῳ πέμπειν ἀγγέλους ἐς Σπάρτην
δεησομένους Ἴωσι |take vengeance,
|punish, aid

1.142

οἱ δὲ² Ἴωνες οὗτοι, τῶν καὶ τὸ Πανιώνιον ἐστί, τοῦ
μὲν³ οὐρανοῦ καὶ τῶν ὠρέων ἐν τῷ καλλίστῳ ἐτύγχανον
|establish πόλεις πάντων ἀνθρώπων τῶν ἡμεῖς ἴδμεν·
οὔτε γὰρ τὰ ἄνω αὐτῆς χωρία τῶντ' οὐ ποιεῖ τῇ Ἰωνίῃ οὔτε
τὰ κάτω οὔτε τὰ πρὸς τὴν ἡῶ οὔτε τὰ πρὸς τὴν ἐσπέρην,

¹ a league of twelve cities (1.143), which, despite the name, did not include most of the Ionian cities ² Sections 1.142-151 are a long digression on the ethnography of the Ionian colonies in Asia and the ancient grudges that kept them disunited ³ climate

while now when the conquest had been made they were ready to submit to Cyrus.

Thus he said to them in anger, and the Ionians, when they heard this answer brought back to their cities, put walls round about them severally, and gathered together to the Panionion, all except the men of Miletos, for with these alone Cyrus had sworn an agreement on the same terms as the Lydians had granted. The rest of the Ionians resolved by common consent to send messengers to Sparta, to ask the Spartans to help the Ionians.

1.142

These Ionians to whom belongs the Panionion had the fortune to build their cities in the most favourable position for climate and seasons of any men whom we know: for neither the regions above Ionia nor those below, neither those towards the East nor those towards the West, produce the same results as Ionia itself, the regions

vocabulary

αὐχμῶδης dry; a drought; squalid, dull
γλῶσσα tongue, language ~glossary
διαλέγω go through, debate ~legion
εὖς good, brave, noble
ἡπειρος (f) mainland, continent
θερμός warm, hot ~thermos
ἰδρύω establish
μεσαμβρίη midday; the south
ὁμοφωνέω speak the same language;
 speak in unison

ὄον οὖ type of fruit
παραγωγή leading past, misleading
πιέζω press, squeeze ~piezoelectric
σκέπας -ως (n) shelter
σκέπη shelter, protection
σκέπω cover, seal
ὕγρός wet
ὑπόλοιπος left over
χαρακτήρ -ος (m) stamp; characteristic
ψυχρός (ῥ) cold ~psychology

τὰ μὲν ὑπὸ τοῦ ψυχροῦ τε καὶ ὑγροῦ πιεζόμενα, τὰ δὲ ὑπὸ τοῦ θερμοῦ τε καὶ αὐχμώδεος.

γλῶσσαν δὲ οὐ τὴν αὐτὴν οὔτοι νενομίκασι, ἀλλὰ τρόπους τέσσαρας παραγωγέων. Μίλητος μὲν αὐτέων πρώτη κέεται πόλις πρὸς μεσαμβρίην, μετὰ δὲ Μυοῦς τε καὶ Πριήνη. αὗται μὲν ἐν τῇ Καρίῃ κατοικῆνται κατὰ ταῦτά διαλεγόμεναι σφίσι, αἶδε δὲ ἐν τῇ Λυδίῃ, Ἐφεσος Κολοφῶν Λέβεδος Τέως Κλαζομεναὶ Φώκαια· αὗται δὲ αἱ πόλεις τῇσι πρότερον λεχθείησι ὁμολογέουσι κατὰ γλῶσσαν οὐδέν, σφισι δὲ ὁμοφωνέουσι. ἔτι δὲ τρεῖς ὑπόλοιποι Ἰάδες πόλεις, τῶν αἱ δύο μὲν νήσους οἰκέαται, Σάμον τε καὶ Χίον, ἡ δὲ μία ἐν τῇ ἡπείρῳ ἵδρυνται, Ἐρυθραί. Χῖοι μὲν νυν καὶ Ἐρυθραῖοι κατὰ τὸντὸ διαλέγονται, Σάμιοι δὲ ἐπ' ἐωντῶν μῶνοι. οὔτοι χαρακτῆρες γλώσσης τέσσαρες γίνονται.

1.143

τούτων δὴ ὦν τῶν Ἰώνων οἱ Μιλήσιοι¹ μὲν ἦσαν ἐν σκέπη

¹ Miletus was on the coast of Anatolia.

in the one direction being oppressed by cold and moisture, and those in the other by heat and drought.

And these do not use all the same speech, but have four different variations of language. First of their cities on the side of the South lies Miletos, and next to it Myus and Priene. These are settlements made in Caria, and speak the same language with one another; and the following are in Lydia,— Ephesos, Colophon, Lebedos, Teos, Clazomenai, Phocaia: these cities resemble not at all those mentioned before in the speech which they use, but they agree one with another. There remain besides three Ionian cities, of which two are established in the islands of Samos and Chios, and one is built upon the mainland, namely Erythrai: now the men of Chios and of Erythrai use the same form of language, but the Samians have one for themselves alone. Thus there result four separate forms of language.

1.143

Of these Ionians then those of Miletos were sheltered

vocabulary

ἀγάλλω exalt; mp: exult in
 ἀποσχίζω sever
 ἀσθενής weak
 ἐλάχιστος smallest, shortest, fewest
 ἐπαισχύνομαι be ashamed of
 ἰδρύω establish
 κατήκοος hearing; obedient
 λόγιμος notable
 μεταδίδωμι give part of ~donate

μετέχω partake of
 μηδამός no one
 ναυβάτης -ου (m, 1) (of a) sailor
 νησιώτης -ου (m, 1) insular
 ὄρκιον oath ~orc
 οὐδამός not anyone
 Πέρσης Persian
 πόλισμα buildings of a city
 σμυρναῖος of myrrh

τοῦ φόβου, ὄρκιον ποιησάμενοι, τοῖσι δὲ αὐτῶν νησιώτησι
 ἦν δεινὸν οὐδέν· οὔτε γὰρ Φοίνικες ἦσαν κω Περσέων
 κατήκοοι οὔτε αὐτοὶ οἱ Πέρσαι ναυβάται. ἀπεσχίσθησαν
 δὲ ἀπὸ τῶν ἄλλων Ἰώνων οὗτοι¹ κατ' ἄλλο μὲν οὐδέν,
 ἀσθενέος δὲ ἐόντος τοῦ παντὸς τότε Ἑλληνικοῦ γένεος,
 πολλῶ δὴ ἦν ἀσθενέστατον τῶν ἐθνέων τὸ Ἰωνικὸν
 καὶ λόγου ἐλαχίστου· ὅτι² γὰρ μὴ Ἀθῆναι, ἦν οὐδὲν
 ἄλλο πόλισμα λόγιμον. οἱ μὲν νυν ἄλλοι Ἰῶνες καὶ
 οἱ Ἀθηναῖοι ἔφυγον τὸ³ οὔνομα, οὐ βουλόμενοι Ἰῶνες
 κεκλήσθαι, ἀλλὰ καὶ νῦν φαίνονται μοι οἱ πολλοὶ αὐτῶν
 ἐπαισχύνεσθαι τῷ οὐνόματι· αἱ δὲ δυνώδεκα πόλεις αὐται
 τῷ τε οὐνόματι ἡγάλλοντο καὶ ἱρὸν ἰδρύσαντο ἐπὶ σφέων
 αὐτέων, τῷ οὔνομα ἔθεντο Πανιώνιον, ἐβουλεύσαντο
 δὲ αὐτοῦ μεταδοῦναι μηδαμοῖσι ἄλλοισι Ἰώνων οὐδ'
 ἐδειήθησαν δὲ οὐδαμοὶ μετασχεῖν ὅτι μὴ Σμυρναῖοι·

¹ because of ² except for Athens, which Herodotus considers to be
 Ionian ³ the label "Ionian"

τοῦ φόβου, ὄρκιον ποιησάμενοι, τοῖσι δὲ αὐτῶν |insular

ἦν δεινὸν οὐδέν· οὔτε γὰρ Φοίνικες ἦσαν κω Περσέων

|hearing; οὔτε αὐτοὶ οἱ Πέρσαι |(of a) sailor |sever
|obedient

δὲ ἀπὸ τῶν ἄλλων Ἰώνων οὕτοι¹ κατ' ἄλλο μὲν οὐδέν,

|weak δὲ ἐόντος τοῦ παντός τότε Ἑλληνικοῦ γένους,

πολλῶ δὴ ἦν |weak τῶν ἐθνέων τὸ Ἴωνικόν

καὶ λόγου |smallest, short-² γὰρ μὴ Ἀθῆναι, ἦν οὐδέν
|est, fewest

ἄλλο |buildings of|notable οἱ μὲν νυν ἄλλοι Ἴωνες καὶ
|a city

οἱ Ἀθηναῖοι ἔφυγον τὸ³ οὖνομα, οὐ βουλόμενοι Ἴωνες

κεκλήσθαι, ἀλλὰ καὶ νῦν φαίνονται μοι οἱ πολλοὶ αὐτῶν

|be ashamed of τῷ οὐνόματι· αἱ δὲ δυνώδεκα πόλεις αὖται

τῷ τε οὐνόματι ἡγάλλοντο καὶ ἱρὸν |establish ἐπὶ σφέων

αὐτέων, τῷ οὖνομα ἔθεντο Πανιώνιον, ἐβουλεύσαντο

δὲ αὐτοῦ |give part of |no one ἄλλοισι Ἰώνων οὐδ'

ἐδεήθησαν δὲ |not any-|partake of ὅτι μὴ |of myrrh
|one

¹ because of ² except for Athens, which Herodotus considers to be
Ionian ³ the label "Ionian"

from danger, since they had sworn an agreement; and those of them who lived in islands had no cause for fear, for the Phenicians were not yet subjects of the Persians and the Persians themselves were not sea-men. Now these were parted off from the other Ionians for no other reason than this:— The whole Hellenic nation was at that time weak, but of all its races the Ionian was much the weakest and of least account: except Athens, indeed, it had no considerable city. Now the other Ionians, and among them the Athenians, avoided the name, not wishing to be called Ionians, nay even now I perceive that the greater number of them are ashamed of the name: but these twelve cities not only prided themselves on the name but established a temple of their own, to which they gave the name of Panionion, and they made resolution not to grant a share in it to any other Ionians (nor indeed did any ask to share it except those of Smyrna);

vocabulary

ἀνατίθῃμι consecrate, lay on, impute;
 (mp) reproach
ἀνομέω act lawlessly
εἰσδέχομαι admit, take in
ἐκκλείω shut out; prevent
ἐκφέρω carry off ~bear
εὖς good, brave, noble
ζημία loss, penalty ~zeal
κατηλογέω ignore, neglect
μετοχή sharing

μηδαμὸς no one
ὄον οὖ type of fruit
πάλαι long ago ~paleo
παλαίω wrestle ~Pallas
πάλη wrestling ~Pallas
πάλλω shake, brandish ~Pallas
πεντάπολις league of 5 cities
πρόσοικος neighboring
προσπασσαλεύω nail to, hang
τρίπους three-legged cauldron ~pedal

1.144

κατά περ¹ οἱ ἐκ τῆς πενταπόλιος νῦν χώρας Δωριέες, πρότερον δὲ ἑξαπόλιος τῆς αὐτῆς ταύτης καλεομένης, φυλάσσονται ὧν μηδαμὸς ἐσδέξασθαι τῶν προσοίκων Δωριέων ἐς τὸ Τριοπικὸν ἱρόν, ἀλλὰ καὶ σφέων αὐτῶν τοὺς περὶ τὸ ἱρόν ἀνομήσαντας ἐξεκλήισαν τῆς μετοχῆς, ἐν γὰρ τῷ ἀγῶνι τοῦ Τριοπίου Ἀπόλλωνος ἐτίθεσαν τὸ πάλαι τρίποδας χαλκέους τοῖσι νικῶσι, καὶ τούτους χρῆν τοὺς λαμβάνοντας ἐκ τοῦ ἱροῦ μὴ ἐκφέρειν ἀλλ' αὐτοῦ ἀνατιθέναι τῷ θεῷ. ἀνὴρ ὧν Ἀλικαρνησσεύς, τῷ οὖνομα ἦν Ἀγασικλῆς, νικήσας τὸν νόμον κατηλόγησε, φέρων δὲ πρὸς τὰ ἐωυτοῦ οἰκία προσεπασσάλευσε τὸν τρίποδα. διὰ ταύτην τὴν αἰτίην αἱ πέντε πόλεις, Λίνδος καὶ Ἰήλυσός τε καὶ Κάμειρος καὶ Κῶς τε καὶ Κνίδος ἐξεκλήισαν τῆς μετοχῆς τὴν ἕκτην πόλιν Ἀλικαρνησσόν. τούτοισι μὲν νυν οὔτοι ταύτην τὴν ζημίην ἐπέθηκαν.

¹ just like the Ionians

1.144

κατά περ¹ οἱ ἐκ τῆς |league of 5 cities ἦν χώρας Δωριέες,
 πρότερον δὲ ἑξαπόλιος τῆς αὐτῆς ταύτης καλεομένης,
 φυλάσσονται ὦν |no one |admit, take in . ὦν |neighboring
 Δωριέων ἐς τὸ Τριοπικὸν ἱρόν, ἀλλὰ καὶ σφέων αὐτῶν
 τοὺς περὶ τὸ ἱρόν |act lawlessly |shut out; prevent. |sharing
 ἐν γὰρ τῷ ἀγῶνι τοῦ Τριοπίου Ἀπόλλωνος ἐτίθεσαν τὸ
 πάλαι |cauldron χαλκέους τοῖσι νικῶσι, καὶ τούτους χρῆν
 τοὺς λαμβάνοντας ἐκ τοῦ ἱροῦ μὴ |carry off ἀλλ' αὐτοῦ
 |consecrate, lay ὄν, ἰμ̄- ἀνὴρ ὦν Ἀλικαρνησσεύς, τῷ οὖνομα
 |pute; (mp) reproach
 ἦν Ἀγασικλῆς, νικήσας τὸν νόμον |ignore, neglect, φέρων δὲ
 πρὸς τὰ ἐωυτοῦ οἰκία |nail to, hang τὸν |cauldron . διὰ
 ταύτην τὴν αἰτίην αἱ πέντε πόλεις, Λίνδος καὶ Ἰήλυσός
 τε καὶ Κάμειρος καὶ Κῶς τε καὶ Κνίδος |shut out; prevent.
 |sharing τὴν ἕκτην πόλιν Ἀλικαρνησσόν. τούτοισι μὲν νυν
 οὗτοι ταύτην τὴν |loss, ἐπέθηκαν.
 |penalty

¹ just like the Ionians

1.144

Just as the Dorians of that district which is now called the Five Cities but was formerly called the Six Cities, take care not to admit any of the neighbouring Dorians to the temple of Triopion, and even exclude from sharing in it those of their own body who commit any offence as regards the temple. For example, in the games of the Triopian Apollo they used formerly to set bronze tripods as prizes for the victors, and the rule was that those who received them should not carry them out of the temple but dedicate them then and there to the god. There was a man then of Halicarnassos, whose name was Agasicles, who being a victor paid no regard to this rule, but carried away the tripod to his own house and hung it up there upon a nail. On this ground the other five cities, Lindos, Ialysos and Cameiros, Cos and Cnidos, excluded the sixth city Halicarnassos from sharing in the temple.

vocabulary

ἀείναιος ever-flowing

εἰσδέχομαι admit, take in

ἐξελαύνω drive out, exile ~elastic

ἡσάομαι (pass) be weaker, be

overcome; (active) defeat

καταφεύγω resort to, flee to, appeal to
~fugitive

μεσόγαιος inland

μωρία folly

1.145

δυώδεκα δὲ μοι δοκέουσι πόλις ποιήσασθαι οἱ Ἴωνες καὶ οὐκ ἐβελῆσαι πλεῦνας ἐσδέξασθαι τοῦδε εἵνεκα, ὅτι καὶ ὅτε ἐν Πελοποννήσῳ οἴκεον, δυώδεκα ἦν αὐτῶν μέρεα, κατὰ περ νῦν Ἀχαιῶν τῶν ἐξελασάντων Ἴωνας δυώδεκα ἐστὶ μέρεα, Πελλήνη μὲν γε πρώτη πρὸς Σικυνῶνος, μετὰ δὲ Αἴγειρα καὶ Αἰγαί, ἐν τῇ Κρᾶθις ποταμὸς αἰίναος ἐστί, ἀπ' ὅτεν ὁ ἐν Ἰταλῇ ποταμὸς τὸ οὖνομα ἔσχε, καὶ Βοῦρα καὶ Ἑλίκη, ἐς τὴν κατέφυγον Ἴωνες ὑπὸ Ἀχαιῶν μάχῃ ἐσσωθέντες, καὶ Αἰγίον καὶ Ῥύπες καὶ Πατρέες καὶ Φαρέες καὶ Ὠλενος, ἐν τῷ Πείρος ποταμὸς μέγας ἐστί, καὶ Δύμη καὶ Τριταιέες, οἳ μούνοι τούτων μεσόγαιοι οἰκέουσι. ταῦτα δυώδεκα μέρεα νῦν Ἀχαιῶν ἐστὶ καὶ τότε γε Ἰώνων ἦν.

1.146

τούτων δὴ εἵνεκα καὶ οἱ Ἴωνες δυώδεκα πόλις ἐποίησαντο· ἐπεὶ ὥς γέ τι¹ μᾶλλον οὗτοι Ἴωνες εἰσὶ τῶν ἄλλων Ἰώνων ἢ κάλλιον τι γεγόνاسι, μωρίῃ πολλῇ

¹ adverb: any

1.145

δυώδεκα δὲ μοι δοκέουσι πόλιας ποιήσασθαι οἱ Ἴωνες καὶ
 οὐκ ἐθέλησαι πλεῦνας |admit, take in. οὐδὲ εἵνεκα, ὅτι καὶ ὅτε
 ἐν Πελοποννήσῳ οἴκεον, δυώδεκα ἦν αὐτῶν μέρεα, κατὰ
 περ νῦν Ἀχαιῶν τῶν |drive out Ἴωνας δυώδεκα ἐστὶ
 μέρεα, Πελλήνη μὲν γε πρώτη πρὸς Σικυῶνος, μετὰ δὲ
 Αἴγαιρα καὶ Αἰγαί, ἐν τῇ Κρᾶθις ποταμὸς |ever-flowing¹ τί,
 ἀπ' ὅτεν ὁ ἐν Ἰταλίῃ ποταμὸς τὸ οὖνομα ἔσχε, καὶ Βοῦρα
 καὶ Ἑλίκη, ἐς τὴν |resort to, flee Ἴωνες ὑπὸ Ἀχαιῶν μάχῃ
 |to, appeal to
 |(pass) be weaker, be over- καὶ Ῥύπες καὶ Πατρές καὶ Φαρές
 |come; (active) defeat
 καὶ Ὠλενος, ἐν τῷ Πείρῳ ποταμὸς μέγας ἐστί, καὶ Δύμη
 καὶ Τριταιέες, οἳ μόνονι τούτων |inland οἰκέουσι. ταῦτα
 δυώδεκα μέρεα νῦν Ἀχαιῶν ἐστὶ καὶ τότε γε Ἰώνων ἦν.

1.146

τούτων δὴ εἵνεκα καὶ οἱ Ἴωνες δυώδεκα πόλιας
 ἐποίησαντο· ἐπεὶ ὥς γέ τι¹ μᾶλλον οὗτοι Ἴωνες εἰσὶ τῶν
 ἄλλων Ἰώνων ἢ κάλλιόν τι γεγόνασι, μωρίῃ πολλή

¹ adverb: any

1.145

Upon these they laid this penalty: but as for the Ionians, I think that the reason why they made of themselves twelve cities and would not receive any more into their body, was because when they dwelt in Peloponnesus there were of them twelve divisions, just as now there are twelve divisions of the Achaians who drove the Ionians out: for first, (beginning from the side of Sikyon) comes Pellene, then Aigeira and Aigai, in which last is the river Crathis with a perpetual flow (whence the river of the same name in Italy received its name), and Bura and Helike, to which the Ionians fled for refuge when they were worsted by the Achaians in fight, and Aigion and Rhypes and Patreis and Phareis and Olenos, where is the great river Peiros, and Dyme and Tritaieis, of which the last alone has an inland position. These form now twelve divisions of the Achaians, and in former times they were divisions of the Ionians.

1.146

For this reason then the Ionians also made for themselves twelve cities; for at any rate to say that these are any more Ionians than the other Ionians, or have at all a nobler descent, is

vocabulary

ἀναμείγνυμι (ῥ) mix with, join
ἀποδάσμιος separated, apportioned
ἀποικία colony
γενναῖος noble, sincere ~genesis
γονεύς -ος (m) parent
ἐλάχιστος smallest, shortest, fewest

ἐπελαύνω beat out ~elastic
μέτειμι be among, go, follow ~ion
ὁμοσιτέω (ι) eat with
πρυτανήιον town hall, law court
συνοικέω live together
φονεύω kill

λέγειν· τῶν Ἄβαντες μὲν ἐξ Εὐβοίης εἰσὶ οὐκ ἐλαχίστη μοῖρα, τοῖσι Ἰωνίης μέτα οὐδὲ τοῦ οὐνόματος οὐδέν, Μινύαι δὲ Ὀρχομένιοί σφι ἀναμεμίσχεται καὶ Καδμεῖοι καὶ Δρύοπες καὶ Φωκῆες ἀποδάσμιοι καὶ Μολοσσοὶ καὶ Ἀρκάδες Πελασγοὶ καὶ Δωριεῖς Ἐπιδαύριοι, ἄλλα τε ἔθνεα πολλὰ ἀναμεμίσχεται· οἱ δὲ αὐτῶν ἀπὸ τοῦ πρυτανηίου τοῦ Ἀθηναίων ὀρμηθέντες καὶ νομίζοντες γενναιότατοι εἶναι Ἰώνων, οὗτοι δὲ οὐ γυναῖκας ἡγάγοντο ἐς τὴν ἀποικίην ἀλλὰ Καείρας ἔσχον, τῶν ἐφόνευσαν τοὺς γονέας. διὰ τοῦτον δὲ τὸν φόνον αἱ γυναῖκες αὐται νόμον θέμεναι σφίσι αὐτῇσι ὄρκους ἐπήλασαν¹ καὶ παρέδωσαν τῇσι θυγατράσι, μή κοτε ὁμοσιτῆσαι τοῖσι ἀνδράσι μηδὲ οὐνόματι βῶσαι τὸν ἑωυτῆς ἄνδρα, τοῦδε εἵνεκα ὅτι ἐφόνευσαν σφέων τοὺς πατέρας καὶ ἄνδρας καὶ παῖδας καὶ ἔπειτα ταῦτα ποιήσαντες αὐτῇσι συνοίκεον.

1.147

ταῦτα δὲ ἦν γινόμενα ἐν Μιλήτῳ. βασιλέας δὲ

¹ imposed

λέγειν· τῶν Ἀβαντες μὲν ἐξ Εὐβοίης εἰσὶ οὐκ |smallest, short-
est, fewest
μοῖρα, τοῖσι Ἰωνίης μέτα οὐδὲ τοῦ οὐνόματος οὐδέν,
Μινύαι δὲ Ὀρχομένιοί σφι |mix with, join καὶ Καδμεῖοι
καὶ Δρύοπες καὶ Φωκέες |separated,
apportioned καὶ Μολοσσοὶ καὶ
Ἀρκάδες Πελασγοὶ καὶ Δωριέες Ἐπιδάυριοι, ἄλλα τε ἔθνεα
πολλὰ |mix with, join οἱ δὲ αὐτῶν ἀπὸ τοῦ |town hall, law court
Ἀθηναίων ὀρμηθέντες καὶ νομίζοντες |noble, sincere εἶναι
Ἰώνων, οὗτοι δὲ οὐ γυναικάς ἡγάγοντο ἐς τὴν ἀποικίην
ἀλλὰ Καείρας ἔσχον, τῶν |kill τοὺς |parent διὰ
τοῦτον δὲ τὸν φόνον αἱ γυναῖκες αὗται νόμον θέμεναι σφίσι
αὐτῇσι ὄρκους |beat out ¹ καὶ παρέδοσαν τῇσι θυγατράσι,
μή κοτε |eat with τοῖσι ἀνδράσι μηδὲ οὐνόματι βῶσαι
τὸν ἐωντῆς ἄνδρα, τοῦδε εἵνεκα ὅτι |kill σφέων
τοὺς πατέρας καὶ ἄνδρας καὶ παῖδας καὶ ἔπειτα ταῦτα
ποιήσαντες αὐτῇσι |live together

1.147

ταῦτα δὲ ἦν γινόμενα ἐν Μιλήτῳ. βασιλέας δὲ

¹ imposed

mere folly, considering that a large part of them are Abantians from Euboea, who have no share even in the name of Ionia, and Minyai of Orchomenos have been mingled with them, and Cadmeians and Dryopians and Phokians who seceded from their native State and Molossians and Pelasgians of Arcadia and Dorians of Epidauros and many other races have been mingled with them; and those of them who set forth to their settlements from the City Hall of Athens and who esteem themselves the most noble by descent of the Ionians, these, I say, brought no women with them to their settlement, but took Carian women, whose parents they slew: and on account of this slaughter these women laid down for themselves a rule, imposing oaths on one another, and handed it on to their daughters, that they should never eat with their husbands, nor should a wife call her own husband by name, for this reason, because the Ionians had slain their fathers and husbands and children and then having done this had them to wife. This happened at Miletos.

1.147

Moreover some of them set Lykian kings over them, descendants of Glaucos

vocabulary

ἄκρα at the edge, extreme ~acute

ἄκρη at the edge, extreme

ἄκρῖς -ός (f) hilltop ~acute

ἄρκτος (f) bear

γράμμα -τος (n, 3) writing, letter

Ἑλλήν Greek

ἐξαιρέω pick, steal; dedicate; destroy

~heresy

ζέφυρος the west wind ~zephyr

ἡπειρος (f) mainland, continent

καθαρός clean, pure

καθήκω come down, (a day) to fall,
arrive; be proper

καταίρω swoop; land

καταντίον facing, across from

καταράομαι (αἶα) curse

ὀρτή holiday, feast

οὐτις nobody, nothing

περιέχω (mid) protect

σκήψις excuse

συλλέγω collect, assemble ~legion

συναμφότεροι both together

χῶρος place ~heir

ἐστήσαντο οἱ μὲν αὐτῶν Λυκίους ἀπὸ Γλαύκου τοῦ Ἴππολόχου γεγονότας, οἱ δὲ Καύκωνας Πυλίου ἀπὸ Κόδρου τοῦ Μελάνθου, οἱ δὲ καὶ συναμφοτέρους. ἀλλὰ γὰρ περιέχονται τοῦ οὐνόματος μᾶλλον τι τῶν ἄλλων Ἰώνων, ἔστωσαν δὴ καὶ οἱ καθαρῶς γεγονότες Ἴωνες. εἰσὶ δὲ πάντες Ἴωνες ὅσοι ἀπ' Ἀθηνέων γεγόνασι καὶ Ἀπατούρια ἄγουσι ὀρτήν. ἄγουσι δὲ πάντες πλὴν Ἐφεσίων καὶ Κολοφωνίων· οὗτοι γὰρ μοῦνοι Ἰώνων οὐκ ἄγουσι Ἀπατούρια, καὶ οὗτοι κατὰ φόνου τινὰ σκῆψιν.

1.148

τὸ δὲ Πανιώνιον ἐστὶ τῆς Μυκάλης χώρος ἱρὸς πρὸς ἄρκτον τετραμμένος, κοινῇ ἐξαραιρημένος ὑπὸ Ἰώνων Ποσειδέωνι Ἐλικωνίῳ. ἡ δὲ Μυκάλη ἐστὶ τῆς ἠπείρου ἄκρη πρὸς ζέφυρον ἄνεμον κατήκουσα Σάμῳ καταντίον, ἐς τὴν συλλεγόμενοι ἀπὸ τῶν πολίων Ἴωνες ἄγεσκον ὀρτήν τῇ ἔθεντο οὐνομα Πανιώνια. πεπόνθασιν δὲ οὔτι μοῦναι αἱ Ἰώνων ὀρταὶ τοῦτο, ἀλλὰ καὶ Ἑλλήνων πάντων ὁμοίως πᾶσαι ἐς τῶντὸ γράμμα τελευτῶσι, κατὰ περ τῶν

ἐστήσαντο οἱ μὲν αὐτῶν Λυκίους ἀπὸ Γλαύκου τοῦ
 Ἱππολόχου γεγονότας, οἱ δὲ Καύκωνας Πυλίου ἀπὸ
 Κόδρου τοῦ Μελάνθου, οἱ δὲ καὶ συναμφοτέρους. ἀλλὰ
 γὰρ |(mid) protect τοῦ οὐνόματος μᾶλλον τι τῶν ἄλλων
 Ἰώνων, ἔστωσαν δὴ καὶ οἱ καθαρῶς γεγονότες Ἴωνες.
 εἰσὶ δὲ πάντες Ἴωνες ὅσοι ἀπ' Ἀθηνέων γεγόνασι καὶ
 Ἀπατούρια ἄγουσι |holiday,
 |feast ἄγουσι δὲ πάντες πλὴν
 Ἐφεσίων καὶ Κολοφωνίων· οὗτοι γὰρ μοῦνοι Ἰώνων οὐκ
 ἄγουσι Ἀπατούρια, καὶ οὗτοι κατὰ φόνου τινὰ |excuse

1.148

τὸ δὲ Πανιώνιον ἐστὶ τῆς Μυκάλης |place ἱρὸς πρὸς
 |bear τετραμμένος, κοινῇ |pick, steal; dedi- ὑπὸ Ἰώνων
 |cate; destroy
 Ποσειδέωνι Ἑλικωνίῳ. ἡ δὲ Μυκάλη ἐστὶ τῆς |mainland,
 |continent
 ἄκρῃ πρὸς |the west wind, οὐν |come down, (a day) to αταντίον,
 |fall, arrive; be proper
 ἐς τὴν |collect, ἀπὸ τῶν πολίων Ἴωνες ἄγεσκον
 |assemble
 |holiday, ἣ ἔθεντο οὐνομα Πανιώνια. πεπόνθασι δὲ |nobody,
 |feast |nothing
 μῦναι αἱ Ἰώνων |holiday, αὐτο, ἀλλὰ καὶ |Greek πάντων
 |feast
 ὁμοίως πᾶσαι ἐς τὸν αὐτὸν |writing, τελευτῶσι, κατὰ περ τῶν
 |letter

and Hippolochos, while others were ruled by Cauconians of Pylos, descendants of Codros the son of Melanthos, and others again by princes of the two races combined. Since however these hold on to the name more than the other Ionians, let them be called, if they will, the Ionians of truly pure descent; but in fact all are Ionians who have their descent from Athens and who keep the feast of Apaturia; and this all keep except the men of Ephesos and Colophon: for these alone of all the Ionians do not keep the Apaturia, and that on the ground of some murder committed.

1.148

Now the Panionion is a sacred place on the north side of Mycale, set apart by common agreement of the Ionians for Poseidon of Helike; and this Mycale is a promontory of the mainland running out Westwards towards Samos, where the Ionians gathering together from their cities used to hold a festival which they called the Panionia. (And not only the feasts of the Ionians but also those of all the Hellenes equally are subject to this rule, that their names all end in the same letter, just like

vocabulary

ἀποβάλλω throw away, lose
ἀποκλείω shut out; (+acc) close
ἀρχαῖος ancient, from the beginning
 ~oligarch
ἐκπίπτω fall out of ~petal
ἐνδεκα eleven ~decimal
ἐπιπλά -τος (n, 2) stuff, possessions
ἡπειρος (f) mainland, continent
ἡσάομαι (pass) be weaker, be
 overcome; (active) defeat
Κίλλα Cilla
κτίζω found, populate ~oxytocin

νότιος flowing; south
ὁμολογίη agreement, consent
ὁρτή holiday, feast
παραλύω detach, disable
Πέρσης Persian
σμύρνα myrrh
σμυρναῖος of myrrh
στάσις -εως (f) placing; faction
ὑποδείκνυμι (υὑ) show, trace out
ὑποδέχομαι welcome, accept, suffer
 ~doctrine
φυγάζ -δος (m, 3) exile, refugee
 ~fugitive

Περσέων τὰ οὐνόματα. αὐται μὲν αἱ Ἰάδες πόλιες εἰσί.

1.149

αἶδε δὲ αἱ Αἰολίδες, Κύμη ἢ Φρικωνὶς καλεομένη, Λήρισαι, Νέον τεῖχος, Τήμνος, Κίλλα, Νότιον, Αἰγιρόεσσα, Πιτάνη, Αἰγαῖαι, Μύρινα, Γρύνεια. αὐται ἑνδεκα Αἰολέων πόλιες αἱ ἀρχαῖαι· μία γὰρ σφέων παρελύθη Σμύρνη ὑπὸ Ἰώνων· ἦσαν γὰρ καὶ αὐται δυνώδεκα αἱ ἐν τῇ ἡπείρῳ. οὗτοι δὲ οἱ Αἰολέες χώραν μὲν ἔτυχον κτίσαντες ἀμείνω Ἰώνων, ὥρέων¹ δὲ ἤκουσαν οὐκ ὁμοίως.

1.150

σμύρνην δὲ ὧδε ἀπέβαλον Αἰολέες. Κολοφωνίους ἄνδρας στάσι ἐσσωθέντας καὶ ἐκπεσόντας ἐκ τῆς πατρίδος ὑπεδέξαντο. μετὰ δὲ οἱ φυγάδες τῶν Κολοφωνίων φυλάξαντες τοὺς Σμυρναίους ὀρτὴν ἔξω τείχεος ποιευμένους Διονύσῳ, τὰς πύλας ἀποκληρίσαντες ἔσχον τὴν πόλιν. βοηθησάντων δὲ πάντων Αἰολέων, ὁμολογίῃ ἐχρήσαντο τὰ ἔπιπλα ἀποδόντων τῶν Ἰώνων

¹ climate

Περσέων τὰ οὐνόματα. αὐται μὲν αἱ Ἰάδες πόλεις εἰσί.

1.149

αἶδε δὲ αἱ Αἰολίδες, Κύμη ἢ Φρικωνὶς καλεομένη, Λήρισαι,
 Νέον τεῖχος, Τῆμνος, |Cilla , |flowing; , Αἰγιρόεσσα,
 |south
 Πιτάνη, Αἰγαῖαι, Μύρινα, Γρύνεια. αὐται |eleven Αἰολέων
 πόλεις αἱ |ancient, from γὰρ σφέων |detach, Σμύρνη ὑπὸ
 |the beginning |disable
 Ἰώνων· ἦσαν γὰρ καὶ αὐται δώδεκα αἱ ἐν τῇ |mainland,
 |continent
 οὔτοι δὲ οἱ Αἰολέες χώραν μὲν ἔτυχον |found, ἀμείνω
 |populate
 Ἰώνων, ὥρέων¹ δὲ ἤκουσαν οὐκ ὁμοίως.

1.150

|myrrh δὲ ὦδε |throw away, lose ἄλλες. Κολοφωνίους
 ἄνδρας |placing; |(pass) be weaker, `befall out of ἐκ τῆς
 |faction |overcome; (active) de-
 |feat
 πατρίδος ὑπεδέξαντο. μετὰ δὲ οἱ |exile, τῶν
 |refugee
 Κολοφωνίων φυλάξαντες τοὺς |of myrrh |holiday, ἕξω
 |feast
 τείχεος ποιευμένους Διονύσῳ, τὰς πύλας |shut out; (+acc)
 |close
 ἔσχον τὴν πόλιν. βοηθησάντων δὲ πάντων Αἰολέων,
 |agreement, ἐχρήσαντο τὰ |stuff, possessions ὧν τῶν Ἰώνων
 |consent

¹ climate

the names of the Persians.) These then are the Ionian cities:

1.149

And those of Aiolia are as follows:— Kyme, which is called Phriconis, Larisai, Neon-teichos, Temnos, Killa, Notion, Aigiroëssa, Pitane, Aigaiai, Myrina, Gryneia; these are the ancient cities of the Aiolians, eleven in number, since one, Smyrna, was severed from them by the Ionians; for these cities, that is those on the mainland, used also formerly to be twelve in number. And these Aiolians had the fortune to settle in a land which is more fertile than that of the Ionians but in respect of climate less favoured.

1.150

Now the Aiolians lost Smyrna in the following manner:— certain men of Colophon, who had been worsted in party strife and had been driven from their native city, were received there for refuge: and after this the Colophonian exiles watched for a time when the men of Smyrna were celebrating a festival to Dionysos outside the walls, and then they closed the gates against them and got possession of the city. After this, when the whole body of Aiolians came to the rescue, they made an agreement that the Ionians should give up

*vocabulary***ἀνδάνω** please ~hedonism**ἀνδραποδίζω** enslave**ἐκλείπω** leave out, pass over**ἐνδεκα** eleven ~decimal**ἐξηγέομαι** lead forth; set out, describe
~hegemony**ἐπιδιαιρέω** divide, distribute**ἡπειρώτης** -τιδος (f) landsman**νέμω** to allot, to pasture ~nemesis**ὄμαιμος** related by blood**σμυρναῖος** of myrrh**τάχος** -ους (n, 3) speed ~tachometer

ἐκλιπεῖν Σμύρνην Αἰολέας. ποιησάντων δὲ ταῦτα Σμυρναίων ἐπιδιείλοντο σφέας αἱ ἔνδεκα πόλεις καὶ ἐποίησαντο σφέων αὐτέων πολήτας.

1.151

αὗται μὲν νυν αἱ ἡπειρώτιδες Αἰολίδες πόλεις, ἔξω τῶν ἐν τῇ Ἰδῇ οἰκημενέων· κεχωρίδεται γὰρ αὗται. αἱ δὲ τὰς νήσους ἔχουσαι πέντε μὲν πόλεις τὴν Λέσβον νέμονται τὴν γὰρ ἔκτην ἐν τῇ Λέσβῳ οἰκημένην Ἀρίσβαν ἡνδραπόδισαν Μηθυμναῖοι ἐόντας ὁμαίμους, ἐν Τενέδῳ δὲ μία οἴκηται πόλις, καὶ ἐν τῇσι Ἑκατὸν νήσοισι καλεομένησι ἄλλη μία. Λεσβίοισι μὲν νῦν καὶ Τενεδίοισι, κατὰ περ Ἰώνων τοῖσι τὰς νήσους ἔχουσι, ἦν¹ δεινὸν οὐδέν· τῇσι δὲ λοιπῇσι πόλισι ἔαδε κοινῇ Ἰωσι ἔπεσθαι τῇ ἂν οὗτοι ἐξηγέωνται.

1.152

ὥς δὲ ἀπίκοντο εἰς τὴν Σπάρτην τῶν Ἰώνων καὶ Αἰολέων οἱ ἄγγελοι κατὰ γὰρ δὴ τάχος ἦν ταῦτα πρησσόμενα,

¹ They were not afraid of the Persians.

|leave out, pass οὔτε, Αἰολέας. ποιησάντων δὲ ταῦτα
 |of myrrh |divide, σφέας αἱ |eleven πόλεις καὶ
 |distribute
 ἐποίησαντο σφέων αὐτέων πολίτας.

1.151

αὐται μὲν νῦν αἱ |landsman Αἰολίδες πόλεις, ἔξω τῶν
 ἐν τῇ Ἰδῇ οἰκημενέων· κεχωρίδαται γὰρ αὐται. αἱ δὲ τὰς
 νήσους ἔχουσαι πέντε μὲν πόλεις τὴν Λέσβον |distribute τὴν
 γὰρ ἑκτὴν ἐν τῇ Λέσβῳ οἰκημένην Ἀρίσβαν |enslave
 Μηθυμναῖοι ἑόντας |related by blood Τενέδω δὲ μία οἴκηται
 πόλις, καὶ ἐν τῇσι Ἑκατὸν νήσοισι καλεομένησι ἄλλη
 μία. Λεσβίοισι μὲν νῦν καὶ Τενεδίοισι, κατὰ περ Ἰώνων
 τοῖσι τὰς νήσους ἔχουσι, ἦν¹ δεινὸν οὐδέν· τῇσι δὲ λοιπῇσι
 πόλισι |please οἰοῦν Ἰῶσι ἔπεσθαι τῇ ἂν οὗτοι |lead forth; set
 |out, describe

1.152

ὥς δὲ ἀπίκοντο ἐς τὴν Σπάρτην τῶν Ἰώνων καὶ Αἰολέων
 οἱ ἄγγελοι κατὰ γὰρ δὴ |speed ἦν ταῦτα πρησόμενα,

¹ They were not afraid of the Persians.

the movable goods, and that on this condition the Aiolians should abandon Smyrna. When the men of Smyrna had done this, the remaining eleven cities divided them amongst themselves and made them their own citizens.

1.151

These then are the Aiolian cities upon the mainland, with the exception of those situated on Mount Ida, for these are separate from the rest. And of those which are in the islands, there are five in Lesbos, for the sixth which was situated in Lesbos, namely Arisba, was enslaved by the men of Methymna, though its citizens were of the same race as they; and in Tenedos there is one city, and another in what are called the “Hundred Isles.” Now the Lesbians and the men of Tenedos, like those Ionians who dwelt in the islands, had no cause for fear; but the remaining cities came to a common agreement to follow the Ionians whithersoever they should lead.

1.152

Now when the messengers from the Ionians and Aiolians came to Sparta (for this business was carried out with speed), they chose before all others

vocabulary

ἀπαλλάσσω free from, remove; be freed, depart

ἀποδοκέω decide against

ἀπολέγω pick; decline

ἀπουρέω urinate

ἀπωθέω repel, reject

δόκιμος trustworthy; excellent

εἶμα -τος (n, 3) garment ~vest

εἰσακούω hearken ~acoustic

Ἑλλην Greek

ἐπείρομαι ask as well; ask then

κατάσκοπος spy, inspector

πεντηκόντερος (f) ship with 50 oars

περιβάλλω act: excel; mid: put on clothing ~ballistic

περιοράω look around; watch; permit

πορφύρεος purple

ῥήσις -ος (f) conversation, talk
~rhetoric

συναμωρέω ravage

συνέρχομαι come together

τιμωρέω (i) (+dat) take vengeance, punish; aid one who has been attacked

χρήζω need ~chresard

εἶλοντο πρὸ πάντων λέγειν τὸν Φωκαέα, τῷ οὐνομα ἦν Πύθερμος. ὁ δὲ πορφύρεόν τε εἶμα περιβαλόμενος, ὥς ἂν πυνθανόμενοι πλείστοι συνέλθοιεν Σπαρτιητέων, καὶ καταστὰς¹ ἔλεγε πολλὰ τιμωρέειν ἑωυτοῖσι χρηίζων. Λακεδαιμόνιοι δὲ οὐ κως ἐσήκουον, ἀλλ' ἀπέδοξέ σφι μὴ τιμωρέειν Ἴωσι. οἱ μὲν δὴ ἀπαλλάσσοντο, Λακεδαιμόνιοι δὲ ἀπώσάμενοι τῶν Ἰώνων τοὺς ἀγγέλους ὁμως ἀπέστειλαν πεντηκοντέρῳ ἄνδρας, ὥς μὲν ἐμοὶ δοκέει, κατασκόπους τῶν τε Κύρου πρηγμάτων καὶ Ἰωνίης. ἀπικόμενοι δὲ οὗτοι ἐς Φώκαιαν ἔπεμπον ἐς Σάρδεις σφέων αὐτῶν τὸν δοκιμώτατον, τῷ οὐνομα ἦν Λακρίνης, ἀπερέοντα Κύρῳ Λακεδαιμονίων ῥῆσιν, γῆς τῆς Ἑλλάδος² μηδεμίαν πόλιν σιναμωρέειν, ὥς αὐτῶν οὐ περιουσιζομένων.

1.153

ταῦτα εἰπόντος τοῦ κήρυκος, λέγεται Κῦρον ἐπειρέσθαι τοὺς παρέοντας οἱ Ἑλλήνων τινες ἑόντες

¹ having been appointed ² a term that can include the Greek colonies in Anatolia

εἶλοντο πρὸ πάντων λέγειν τὸν Φωκαέα, τῷ οὐνομα
 ἦν Πύθερμος. ὁ δὲ |purple τε |gar- |excel; don
 |ment
 ὥς ἂν πυνθανόμενοι πλείστοι |come together |παρτηγέων,
 καὶ καταστὰς¹ ἔλεγε πολλὰ |take vengeance, τοῖσι |need
 |punish, aid
 Λακεδαιμόνιοι δὲ οὐ πως |hearken , ἀλλ' |decide
 |against
 σφι μὴ |take vengeance, .σι. οἱ μὲν δὲ |free from, remove;
 |punish, aid |be freed, depart
 Λακεδαιμόνιοι δὲ |repel, reject τῶν Ἰώνων τοὺς ἀγγέλους
 ὅμως ἀπέστειλαν |ship with 50 oars ἵνδρας, ὥς μὲν ἐμοὶ
 δοκέει, |spy, inspector τῶν τε Κύρου πρηγμάτων καὶ
 Ἰωνίης. ἀπικόμενοι δὲ οὗτοι ἐς Φώκαιαν ἔπεμπον ἐς
 Σάρδεις σφέων αὐτῶν τὸν |trustworthy;
 |excellent , τῷ οὐνομα ἦν
 Λακρίνης, ἀπερέοντα Κύρῳ Λακεδαιμονίων |conversation, talk
 τῆς Ἑλλάδος² μηδεμίαν πόλιν |ravage , ὥς αὐτῶν οὐ
 |look around;
 |watch; permit

1.153

ταῦτα εἰπόντος τοῦ κήρυκος, λέγεται Κύρον |ask as well;
 |ask then
 τοὺς παρεόντας οἱ |Greek τινες ἐόντες

¹ having been appointed ² a term that can include the Greek colonies in Anatolia

to speak for them the Phocaian, whose name was Pythermos. He then put upon him a purple cloak, in order that as many as possible of the Spartans might hear of it and come together, and having been introduced before the assembly he spoke at length, asking the Spartans to help them. The Lacedemonians however would not listen to him, but resolved on the contrary not to help the Ionians. So they departed, and the Lacedemonians, having dismissed the messengers of the Ionians, sent men notwithstanding in a ship of fifty oars, to find out, as I imagine, about the affairs of Cyrus and about Ionia. These when they came to Phocaia sent to Sardis the man of most repute among them, whose name was Lacrines, to report to Cyrus the saying of the Lacedemonians, bidding him do hurt to no city of the Hellas, since they would not permit it.

1.153

When the herald had spoken thus, Cyrus is said to have asked those of the Hellenes whom he had with him,

*vocabulary***ἀπελαύνω** expel, exclude, ward off;

(intrans) ride away

ἀποδείκνυμι (ὁ) show, point out;

appoint; (mid) declare

ἀπορρίπτω cast away**ἔλλεσχος** commonly talked of**Ἑλλήν** Greek**ἐμπόδιος** getting in the way**ἐξαπατάω** trick, cheat ~apatosaurus**ἐπιτρέπω** entrust, decide, allow

~trophy

ἔωθα be accustomed, in the habit**κόσος** how many, much, far?**μίν** him, her, it**ὀνέω** help, please, be available**πάθος** -ους (n, 3) an experience,

passion, condition

παράπαν completely**Πέρσης** Persian**πρήσις** sale**προαγορεύω** declare, predict, order**συλλέγω** collect, assemble ~legion**ὕγιαίνω** be healthy**χρυσός** (ὁ) gold**χωρος** place ~heir**ὠνέομαι** buy**ὠνή** purchase, contract

ἄνθρωποι Λακεδαιμόνιοι καὶ κόσιοι πλῆθος ταῦτα
 ἔωυτῷ προαγορεύουσι· πυνθανόμενον δέ μιν εἰπεῖν
 ἄνθρωποι Λακεδαιμόνιοι καὶ κόσιοι «οὐκ ἔδεισά κω
 ἄνδρας τοιούτους, τοῖσι ἐστὶ χώρος ἐν μέσῃ τῇ πόλει
 ἀποδεδεγμένος ἐς τὸν συλλεγόμενοι ἀλλήλους ὁμνύντες
 ἔξαπατῶσι· τοῖσι, ἣν ἐγὼ ὑγιαίνω, οὐ τὰ Ἰώνων πάθεα
 ἔσται ἔλλεσχα ἀλλὰ τὰ οἰκία.» ταῦτα ἐς τοὺς πάντας
 Ἕλληνας ἀπέρριψε ὁ Κῦρος τὰ ἔπεα, ὅτι ἀγορὰς
 στησάμενοι ὦνῃ τε καὶ πρήσι χρέωνται· αὐτοὶ γὰρ οἱ
 Πέρσαι ἀγορῇσι οὐδὲν ἐώθασιν χρᾶσθαι, οὐδέ σφι ἐστὶ τὸ
 παράπαν ἀγορή.

μετὰ ταῦτα ἐπιτρέψας τὰς μὲν Σάρδις Ταβάλῳ ἀνδρὶ
 Πέρσῃ, τὸν δὲ χρυσὸν τὸν τε Κροίσου καὶ τὸν τῶν ἄλλων
 Λυδῶν Πακτῆ ἀνδρὶ Λυδῷ κομίζειν, ἀπήλυνε¹ αὐτὸς ἐς
 Ἀγβάτανα, Κροῖσόν τε ἅμα ἀγόμενος καὶ τοὺς Ἴωνας ἐν
 οὐδενὶ λόγῳ ποιησάμενος τὴν πρώτην εἶναι. ἡ τε γὰρ
 Βαβυλῶν οἱ ἦν ἐμπόδιος καὶ τὸ Βάκτριον ἔθνος καὶ Σάκαι

¹ intransitive, rode off

ἄνθρωποι Λακεδαιμόνιοι καὶ |how many, ^{much}, far? ἵτα
 ἔω^{τῷ} |declare, predict, πυνθανόμενον δέ μιν εἰπεῖν
 |order
 ἄνθρωποι Λακεδαιμόνιοι καὶ |how many, ^{much}, far? ἵ κω
 ἄνδρας τοιούτους, τοῖσι ἐστι |place ἐν μέσῃ τῇ πόλει
 |show, point out; ^{appoint};collect, ἀλλήλους ὀμνύντες
 |(mid) declare |assemble
 |trick, cheat τοῖσι, ἣν ἐγὼ |be healthy ^{νύ} τὰ Ἰώνων |an experience, pas-
 |sion, condition
 ἔσται |commonly ἄλλὰ τὰ οἰκία.» ταῦτα ἐς τοὺς πάντας
 |talked of
 |Greek |cast away ὁ Κῦρος τὰ ἔπεα, ὅτι ἀγορὰς
 στησάμενοι ὠνῇ τε καὶ |sale χρέωνται· αὐτοὶ γὰρ οἱ
 Πέρσαι ἀγορῇσι οὐδὲν |be accustomed, ^ῆαι, οὐδέ σφι ἐστὶ τὸ
 |in the habit
 |completely ἰγορή.

μετὰ ταῦτα |entrust, de- τὰς μὲν Σάρδεις Ταβάλῳ ἀνδρὶ
 |cide, allow
 Πέρσῃ, τὸν δὲ |gold τὸν τε Κροίσου καὶ τὸν τῶν ἄλλων
 Λυδῶν Πακτὺν ἀνδρὶ Λυδῷ κομίζειν, ¹ |expel, exclude, ^{ward} off; (intrans)
 |ride away
 Ἀγβάτανα, Κροίσόν τε ἅμα ἀγόμενος καὶ τοὺς Ἴωνας ἐν
 οὐδενὶ λόγῳ ποιησάμενος τὴν πρώτην εἶναι. ἥ τε γὰρ
 Βαβυλῶν οἱ ἦν |getting in the way Ὁάκτριον ἔθνος καὶ Σάκαι

¹ intransitive, rode off

what men the Lacedemonians were and how many in number, that they made this proclamation to him; and hearing their answer he said to the Spartan herald: "Never yet did I fear men such as these, who have a place appointed in the midst of their city where they gather together and deceive one another by false oaths: and if I continue in good health, not the misfortunes of the Ionians will be for them a subject of talk, but rather their own." These words Cyrus threw out scornfully with reference to the Hellenes in general, because they have got for themselves markets and practise buying and selling there; for the Persians themselves are not wont to use markets nor have they any market-place at all.

After this he entrusted Sardis to Tabalos a Persian, and the gold both of Croesus and of the other Lydians he gave to Pactyas a Lydian to take charge of, and himself marched away to Agbatana, taking with him Croesus and making for the present no account of the Ionians. For Babylon stood in his way still, as also the Bactrian nation and the

vocabulary

ἀκρόπολις -εως (f) citadel, high part of a city ~acute

ἀπελαύνω expel, exclude, ward off; (intrans) ride away

ἀποέργω exclude; divide; confine

ἄτε as if; since

ἐξανδραποδίζω enslave

ἐπέχω hold, cover; offer; assail

ἐπιθαλάσσιος coastal

ἐπίκουρος ally; mercenary ~cereal

μισθόω rent out; (pass) be hired

στρατηλατέω lead an army

φροντίζω consider, ponder

χρυσός (ῶ) gold

τε καὶ Αἰγύπτιοι, ἐπ' οὓς ἐπείχεται στρατηλατέειν αὐτός,
ἐπὶ δὲ Ἰωνας ἄλλον πέμπειν στρατηγόν.

1.154

ὥς δὲ ἀπήλασε ὁ Κῦρος ἐκ τῶν Σαρδίων, τοὺς Λυδοὺς
ἀπέστησε ὁ Πακτύης ἀπὸ τε Ταβάλου καὶ Κύρου,
καταβὰς δὲ ἐπὶ θάλασσαν, ἅτε τὸν χρυσὸν ἔχων
πάντα τὸν ἐκ τῶν Σαρδίων, ἐπικούρους τε ἐμισθοῦτο
καὶ τοὺς ἐπιθαλασσίους ἀνθρώπους ἔπειθε σὺν ἐωυτῷ
στρατεῦεσθαι. ἐλάσας δὲ ἐπὶ τὰς Σάρδεις ἐπολιόρκει
Τάβαλον ἀπεργμένον ἐν τῇ ἀκροπόλει.

1.155

πυθόμενος δὲ κατ' ὁδὸν ταῦτα ὁ Κῦρος εἶπε πρὸς
Κροῖσον τάδε. «Κροῖσε, τί ἔσται τέλος τῶν¹ γινομένων
τούτων ἐμοί; οὐ παύσονται Λυδοί, ὥς οἴκασι, πρήγμάτα²
παρέχοντες καὶ αὐτοὶ ἔχοντες. φροντίζω μὴ ἄριστον ἢ³
ἐξανδραποδίσασθαι σφέας. ὁμοίως γὰρ μοι νῦν γε

¹ The children, if allowed to survive, will be mortal enemies.

² difficulties ³ He muses about enslaving them, which he has not actually done.

τε καὶ Αἰγύπτιοι, ἐπ' οὓς ἐπείχεται ^{|lead an army} αὐτός,
ἐπὶ δὲ Ἴωνας ἄλλον πέμπει στρατηγόν.

1.154

ὥς δὲ <sup>|expel, exclude, ward off;
(intrans) ride away</sup> τῶν Σαρδίων, τοὺς Λυδοὺς
ἀπέστησε ὁ Πακτύης ἀπὸ τε Ταβάλου καὶ Κύρου,
καταβὰς δὲ ἐπὶ θάλασσαν, ^{|as if; since |gold} ἔχων
πάντα τὸν ἐκ τῶν Σαρδίων, <sup>|ally; mercenary |rent out; (pass)
|be hired</sup>
καὶ τοὺς ^{|coastal} ἀνθρώπους ἔπειθε σὺν ἐωυτῷ
στρατεύεσθαι. ἐλάσας δὲ ἐπὶ τὰς Σάρδεις ἐπολιόρκει
Τάβαλον <sup>|exclude; di- ἐν τῇ |citadel
|vide; confine</sup>

1.155

πυθόμενος δὲ κατ' ὁδὸν ταῦτα ὁ Κῦρος εἶπε πρὸς
Κροῖσον τάδε. «Κροῖσε, τί ἔσται τέλος τῶν¹ γινομένων
τούτων ἐμοί; οὐ παύσονται Λυδοί, ὥς οἴκασι, πρήγμάτα²
παρέχοντες καὶ αὐτοὶ ἔχοντες. ^{|consider, |ponder} μὴ ἄριστον ἢ³
^{|enslave} σφέας. ὁμοίως γὰρ μοι νῦν γε

¹ The children, if allowed to survive, will be mortal enemies.

² difficulties ³ He muses about enslaving them, which he has not actually done.

Sacans and the Egyptians; and against these he meant to make expeditions himself, while sending some other commander about the Ionians.

1.154

But when Cyrus had marched away from Sardis, Pactyas caused the Lydians to revolt from Tabalos and from Cyrus. This man went down to the sea, and having in his possession all the gold that there had been in Sardis, he hired for himself mercenaries and persuaded the men of the sea-coast to join his expedition. So he marched on Sardis and besieged Tabalos, having shut himself up in the citadel.

1.155

Hearing this on his way, Cyrus said to Croesus as follows: “Croesus, what end shall I find of these things which are coming to pass? The Lydians will not cease as it seems, from giving trouble to me and from having it themselves. I doubt me if it were not best to sell them all as slaves; for

*vocabulary***ἀναμάρτητος** blameless**ἀναμάσσω** wipe a stain from ~mass**ἀνάστατος** driven out, ruined**ἀναστατώω** unsettle, upset**ἀπείπον** refuse, renounce, declare**ἄρειος** warlike**ἀρχαῖος** ancient, from the beginning

~oligarch

εἶμα -τος (n, 3) garment ~vest**ἐξανίστημι** raise, bring/send out**ἐπιτάσσω** enjoin; place near**ἐπιτρέπω** entrust, decide, allow

~trophy

κόθορνος high boot**κτάομαι** acquire, possess**προεῖπον** foretell, proclaim, order
before**συγγιγνώσκω** acknowledge; pardon**συγγνώμη** sympathy, leniency**ὑποδέω** bind under the feet**ὑποδύνω** (mp) get under; play a
character**φείδομαι** spare, not use/harm ~aphid

φαίνομαι πεποιηκέναι ὥς εἴ τις πατέρα ἀποκτείνας τῶν παίδων αὐτοῦ φείσατο· ὥς δὲ καὶ ἐγὼ Λυδῶν τὸν μὲν πλέον τι ἢ πατέρα ἔοντα σὲ λαβὼν ἄγω, αὐτοῖσι δὲ Λυδοῖσι τὴν πόλιν παρέδωκα, καὶ ἔπειτα θωμάζω εἰ μοι ἀπεστᾶσι.»

Ὁ μὲν δὴ τά περ ἐνόεε ἔλεγε, ὃ δ' ἀμείβετο τοῖσιδε, δείσας μὴ ἀναστάτους ποιήσῃ τὰς Σάρδεις. «ὦ βασιλεῦ, τὰ μὲν οἰκότα εἴρηκας, σὺ μέντοι μὴ πάντα θυμῷ χρέο, μηδὲ πόλιν ἀρχαίην ἐξαναστήσεως ἀναμάρτητον ἐοῦσαν καὶ τῶν¹ πρότερον καὶ τῶν νῦν ἐστεώτων. τὰ μὲν γὰρ πρότερον ἐγὼ τε ἔπρηξα καὶ ἐγὼ κεφαλῇ ἀναμάξας φέρω· τὰ δὲ νῦν παρεόντα Πακτύης γὰρ ἐστὶ ὁ ἀδικέων, τῷ σὺ ἐπέτρεψας Σάρδεις, οὗτος δότω τοι δίκην. Λυδοῖσι δὲ συγγνώμην ἔχων τάδε αὐτοῖσι ἐπίταξον, ὥς μήτε ἀποστέωσι μήτε δεινοί τοι ἔωσι· ἄπειπε μὲν σφι πέμψας ὅπλα ἀρήγια μὴ ἐκτῆσθαι, κέλευε δὲ σφέας κιθωνάς τε ὑποδύνειν τοῖσι εἵμασι καὶ κοθόρνους ὑποδέεσθαι, πρόειπε

¹ (pf) things that have now arisen

φαίνομαι πεποιηκέναι ὥς εἴ τις πατέρα ἀποκτείνας τῶν
 παίδων αὐτοῦ |spare ὥς δὲ καὶ ἐγὼ Λυδῶν τὸν μὲν
 πλέον τι ἢ πατέρα εὐόντα σὲ λαβὼν ἄγω, αὐτοῖσι δὲ
 Λυδοῖσι τὴν πόλιν παρέδωκα, καὶ ἔπειτα θωμάζω εἰ μοι
 ἀπεστᾶσι.»

Ὁ μὲν δὴ τά περ ἐνόεε ἔλεγε, ὁ δ' ἀμείβετο τοῖσιδε,
 δείσας μὴ ἀναστάτους ποιήσῃ τὰς Σάρδεις. «ὦ βασιλεῦ,
 τὰ μὲν οἰκότα εἴρηκας, σὺ μέντοι μὴ πάντα θυμῷ χρέο,
 μηδὲ πόλιν |ancient, |raise, bring/send|blameless εὐοῦσαν
 καὶ τῶν¹ |from the|out
 |beginning προτέρον καὶ τῶν νῦν ἐστεώτων. τὰ μὲν γὰρ
 πρότερον ἐγὼ τε ἔπρηξα καὶ ἐγὼ κεφαλῇ ἀναμάξας φέρω·
 τὰ δὲ νῦν παρεόντα Πακτύης γὰρ ἐστὶ ὁ ἀδικέων, τῷ
 σὺ |entrust, de- Σάρδεις, οὗτος δότω τοι δίκην. Λυδοῖσι
 |cide, allow δὲ συγγνώμην ἔχων τάδε αὐτοῖσι |enjoin; , ὥς μήτε
 |place near ἀποστέωσι μήτε δεινοί τοι ἔωσι· |refuse, re-ί πέμψας
 |nounce, declare ὅπλα |warlike μὴ ἐκτῆσθαι, κέλευε δὲ σφέας κιθωνάς τε

(mp) get under;|garment αἰ |high boot |bind under the|foretell, proclaim, or-
 |play a character |feet |der before

¹ (pf) things that have now arisen

as it is, I see that I have done in like manner as if one should slay the father and then spare his sons: just so I took prisoner and am carrying away thee, who wert much more than the father of the Lydians, while to the Lydians themselves I delivered up their city; and can I feel surprise after this that they have revolted from me?"

Thus he said what was in his mind, but Croesus answered him as follows, fearing lest he should destroy Sardis: "O king, that which thou hast said is not without reason; but do not thou altogether give vent to thy wrath, nor destroy an ancient city which is guiltless both of the former things and also of those which have come to pass now: for as to the former things it was I who did them and I bear the consequences heaped upon my head; and as for what is now being done, since the wrongdoer is Pactyas to whom thou didst entrust the charge of Sardis, let him pay the penalty. But the Lydians I pray thee pardon, and lay upon them commands as follows, in order that they may not revolt nor be a cause of danger to thee:—send to them and forbid them to possess weapons of war, but bid them on the other hand put on tunics under their outer garments and be shod with buskins, and proclaim

vocabulary

αἰρετός takeable, desirable ~heresy
ἀναπείθω (aor, plupf) seduce,
 persuade; (mp, pf, aor ppl) trust, obey,
 be confident in
ἀναπίπτω fall back
ἀνδραποδίζω enslave
ἐντέλλω (mp) command
ἐξανδραποδίζω enslave
ἡδομαι be pleased, enjoy ~hedonism
καπηλεύω be a retailer
κιθαρίζω play the harp
κῦρος -εος (n, 3) authority; validity
μεταβουλεύω change one's mind
 ~volunteer
μίν him, her, it

ὀρρωδέω dread, shrink from
παιδεύω raise; train
πάντως by all means
πέρνημι export, sell as a slave ~porno
Πέρσης Persian
προείπον foretell, proclaim, order
 before
προτείνω hold out, offer
πρόφασις -εως (f) pretext; motive;
 prediction ~fame
ὑπείμι be under
ὑπεκτρέχω run out from under, escape
ὑποθήκη advice, warning; deposit
ὑποτίθημι suggest, advise ~hypothesis
ψάλλω pluck

δ' αὐτοῖσι καθαρίζειν τε καὶ ψάλλειν καὶ καπηλεύειν
 παιδεύειν τοὺς παῖδας. καὶ ταχέως σφέας ὦ βασιλεῦ
 γυναικας ἀντ' ἀνδρῶν ὄψαι γεγονότας, ὥστε οὐδὲν δεινοί
 τοι ἔσονται μὴ ἀποστέωσι.»

1.156

Κροῖσος μὲν δὴ ταῦτά οἱ ὑπετίθετο, αἰρετώτερα ταῦτα
 εὐρίσκων Λυδοῖσι ἢ ἀνδραποδισθέντας πρηθῆναι σφέας,
 ἐπιστάμενος ὅτι ἦν μὴ ἀξιοχρεον πρόφασιν προτείνειν,
 οὐκ ἀναπείσει μιν μεταβουλεύσασθαι, ἀρρωδέων δὲ μὴ
 καὶ ὕστερον κοτὲ οἱ Λυδοί, ἦν τὸ παρεὸν ὑπεκδράμωσι,
 ἀποστάντες¹ ἀπὸ τῶν Περσέων ἀπόλωνται. Κῦρος δὲ
 ἡσθεὶς τῇ ὑποθήκῃ καὶ ὑπὲς τῆς ὀργῆς ἔφη οἱ πείθεσθαι.
 καλέσας δὲ Μαζάρεα ἄνδρα Μῆδον, ταῦτά τέ οἱ
 ἐνετείλατο προειπεῖν Λυδοῖσι τὰ ὃ Κροῖσος ὑπετίθετο, καὶ
 πρὸς ἐξανδραποδίσασθαι τοὺς² ἄλλους πάντας οἱ μετὰ
 Λυδῶν ἐπὶ Σάρδις ἐστρατεύσαντο, αὐτὸν δὲ Πακτύην
 πάντως ζῶντα ἀγαγεῖν παρ' ἐωυτόν.

¹ a second time, in the future ² the mercenaries from the coast

δ' αὐτοῖσι |play the harp εἰ καὶ |pluck καὶ |be a retailer
 |raise; train τοὺς παῖδας. καὶ ταχέως σφέας ὦ βασιλεῦ
 γυναικας ἀντ' ἀνδρῶν ὄψεται γεγονότας, ὥστε οὐδὲν δεινοί
 τοι ἔσονται μὴ ἀποστέωσι.»

1.156

Κροῖσος μὲν δὴ ταῦτά οἱ |suggest , |takeable, ταῦτα
 |desirable
 εὐρίσκων Λυδοῖσι ἣ |enslave |export, sell σφέας,
 |as a slave
 ἐπιστάμενος ὅτι ἦν μὴ ἀξιοχρεον |pretext; mo-|hold out, offer
 |tive; predic-
 οὐκ ἀναπείσει μιν |change one's mind tion |dread, δὲ μὴ
 |shrink from
 καὶ ὕστερον κοτὲ οἱ Λυδοί, ἦν τὸ παρεὼν |run out from,
 |under, escape
 ἀποστάντες¹ ἀπὸ τῶν Περσέων ἀπόλωνται. |authority;
 |validity
 |be pleased, enjoy ἡ καὶ |be under, ὀργῆς ἔφη οἱ πείθεσθαι.
 καλέσας δὲ Μαζάρεα ἄνδρα Μῆδον, ταῦτά τέ οἱ
 ἐνετείλατο |foretell, proclaim, ἡσι τὰ ὁ Κροῖσος |suggest , καὶ
 |order before
 πρὸς |enslave τοὺς² ἄλλους πάντας οἷ μετὰ
 Λυδῶν ἐπὶ Σάρδις ἐστρατεύσαντο, αὐτὸν δὲ Πακτὴν
 |by all means ἡ τα ἀγαγεῖν παρ' ἐωυτόν.

¹ a second time, in the future ² the mercenaries from the coast

to them that they train their sons to play the lyre and the harp and to be retail-dealers; and soon thou shalt see, O king, that they have become women instead of men, so that there will be no fear that they will revolt from thee.”

1.156

Croesus, I say, suggested to him this, perceiving that this was better for the Lydians than to be reduced to slavery and sold; for he knew that if he did not offer a sufficient reason, he would not persuade Cyrus to change his mind, and he feared lest at some future time, if they should escape the present danger, the Lydians might revolt from the Persians and be destroyed. And Cyrus was greatly pleased with the suggestion made and slackened from his wrath, saying that he agreed with his advice. Then he called Mazares a Mede, and laid charge upon him to proclaim to the Lydians that which Croesus suggested, and moreover to sell into slavery all the rest who had joined with the Lydians in the expedition to Sardis, and finally by all means to bring Pactyas himself alive to Cyrus.

*vocabulary***ἄγγου** near, nigh; like ~angina**ἀναφέρω** bring up ~bear**ἀπελαύνω** expel, exclude, ward off;
(intrans) ride away**αὐτόθι** on the spot**δίαιτα** way of life; home; arbitration**ἐκδίδωμι** hand over ~donate**ἐντέλλω** (mp) command**ἐντολή** order**ἐπιτελέω** complete; do a religious duty**ἐπιτέλλω** order ~apostle**ἦθος ἥθεος** (n, 3) habit, habitat ~ethos**ἰδρύω** establish**κελευσμοσύνη** command**μαντεῖον** prophetic warning ~mantis**μεταβάλλω** alter, transform**Πέρσης** Persian**στρατός** common people/soldiers

~strategy

στρατόω be on a campaign ~strategy**συμβουλή** advice; debate**χωρος** place ~heir**ώθew** push

1.157

ὁ μὲν δὴ ταῦτα ἐκ τῆς ὁδοῦ ἐντειλάμενος ἀπήλυνε ἐς ἦθεα τὰ Περσέων, Πακτύης δὲ πυθόμενος ἀγχοῦ εἶναι στρατὸν ἐπ' ἐωντὸν ἰόντα δείσας οὔχετο φεύγων ἐς Κύμην.

Μαζάρης δὲ ὁ Μῆδος ἐλάσας ἐπὶ τὰς Σάρδεις τοῦ Κύρου στρατοῦ μοῖραν ὅσην δὴ κοτε ἔχων, ὥς οὐκ εὖρε ἔτι ἐόντας τοὺς ἀμφὶ Πακτύην ἐν Σάρδισι, πρῶτα μὲν τοὺς Λυδοὺς ἠνάγκασε τὰς Κύρου ἐντολὰς ἐπιτελέειν, ἐκ τούτου δὲ κελευσμοσύνης Λυδοὶ τὴν πᾶσαν δίαιταν τῆς ζόης μετέβαλον.

Μαζάρης δὲ μετὰ τοῦτο ἔπεμπε ἐς τὴν Κύμην ἀγγέλους ἐκδιδόναι κελεύων Πακτύην. οἱ δὲ Κυμαῖοι ἔγνωσαν συμβουλῆς περὶ ἐς θεὸν ἀνοῖσαι τὸν ἐν Βραγχίδῃσι· ἦν γὰρ αὐτόθι μαντήιον ἐκ παλαιοῦ ἰδρυμένον, τῷ Ἰωνές τε πάντες καὶ Αἰολέες ἐώθεσαν χρᾶσθαι. ὁ δὲ χώρος οὗτος ἐστὶ τῆς Μιλησίους ὑπὲρ Πανόρμου λιμένος.

1.157

ὁ μὲν δὴ ταῦτα ἐκ τῆς ὁδοῦ ἐντειλάμενος | expel, exclude; habit,
 τὰ Περσέων, Πακτύης δὲ πυθόμενος | ward off; habitat
 | (intrans), ride
 ἐπ' ἑωυτὸν ἰόντα δείσας οἷχετο φεύγων ἐς Κύμην.
 | near; away high; army
 | like

Μαζάρης δὲ ὁ Μῆδος ἐλάσας ἐπὶ τὰς Σάρδις τοῦ Κύρου
 στρατοῦ μοῖραν ὅσῃν δὴ κοτε ἔχων, ὥς οὐκ εὔρε ἔτι
 ἑόντας τοὺς ἀμφὶ Πακτύην ἐν Σάρδισι, πρῶτα μὲν
 τοὺς Λυδοὺς ἠνάγκασε τὰς Κύρου | order ἐπιτελέειν, ἐκ
 τούτου δὲ | command Λυδοὶ τὴν πᾶσαν | way of life; home;
 ζόης | alter, arbitration
 | transform

Μαζάρης δὲ μετὰ τοῦτο ἔπεμπε ἐς τὴν Κύμην ἀγγέλους
 | hand over κελεύων Πακτύην. οἱ δὲ Κυμαῖοι ἔγνωσαν
 | advice; | debate περὶ ἐς θεὸν | bring up τὸν ἐν Βραγχίδησι· ἦν
 γὰρ | on the prophetic | establish , τῷ Ἰωνέσ τε
 | spot | warning
 πάντες καὶ Αἰολέες | push χρᾶσθαι. ὁ δὲ | place οὗτος
 ἐστὶ τῆς Μιλησῆς ὑπὲρ Πανόρμου λιμένος.

1.157

Having given this charge upon the road, he continued his march to the native land of the Persians; but Pactyas hearing that an army was approaching to fight against him was struck with fear and fled away forthwith to Kyme.

Then Mazares the Mede marched upon Sardis with a certain portion of the army of Cyrus, and as he did not find Pactyas or his followers any longer at Sardis, he first compelled the Lydians to perform the commands of Cyrus, and by his commands the Lydians changed the whole manner of their life.

After this Mazares proceeded to send messengers to Kyme bidding them give up Pactyas: and the men of Kyme resolved to refer to the god at Branchidai the question what counsel they should follow. For there was there an Oracle established of old time, which all the Ionians and Aiolians were wont to consult; and this place is in the territory of Miletos above the port of Panormos.

vocabulary

ἀπιστέω disbelieve ~stand
ἄπιστος not trusting, not trustworthy
 ~stand
ἀποφέρω carry off, carry back ~bear
βίαιος by force
δόκιμος trustworthy; excellent
ἐκδίδωμι hand over ~donate
ἐπείρομαι ask as well; ask then
ἐπειρωτέω consult, ask

εὖς good, brave, noble
θεοπόροπος seer ~theology
ἱκέτης -ου (m, 1) suppliant, refugee
ὄον οὖ type of fruit
ὅποῖος whatever kind
Πέρσης Persian
χρησμός oracular response
χρηστηριάζω prophesy
χρηστήριον oracle, response

1.158

πέμφαντες ὧν οἱ Κυμαῖοι ἐς τοὺς Βραγχίδας θεοπρόπους
 εἰρώτευν περὶ Πακτύην ὁκοῖόν τι ποιέοντες θεοῖσι
 μέλλοιεν χαριεῖσθαι. ἐπειρωτῶσι δέ σφι ταῦτα
 χρηστήριον ἐγένετο ἐκδιδόναι Πακτύην Πέρσῃσι. ταῦτα
 δὲ ὥς ἀπενειχθέντα ἤκουσαν οἱ Κυμαῖοι, ὀρμέατο¹
 ἐκδιδόναι· ὀρμημένου δὲ ταύτῃ τοῦ πλήθους, Ἀριστόδικος
 ὁ Ἡρακλείδew ἀνὴρ τῶν ἀστῶν ἐὼν δόκιμος ἔσχε μὴ
 ποιῆσαι ταῦτα Κυμαίους, ἀπιστέων τε τῷ χρησμῷ
 καὶ δοκέων τοὺς θεοπρόπους οὐ λέγειν ἀληθέως, ἐς ὃ
 τὸ² δεύτερον περὶ Πακτύew ἐπειρησόμενοι ἦσαν ἄλλοι
 θεοπρόποι, τῶν καὶ Ἀριστόδικος ἦν.

1.159

ἀπικομένων δὲ ἐς Βραγχίδας ἐχρηστηριάζετο ἐκ πάντων
 Ἀριστόδικος ἐπειρωτῶν τάδε. «ὦναξ, ἦλθε παρ' ἡμέας
 ἱκέτης Πακτύης ὁ Λυδός, φεύγων θάνατον βίαιον πρὸς

¹ The oracle told them to ... (Ionic form of ὀρμάω) ² a second journey of hundreds of miles

1.158

πέμψαντες ὧν οἱ Κυμαῖοι ἐς τοὺς Βραγχίδας |seer
 εἰρώτευν περὶ Πακτύην |whatever kind...οιέοντες θεοῖσι
 μέλλοιεν χαριεῖσθαι. |consult, ask δέ σφι ταῦτα
 |oracle, ἐγένετο |hand over Πακτύην Πέρσῃσι. ταῦτα
 |response
 δὲ ὥς |carry off ἤκουσαν οἱ Κυμαῖοι, ὁρμέατο¹
 |hand over ὁρμημένου δὲ ταύτῃ τοῦ πλήθους, Ἀριστόδικος
 ὁ Ἡρακλείδew ἀνὴρ τῶν ἀστών ἐὼν |trustworthy, |excellence
 ποιῆσαι ταῦτα Κυμαίους, ἀπιστέων τε τῷ |oracular
 καὶ δοκέων τοὺς |seer οὐ λέγειν ἀληθείας, ἐς ὃ
 τὸ² δεύτερον περὶ Πακτύew ἐπειρησόμενοι ἦσαν ἄλλοι
 |seer , τῶν καὶ Ἀριστόδικος ἦν.

1.159

ἀπικομένων δὲ ἐς Βραγχίδας |prophecy ἐκ πάντων
 Ἀριστόδικος |consult, ask τάδε. «ὦναξ, ἦλθε παρ' ἡμέας
 |suppliant,[†] |refugee κτύης ὁ Λυδός, φεύγων θάνατον |by force πρὸς

¹ The oracle told them to ... (Ionic form of ὁρμάω) ² a second journey of hundreds of miles

1.158

So the men of Kyme sent messengers to the Branchidai to inquire of the god, and they asked what course they should take about Pactyas so as to do that which was pleasing to the gods. When they thus inquired, the answer was given them that they should deliver up Pactyas to the Persians: and the men of Kyme, having heard this answer reported, were disposed to give him up. Then when the mass of the people were thus disposed, Aristodicos the son of Heracleides, a man of repute among the citizens, stopped the men of Kyme from doing so, having distrust of the answer and thinking that those sent to inquire were not speaking the truth; until at last other messengers were sent to the Oracle to ask a second time about Pactyas, and of them Aristodicos was one.

1.159

When these came to Branchidai, Aristodicos stood forth from the rest and consulted the Oracle, asking as follows: Lord, there came to us a suppliant for protection Pactyas the Lydian, flying from a violent death at the

*vocabulary***ἄδυτον** inner sanctum**ἀνόσιος** unholy**ἀπορέω** be confused, distressed**ἀτρεκής** precise, certain**δειμαίνω** be afraid**ἐκδίδωμι** hand over ~donate**ἐξαιρέω** pick, steal; dedicate; destroy
~heresy**ἐξαιτέω** demand ~etiology**ἐπειρωτάω** consult, ask**ἰκέτης** -ου (m, 1) suppliant, refugee**κεραίζω** slay, ravage ~caries**κύκλος** circle, wheel ~cycle**μίν** him, her, it**νηέω** pile up, load a ship**νηός** temple, shrine**νοσσεύω** hatch; nest**ὁπότερος** which of two, either of two**ὄρνις** -θος (ī, f) bird ~ornithology**περίειμι** be superior to; be left over;
still exist**Πέρσης** Persian**πρόειμι** to have been before, earlier
~ion**πρόνοια** foresight, providence**στρουθός** (f) sparrow ~struthiomimus**χρησμός** oracular response

Περσέων· οἱ δέ μιν ἐξαιτέονται, προεῖναι Κυμαίους κελεύοντες. ἡμεῖς δὲ δειμαίνοντες τὴν Περσέων δύναμιν τὸν ἰκέτην ἐς τόδε οὐ τετολμήκαμεν ἐκδιδόναι, πρὶν ἂν τὸ ἀπὸ σεῦ ἡμῖν δηλωθῇ ἀτρεκέως ὁκότερα ποιέωμεν.» ὁ μὲν ταῦτα ἐπειρώτα, ὁ δ' αὖτις τὸν αὐτόν σφι χρησμὸν ἔφαινε, κελεύων ἐκδιδόναι Πακτύην Πέρσησι. πρὸς ταῦτα ὁ Ἀριστόδικος ἐκ προνοίης ἐποίεε τάδε· περιῶν τὸν νηὸν κύκλῳ ἐξαίρεε¹ τοὺς στρουθοὺς καὶ ἄλλα ὅσα ἦν νενοσσευμένα ὀρνίθων γένεα ἐν τῷ νηῷ.

Ποιέοντος δὲ αὐτοῦ ταῦτα λέγεται φωνὴν ἐκ τοῦ ἀδύτου γενέσθαι φέρουσιν μὲν πρὸς τὸν Ἀριστόδικον, λέγουσαν δὲ τάδε «ἀνοσιώτατε ἀνθρώπων, τί τάδε τολμᾷς ποιέειν; τοὺς ἰκέτας μου ἐκ τοῦ νηοῦ κεραΐζεις;»

Ἀριστόδικον δὲ οὐκ ἀπορήσαντα πρὸς ταῦτα εἰπεῖν «ὦναξ, αὐτὸς μὲν οὕτω τοῖσι ἰκέτησι βοηθείς, Κυμαίους δὲ κελεύεις τὸν ἰκέτην ἐκδιδόναι;»

Τὸν δὲ αὖτις ἀμείψασθαι τοῖσιδε «ναὶ κελεύω, ἵνα γε

¹ destroyed

Περσέων· οἱ δέ μιν |demand , |to have been¹ |μαίους
 |before, earlier
 κελεύοντες. ἡμεῖς δὲ |be afraid τὴν Περσέων δύναμιν
 τὸν ἰκέτην ἐς τόδε οὐ τετολμήκαμεν |hand over , πρὶν ἂν
 τὸ ἀπὸ σεῦ ἡμῖν δηλωθῇ |precise, |which of two, |έωμεν.»
 |certain |either of two
 ὁ μὲν ταῦτα |consult, ask ὁ δ' αὖτις τὸν αὐτόν σφι |oracular
 |response
 ἔφαινε, κελεύων |hand over Πακτύην Πέρσῃσι. πρὸς ταῦτα
 ὁ Ἀριστόδικος ἐκ |foresight, |έποίεε τάδε· |be superior to; be left over;
 |providence |still exist
 |temple|circle, |pick, steal; |dedi-|sparrow καὶ ἄλλα ὅσα ἦν
 |wheel |cate; destroy
 |hatch; nest |bird γένεα ἐν τῷ |temple

Ποιέοντος δὲ αὐτοῦ ταῦτα λέγεται φωνὴν ἐκ τοῦ |inner
 |sanctum
 γενέσθαι φέρουσιν μὲν πρὸς τὸν Ἀριστόδικον, λέγουσαν
 δὲ τάδε «|unholy ἀνθρώπων, τί τάδε τολμᾶς ποιεῖν;
 τοὺς |suppliant, υ ἐκ τοῦ νηοῦ κεραΐζεις;»
 |refugee
 Ἀριστόδικον δὲ οὐκ |be confused, πρὸς ταῦτα εἰπεῖν
 |distressed
 «ᾧναξ, αὐτὸς μὲν οὕτω τοῖσι |suppliant, ᾧθέεις, Κυμαίους
 |refugee
 δὲ κελεύεις τὸν ἰκέτην |hand over ,»

Τὸν δὲ αὖτις ἀμείψασθαι τοῖσιδε «ναὶ κελεύω, ἵνα γε

¹ destroyed

hands of the Persians, and they demand him from us, bidding the men of Kyme give him up. But we, though we fear the power of the Persians, yet have not ventured up to this time to deliver to them the suppliant, until thy counsel shall be clearly manifested to us, saying which of the two things we ought to do." He thus inquired, but the god again declared to them the same answer, bidding them deliver up Pactyas to the Persians. Upon this Aristodicos with deliberate purpose did as follows:— he went all round the temple destroying the nests of the sparrows and of all the other kinds of birds which had been hatched on the temple.

And while he was doing this, it is said that a voice came from the inner shrine directed to Aristodicos and speaking thus: "Thou most impious of men, why dost thou dare to do this? Dost thou carry away by force from my temple the suppliants for my protection; And Aristodicos, it is said, not being at all at a loss replied to this: "Lord, dost thou thus come to the assistance of thy suppliants, and yet biddest the men of Kyme deliver up theirs; and the god answered him again thus: "Yea, I bid you do so, that ye may perish the more

vocabulary

ἀγγελία message, news ~angel
 ἀποσπάω tear/drag away
 ἀποφέρω carry off, carry back ~bear
 ἀσεβέω be impious
 ἀτρεκής precise, certain
 ἐκδίδωμι hand over ~donate
 ἐκδοσις giving up, renting out,
 publishing, bursting forth
 ἐκχομίζω remove; bury a corpse
 ἐνθεῦτεν thence

ἐπιπέμπω send after, again, to, besides
 ἰκέτης -ου (m, 1) suppliant, refugee
 ἵκω (ῑ) go, arrive
 μισθός reward, wages
 μισθόω rent out; (pass) be hired
 παραδείκνυμι (ῡ) receive, admit
 Πέρσης Persian
 πολιούχος protecting a city
 χρηστήριον oracle, response
 χῶρος place ~heir

ἀσεβήσαντες θάσσον ἀπόλησθε, ὥς μὴ τὸ λοιπὸν περὶ
 ἱκετέων ἐκδόσιος ἔλθητε ἐπὶ τὸ χρηστήριον.»

1.160

ταῦτα ὥς ἀπενειχθέντα ἤκουσαν οἱ Κυμαῖοι, οὐ
 βουλόμενοι οὔτε ἐκδόντες ἀπολέσθαι οὔτε παρ' ἑωυτοῖσι
 ἔχοντες πολιορκέεσθαι, ἐκπέμπουσι αὐτὸν ἐς¹ Μυτιλήνην.
 οἱ δὲ Μυτιληναῖοι, ἐπιπέμποντος τοῦ Μαζάρεος ἀγγελίας
 ἐκδιδόναι τὸν Πακτύην, παρεσκευάζοντο ἐπὶ μισθῷ ὅσω
 δῆ· οὐ γὰρ ἔχω τοῦτό γε εἰπεῖν ἀτρεκέως· οὐ γὰρ
 ἐτελεώθη. Κυμαῖοι γὰρ ὥς ἔμαθον ταῦτα πρησσόμενα
 ἐκ τῶν Μυτιληναίων, πέμψαντες πλοῖον ἐς² Λέσβον
 ἐκκομίζουνσι Πακτύην ἐς Χίον.

Ἐνθεῦτεν δὲ ἐξ ἱροῦ Ἀθηναίης πολιούχου ἀποσπασθεὶς ὑπὸ
 Χίων ἐξεδόθη· ἐξέδωσαν δὲ οἱ Χῖοι ἐπὶ τῷ Ἀταρνεί μισθῷ·
 τοῦ δὲ Ἀταρνέος τούτου ἐστὶ χώρος τῆς Μυσίης, Λέσβου
 ἀντίος. Πακτύην μὲν νυν παραδεξάμενοι οἱ Πέρσαι εἶχον

¹ on the island of Lesbos ² another island

|be impious *θάσσον ἀπόλησθε, ὥς μὴ τὸ λοιπὸν περὶ*

ἱκετέων |giving up, renting out, publishing, bursting forth |oracle, response .>

1.160

ταῦτα ὥς |carry off *ἤκουσαν οἱ Κυμαῖοι, οὐ*

βουλόμενοι οὔτε |hand over *ἰπολέσθαι οὔτε παρ' ἑωυτοῖσι*

ἔχοντες πολιορκέεσθαι, ἐκπέμπουσι αὐτὸν ἐς¹ Μυτιλήνην.

οἱ δὲ Μυτιληναῖοι, |send after, again, to, besides *οὐ Μαζάρεος* |message, news

|hand over *τὸν Πακτύην, παρεσκευάζοντο ἐπὶ μισθῷ ὅσῳ*

δή· οὐ γὰρ ἔχω τοῦτό γε εἰπεῖν |precise, certain *οὐ γὰρ*

ἐτελεώθη. Κυμαῖοι γὰρ ὥς ἔμαθον ταῦτα πρησόμενα

ἐκ τῶν Μυτιληναίων, πέμψαντες πλοῖον ἐς² Λέσβον

|remove; inter *Πακτύην ἐς Χίον.*

|thence *δὲ ἐξ ἱεροῦ Ἀθηναίης* |protecting a|tear/drag away |city *ὑπὸ*

Χίων |hand over |hand over *δὲ οἱ Χῖοι ἐπὶ τῷ Ἀταρνεί μισθῷ·*

τοῦ δὲ Ἀταρνέος τούτου ἐστὶ |place *τῆς Μυσίης, Λέσβου*

ἀντίος. Πακτύην μὲν νυν παραδεξάμενοι οἱ Πέρσαι εἶχον

¹ on the island of Lesbos ² another island

quickly for your impiety; so that ye may not at any future time come to the Oracle to ask about delivering up of suppliants.“

1.160

When the men of Kyme heard this saying reported, not wishing either to be destroyed by giving him up or to be besieged by keeping him with them, they sent him away to Mytilene. Those of Mytilene however, when Mazares sent messages to them, were preparing to deliver up Pactyas for a price, but what the price was I cannot say for certain, since the bargain was never completed; for the men of Kyme, when they learnt that this was being done by the Mytilenians, sent a vessel to Lesbos and conveyed away Pactyas to Chios.

After this he was dragged forcibly from the temple of Athene Poliuchos by the Chians and delivered up: and the Chians delivered him up receiving Atarneus in return, (now this Atarneus is a region of Mysia opposition Lesbos). So the Persians having received Pactyas

*vocabulary***ἄνομος** lawless**ἀπέχω** ward off, drive off, refrain, be at some distance**ἀποδείκνυμι** (ῶ) show, point out; appoint; (mid) declare**ἀποδέχομαι** accept ~doctrine**δαίνυμι** (ῶ) give a feast, feast on ~demon**δαίω** light; divide ~demon**διάδοχος** being successor**ἐκδίδωμι** hand over ~donate**ἐνθεῦτεν** thence**ἐξανδραποδίζω** enslave**ἐπιτρέχω** run at, after**κριθή** (ι) barley plant**λήϊη** booty**νόσος** (f) plague, pestilence ~noisome**νοῦσος** (f) plague, pestilence ~noisome**οὔλαί** barley grains**οὐλή** scar**πέμματα** (pl) pastries, sweetmeats**πέσσω** brood on; ripen ~peptic**πρόχυσις** pouring out**στρατηγία** office of command, strategy ~strategy**στρατός** common people/soldiers

~strategy

στρατόω be on a campaign ~strategy**συμπολιορχέω** besiege jointly**τράπεζα** a table ~trapezoid**ὡσαύτως** in the same way

ἐν φυλακῇ, θέλοντες Κύρω ἀποδέξαι. ἦν δὲ χρόνος οὗτος οὐκ ὀλίγος γινόμενος, ὅτε Χίων οὐδείς ἐκ τοῦ Ἀταρνέος τούτου οὔτε οὐλὰς κριθέων πρόχυσιν ἐποιέετο θεῶν οὐδενὶ οὔτε πέμματα ἐπέσσετο καρποῦ τοῦ ἐνθεῦτεν, ἀπείχετο τε τῶν πάντων ἱρῶν τὰ πάντα ἐκ τῆς χώρας ταύτης γινόμενα.

1.161

Χῖοι μὲν νυν Πακτύην ἐξέδοσαν. Μαζάρης δὲ μετὰ ταῦτα ἐστρατεύετο ἐπὶ τοὺς συμπολιορκήσαντας Τάβαλον, καὶ τοῦτο μὲν Πριηνέας ἐξηνδραποδίατο, τοῦτο δὲ Μαιάνδρου πεδῖον πᾶν ἐπέδραμε ληΐην ποιούμενος τῷ στρατῷ, Μαγνησίην τε ὡσαύτως. μετὰ δὲ ταῦτα αὐτίκα νούσῳ τελευτᾷ.

1.162

ἀποθανόντος δὲ τούτου, Ἄρπαγος κατέβη διάδοχος τῆς στρατηγίης, γένος καὶ αὐτὸς ἐὼν Μῆδος τὸν ὁ Μήδων βασιλεὺς Ἀστυάγης ἀνόμῳ τραπέζῃ ἔδαισε, ὁ τῷ Κύρῳ

ἐν φυλακῇ, θέλοντες Κύρῳ ἀποδέξαι. ἦν δὲ χρόνος οὗτος
οὐκ ὀλίγος γινόμενος, ὅτε Χίων οὐδεὶς ἐκ τοῦ Ἀταρνέος
τούτου οὔτε οὐλὰς |barley |pouring out. τοιέετο θεῶν οὐδενὶ
|plant
οὔτε |(pl) |brood on καρποῦ τοῦ |thence , |ward off, drive off, re-
|pastries, |frain, be at some dis-
|sweetmeats |tance
τε τῶν πάντων ἱρῶν τὰ πάντα ἐκ τῆς χώρης ταύτης
γινόμενα.

1.161

Χίοι μὲν νυν Πακτύην |hand over. Μαζάρης δὲ μετὰ ταῦτα
ἐστρατεύετο ἐπὶ τοὺς συμπολιορκήσαντας Τάβαλον,
καὶ τοῦτο μὲν Πριηνέας |enslave , τοῦτο δὲ
Μαιάνδρου πεδίον πᾶν |run at, after |booty ποιούμενος τῷ
στρατῷ, Μαγνησίην τε |in the same way. Ἴ δὲ ταῦτα αὐτίκα
νούσῳ τελευτᾷ.

1.162

ἀποθανόντος δὲ τούτου, Ἄρπαγος κατέβη |being successor
στρατηγίης, γένος καὶ αὐτὸς ἐὼν Μήδος τὸν ὁ Μήδων
βασιλεὺς Ἀστυάγης |lawless |a table ἔδαισε, ὁ τῷ Κύρῳ

kept him under guard, meaning to produce him before Cyrus. And a long time elapsed during which none of the Chians either used barley-meal grown in this region of Atarneus, for pouring out in sacrifice to any god, or baked cakes for offering of the corn which grew there, but all the produce of this land was excluded from every kind of sacred service.

1.161

The men of Chios had then delivered up Pactyas; and after this Mazares made expedition against those who had joined in besieging Tabalos: and first he reduced to slavery those of Priene, then he overran the whole plain of the Maiander making spoil of it for his army, and Magnesia in the same manner: and straightway after this he fell sick and died.

1.162

After he was dead, Harpagos came down to take his place in command, being also a Mede by race (this was the man whom the king of the Medes Astyages feasted with the unlawful banquet, and who helped to give the kingdom to Cyrus). This man,

vocabulary

ἀποδείκνυμι (ō) show, point out;
appoint; (mid) declare

ἐκλείπω leave out, pass over

Ἑλληγν Greek

ἐνθεῦτεν thence

ἐπιχειρέω do, try, attack ~chiral

καταδείκνυμι (ō) discover, make
known

ναυτιλία sailing ~navy

ναυτίλλομαι sail ~navy

ὀγδώκοντα eighty

πεντηκόντερος (f) ship with 50 oars

πορθέω sack, ravage, plunder

προσφιλῆς beloved

στρογγύλος round; merchant ship

συγκατεργάζομαι help to do

τειχῆρης besieged; fortified

τυραννεύω be an absolute ruler

χοή χῶς libation

χοῦς jar, jug; loose dirt

χῶμα -τος (n, 3) mound of dirt

τὴν βασιλὴν συγκατεργασάμενος. οὗτος ὠνήρ τότε ὑπὸ
Κύρου στρατηγὸς ἀποδεχθεὶς ὥς ἀπύκετο ἐς τὴν Ἰωνίην,
αἶρεε τὰς πόλιας¹ χώμασι· ὅκως γὰρ τειχέρας ποιήσεις,
τὸ ἐνθεῦτεν χώματα χῶν πρὸς τὰ τείχεα ἐπόρθεε.

1.163

πρώτῃ δέ² Φωκαίῃ Ἰωνίης ἐπεχείρησε. οἱ δὲ
Φωκαῖές οὗτοι ναυτιλίῃσι μακρῇσι πρώτοι Ἑλλήνων
ἐχρήσαντο, καὶ τὸν³ τε Ἀδρίην καὶ τὴν Τυρσηνίην
καὶ τὴν Ἰβηρίην καὶ τὸν Ταρτησσὸν οὗτοι εἰσὶ οἱ
καταδέξαντες· ἐναυτίλλοντο δὲ οὐ στρογγύλῃσι νηυσὶ
ἀλλὰ πεντηκοντέροισι. ἀπικόμενοι δὲ ἐς τὸν Ταρτησσὸν
προσφιλέες ἐγένοντο τῷ βασιλεί τῶν Ταρτησίων, τῷ
οὔνομα μὲν ἦν, Ἀργανθώνιος, ἐτυράννευσε δὲ Ταρτησσοῦ
ὀγδώκοντα ἔτεα, ἐβίωσε δὲ πάντα εἴκοσι καὶ ἑκατόν.
τούτῳ δὴ τῷ ἀνδρὶ προσφιλέες οἱ Φωκαῖές οὕτω δὴ τι
ἐγένοντο ὥς τὰ μὲν πρώτα σφέας ἐκλιπόντας Ἰωνίην

¹ He built up dirt ramps against the walls of the cities. ² a coastal city ³ a region in southern Iberia

τὴν βασιληίην |συγκατεργάζομαι?: help tō do; or ἢ τότε ὑπὸ
|συγκατεργάζομαι?: help to do

Κύρου στρατηγὸς |show, point out; ἀρ- ἴκετο ἐς τὴν Ἰωνίην,
|point; (mid) declare

αἶρεε τὰς πόλεις¹ |mound of dirt -s γὰρ |besieged; ποιεῖσει,
|fortified

τὸ |thence |mound of dirt πρὸς τὰ τείχεα |sack

1.163

πρώτῃ δέ² Φωκαίῃ Ἰωνίης |do, try, attack οἱ δέ

Φωκαῖες οὔτοι ναυτιλίῃσι μακρῇσι πρῶτοι |Greek

ἐχρήσαντο, καὶ τὸν³ τε Ἀδρίην καὶ τὴν Τυρσηνίην

καὶ τὴν Ἰβηρίην καὶ τὸν Ταρτησσὸν οὔτοι εἰσὶ οἱ

|discover, make|sail δὲ οὐ |round; νηυσὶ
|known

ἀλλὰ |ship with 50 oars ἀπικόμενοι δὲ ἐς τὸν Ταρτησσὸν
|ship

|beloved ἐγένοντο τῷ βασιλεί τῶν Ταρτησίων, τῷ

οὔνομα μὲν ἦν, Ἀργανθώνιος, |be an absolute ruler τῶν Ταρτησσοῦ

|eighty ἔτεα, ἐβίωσε δὲ πάντα εἴκοσι καὶ ἑκατόν.

τούτῳ δὴ τῷ ἀνδρὶ |beloved οἱ Φωκαῖες οὕτω δὴ τι

ἐγένοντο ὥς τὰ μὲν πρῶτα σφέας |leave out, pass over τὰ ἑξῆς

¹ He built up dirt ramps against the walls of the cities. ² a coastal city ³ a region in southern Iberia

being appointed commander then by Cyrus, came to Ionia and proceeded to take the cities by throwing up mounds against them: for when he had enclosed any people within their walls, then he threw up mounds against the walls and took their city by storm; and the first city of Ionia upon which he made an attempt was Phocaia.

1.163

Now these Phocaians were the first of the Hellenes who made long voyages, and these are they who discovered the Adriatic and Tyrsenia and Iberia and Tartessos: and they made voyages not in round ships, but in vessels of fifty oars. These came to Tartessos and became friends with the king of the Tartessians whose name was Arganthonios: he was ruler of the Tartessians for eighty years and lived in all one hundred and twenty. With this man, I say, the Phocaians became so exceedingly friendly, that first he bade them leave Ionia and

*vocabulary***ἀπάγω** lead away, back ~demagogue**ἀφειδής** unsparing, cruel ~aphid**δουλοσύνη** slavery**ἐκποιέω** complete, permit; (mp)

produce, be adopted

ἐπελαύνω beat out ~elastic**ἐρείπω** pull down; fall ~reap**καταχράομαι** (mp) abuse, use up;
(act) be enough**οἴκημα** -τος (n, 3) room**περιβάλλω** act: excel; mid: put on
clothing ~ballistic**περιημεκτέω** be aggrieved**περίοδος** picket, circuit**προμαχεών** breastwork, battlement**στάδιον** 200 meters (pl also masc)**στάδιος** (adj) standing upright, firm;
(pl noun) 200 meters**στρατιά** army ~strategy**ὑποκρίνομαι** (i) answer; pretend

ἐκέλευε τῆς ἐωντοῦ χώρης οἰκῆσαι ὅκου βούλονται· μετὰ δέ, ὡς τοῦτό γε οὐκ ἔπειθε τοὺς Φωκαίεας, ὁ δὲ πυθόμενος τὸν Μῆδον παρ' αὐτῶν ὡς αὔξοιτο, ἐδίδου σφι χρήματα τείχος περιβαλέσθαι τὴν πόλιν, ἐδίδου δὲ ἀφειδέως· καὶ γὰρ καὶ ἡ περίοδος τοῦ τείχεος οὐκ ὀλίγοι στάδιοι εἰσί, τοῦτο δὲ πᾶν λίθων μεγάλων καὶ εὖ συναρμοσμένων.

1.164

τὸ μὲν δὴ τείχος τοῖσι Φωκαεῦσι τρόπῳ τοιῷδε ἐξεποιήθη.

Ὁ δὲ Ἄρπαγος ὡς ἐπήλασε τὴν στρατιήν, ἐπολιόρκεε αὐτούς, προισχόμενος¹ ἔπεα ὥς οἱ καταχρᾶ εἰ βούλονται Φωκαίεες προμαχεῶνα ἓνα μῦνον τοῦ τείχεος ἐρεῖψαι² καὶ οἴκημα ἐν κατιρῶσαι. οἱ δὲ Φωκαίεες περιημεκτέοντες τῇ δουλосύνῃ ἔφασαν θέλειν βουλεύσασθαι ἡμέρην μίαν καὶ ἔπειτα ὑποκρινέσθαι· ἐν ᾧ δὲ βουλεύονται αὐτοί, ἀπαγαγεῖν ἐκεῖνον ἐκέλευον τὴν στρατιήν ἀπὸ τοῦ τείχεος. ὁ δ' Ἄρπαγος ἔφη εἰδέναι μὲν εὖ τὰ ἐκεῖνοι μέλλοιεν

¹ offering ² destroying part of their own defenses

ἐκέλευε τῆς ἐωνυτοῦ χώρας οἰκῆσαι ὅκου βούλονται· μετὰ
 δέ, ὡς τοῦτό γε οὐκ ἔπειθε τοὺς Φωκαιέας, ὁ δὲ πυθόμενος
 τὸν Μῆδον παρ' αὐτῶν ὡς αὔξειτο, ἐδίδου σφι χρήματα
 τείχος |excel; don τὴν πόλιν, ἐδίδου δὲ |unsparing, καὶ
 γὰρ καὶ ἡ |picket, τοῦ τείχεος οὐκ ὀλίγοι στάδιοι εἰσί,
 |circuit
 τοῦτο δὲ πᾶν λίθων μεγάλων καὶ εὖ συναρμοσμένων.

1.164

τὸ μὲν δὴ τείχος τοῖσι Φωκαιεῦσι τρόπῳ τοιῶδε

|complete, permit; (mp)
 |produce, be adopted

Ὁ δὲ Ἄρπαγος ὡς |beat out τὴν στρατιήν, ἐπολιόρκεε

αὐτούς, προισχόμενος¹ ἔπεα ὥς οἱ |(mp) abuse, ὕς ὑπ; νται
 |(act) be enough

Φωκαιέες |breastwork, ἕνα μῶνον τοῦ τείχεος |pull down; fall
 |battlement

καὶ |room ἔν κατιρῶσαι. οἱ δὲ Φωκαιέες |be aggrieved

τῇ |slavery ἔφασαν θέλειν βουλεύσασθαι ἡμέρην μίαν

καὶ ἔπειτα |answer; pretend ἐν ᾧ δὲ βουλεύονται αὐτοί,

|lead away, back ἵνον ἐκέλευον τὴν στρατιήν ἀπὸ τοῦ τείχεος.

ὁ δ' Ἄρπαγος ἔφη εἰδέναι μὲν εὖ τὰ ἐκείνοι μέλλοιεν

¹ offering ² destroying part of their own defenses

dwell wherever they desired in his own land; and as he did not prevail upon the Phocaians to do this, afterwards, hearing from them of the Mede how his power was increasing, he gave them money to build a wall about their city: and he did this without sparing, for the circuit of the wall is many furlongs in extent, and it is built all of large stones closely fitted together.

1.164

The wall of the Phocaians was made in this manner.

Harpagos having marched his army against them began to besiege them, at the same time holding forth to them proposals and saying that it was enough to satisfy him if the Phocaians were willing to throw down one battlement of their wall and dedicate one single house. But the Phocaians, being very greatly grieved at the thought of subjection, said that they wished to deliberate about the matter for one day and after that they would give their answer; and they asked him to withdraw his army from the wall while they were deliberating. Harpagos said that he knew very well what they were meaning

vocabulary

ἄγαλμα -τος (n, 3) ornament, glory,
statue

ἀνάθημα -τος (n, 3) consecrated gift
~thesis

ἀπάγω lead away, back ~demagogue

δειμαίνω be afraid

εἰσβαίνω enter, board ~basis

εἰστίθηναι put in

ἐμπόριον immigrant, metic, trading
post

ἐμπόριος immigrant, metic, trading
post

ἐπιπλά -τος (n, 2) stuff, possessions

ἐρημώω raze, bereave; desert, isolate

εὖς good, brave, noble

θεοπρόπιον prophecy ~theology

κατασπάω pull down

οἰνόω make drunk ~wine

ὄον οὖ type of fruit

παρίημι dangle; pass over, allow ~jet

πεντηκόντερος (f) ship with 50 oars

Πέρσης Persian

πωλέω sell

στέλλω prepare, send, furl ~apostle

στρατιά army ~strategy

τηνικαῦτα at that time, in that case

χωρίς separately; except, other than
~heir

ὠνέομαι buy

ποιέειν, ὅμως δὲ σφί παριέναι βουλεύσασθαι. ἐν ᾧ ὦν
 ὁ Ἄρπαγος ἀπὸ τοῦ τείχεος ἀπήγαγε τὴν στρατιήν, οἱ
 Φωκαῖες ἐν τούτῳ κατασπάσαντες τὰς πεντηκοντέρους,
 ἐσθέμενοι τέκνα καὶ γυναικας καὶ ἔπιπλα πάντα, πρὸς δὲ
 καὶ τὰ ἀγάλματα τὰ ἐν τῶν ἱρώων καὶ τὰ ἄλλα ἀναθήματα,
 χωρὶς ὅ τι χαλκὸς ἢ λίθος ἢ γραφὴ ἦν, τὰ δὲ ἄλλα πάντα
 ἐσθέντες καὶ αὐτοὶ εἰσβάντες ἔπλεον ἐπὶ Χίου. τὴν δὲ
 Φωκαίην ἐρημωθεῖσαν ἀνδρῶν ἔσχον οἱ Πέρσαι.

1.165

οἱ δὲ Φωκαῖες, ἐπεῖτε σφί Χίοι τὰς νήσους τὰς
 Οἰνούσας καλεομένας οὐκ ἐβούλοντο ὠνευμένοισι
 πωλέειν, δειμαίνοντες μὴ αἱ μὲν ἐμπόριον γένωνται, ἡ δὲ
 αὐτῶν νήσος ἀποκληισθῇ τούτου εἵνεκα, πρὸς ταῦτα οἱ
 Φωκαῖες ἐστέλλοντο ἐς Κύρνον· ἐν γὰρ τῇ Κύρνῳ εἴκοσι
 ἔτεσι πρότερον τούτων ἐκ θεοπροπίου ἀνεστήσαντο¹
 πόλιν, τῇ οὖνομα ἦν Ἀλαλίη. Ἀργανθώνιος² δὲ τηνικαῦτα
 ἤδη τετελευτήκεε. στελλόμενοι δὲ ἐπὶ τὴν Κύρνον, πρῶτα

¹ the Phocaians ² ruler of the Tartessos

ποιέειν, ὅμως δὲ σφι |dangle; pass⁵ |υλεύσασθαι. ἐν ᾧ ὦν
 |over, allow
 ὁ Ἄρπαγος ἀπὸ τοῦ τείχεος |lead away, back στρατιήν, οἱ
 Φωκαῖες ἐν τούτῳ |pull down τὰς |ship with 50 oars ,
 |put in τέκνα καὶ γυναῖκας καὶ |stuff, possessions, πρὸς δὲ
 καὶ τὰ |ornament, τὰ ἐν τῶν ἱρώων καὶ τὰ ἄλλα |consecrated gift
 |glory, statue
 |separately; . ex-⁶ |κὸς ἢ λίθος ἢ γραφή ἦν, τὰ δὲ ἄλλα πάντα
 |cept, other than
 |put in καὶ αὐτοὶ |enter, ἔπλεον ἐπὶ Χίου. τὴν δὲ
 |board
 Φωκαίην |raze, bereave; ἀνδρῶν ἔσχον οἱ Πέρσαι.
 |desert, isolate

1.165

οἱ δὲ Φωκαῖες, ἐπεῖτε σφι Χιοὶ τὰς νήσους τὰς
 |make drunk καλεομένας οὐκ ἐβούλοντο |buy
 |sell , |be afraid μὴ αἱ μὲν ἐμπόριον γένωνται, ἡ δὲ
 αὐτῶν νήσος ἀποκληισθῇ τούτου εἵνεκα, πρὸς ταῦτα οἱ
 Φωκαῖες |prepare, send, furl⁷ ἴρνον· ἐν γὰρ τῇ Κύρνῳ εἴκοσι
 ἔτεσι πρότερον τούτων ἐκ |prophecy ἀνεστήσαντο¹
 πόλιν, τῇ οὖνομα ἦν Ἀλαλίη. Ἀργανθώνιος² δὲ |at that time,
 |in that case
 ἤδη τετελευτήκεε. |prepare, send, furl⁷ ἵ τὴν Κύρνον, πρῶτα

¹ the Phocaians ² ruler of the Tartessos

to do, nevertheless he was willing to allow them to deliberate. So in the time that followed, when Harpagos had withdrawn his army from the wall, the Phocaians drew down their fifty-oared galleys to the sea, put into them their children and women and all their movable goods, and besides them the images out of the temples and the other votive offerings except such as were made of bronze or stone or consisted of paintings, all the rest, I say, they put into the ships, and having embarked themselves they sailed towards Chios; and the Persians obtained possession of Phocaia, the city being deserted of the inhabitants.

1.165

But as for the Phocaians, since the men of Chios would not sell them at their request the islands called Oinussai, from the fear lest these islands might be made a seat of trade and their island might be shut out, therefore they set out for Kyrnos: for in Kyrnos twenty years before this they had established a city named Alalia, in accordance with an oracle, (now Arganthonios by that time was dead).

And when they were setting out for Kyrnos they first

*vocabulary***ἄζω** dry up ~ash**ἀναφαίνω** reveal, shine ~phenomenon**ἀποπλέω** sail away ~float**ἄω** aor: to sate ~sate**ἐνιδρύω** establish**ἐξεργάζομαι** accomplish; undo;

destroy someone

εὖς good, brave, noble**ἦθος ἥθεος** (n, 3) habit, habitat ~ethos**θεάομαι** look at, behold, consider

~theater

καταπλέω land ~float**καταποντώ** throw into the sea;

drown

κατάρα curse**καταφονεύω** slaughter**μύδρος** anvil**οἶκτος** compassion**ὄον** οὖ type of fruit**ὄρκιον** oath ~orc**παραδείκνυμι** (ὕ) receive, admit**περίοικος** dwelling around**Πέρσης** Persian**πόθος** longing, regret ~bid**σιδήρεος** of iron ~siderite**στέλλω** prepare, send, furl ~apostle**ὑπερήμισυς** mostly**ὑπολείπω** leave as a leftover; leave a

person behind ~eclipse

φρουρέω keep watch**ψευδόρκιος** violating an oath

καταπλεύσαντες ἐς τὴν Φωκαίην κατεφόνευσαν τῶν Περσέων τὴν φυλακὴν, ἣ ἐφρούρεε παραδεξαμένη παρὰ Ἀρπάγου τὴν πόλιν. μετὰ δέ, ὥς τοῦτο σφί ἐξέργαστο, ἐποιήσαντο ἰσχυρὰς κατάρας τῷ ὑπολειπομένῳ ἑωυτῶν τοῦ στόλου, πρὸς δὲ ταύτησι καὶ μύδρον σιδήρεον κατεπόντωσαν καὶ ὤμοσαν μὴ πρὶν ἐς Φωκαίην ἥξειν πρὶν ἢ τὸν μύδρον τοῦτον ἀναφανῆναι.

Στελλομένων δὲ αὐτῶν ἐπὶ τὴν Κύρνον, ὑπερημίσεας τῶν ἀστῶν ἔλαβε πόθος τε καὶ οἶκτος τῆς πόλιος καὶ τῶν ἡθέων τῆς χώρας, ψευδόρκιοι δὲ γενόμενοι ἀπέπλεον ὀπίσω ἐς τὴν Φωκαίην. οἱ δὲ αὐτῶν τὸ ὄρκιον ἐφύλασσον, ἀερθέντες¹ ἐκ τῶν Οἰνουσσέων ἔπλεον.

1.166

ἐπεῖτε δὲ ἐς τὴν Κύρνον ἀπίκοντο, οἴκεον κοινῇ μετὰ τῶν πρότερον ἀπικομένων ἐπ' ἕτεα πέντε, καὶ ἱρὰ ἐνιδρύσαντο. καὶ ἦγον γὰρ δὴ καὶ ἔφερον τοὺς περιοίκους ἅπαντας, στρατεύονται ὧν ἐπ' αὐτοὺς κοινῶ λόγῳ

¹ their anchors

sailed to Phocaia and slaughtered the Persian garrison, to whose charge Harpagos had delivered the city; then after they had achieved this they made solemn imprecations on any one of them who should be left behind from their voyage, and moreover they sank a mass of iron in the sea and swore that not until that mass should appear again on the surface would they to Phocaia.

However as they were setting forth to Kyrnos, more than half of the citizens were seized with yearning and regret for their city and for their native land, and they proved false to their oath and sailed back to Phocaia. But those of them who kept the oath still, weighed anchor from the islands of Oinussai and sailed.

1.166

When these came to Kyrnos, for five years they dwelt together with those who had come thither before, and they founded temples there. Then, since they plundered the property of all their neighbours, the Tyrsenians and Carthaginians made expedition against them by agreement with one another,

*vocabulary***ἀναλαμβάνω** take up, recover, resume**ἀντιάζω** meet, fight, join**ἀποστρέφω** turn back, turn off course

~atrophy

ἀριθμός number**ἄχρηστος** useless, unprofitable**διάστροφος** twisted, distorted**ἔμβολος** insertable peg; ram; wedge formation; porch**ἑξήκοντα** sixty**καθαπλόω** spread over**Καρχηδόνιος** Carthaginian**καταλεύω** stone to death**κτῆσις** -ος (f) chattels**λαγχάνω** be allotted; (esp. λελα-
forms) allot; receive**ναυμαχία** naval warfare**νίκη** (i) victory ~Nike**πέλαγος** -ους (n, 3) the open sea
~pelagic**περίειμι** be superior to; be left over;
still exist**συμμίγνυμι** mix with ~mix**χῶρος** place ~heir

χρησάμενοι Τυρσηνοὶ καὶ Καρχηδόνιοι, νηυσὶ ἐκάτεροι ἐξήκοντα. οἱ δὲ Φωκαῖες πληρώσαντες καὶ αὐτοὶ τὰ πλοῖα, ὄντα ἀριθμὸν ἐξήκοντα, ἀντίαζον ἐς τὸ Σαρδόνιον καλεόμενον πέλαγος. συμμασγόντων δὲ τῇ ναυμαχίῃ Καδμεΐη¹ τις νίκη τοῖσι Φωκαιεῦσι ἐγένετο· αἱ μὲν γὰρ τεσσεράκοντά σφι νέες διεφθάρησαν, αἱ δὲ εἴκοσι αἱ περιεοῦσαι ἦσαν ἄχρηστοι· ἀπεστράφατο γὰρ τοὺς ἐμβόλους. καταπλώσαντες δὲ ἐς τὴν Ἀλαλίνην ἀνέλαβον τὰ τέκνα καὶ τὰς γυναῖκας καὶ τὴν ἄλλην κτῆσιν ὅσῃν οἶαι τε ἐγίνοντο αἱ νέες σφι ἄγειν, καὶ ἔπειτα ἀπέντες τὴν Κύρνον ἔπλεον ἐς Ῥήγιον.

1.167

τῶν δὲ διαφθαρεισέων νεῶν τοὺς ἄνδρας οἱ τε Καρχηδόνιοι καὶ οἱ Τυρσηνοὶ ἔλαχόν τε αὐτῶν πολλῶ πλείστους καὶ τούτους ἐξαγαγόντες κατέλευσαν. μετὰ δὲ Ἀγυλλαίοισι² πάντα τὰ παριόντα τὸν χώρον, ἐν τῷ οἱ Φωκαῖες καταλευσθέντες ἐκέατο, ἐγένετο διάστροφα καὶ

¹ i.e., Pyrrhic ² a Carthaginian city on the Italian coast

χρησάμενοι Τυρσηνοὶ καὶ Καρχηδόνιοι, νηυσὶ ἐκάτεροι

|sixty . οἱ δὲ Φωκαῖες πληρώσαντες καὶ αὐτοὶ τὰ

πλοῖα, ἔόντα |number |sixty , |meet, |fight, join ἐς τὸ Σαρδόνιον

καλεόμενον |the open sea συμμισγόντων δὲ τῇ ναυμαχίῃ

Καδμεΐη¹ τις νίκη τοῖσι Φωκαεῦσι ἐγένετο· αἱ μὲν

γὰρ τεσσεράκοντά σφι νέες διεφθάρησαν, αἱ δὲ εἴκοσι

αἱ |be superior to; |be left|useless, un-|turn back γὰρ τοὺς
|over; still exist |profitable

|insertable . |spread over δὲ ἐς τὴν Ἀλαλίνην |take up, re-
peg; ram; |cover, resume
wedge
formation; καὶ τὰς γυναῖκας καὶ τὴν ἄλλην |chattels ὅσην
|porch

οἶαι τε ἐγίνοντο αἱ νέες σφι ἄγειν, καὶ ἔπειτα ἀπέντες τὴν

Κύρνον ἔπλεον ἐς Ῥήγιον.

1.167

τῶν δὲ διαφθαρεισέων νεῶν τοὺς ἄνδρας οἱ τε

Καρχηδόνιοι καὶ οἱ Τυρσηνοὶ ἔλαχόν τε αὐτῶν πολλῶ

πλείστους καὶ τούτους ἐξαγαγόντες |stone to death μετὰ δὲ

Ἀγυλλαίοισι² πάντα τὰ παριόντα τὸν |place , ἐν τῷ οἱ

Φωκαῖες |stone to death ἐκέατο, ἐγίνετο |twisted, καὶ
|distorted

¹ i.e., Pyrrhic ² a Carthaginian city on the Italian coast

each with sixty ships. And the Phocaians also manned their vessels, sixty in number, and came to meet the enemy in that which is called the Sardinian sea: and when they encountered one another in the sea-fight the Phocaians won a kind of Cadmean victory, for forty of their ships were destroyed and the remaining twenty were disabled, having had their prows bent aside. So they sailed in to Alalia and took up their children and their women and their other possessions as much as their ships proved capable of carrying, and then they left Kyrnos behind them and sailed to Rhegion.

1.167

But as for the crews of the ships that were destroyed, the Carthaginians and Tyrsenians obtained much the greater number of them, and these they brought to land and killed by stoning. After this the men of Agylla found that everything which passed by the spot where the Phocaians were laid after being stoned, became

vocabulary

ἀκέομαι heal, fix
ἀπόπληκτος stricken, dumb, paralyzed
γυμνικός of gymnastics
διαχράομαι use habitually; lend out;
 reveal
διαχρέομαι use habitually; lend out;
 reveal
ἔμπηρος crippled
ἐναγίζω offer sacrifice to the dead
ἐνθεῦτεν thence

ἐπιτελέω complete; do a religious duty
ἐπιτέλλω order ~apostle
ἵππικός of horses ~hippo
καταφεύγω resort to, flee to, appeal to
 ~fugitive
κτάομαι acquire, possess
κτίζω found, populate ~oxytocin
μόρος portion, lot in life
παραπλήσιος similar to
πρόβατον cattle, flocks, herds
ὕποζύγιον beast of burden ~zygote

ἔμπηρα καὶ ἀπόπληκτα, ὁμοίως πρόβατα καὶ ὑποζύγια
καὶ ἄνθρωποι.

οἱ δὲ Ἀγυλλαῖοι ἐς Δελφοὺς ἔπεμπον βουλόμενοι
ἀκέσασθαι τὴν ἀμαρτάδα. ἡ δὲ Πυθίη σφέας ἐκέλευσε
ποιεῖν τὰ καὶ νῦν οἱ Ἀγυλλαῖοι ἔτι ἐπιτελέουσι· καὶ γὰρ
ἐναγίζουσί σφι μέγας καὶ ἀγῶνα γυμνικὸν καὶ ἵππικὸν
ἐπιστάσι.

καὶ οὗτοι μὲν τῶν Φωκαίων τοιούτῳ μόρῳ διεχρήσαντο,
οἱ δὲ αὐτῶν ἐς τὸ Ῥήγιον καταφυγόντες ἐνθεύτην
ὀρμώμενοι ἐκτήσαντο πόλιν γῆς τῆς Οἰνωτρίας ταύτην
ἣτις νῦν Ὑέλη καλεῖται· ἔκτισαν δὲ ταύτην πρὸς ἀνδρὸς
Ποσειδωνιῆτεω μαθόντες ὥς τὸν Κύρνον σφι ἡ Πυθίη
ἔχρησε κτίσαι ἥρων ἐόντα, ἀλλ' οὐ τὴν νῆσον.

1.168

Φωκαίης μὲν νυν πέρι τῆς ἐν Ἰωνίῃ οὕτω ἔσχε
παραπλήσια δὲ τούτοισι καὶ Τήιοι¹ ἐποίησαν. ἐπεῖτε

¹ Teos was a coastal city in Ionia.

|crippled καὶ |stricken, dumb, ῥμοίως |cattle, flocks, |beast of burden
|paralyzed |herds
καὶ ἄνθρωποι.

οἱ δὲ Ἀγυλλαῖοι ἐς Δελφοὺς ἔπεμπον βουλόμενοι
|heal, fix τὴν ἀμαρτάδα. ἡ δὲ Πυθίη σφέας ἐκέλευσε
ποιέειν τὰ καὶ νῦν οἱ Ἀγυλλαῖοι ἔτι ἐπιτελέουσι· καὶ γὰρ
|offer sacrifice φι μεγάλως καὶ ἀγῶνα |of gymnastics· |of horses
|to the dead
ἐπιστᾶσι.

καὶ οὗτοι μὲν τῶν Φωκαϊέων τοιούτῳ |portion, lot, in life· το,
οἱ δὲ αὐτῶν ἐς τὸ Ῥήγιον |resort to, flee to, ap-|thence
|peal to
ὀρμώμενοι ἐκτήσαντο πόλιν γῆς τῆς Οἰνωτρῆς ταύτην
ἥτις νῦν Ὑέλη καλέεται· |found, δὲ ταύτην πρὸς ἀνδρὸς
|populate
Ποσειδωνιῆτεω μαθόντες ὥς τὸν Κύρνον σφι ἡ Πυθίη
ἔχρησε |found, ῥρων ἐόντα, ἀλλ' οὐ τὴν νῆσον.
|populate

1.168

Φωκαίης μὲν νυν πέρι τῆς ἐν Ἰωνίῃ οὕτω ἔσχε
|similar to δὲ τούτοισι καὶ Τήιοι¹ ἐποίησαν. ἐπεῖτε

¹ Teos was a coastal city in Ionia.

either distorted, or crippled, or paralysed, both small cattle and beasts of burden and human creatures.

So the men of Agylla sent to Delphi desiring to purge themselves of the offence; and the Pythian prophetess bade them do that which the men of Agylla still continue to perform, that is to say, they make great sacrifices in honour of the dead, and hold at the place a contest of athletics and horse-racing.

These then of the Phocaians had the fate which I have said; but those of them who took refuge at Rhegion started from thence and took possession of that city in the land of Oinotria which now is called Hyele. This they founded having learnt from a man of Poseidonia that the Pythian prophetess by her answer meant them to found a temple to Kyrnos, who was a hero, and not to found a settlement in the island of Kyrnos.

1.168

About Phocaia in Ionia it happened thus, and nearly the same thing also was done by the men of Teos: for as

*vocabulary***ἁλίσκομαι** be captured ~helix**ἀπονίναμαι** enjoy, use**δουλοσύνη** slavery**δουλόω** enslave**εἰσβαίνω** enter, board ~basis**ἐκλείπω** leave out, pass over**ἐνθαῦτα** there, here**ἐξελαύνω** drive out, exile ~elastic**ἐπιτάσσω** enjoin; place near**ἐπιτελέω** complete; do a religious duty**ἡπειρος** (f) mainland, continent**ἡσάομαι** (pass) be weaker, be overcome; (active) defeat**ἡσυχία** peace and quiet**καταρρωδέω** fear, dread**κτίζω** found, populate ~oxytocin**ὄρκιον** oath ~orc**χειρόω** dominate, subdue**χῶμα** -τος (n, 3) mound of dirt

γὰρ σφέων εἶλε χώματι τὸ τεῖχος Ἄρπαγος, ἐσβάντες πάντες ἐς τὰ πλοῖα οἴχοντο πλέοντες ἐπὶ τῆς Θρηίκης, καὶ ἐνθαῦτα ἔκτισαν πόλιν Ἄβδηρα, τὴν πρότερος τούτων Κλαζομένιος Τιμήσιος κτίσας οὐκ ἀπόνητο, ἀλλ' ὑπὸ Θρηίκων ἐξελασθεὶς τιμὰς νῦν ὑπὸ Τηίων τῶν ἐν Ἀβδήροισι ὡς ἥρως ἔχει.

1.169

οὗτοὶ μὲν νυν Ἰώνων μῶνοι τὴν δουλοσύνην οὐκ ἀνεχόμενοι ἐξέλιπον τὰς πατρίδας· οἱ δ' ἄλλοι Ἴωνες πλὴν Μιλησίων διὰ μάχης μὲν ἀπίκοντο Ἀρπάγῳ κατὰ περ οἱ ἐκλιπόντες, καὶ ἄνδρες ἐγένοντο ἀγαθοὶ περὶ τῆς ἐωυτοῦ ἕκαστος μαχόμενοι, ἐσσωθέντες δὲ καὶ ἀλόντες ἔμενον κατὰ χώραν ἕκαστοι καὶ τὰ ἐπιτασσόμενα ἐπετέλεον. Μιλήσιοι δέ, ὡς καὶ πρότερόν μοι ἔρηται, αὐτῷ Κύρῳ ὄρκιον ποιησάμενοι ἡσυχίην ἤγον. οὕτω δὲ τὸ δεύτερον Ἰωνὴ ἐδεδούλωτο. ὡς δὲ τοὺς ἐν τῇ ἡπείρῳ Ἴωνας ἐχειρώσατο Ἄρπαγος, οἱ τὰς νήσους ἔχοντες Ἴωνες, καταρρωδήσαντες ταῦτα, σφέας αὐτοὺς ἔδοσαν Κύρῳ.

γὰρ σφέων εἶλε |mound of dirt εἶχος Ἄρπαγος, |enter,
|board
πάντες ἐς τὰ πλοῖα οἶχοντο πλέοντες ἐπὶ τῆς Θρηίκης,
καὶ |there, here |found, πόλιν Ἄβδηρα, τὴν πρότερος
|populate
τούτων Κλαζομένιος Τιμήσιος |found, ὅκ |enjoy, use , ἀλλ'
|populate
ὑπὸ Θρηίκων |drive out τιμὰς νῦν ὑπὸ Τηίων τῶν ἐν
Ἀβδήροις ὡς ἥρως ἔχει.

1.169

οὗτοι μὲν νυν Ἰώνων μούνοι τὴν |slavery οὐκ
ἀνεχόμενοι |leave out, pass over , ἰδας· οἱ δ' ἄλλοι Ἴωνες πλὴν
Μιλησίων διὰ μάχης μὲν ἀπίκοντο Ἀρπάγω κατὰ περ οἱ
|leave out, pass over Ἰδρες ἐγένοντο ἀγαθοὶ περὶ τῆς ἐωυτοῦ
ἕκαστος μαχόμενοι, |(pass) be weaker, --be|be captured, --ΕΝΟΝ
|overcome; (active) de-
κατὰ χώραν ἕκαστοι καὶ τὰ |enjoin; place |complete; do a
|near |religious duty
Μιλήσιοι δέ, ὡς καὶ πρότερόν μοι ἔρηται, αὐτῷ Κύρῳ
ὄρκιον ποιησάμενοι |peace and quiet. οὕτω δὲ τὸ δεύτερον
Ἰωνίη |enslave . ὡς δὲ τοὺς ἐν τῇ |mainland, Ἴωνας
|continent
|χειρώω?: dominate, subdue; or τὰς νήσους ἔχοντες Ἴωνες,
|χειρώω?: dominate, subdue
|fear, dread ταῦτα, σφέας αὐτοὺς ἔδοσαν Κύρῳ.

soon as Harpagos took their wall with a mound, they embarked in their ships and sailed straightway for Thrace; and there they founded the city of Abdera, which before them Timesios of Clazomenai founded and had no profit therefrom, but was driven out by the Thracians; and now he is honoured as a hero by the Teians in Abdera.

1.169

These alone of all the Ionians left their native cities because they would not endure subjection: but the other Ionians except the Milesians did indeed contend in arms with Harpagos like those who left their homes, and proved themselves brave men, fighting each for his own native city; but when they were defeated and captured they remained all in their own place and performed that which was laid upon them: but the Milesians, as I have also said before, had made a sworn agreement with Cyrus himself and kept still. Thus for the second time Ionia had been reduced to subjection. And when Harpagos had conquered the Ionians on the mainland, then the Ionians who dwelt in the islands, being struck with fear by these things, gave themselves over to Cyrus.

vocabulary

ἀνέκαθεν from the start
ἀπαλλαξείω wish to get rid of
ἀπαλλάσσω free from, remove; be freed, depart
ἀποδείκνυμι (ō) show, point out; appoint; (mid) declare
ἀποδέχομαι accept ~doctrine
βουλευτήριον council chamber
δουλοσύνη slavery
ἐλευθερία freedom

Ἑλλην Greek

ἐνοράω look at, notice something in
εὐδαιμονέω be lucky, happy
κακώω harm, disfigure ~cacophony
κτάομαι acquire, possess
κτίζω found, populate ~oxytocin
νέμω to allot, to pasture ~nemesis
συλλέγω collect, assemble ~legion
χρήσιμος useful
χρηστός useful; brave, worthy

1.170

κεκακωμένων δὲ Ἰώνων καὶ συλλεγομένων οὐδὲν¹
 ἦσσον ἐς τὸ Πανιώνιον, πυνθάνομαι γνώμην Βίαντα
 ἄνδρα Πριηνέα ἀποδέξασθαι Ἰωσι χρησιμωτάτην, τῇ
 εἰ ἐπείθοντο, παρείχε ἂν σφι εὐδαιμονέειν Ἑλλήνων
 μάλιστα· ὃς ἐκέλευε κοινῶ στόλῳ Ἰωνας ἀερθέντας
 πλέειν ἐς Σαρδῶ καὶ ἔπειτα πόλιν μίαν κτίζειν πάντων
 Ἰώνων, καὶ οὕτω ἀπαλλαχθέντας σφέας δουλοσύνης
 εὐδαιμονήσειν, νήσων τε ἀπασέων μεγίστην νεμομένους
 καὶ ἄρχοντας ἄλλων· μένουσι δέ σφι ἐν τῇ Ἰωνίῃ οὐκ
 ἔφη ἐνορᾶν ἐλευθερίην ἔτι ἐσομένην. αὕτη μὲν Βίαντος
 τοῦ Πριηνέος γνώμη ἐπὶ διεφθαρμένοισι Ἰωσι γενομένη,
 χρηστή δὲ καὶ πρὶν ἢ διαφθαρῆναι Ἰωνίην Θάλεω ἀνδρὸς
 Μιλησίου ἐγένετο, τὸ ἀνέκαθεν γένος ἐόντος Φοίνικος, ὃς
 ἐκέλευε ἐν βουλευτήριον Ἰωνας ἐκτῆσθαι, τὸ δὲ εἶναι ἐν
 Τέῳ Τέων γὰρ μέσον εἶναι Ἰωνίης, τὰς δὲ ἄλλας πόλεις
 οἰκεόμενας μηδὲν ἦσσον νομίζεσθαι κατὰ περ ἐς δῆμοι εἶεν.

¹ nevertheless

1.170

|harm, disfigure δὲ Ἰώνων καὶ |collect, assemble οὐδὲν¹
 ἦσσαν ἐς τὸ Πανιώνιον, πυνθάνομαι γνώμην Βίαντα
 ἄνδρα Πριηνέα ἀποδέξασθαι Ἰωσι |useful , τῇ
 εἰ ἐπείθοντο, παρείχε ἂν σφι |be lucky, happy |Greek
 μάλιστα· ὃς ἐκέλευε κοινῶ στόλῳ Ἰωνας ἀερθέντας
 πλέειν ἐς Σαρδῶ καὶ ἔπειτα πόλιν μίαν |found, .γάντων
 |populate
 Ἰώνων, καὶ οὕτω ἀπαλλαχθέντας σφέας |slavery
 |be lucky, happy , νήσων τε ἀπασέων μεγίστην |distribute
 καὶ ἄρχοντας ἄλλων· μένουσι δέ σφι ἐν τῇ Ἰωνίῃ οὐκ
 ἔφη |look at, notice ἱερὴν ἔτι ἐσομένην. αὕτη μὲν Βιάντος
 |something in
 τοῦ Πριηνέος γνώμη ἐπὶ διεφθαρμένοισι Ἰωσι γενομένη,
 |useful; brave, καὶ πρὶν ἢ διαφθαρῆναι Ἰωνίην Θάλεω ἀνδρὸς
 |worthy
 Μιλησίου ἐγένετο, τὸ ἀνέκαθεν γένος ἐόντος Φοίνικος, ὃς
 ἐκέλευε ἐν |council Ἰωνας ἐκτῆσθαι, τὸ δὲ εἶναι ἐν
 |chamber
 Τέῳ Τέων γὰρ μέσον εἶναι Ἰωνίης, τὰς δὲ ἄλλας πόλεις
 οἰκεομένας μηδὲν ἦσσαν νομίζεσθαι κατὰ περ ἐς δῆμοι εἶεν.

¹ nevertheless

1.170

When the Ionians had been thus evilly entreated but were continuing still to hold their gatherings as before at the Panionion, Bias a man of Priene set forth to the Ionians, as I am informed, a most profitable counsel, by following which they might have been the most prosperous of all the Hellenes. He urged that the Ionians should set forth in one common expedition and sail to Sardinia, and after that found a single city for all the Ionians: and thus they would escape subjection and would be prosperous, inhabiting the largest of all islands and being rulers over others; whereas, if they remained in Ionia, he did not perceive, he said, that freedom would any longer exist for them. This was the counsel given by Bias of Priene after the Ionians had been ruined; but a good counsel too was given before the ruin of Ionia by Thales a man of Miletos, who was by descent of Phenician race. He advised the Ionians to have one single seat of government, and that this should be at Teos (for Teos, he said, was in the centre of Ionia), and that the other cities should be inhabited as before, but accounted just as if they were demes.

vocabulary

ἄκοή hearing ~acoustic
ἀποδείκνυμι (ō) show, point out;
 appoint; (mid) declare
ἀποδέχομαι accept ~doctrine
ἅτε as if; since
Ἑλλην Greek
ἐξεύρημα invention, discovery
ἐξικνέομαι arrive at
ἐπιδέω fasten; lack
εὐτυχέω be lucky, prosper, succeed
ἡπειρος (f) mainland, continent
καταδείκνυμι (ō) discover, make
 known

καταστρέφω overturn, subdue
 ~catastrophe
κατήκοος hearing; obedient
κράνος -εος (n, 3) helmet; ship's ram
λόγιμος notable
λόφος neck, crest on a helmet, hilltop
στρατηγή expedition, campaign
τοιόσδε such
τριξός threefold
ὕποτελέω pay a tax
φορέω frequentative of φέρω, to carry
 ~bear
φόρον forum
φόρος tribute, revenue

Οὔτοι μὲν δὴ σφι γνώμας τοιάσδε ἀπεδέξαντο.

1.171

Ἄρπαγος δὲ καταστρεψάμενος Ἰωνίην ἐποιέετο στρατηίην ἐπὶ Κᾶρας καὶ Καννίους καὶ Λυκίους, ἅμα ἀγόμενος καὶ Ἰωνας καὶ Αἰολέας. εἰσὶ δὲ τούτων Κᾶρες μὲν ἀπιγμένοι ἐς τὴν ἥπειρον ἐκ τῶν νήσων. τὸ γὰρ παλαιὸν ἔοντες Μίνω κατήκοοι καὶ καλεόμενοι Λέλεγες εἶχον τὰς νήσους, φόρον μὲν οὐδένα ὑποτελέοντες, ὅσον καὶ ἐγὼ δυνατός εἰμι ἐπὶ μακρότατον ἐξικέσθαι ἀκοῇ· οἱ δέ, ὅκως Μίνως δέοιτο, ἐπλήρουν οἱ τὰς νέας. ἄτε δὴ Μίνω τε κατεστραμμένου γῆν πολλὴν καὶ εὐτυχέοντος τῷ πολέμῳ, τὸ Καρικὸν ἦν ἔθνος λογιμώτατον τῶν ἐθνέων ἀπάντων κατὰ τοῦτον ἅμα τὸν χρόνον μακρῷ μάλιστα.

καὶ σφι τριζὰ ἐξευρήματα ἐγένετο, τοῖσι οἱ Ἕλληνες ἐχρήσαντο· καὶ γὰρ ἐπὶ τὰ κράνεα λόφους ἐπιδέεσθαι Κᾶρες εἰσὶ οἱ καταδέξαντες καὶ ἐπὶ τὰς ἀσπίδας τὰ σημῖα

Οὗτοι μὲν δὴ σφι γνώμας |such ἀπεδέξαντο.

1.171

Ἄρπαγος δὲ |overturn, subdue Ἴωνίνην ἐποιέετο
 |expedition, ἐπὶ Κᾶρας καὶ Καννίους καὶ Λυκίους, ἅμα
 |campaign
 ἀγόμενος καὶ Ἴωνας καὶ Αἰολέας. εἰσὶ δὲ τούτων Κᾶρες
 μὲν ἀπιγμένοι ἐς τὴν |mainland, ἔκ τῶν νήσων. τὸ γὰρ
 |continent
 παλαιὸν εὐόντες Μίνω |hearing; καὶ καλεόμενοι Λέλεγες
 |obedient
 εἶχον τὰς νήσους, φόρον μὲν οὐδένα |pay a tax , ὅσον
 καὶ ἐγὼ δυνατός εἰμι ἐπὶ μακρότατον |arrive at |hearing οἱ
 δέ, ὅκως Μίνως δέοιτο, ἐπλήρουν οἱ τὰς νέας. |as if; |since
 Μίνω τε |overturn, subdue γῆν πολλὴν καὶ |be lucky, pros-
 |per, succeed
 τῷ πολέμῳ, τὸ Καρικὸν ἦν ἔθνος |notable τῶν
 ἐθνέων ἀπάντων κατὰ τοῦτον ἅμα τὸν χρόνον μακρῶ
 μάλιστα.

καὶ σφι |three- |invention, ἐγένετο, τοῖσι οἱ |Greek
 |fold |discovery
 ἐχρήσαντο· καὶ γὰρ ἐπὶ τὰ |helmet; |neck, |fasten; lack
 |ship's |crest on
 Κᾶρες εἰσὶ οἱ |discover, make known ... τὰς |ram a helmet,
 |hilltop τὰ σημήια

These men set forth to them counsels of the kind which I have said:

1.171

But Harpagos, after subduing Ionia, proceeded to march against the Carians and Caunians and Lykians, taking also Ionians and Aiolians to help him. Of these the Carians came to the mainland from the islands; for being of old time subjects of Minos and being called Leleges, they used to dwell in the islands, paying no tribute, so far back as I am able to arrive by hearsay, but whenever Minos required it, they used to supply his ships with seamen: and as Minos subdued much land and was fortunate in his fighting, the Carian nation was of all nations by much the most famous at that time together with him.

And they produced three inventions of which the Hellenes adopted the use; that is to say, the Carians were those who first set the fashion of fastening crests on helmets, and of making the devices which are put onto shields, and these also were the first who made

vocabulary

ἄνευ away from; not having; not
needing ~Sp. sin

ἀνίημι urge, impel; release ~jet

ἀριστερός left-hand

ἀρχαῖος ancient, from the beginning
~oligarch

αὐτόχθων native

αὐχὴν -ένος (m, 3) neck

διαχρέομαι use habitually; lend out;
reveal

ἐξάνιστημι raise, bring/send out

ἡπειρος (f) mainland, continent

ἡπειρώτης -ιδος (f) landsman

κασίγνητος brother, sister

μέτεμι be among, go, follow ~ion

οἰηκίζω govern, guide, manage

ὁμόγλωσσος speaking the same
language

ὄχανον shield handle

περίκειμαι set about, cover, be a profit

προσδοκάω expect

σκούτινος (ῥ) of leather

φορέω frequentative of φέρω, to carry
~bear

ώθέω push

ποιέεσθαι, καὶ ὄχανα ἀσπίσι οὗτοι εἰσὶ οἱ ποιησάμενοι
 πρῶτοι· τέως δὲ ἄνευ ὀχάνων ἐφόρεον τὰς ἀσπίδας
 πάντες οἳ περ ἐώθεσαν ἀσπίσι χρᾶσθαι, τελαμῶσι
 σκυτίνοισι οἰηκίζοντες, περὶ τοῖσι αὐχέσι τε καὶ τοῖσι
 ἀριστεροῖσι ὤμοισι περικείμενοι.

μετὰ δὲ τοὺς Κᾶρας χρόνῳ ὕστερον πολλῶ Δωριέες τε
 καὶ Ἴωνες ἐξανέστησαν ἐκ τῶν νήσων, καὶ οὕτω ἐς τὴν
 ἡπειρον ἀπίκοντο. κατὰ μὲν δὴ Κᾶρας οὕτω Κρήτες
 λέγουσι γενέσθαι· οὐ μέντοι αὐτοί γε ὁμολογέουσι τούτοις
 οἱ Κᾶρες, ἀλλὰ νομίζουνσι αὐτοὶ ἐωυτοὺς εἶναι αὐτόχθονας
 ἡπειρώτας, καὶ τῷ οὐνόματι τῷ αὐτῷ αἰεὶ διαχρεωμένους
 τῷ περ νῦν. ἀποδεικνῦσι δὲ ἐν Μυλάσοισι Διὸς Καρίου
 ἱρὸν ἀρχαῖον, τοῦ Μυσοῖσι μὲν καὶ Λυδοῖσι μέτεστι ὥς
 κασιγνήτοις ἐοῦσι τοῖσι Καρσί· τὸν γὰρ Λυδὸν¹ καὶ τὸν
 Μυσὸν λέγουσι εἶναι Καρὸς ἀδελφεούς. τούτοις μὲν δὴ
 μέτεστι, ὅσοι δὲ ἐόντες ἄλλου ἔθνους ὁμόγλωσσοι τοῖσι
 Καρσὶ ἐγένοντο, τούτοις δὲ οὐ μέτα.

¹ mythical individuals founding their races

ποιέεσθαι, καὶ |shield ἄσπίσι οὗτοι εἰσὶ οἱ ποιησάμενοι
|handle

πρῶτοι· τέως δὲ ἄνευ |shield |frequentative of ἄσπιδας
|handle φέρω, to carry

πάντες οἱ περ |push ἄσπίσι χρᾶσθαι, τελαμῶσι

|of leather |govern, guide, περὶ τοῖσι |neck τε καὶ τοῖσι
|manage

|left-hand ὥμοισι |set about, cover,
|be a profit

μετὰ δὲ τοὺς Κᾶρας χρόνῳ ὕστερον πολλῶ Δωριέες τε

καὶ Ἴωνες |raise, bring/send : τῶν νήσων, καὶ οὕτω ἐς τὴν
|out

|mainland, |πῖκοντο. κατὰ μὲν δὴ Κᾶρας οὕτω Κρήτες
|continent

λέγουσι γενέσθαι· οὐ μέντοι αὐτοὶ γε ὁμολογέουσι τούτοις

οἱ Κᾶρες, ἀλλὰ νομίζουσι αὐτοὶ ἐωντοὺς εἶναι |native

|landsman , καὶ τῷ οὐνόματι τῷ αὐτῷ αἰεὶ |use habitually;
|lend out; reveal

τῷ περ νῦν. ἀποδεικνῦσι δὲ ἐν Μυλάσοισι Διὸς Καρίου

ἱρὸν |ancient, from ἡ Μυσοῖσι μὲν καὶ Λυδοῖσι |be among ὧς
|the beginning

|brother, sister ἐοῦσι τοῖσι Καρσί· τὸν γὰρ Λυδὸν¹ καὶ τὸν

Μυσὸν λέγουσι εἶναι Καρὸς ἀδελφεούς. τούτοις μὲν δὴ

|be among ὅσοι δὲ ἐόντες ἄλλου ἔθνους |speaking the τοῖσι
|same language

Καρσὶ ἐγένοντο, τούτοις δὲ οὐ μέτα.

¹ mythical individuals founding their races

handles for their shields, whereas up to that time all who were wont to use shields carried them without handles and with leathern straps to guide them, having them hung about their necks and their left shoulders.

Then after the lapse of a long time the Dorians and Ionians drove the Carians out of the islands, and so they came to the mainland. With respect to the Carians the Cretans relate that it happened thus; the Carians themselves however do not agree with this account, but suppose that they are dwellers on the mainland from the beginning, and that they went always by the same name which they have now: and they point as evidence of this to an ancient temple of Carian Zeus at Mylasa, in which the Mysians and Lydians share as being brother races of the Carians, for they say that Lydos and Mysos were brothers of Car; these share in it, but those who being of another race have come to speak the same language as the Carians, these have no share in it.

*vocabulary***ἀποδοκέω** decide against**ἀρχαῖος** ancient, from the beginning
~oligarch**ἀτρεκής** precise, certain**αὐτόχθων** native**γλῶσσα** tongue, language ~glossary**διακρίνω** (ι) separate, sort ~critic**εἰλαδόν** in crowds**ἐνδύω** go into, put on**ἤβηδόν** (adv) grown up**ἡλικία** time of life, contemporaries**ἰδρύω** establish**μετέπειτα** afterward, next**ὄρεύς** -ος (m) mule ~hormone**ὄρος** boundary marker ~horizon**οὔρον** boundary stone; unit of
distance; limit**οὔρος** fair wind; guardian; hill**πάτριος** of the father(s), ancestral**πόσις** -ος (m) (m) husband, master; (f)
a drink ~potent**προσχωρέω** go to, join, support**συγγίγνομαι** associate with, meet, have
sex ~genus**τύπτω** beat, smite ~stupid**χωρίζω** divide; distinguish, pull down

1.172

οἱ δὲ Καύνιοι αὐτόχθονες δοκέειν ἐμοὶ εἰσί, αὐτοὶ μέντοι ἐκ Κρήτης φασὶ εἶναι. προσκεχωρήκασι δὲ γλῶσσαν μὲν πρὸς τὸ Καρικὸν ἔθνος, ἣ οἱ Κᾶρες πρὸς τὸ Καυνικόν τοῦτο γὰρ οὐκ ἔχω ἀτρεκέως διακρίναι, νόμοισι δὲ χρέωνται¹ κεχωρισμένοισι πολλὸν τῶν τε ἄλλων ἀνθρώπων καὶ Καρῶν. τοῖσι γὰρ κάλλιστον ἐστὶ κατ' ἡλικίην τε καὶ φιλότητα εἰλαδὸν συγγίνεσθαι ἐς πόσιν, καὶ ἀνδράσι καὶ γυναιξὶ καὶ παισί. ἰδρυθέντων δέ σφι ἱρῶν ξεινικῶν, μετέπειτα ὥς σφι ἀπέδοξε, ἔδοξέ δὲ τοῖσι πατρίοισι μῦνον, χέασθαι θεοῖσι, ἐνδύντες τὰ ὄπλα ἅπαντες Καύνιοι ἡβηδόν, τύπτοντες δόρασι τὸν ἡέρα, μέχρι οὔρων² τῶν Καλυνδικῶν εἵποντο, καὶ ἔφασαν ἐκβάλλειν τοὺς ξεινικοὺς θεούς.

1.173

καὶ οὗτοι μὲν τρόποισι τοιούτοισι χρέωνται, οἱ δὲ Λύκιοι ἐκ Κρήτης τῶρχαῖον γεγόνασι τὴν γὰρ Κρήτην εἶχον

¹ they practice ² their borders

1.172

οἱ δὲ Καύνιοι |native δοκέειν ἐμοὶ εἰσί, αὐτοὶ μέντοι
 ἐκ Κρήτης φασὶ εἶναι. |go to, join, support δὲ |tongue,
 |language
 μὲν πρὸς τὸ Καρικὸν ἔθνος, ἣ οἱ Κᾶρες πρὸς τὸ
 Καννικόν τοῦτο γὰρ οὐκ ἔχω |precise, |separate, sort ἴμοισι
 |certain
 δὲ χρέωνται¹ |divide; distinguish, πολλὸν τῶν τε ἄλλων
 |pull down
 ἀνθρώπων καὶ Καρῶν. τοῖσι γὰρ κάλλιστον ἐστὶ κατ'
 |time of life, con- |φιλότητα |in crowds |υγγίνεσθαι ἐς |(m) husband, mas-
 |temporaries |ter; (f) a drink
 καὶ ἀνδράσι καὶ γυναιξὶ καὶ παισὶ. |establish δέ σφι
 ἱρῶν ξεινικῶν, |afterward, next σφι |decide , ἔδοξέ δὲ τοῖσι
 |against
 |of the father(s), ὄνον, χέασθαι θεοῖσι, |go into, put οὐ ὅπλα
 |ancestral
 ἅπαντες Καύνιοι |(adv) , |smite δόρασι τὸν ἡέρα,
 |grown up
 μέχρι οὖρων² τῶν Καλυνδικῶν εἵποντο, καὶ ἔφασαν
 ἐκβάλλειν τοὺς ξεινικοὺς θεούς.

1.173

καὶ οὗτοι μὲν τρόποισι τοιούτοις χρέωνται, οἱ δὲ Λύκιοι
 ἐκ Κρήτης |ancient, from γόνασι τὴν γὰρ Κρήτην εἶχον
 |the beginning

¹ they practice ² their borders

1.172

It seems to me however that the Caunians are dwellers there from the beginning, though they say themselves that they came from Crete: but they have been assimilated to the Carian race in language, or else the Carians to the Caunian race, I cannot with certainty determine which. They have customs however in which they differ very much from all other men as well as from the Carians; for example the fairest thing in their estimation is to meet together in numbers for drinking, according to equality of age or friendship, both men, women, and children; and again when they had founded temples for foreign deities, afterwards they changed their purpose and resolved to worship only their own native gods, and the whole body of Caunian young men put on their armour and made pursuit as far as the borders of the Calyndians, beating the air with their spears; and they said that they were casting the foreign gods out of the land. Such are the customs which these have.

1.173

The Lykians however have sprung originally from Crete (for in old time the whole of Crete was possessed by Barbarians): and when

*vocabulary***ἀπωθέω** repel, reject**ἐξελαύνω** drive out, exile ~elastic**ἐπικρατέω** rule over**ἐπωνύμιος** called, named**νέμω** to allot, to pasture ~nemesis**οὐδαμὸς** not anyone**οὐκί** intensified 'not'**περίοικος** dwelling around**στάσις** -εως (f) placing; faction**στασιώτης** -ου (m, f) partisan**συμφέρω** bring together; be expedient;
agree; (mp) happen ~bear

τὸ παλαιὸν πᾶσαν βάρβαροι· διενειχθέντων δὲ ἐν Κρήτῃ
περὶ τῆς βασιληΐης τῶν Εὐρώπης παίδων Σαρπηδόνο¹
τε καὶ Μίνω, ὡς ἐπεκράτησε τῇ στάσι Μίνως, ἐξήλασε
αὐτόν τε Σαρπηδόνα καὶ τοὺς στασιώτας αὐτοῦ, οἳ δὲ
ἀπωσθέντες ἀπίκοντο τῆς Ἀσίης ἐς γῆν τὴν Μιλυάδα· τὴν
γὰρ νῦν Λύκιοι νέμονται, αὕτη τὸ παλαιὸν ἦν Μιλυάς, οἳ
δὲ Μιλύαι τότε Σόλυμοι ἐκαλέοντο. ἔως² μὲν δὴ αὐτῶν
Σαρπηδὼν ἦρχε, οἳ δὲ ἐκαλέοντο τό πέρ τε ἡνείκαντο
οὔνομα καὶ νυν ἔτι καλέονται ὑπὸ τῶν περιοίκων οἳ
Λύκιοι Τερμίλαι· ὥς δὲ ἐξ Ἀθηνέων Λύκος ὁ Πανδίωνος,
ἐξελασθεὶς καὶ οὗτος ὑπὸ τοῦ ἀδελφεοῦ Αἰγέος, ἀπίκητο ἐς
τοὺς Τερμίλας παρὰ Σαρπηδόνα, οὕτω δὴ κατὰ τοῦ Λύκου
τὴν ἐπωνυμίην Λύκιοι ἀνὰ χρόνον ἐκλήθησαν. νόμοισι
δὲ τὰ μὲν Κρητικοῖσι τὰ δὲ Καρικοῖσι χρέωνται. ἐν δὲ
τόδε ἴδιον νενομίκασι καὶ οὐδαμοῖσι ἄλλοισι συμφέρονται
ἀνθρώπων· καλέουσι ἀπὸ τῶν μητέρων ἑωυτοὺς καὶ οὐκὶ
ἀπὸ τῶν πατέρων· εἰρομένου δὲ ἐτέρου τὸν πλησίον

¹ a Trojan character in the Iliad ² for as long as

τὸ παλαιὸν πᾶσαν βάρβαροι· διενειχθέντων δὲ ἐν Κρήτῃ
 περὶ τῆς βασιλείης τῶν Εὐρώπης παίδων Σαρπηδόνο¹
 τε καὶ Μίνω, ὥς |rule over τῇ |placing; Μίνως, |drive out
 |faction
 αὐτόν τε Σαρπηδόνα καὶ τοὺς |partisan αὐτοῦ, οἱ δὲ
 |repel, reject ἀπίκοντο τῆς Ἀσίας ἐς γῆν τὴν Μιλυάδα· τὴν
 γὰρ νῦν Λύκιοι |distribute , αὕτη τὸ παλαιὸν ἦν Μιλυάς, οἱ
 δὲ Μιλύαι τότε Σόλυμοι ἐκαλέοντο. ἕως² μὲν δὴ αὐτῶν
 Σαρπηδὼν ἦρχε, οἱ δὲ ἐκαλέοντο τό πέρ τε ἡνείκαντο
 οὔνομα καὶ νυν ἔτι καλέονται ὑπὸ τῶν |dwelling οἱ
 |around
 Λύκιοι Τερμίλαι· ὥς δὲ ἐξ Ἀθηνέων Λύκος ὁ Πανδίωνος,
 |drive out καὶ οὗτος ὑπὸ τοῦ ἀδελφεοῦ Αἰγέος, ἀπίκητο ἐς
 τοὺς Τερμίλας παρὰ Σαρπηδόνα, οὕτω δὴ κατὰ τοῦ Λύκου
 τὴν |called, Λύκιοι ἀνὰ χρόνον ἐκλήθησαν. νόμοισι
 |named
 δὲ τὰ μὲν Κρητικοῖσι τὰ δὲ Καρικοῖσι χρέωνται. ἐν δὲ
 τόδε ἴδιον νενομίκασι καὶ |not anyone ἄλλοισι |bring together; be expedi-
 |ent; agree; (mp) happen
 ἀνθρώπων· καλέουσι ἀπὸ τῶν μητέρων ἑωυτοὺς καὶ |intensified 'not'
 ἀπὸ τῶν πατέρων· εἰρομένου δὲ ἑτέρου τὸν πλησίον

¹ a Trojan character in the Iliad ² for as long as

the sons of Europa, Sarpedon and Minos, came to be at variance in Crete about the kingdom, Minos having got the better in the strife of parties drove out both Sarpedon himself and those of his party: and they having been expelled came to the land of Milyas in Asia, for the land which now the Lykians inhabit was anciently called Milyas, and the Milyans were then called Solymoi. Now while Sarpedon reigned over them, they were called by the name which they had when they came thither, and by which the Lykians are even now called by the neighbouring tribes, namely Termilai; but when from Athens Lycos the son of Pandion came to the land of the Termilai and to Sarpedon, he too having been driven out by his brother namely Aigeus, then by the name taken from Lycos they were called after a time Lykians. The customs which these have are partly Cretan and partly Carian; but one custom they have which is peculiar to them, and in which they agree with no other people, that is they call themselves by their mothers and not by their fathers; and if one asks

*vocabulary***ἀνανέμω** distribute; count**ἀποδείκνυμι** (ō) show, point out;
appoint; (mid) declare**ἀποδέχομαι** accept ~doctrine**ἀποέργω** exclude; divide; confine**ἄποικος** abroad, colonizing**ἀστή** inhabitant**ἀστός** townsman; citizen**ἀτιμάω** (i) dishonor**ἄτιμος** (i) without honor**βορέας** -οῦ (m, f) north, north wind**γενναῖος** noble, sincere ~genesis**δουλόω** enslave**Ἑλλήν** Greek**εὖς** good, brave, noble**θάλλω** bloom, flourish, abound

~thallium

καταλέγω relate in detail, choose;
enroll ~legion**καταστρέφω** overturn, subdue
~catastrophe**κόλπος** bosom, lap-fold; gulf**λαμπρός** brilliant ~lamp**μητρόθεν** from the mother**νότος** south, south wind**ὀρύσσω** dig**παλλακή** sex slave**περίρροος** surrounded by water;
flowing around**ῥόδον** rose**στάδιον** 200 meters (pl also masc)**στάδιος** (adj) standing upright, firm;
(pl noun) 200 meters**συνοικέω** live together**σφέτερος** their

τίς εἴη, καταλέξει ἐωυτὸν μητρόθεν καὶ τῆς μητρὸς ἀνανεμέεται τὰς μητέρας. καὶ ἦν μὲν γε γυνὴ ἀστὴ δούλῳ συνοικήσῃ, γενναῖα τὰ τέκνα νενόμισται· ἦν δὲ ἀνὴρ ἀστὸς καὶ ὁ πρῶτος αὐτῶν γυναικα ζείνῃν ἢ παλλακὴν ἔχῃ, ἄτιμα τὰ τέκνα γίνεται.

1.174

οἱ μὲν νυν Κᾶρες οὐδὲν λαμπρὸν ἔργον ἀποδεξάμενοι ἐδουλώθησαν ὑπὸ Ἀρπάγου, οὔτε αὐτοὶ οἱ Κᾶρες ἀποδεξάμενοι οὐδέν, οὔτε ὅσοι Ἑλλήνων ταύτην τὴν χώραν οἰκέουσι· οἰκέουσι δὲ καὶ ἄλλοι καὶ Λακεδαιμονίων ἄποικοι Κνίδιοι. οἱ τῆς χώρας τῆς σφετέρης τετραμμένης ἐς πόντον, τὸ δὴ Τριόπιον καλεῖται, ἀργμένης δὲ ἐκ τῆς Χερσονήσου τῆς Βυβασσίας, εἰούσης τε πάσης τῆς Κνιδίης πλὴν ὀλίγης περιρροῦ τὰ μὲν γὰρ αὐτῆς πρὸς βορρῆν ἄνεμον ὁ Κεραμεικὸς κόλπος ἀπέργει, τὰ δὲ πρὸς νότον ἢ κατὰ Σύμην τε καὶ Ῥόδον θάλασσα, τὸ ὦν δὴ ὀλίγον τοῦτο, ἐὼν ὅσον τε ἐπὶ πέντε στάδια, ὥρυsson οἱ Κνίδιοι ἐν ὅσῳ Ἀρπαγὸς τὴν Ἰωνίην κατεστρέφετο,

τίς εἴη, |relate in detail, choose;|from the mother τῆς μητρὸς
enroll

|distribute;
count τὰς μητέρας. καὶ ἦν μὲν γε γυνή |inhabitant
count

|live together, |noble, τὰ τέκνα νενόμισται· ἦν δὲ ἀνὴρ |townsman;
|sincere citizen

καὶ ὁ πρῶτος αὐτῶν γυναικα ξείνην ἢ |sex slave ἔχη,

ἄτιμα τὰ τέκνα γίνεται.

1.174

οἱ μὲν νυν Κᾶρες οὐδὲν |brilliant ἔργον ἀποδεξάμενοι

|enslave ὑπὸ Ἀρπάγου, οὔτε αὐτοὶ οἱ Κᾶρες

ἀποδεξάμενοι οὐδέν, οὔτε ὅσοι |Greek ταύτην τὴν

χώρην οἰκέουσι· οἰκέουσι δὲ καὶ ἄλλοι καὶ Λακεδαιμονίων

|abroad, Ἰνίδιοι. οἱ τῆς χώρας τῆς |their τετραμμένης
colonizing

εἰς πόντον, τὸ δὲ Τριόπιον καλέεται, ἀργμένης δὲ ἐκ τῆς

Χερσονήσου τῆς Βυβασσίας, εἰούσης τε πάσης τῆς Κνιδίης

πλὴν ὀλίγης |surrounded by wa- ' γὰρ αὐτῆς πρὸς |north,
|ter; flowing around north

ἄνεμον ὁ Κεραμεικὸς |bosom, |exclude; di- δὲ πρὸς |wind
|lap-fold; |vide; confine south,
|gulf |bloom, flour- ὃ δὲ ὀλίγον |wind
|rose |ish, abound

ἢ κατὰ Σύμην τε καὶ |dig οἱ Κνίδιοι

τοῦτο, ἐὼν ὅσον τε ἐπὶ πέντε στάδια, |dig οἱ Κνίδιοι

ἐν ὧ Ἄρπαγος τὴν Ἰωνίην |overturn,
|subdue

his neighbour who he is, he will state his parentage on the mother's side and enumerate his mother's female ascendants: and if a woman who is a citizen marry a slave, the children are accounted to be of gentle birth; but if a man who is a citizen, though he were the first man among them, have a slave for wife or concubine, the children are without civil rights.

1.174

Now the Carians were reduced to subjection by Harpagos without any brilliant deed displayed either by the Carians themselves or by those of the Hellenes who dwell in this land. Of these last there are besides others the men of Cnidos, settlers from Lacedemon, whose land runs out into the sea, being in fact the region which is called Triopion, beginning from the peninsula of Bybassos: and since all the land of Cnidos except a small part is washed by the sea (for the part of it which looks towards the North is bounded by the Gulf of Keramos, and that which looks to the South by the sea off Syme and Rhodes), therefore the men of Cnidos began to dig through this small part, which is about five furlongs across, while Harpagos was subduing Ionia, desiring to make their land an island:

*vocabulary***ἀμαχητί** without a fight**ἀντίξοος** opposed to**ἐντός** within**ἐπείρομαι** ask as well; ask then**ἡπειρος** (f) mainland, continent**θεοπρόπος** seer ~theology**θραύω** break, shatter**ἰσθμός** narrow neck**μεσόγαια** inland**ὄρυγμα** -τος (n, 3) trench, tunnel**ὀρύσσω** dig**πυργόω** wall, fortify**στρατός** common people/soldiers

~strategy

στρατόω be on a campaign ~strategy**τιτρώσκω** wound, bring to grief

~trauma

τόνος pitch, stretching**τρίμετρος** type of verse

βουλόμενοι νῆσον τὴν χώραν ποιῆσαι. ἐντὸς δὲ πᾶσά σφι ἐγένετο· τῇ γὰρ ἡ Κνιδίη χώρα ἐς τὴν ἥπειρον τελευτᾷ, ταύτῃ ὁ ἰσθμός ἐστι τὸν ὄρυσσον. καὶ δὴ πολλῇ, χειρὶ ἐργαζομένων τῶν Κνιδίων, μᾶλλον γάρ τι καὶ θειότερον ἐφαίνοντο τιτρώσκεσθαι οἱ ἐργαζόμενοι τοῦ οἰκότος τά τε ἄλλα τοῦ σώματος καὶ μάλιστα τὰ περὶ τοὺς ὀφθαλμοὺς θραυομένης τῆς πέτρης, ἔπεμπον ἐς Δελφοὺς θεοπρόπους ἐπειρησόμενους τὸ ἀντίξουν. ἡ δὲ Πυθίη σφι, ὡς αὐτοὶ Κνίδιοι λέγουσι, χρᾶ ἐν τριμέτρῳ τόνῳ τάδε.

«Ἴσθμὸν δὲ μὴ πυργοῦτε μηδ' ὀρύσσετε· Ζεὺς γάρ κ' ἔθηκε νῆσον, εἴ κ' ἐβούλετο.»

Κνίδιοι μὲν ταῦτα τῆς Πυθίης χρησάσης τοῦ τε ὀρύγματος ἐπαύσαντο καὶ Ἀρπάγῳ ἐπιόντι σὺν τῷ στρατῷ ἀμαχητὶ σφέας αὐτοὺς παρέδωσαν.

1.175

ἦσαν δὲ Πηδασέες οἰκέοντες ὑπὲρ Ἀλικαρνησοῦ μεσόγαιαν· τοῖσι ὅκως τι μέλλοι ἀνεπιτήδεον ἔσεσθαι,

βουλόμενοι νῆσον τὴν χώραν ποιῆσαι. |within δὲ πᾶσά σφι
 ἐγίνετο· τῇ γὰρ ἡ Κνιδίη χώρα ἐς τὴν |mainland, ἑλευτᾶ,
 |continent
 ταύτῃ ὁ |narrow neck . τὸν |dig . καὶ δὴ πολλῇ, χειρὶ
 ἐργαζομένων τῶν Κνιδίων, μᾶλλον γάρ τι καὶ θειότερον
 ἐφαίνοντο |wound, bring to οἱ ἐργαζόμενοι τοῦ οἰκότος τά τε
 |grief
 ἄλλα τοῦ σώματος καὶ |very τὰ περὶ τοὺς ὀφθαλμοὺς
 |break, shatter τῆς πέτρης, ἔπεμπον ἐς Δελφοὺς |seer
 ἐπειρησομένους τὸ |opposed to ἡ δὲ Πυθίη σφι, ὥς αὐτοὶ
 Κνίδιοι λέγουσι, χρᾶ ἐν |type of |pitch, ἔει.
 |verse |stretching
 «|narrow neck, ἡ |wall, μηδ' |dig Ζεὺς γάρ κ' ἔθηκε
 |fortify
 νῆσον, εἴ κ' ἐβούλετο.»

Κνίδιοι μὲν ταῦτα τῆς Πυθίης χρησάσης τοῦ τε |trench,
 |tunnel
 ἐπαύσαντο καὶ Ἀρπάγῳ ἐπιόντι σὺν τῷ στρατῷ |without a fight
 σφέας αὐτοὺς παρέδοσαν.

1.175

ἦσαν δὲ Πηδασέες οἰκέοντες ὑπὲρ Ἀλικαρνησοῦ
 μεσόγαιαν· τοῖσι ὅκως τι μέλλοι ἀνεπιτήδεον ἔσεσθαι,

and within the isthmus all was theirs, for where the territory of Cnidos ends in the direction of the mainland, here is the isthmus which they were digging across. And while the Cnidians were working at it with a great number of men, it was perceived that the men who worked suffered injury much more than might have been expected and in a more supernatural manner, both in other parts of their bodies and especially in their eyes, when the rock was being broken up; so they sent men to ask the Oracle at Delphi what the cause of the difficulty was. And the Pythian prophetess, as the men of Cnidos themselves report, gave them this reply in trimeter verse:—

“Fence not the place with towers, nor dig the isthmus through; Zeus would have made your land an island, had he willed.”

When the Pythian prophetess had given this oracle, the men of Cnidos not only ceased from their digging but delivered themselves to Harpagos without resistance, when he came against them with his army.

1.175

There were also the Pedasians, who dwelt in the inland country above Halicarnassos; and among these, whenever anything hurtful is

vocabulary

ἀκρόπολις -εως (f) citadel, high part of a city ~acute
ἀντέχω hold up as protection against ~ischemia
ἐκδημέω be abroad
ἐξαίρέω pick, steal; dedicate; destroy ~heresy
ἐπέξειμι attack, prosecute
ἐπεξέρχομαι sally
ἐπηλυσ strange, foreign
ἐστία hearth ~Hestia
ἡσάομαι (pass) be weaker, be overcome; (active) defeat
ἱρεΐη priestess
ἰστίον sail ~stand
ἴσχω restrain, hold back ~ischemia

κατειλέω coop up
ὀγδώκοντα eighty
οἰκέτης -ου (m, 1) household; house slave
περιγίγνομαι surpass; survive; attain ~genus
περίοικος dwelling around
πώγων -ος (m, 3) beard
στρατός common people/soldiers ~strategy
συναλίζω collect; eat with
συνόμνυμι (υῦ) join in league
τειχίζω build
τηνικαῦτα at that time, in that case
τρίς 3 times
ὑφάπτω set on fire from underneath

αὐτοῖσί τε καὶ τοῖσι περιοίκοισι, ἡ ἱρεΐη τῆς Ἀθηναίης
 πώγωνα μέγαν ἴσχε. τρίς σφι τοῦτο ἐγένετο. οὗτοι τῶν
 περὶ Καρίην ἀνδρῶν μούνοί τε ἀντέσχον χρόνον Ἀρπάγω
 καὶ πρήγματα παρέσχον πλείστα, ὅρος τειχίσαντες τῷ
 οὔνομα ἐστὶ Λίδη.

1.176

Πηδασέες μὲν νυν χρόνῳ ἐξαιρέθησαν. Λύκιοι δέ, ὥς
 ἐς τὸ Ξάνθιον πεδῖον ἤλασε ὁ Ἄρπαγος τὸν στρατόν,
 ἐπεξιόντες καὶ μαχόμενοι ὀλίγοι πρὸς πολλοὺς ἀρετᾶς
 ἀπεδείκνυντο, ἐσσωθέντες δὲ καὶ κατειληθέντες ἐς τὸ ἄστυ
 συνήλυσαν ἐς τὴν ἀκρόπολιν τὰς τε γυναῖκας καὶ τὰ τέκνα
 καὶ τὰ χρήματα καὶ τοὺς οἰκέτας, καὶ ἔπειτα ὑπῆψαν τὴν
 ἀκρόπολιν πᾶσαν ταύτην καίεσθαι. ταῦτα δὲ ποιήσαντες
 καὶ συνομόσαντες ὅρκους δεινούς, ἐπεξελθόντες ἀπέθανον
 πάντες Ξάνθιοι μαχόμενοι. τῶν δὲ νῦν Λυκίων φαμένων
 Ξανθίων εἶναι οἱ πολλοί, πλὴν ὀγδῶκοντα ἰστιέων, εἰσὶ
 ἐπήλυδες· αἱ δὲ ὀγδῶκοντα ἰστίαι αὗται ἔτυχον τηνικαῦτα
 ἐκδημέουσι καὶ οὕτω περιεγέροντο. τὴν μὲν δὴ Ξάνθον

αὐτοῖσί τε καὶ τοῖσι |dwelling
|around , ἡ |priestess Ἰσθμιαίης
|beard μέγαν |hold |3 |φι τοῦτο ἐγένετο. οὗτοι τῶν
|back |times
περὶ Καρίην ἀνδρῶν μῦθοί τε |hold up as pro-
|tection against ἄγον Ἀρπάγων
καὶ πρήγματα παρέσχον πλείστα, ὅρος |build τῷ
οὔνομα ἐστὶ Λίδη.

1.176

Πηδασέες μὲν νῦν χρόνῳ |pick, steal; dedi- Λύκιοι δέ, ὡς
|cate; destroy
ἐς τὸ Ξάνθιον πεδῖον ἤλασε ὁ Ἄρπαγος τὸν |army ,
|attack, καὶ μαχόμενοι ὀλίγοι πρὸς πολλοὺς ἀρετᾶς
|prosecute
ἀπεδείκνυντο, |(pass) be weaker, be over- |ληθέντες ἐς τὸ ἄστυ
|come; (active) defeat
|collect; eat with ` , |citadel τὰς τε γυναῖκας καὶ τὰ τέκνα
καὶ τὰ χρήματα καὶ τοὺς |household; |ἐπειτα |set on fire from
|house slave |underneath
|citadel πᾶσαν ταύτην καίεσθαι. ταῦτα δὲ ποιήσαντες
καὶ |join in league ὄρκους δεινούς, |sally ἀπέθανον
πάντες Ξάνθιοι μαχόμενοι. τῶν δὲ νῦν Λυκίων φαμένων
Ξανθίων εἶναι οἱ πολλοί, πλὴν |eighty ἰστιέων, εἰς
|strange, αἱ δὲ |eighty |hearth αὐται ἔτυχον |at that time,
|foreign |in that case
|be abroad καὶ οὕτω |surpass; sur- τὴν μὲν δὴ Ξάνθον
|vive; attain

about to happen either to themselves or to their neighbours, the priestess of Athene has a great beard: this befell them three times. These of all about Caria were the only men who held out for any time against Harpagos, and they gave him trouble more than any other people, having fortified a mountain called Lide.

1.176

After a time the Pedasians were conquered; and the Lykians, when Harpagos marched his army into the plain of Xanthos, came out against him and fought, few against many, and displayed proofs of valour; but being defeated and confined within their city, they gathered together into the citadel their wives and their children, their property and their servants, and after that they set fire to this citadel, so that it was all in flames, and having done so and sworn terrible oaths with one another, they went forth against the enemy and were slain in fight, that is to say all the men of Xanthos: and of the Xanthians who now claim to be Lykians the greater number have come in from abroad, except only eighty households; but these eighty households happened at that time to be away from their

*vocabulary***ἀνάστατος** driven out, ruined**ἀναστατόω** unsettle, upset**ἄνω** (ἄ) accomplish, pass, waste;
upwards, out to sea**ἄξιαπήγητος** worth telling**βασίλειος** kingly**ἐπιμιμνήσκομαι** remember, speak
about ~mnemonic**ἡπειρος** (f) mainland, continent**καταστρέφω** overturn, subdue

~catastrophe

κῦρος -εος (n, 3) authority; validity**μέγαθος** tall, big (person)**μιμέομαι** (ι) imitate, represent**ὀνομαστός** named ~name**παραπλήσιος** similar to**παρίημι** dangle; pass over, allow ~jet**πόλισμα** buildings of a city**προσδοκάω** expect**ὕποχείριος** under one's hand ~chiral

οὕτω ἔσχε ὁ Ἄρπαγος, παραπλησίως δὲ καὶ τὴν Καῦνον ἔσχε· καὶ γὰρ οἱ Καύνιοι τοὺς Λυκίους ἐμμήσαντο¹ τὰ πλέω.

1.177

τὰ μὲν νυν κάτω τῆς Ἀσίας Ἄρπαγος ἀνάστατα ἐποίεε, τὰ δὲ ἄνω αὐτῆς αὐτὸς Κῦρος, πᾶν ἔθνος καταστρεφόμενος καὶ οὐδὲν παριείς. τὰ μὲν νυν αὐτῶν πλέω παρήσομεν· τὰ δὲ οἱ παρέσχε τε πόνον² πλείστον καὶ ἀξιαπηγητότατα ἐστί, τούτων ἐπιμνήσομαι.

1.178

Κῦρος ἐπέιτε τὰ πάντα τῆς ἡπείρου ὑποχέρια ἐποιήσατο, Ἀσσυρίοισι ἐπετίθετο. τῆς δὲ Ἀσσυρίας ἐστὶ μὲν κου καὶ ἄλλα πολίσματα μεγάλα πολλά, τὸ δὲ ὀνομαστότατον καὶ ἰσχυρότατον καὶ ἔνθα σφι Νίνου ἀναστάτου γενομένης τὰ βασιλῆα κατεστήκεε, ἣν Βαβυλῶν, ἐοῦσα τοιαύτη δὴ τις πόλις. κέεται ἐν πεδίῳ μεγάλῳ, μέγαθος ἐοῦσα

¹ like them, suicidally ² for Cyrus

οὕτω ἔσχε ὁ Ἄρπαγος, |similar to δὲ καὶ τὴν Καῦνον
 ἔσχε· καὶ γὰρ οἱ Καύνιοι τοὺς Λυκίους |imitate, ¹ τὰ
 |represent
 πλέω.

1.177

τὰ μὲν νυν κάτω τῆς Ἀσίας Ἄρπαγος |driven out, ruined ..., τὰ
 δὲ ἄνω αὐτῆς αὐτὸς |authority; ἦν ἔθνος |overturn, subdue
 |validity
 καὶ οὐδὲν |dangle; pass ἔμιν νυν αὐτῶν πλέω παρήσομεν·
 |over, allow
 τὰ δὲ οἱ παρέσχε τε πόνον² πλεῖστον καὶ |worth telling
 ἐστὶ, τούτων ἐπιμνήσομαι.

1.178

Κῦρος ἐπέιπε τὰ πάντα τῆς |mainland, |under one's hand, ἵστατο,
 |continent
 Ἀσσυρίοισι ἐπετίθετο. τῆς δὲ Ἀσσυρίας ἐστὶ μὲν κου καὶ
 ἄλλα |buildings of a city ἔλα πολλά, τὸ δὲ |named καὶ
 ἰσχυρότατον καὶ ἔνθα σφι Νίνου ἀναστάτου γενομένης τὰ
 |kingly κατεστήκεε, ἦν Βαβυλών, ἐοῦσα τοιαύτη δὴ τις
 πόλις. κέεται ἐν πεδίῳ μεγάλῳ, |tall, big ἐοῦσα

¹ like them, suicidally ² for Cyrus

native place, and so they escaped destruction. Thus Harpagos obtained possession of Caunos, for the men of Caunos imitated in most respects the behaviour of the Lykians.

1.177

So Harpagos was conquering the coast regions of Asia; and Cyrus himself meanwhile was doing the same in the upper parts of it, subduing every nation and passing over none. Now most of these actions I shall pass over in silence, but the undertakings which gave him trouble more than the rest and which are the most worthy of note, of these I shall make mention.

1.178

Cyrus, so soon as he had made subject to himself all other parts of the mainland, proceeded to attack the Assyrians. Now Assyria has doubtless many other great cities, but the most famous and the strongest, and the place where the seat of their monarchy had been established after Nineveh was destroyed, was Babylon; which was a city such as I shall say.— It lies in a great plain, and in size it is such that

vocabulary

ἀναισιμῶ spend, use up
 ἄσφαλτος (f) asphalt, bitumen
 βαθύς high, deep ~bathysphere
 βασιλῆιος kingly
 βασιλῆις kingly
 δάκτυλος finger, toe
 δέμω build ~domicile
 διακόσιοι (ᾱ) two hundred
 διαστοιβάζω stuff between
 ἐκφέρω carry off ~bear
 εὖρος -εος (n, 3) width; (caps) the east
 wind
 θερμός warm, hot ~thermos
 κάλαμος reed
 κάμινος (ῖ, f) oven, furnace
 κοσμέω marshal, array ~cosmos
 μέγαθος tall, big (person)
 μέτριος medium, moderate
 μέτωπον forehead, front
 μίν him, her, it
 ὀγδῶκοντα eighty
 ὀπτάω roast, bake

ὄρυγμα -τος (n, 3) trench, tunnel
 ὀρύσσω dig
 πελάζω bring/come to, near, into
 contact with
 περιθέω run around
 περίοδος picket, circuit
 πῆχυς forearm, cubit
 πλινθεύω make into bricks
 πλίνθος (f) brick, block
 πόλισμα buildings of a city
 σταδίη (adj) standing upright, firm; (pl
 noun) 200 meters
 στάδιον 200 meters (pl also masc)
 στάδιος (adj) standing upright, firm;
 (pl noun) 200 meters
 συνάπας (ᾱ) all together
 ταρσός basket?; top of the foot?
 ~metatarsal
 τάφος (f) ditch, trench ~epitaph
 τέλμα pond, swamp; mud for mortar
 τετράγωνος square
 τετρακόσιοι 400
 ὕψος ὕψους (n, 3) height, summit

μέτωπον ἕκαστον εἴκοσι καὶ ἑκατὸν σταδίων, εὐούσης τετραγώνου· οὗτοι στάδιοι τῆς περιόδου τῆς πόλιος γίνονται συνάπαντες ὀγδώκοντα καὶ τετρακόσιοι, τὸ μέν νυν μέγαθος τοσοῦτον ἐστὶ τοῦ ἄστεος τοῦ Βαβυλωνίου, ἐκεκόσμητο δὲ ὥς οὐδὲν ἄλλο πόλισμα τῶν ἡμεῖς ἴδμεν. τάφος μὲν πρῶτά μιν βαθέα τε καὶ εὐρέα καὶ πλέη ὕδατος περιθέει, μετὰ δὲ τείχος πεντήκοντα μὲν πηχέων βασιληίων ἐὼν τὸ εὖρος, ὕψος δὲ διηκοσίων πηχέων· ὁ δὲ βασιλῆιος πῆχυς τοῦ μετρίου ἐστὶ πήχεος μέζων τρισὶ δακτύλοισι.

1.179

δεῖ δὴ με πρὸς τούτοισι ἔτι φράσαι ἵνα τε ἐκ τῆς τάφρου ἡ γῆ ἀναισιμώθη, καὶ τὸ τείχος ὄντινα τρόπον ἔργαστο. ὀρύσσοντες ἅμα τὴν τάφρον ἐπλίνθουν τὴν γῆν τὴν ἐκ τοῦ ὀρύγματος ἐκφερομένην, ἐλκύσαντες δὲ πλίνθους ἱκανὰς ὥπτησαν αὐτὰς ἐν καμίνιοις· μετὰ δὲ τέλματι χρεώμενοι ἀσφάλτῳ θερμῇ καὶ διὰ τριήκοντα δόμων πλίνθου ταρσοὺς καλάμων διαστοιβάζοντες, ἔδειμαν

μέτωπον ἕκαστον εἴκοσι καὶ ἑκατὸν σταδίων, εὐούσης

|square οὔτοι στάδιοι τῆς |picket, τῆς πόλιος
|circuit

γίνονται συνάπαντες |eighty καὶ |400 , τὸ μὲν

νυν μέγαθος τοσοῦτον ἐστὶ τοῦ ἄστεος τοῦ Βαβυλωνίου,

ἐκεκόσμητο δὲ ὥς οὐδὲν ἄλλο |buildings of a city,, εἰς ἴδμεν.

τάφρος μὲν πρῶτά μιν βαθέα τε καὶ εὐρέα καὶ πλήη

ὑδατος |run around, ἐτὰ δὲ τείχος πεντήκοντα μὲν |forearm,
|cubit

|kingly ἐὼν τὸ |width; |height, ὁ δὲ διηκοσίων |forearm, ὁ
(caps) summit |cubit

δὲ |kingly |forearm, |wind ἐστὶ |forearm, μέζων τρισὶ
|cubit |cubit

|finger, toe

1.179

δεῖ δὴ με πρὸς τούτοισι ἔτι φράσαι ἵνα τε ἐκ τῆς τάφρου

ἡ γῇ |spend, use up, καὶ τὸ τείχος ὄντινα τρόπον ἔργαστο.

ὀρύσσοντες ἅμα τὴν τάφρον |make into bricks, γῆν τὴν

ἐκ τοῦ |trench, ἐκφερομένην, ἐλκύσαντες δὲ |brick,
|tunnel |block

ικανὰς |roast, bake αὐτὰς ἐν |oven, μετὰ δὲ |pond, swamp; mud
|furnace |for mortar

χρεώμενοι |asphalt, |warm, hot ἰ διὰ τριήκοντα δόμων
|bitumen

πλίνθου |basket?; |reed |stuff between , |build
|top of the
|foot?

each face measures one hundred and twenty furlongs, the shape of the whole being square; thus the furlongs of the circuit of the city amount in all to four hundred and eighty. Such is the size of the city of Babylon, and it had a magnificence greater than all other cities of which we have knowledge. First there runs round it a trench deep and broad and full of water; then a wall fifty royal cubits in thickness and two hundred cubits in height: now the royal cubit is larger by three fingers than the common cubit.

1.179

I must also tell in addition to this for what purpose the earth was used, which was taken out of the trench, and in what manner the wall was made. As they dug the trench they made the earth which was carried out of the excavation into bricks, and having moulded enough bricks they baked them in kilns; and then afterwards, using hot asphalt for mortar and inserting reed mats at every thirty courses of brickwork, they built up

*vocabulary***ἀναδίδωμι** yield; give out**ἀπέχω** ward off, drive off, refrain, be at some distance**ἄσφαλτος** (f) asphalt, bitumen**δέμω** build ~domicile**διέργω** keep apart**εἰσβάλλω** throw into ~ballistic**ἐνθεν** thence, whence**ἐνίστημι** install; threaten; block**ἐντίθημι** load; mp: take to heart
~thesis**ἐσχατάω** be at the edge**ἔσχατος** farthest, last**εὖς** good, brave, noble**θρόμβος** lump, drop, nipple**ἴς ἰνός** (ī, f) force, muscle**οἶκημα** -τος (n, 3) room**ὀκτώ** eight ~octopus**ὄον** οὖ type of fruit**περιέλασις** driving about; road**πέριξ** all around**ῥεῖθρον** stream ~rheostat**ῥέω** flow ~rheostat**σταθμός** cottage; post**τάφος** (m) funeral, grave; (n)
astonishment**τέθηπα** be confused**τέθριππος** four-horse**τειχίζω** build**τοιόσδε** such**φάρσος** -εος (n, 3) portion**χεῖλος** -εος (n, 3) lip**ὡσαύτως** in the same way

πρῶτα μὲν τῆς τάφου τὰ χεῖλεα, δευτέρα δὲ αὐτὸ τὸ
τείχος τὸν αὐτὸν τρόπον. ἐπάνω δὲ τοῦ τείχεος παρὰ
τὰ ἔσχατα οἰκήματα μουνόκωλα ἔδειμαν, τετραμμένα ἐς
ἄλληλα· τὸ μέσον δὲ τῶν οἰκημάτων ἔλιπον¹ τεθρίππω
περιέλασιν. πύλαι δὲ ἐνεστᾶσι περίξ τοῦ τείχεος ἑκατόν,
χάλκεαι πᾶσαι, καὶ σταθμοὶ τε καὶ ὑπέρθυρα ὡσαύτως.

ἔστι δὲ ἄλλη πόλις ἀπέχουσα ὀκτὼ ἡμερέων ὁδὸν ἀπὸ
Βαβυλῶνος· Ἦς οὖνομα αὐτῇ. ἔνθα ἐστὶ ποταμὸς οὐ
μέγας· Ἦς καὶ τῷ ποταμῷ τὸ οὖνομα· ἐσβάλλει δὲ οὗτος
ἐς τὸν Εὐφρῆτην ποταμὸν τὸ ῥέεθρον. οὗτος ὦν ὁ Ἦς
ποταμὸς ἅμα τῷ, ὕδατι θρόμβους ἀσφάλτου ἀναδιδοῖ
πολλούς, ἔνθεν ἢ ἄσφαλτος ἐς τὸ ἐν Βαβυλῶνι τείχος
ἐκομίσθη.

1.180

ἐτετείχιστο μὲν νυν ἡ Βαβυλὼν τρόπῳ τοιῷδε, ἔστι δὲ δύο
φάρσεια τῆς πόλιος. τὸ γὰρ μέσον αὐτῆς ποταμὸς διέργει,
τῷ οὖνομα ἐστὶ Εὐφρῆτης· ῥέει δὲ ἐξ Ἀρμενίων,

¹ enough space

πρῶτα μὲν τῆς τάφου τὰ |lip , δευτέρα δὲ αὐτὸ τὸ
 τεῖχος τὸν αὐτὸν τρόπον. ἐπάνω δὲ τοῦ τείχεος παρὰ
 τὰ ἔσχατα |room μουνόκωλα |build , τετραμμένα ἐς
 ἄλληλα· τὸ μέσον δὲ τῶν |room ἔλιπον¹ |four-horse
 |driving πύλαι δὲ |install; |all around⁶ τείχεος ἑκατόν,
 |about; road threaten;
 χάλκεαι πᾶσαι, καὶ |block
 |cottage; post καὶ ὑπέρθυρα |in the same way
 ἔστι δὲ ἄλλη πόλις |ward off, |eight ἡμερέων ὁδὸν ἀπὸ
 |drive off,
 Βαβυλῶνος· Ἦς οὐνομα αὐτῆς |refrain, be
 |at some ἔνθα ἐστὶ ποταμὸς οὐ
 |distance
 μέγας· Ἦς καὶ τῷ ποταμῷ τὸ οὐνομα· ἐσβάλλει δὲ οὗτος
 ἐς τὸν Εὐφρήτην ποταμὸν τὸ |stream οὗτος ὦν ὁ Ἦς
 ποταμὸς ἅμα τῷ, ὕδατι |lump, drop, nipple⁷ του |yield; give out
 πολλούς, ἔνθεν ἡ |asphalt, ἐς τὸ ἐν Βαβυλῶνι τεῖχος
 |bitumen
 ἐκομίσθη.

1.180

|build μὲν νυν ἡ Βαβυλὼν τρόπῳ |such , ἔστι δὲ δύο
 |portion τῆς πόλιος. τὸ γὰρ μέσον αὐτῆς ποταμὸς διέργει,
 τῷ οὐνομα ἐστὶ Εὐφρήτης· ῥέει δὲ ἐξ Ἀρμενίων,

¹ enough space

first the edges of the trench and then the wall itself in the same manner: and at the top of the wall along the edges they built chambers of one story facing one another; and between the rows of chambers they left space to drive a four-horse chariot. In the circuit of the wall there are set a hundred gates made of bronze throughout, and the gate-posts and lintels likewise.

Now there is another city distant from Babylon a space of eight days' journey, of which the name is Is; and there is a river there of no great size, and the name of the river is also Is, and it sends its stream into the river Euphrates. This river Is throws up together with its water lumps of asphalt in great abundance, and thence was brought the asphalt for the wall of Babylon.

1.180

Babylon then was walled in this manner; and there are two divisions of the city; for a river whose name is Euphrates parts it in the middle. This flows from the

*vocabulary***ἀγκών** -ος (m, 3) elbow

~ankylosaurus

αἰμασιά wall of dry stones?**ἀριθμός** number**ἀσθενής** weak**βαθύς** high, deep ~bathysphere**βασιλείος** kingly**ἐξίημι** send forth, allow forth ~jet**ἐπικαμπή** bend; corner; a military tactic**ἐπικάρσιος** running headlong**εὖς** good, brave, noble**θώραξ** -ηκος (m) breastplate ~thorax**κατατέμνω** cut up**λαύρα** alley**ὄον** οὖ type of fruit**πάντη** everywhere**παρατείνω** extend, lengthen, torture**περίβολος** enclosing**περιθέω** run around**πλήρης** full, complete; (+gen) full of ~plethora**πλίνθος** (f) brick, block**πυλῖς** little gate, back door**σταδίη** (adj) standing upright, firm; (pl noun) 200 meters**στάδιον** 200 meters (pl also masc)**στάδιος** (adj) standing upright, firm; (pl noun) 200 meters**τειχίζω** build**τετρώροφος** four stories tall**τριώροφος** 3 stories in height**φάρσος** -εος (n, 3) portion**χαλκόπυλος** with bronze gates**χείλος** -εος (n, 3) lip

ἔων μέγας καὶ βαθὺς καὶ ταχύς· ἐξίει δὲ οὗτος ἐς τὴν Ἐρυθρὴν θάλασσαν. τὸ ὦν δὴ τείχος ἐκάτερον τοὺς ἀγκῶνας ἐς τὸν ποταμὸν ἐλήλαται· τὸ δὲ ἀπὸ τούτου αἱ ἐπικαμπαὶ παρὰ χεῖλος ἐκάτερον τοῦ ποταμοῦ αἵμασιῇ πλίνθων ὀπτέων παρατείνει. τὸ δὲ ἄστρῳ αὐτό, ἐὼν πλήρες οἰκίεων τριωρόφων καὶ τετρωρόφων, κατατέτμηται τὰς ὁδοὺς ἰθάες τὰς τε ἄλλας καὶ τὰς ἐπικαρσίας τὰς ἐπὶ τὸν ποταμὸν ἐχούσας. κατὰ δὴ ὦν ἐκάστην ὁδὸν ἐν τῇ αἵμασιῇ τῇ παρὰ τὸν ποταμὸν πυλίδες ἐπῆσαν, ὅσαι περ αἱ λαῦραι, τοσαῦται ἀριθμόν· ἦσαν δὲ καὶ αὗται χάλκεαι... φέρουσαι καὶ αὐταὶ ἐς αὐτὸν τὸν ποταμόν.

1.181

τοῦτο μὲν δὴ τὸ τείχος θώρηξ ἐστί, ἕτερον δὲ ἔσωθεν τείχος περιθέει, οὐ πολλῷ τεω ἀσθενέστερον τοῦ ἑτέρου τείχεος, στεινότερον δέ. ἐν δὲ φάρσει ἐκατέρω τῆς πόλιος ἐτετείχιστο ἐν μέσῳ ἐν τῷ μὲν τὰ βασιλῆα περιβόλῳ μεγάλῳ τε καὶ ἰσχυρῷ, ἐν δὲ τῷ ἑτέρῳ Διὸς Βήλου ἱρὸν χαλκόπυλον, καὶ ἐς ἐμὲ ἔτι τοῦτο ἑὸν, δύο σταδίων πάντη,

ἔων μέγας καὶ |high, deep... ταχύς· |send forth, ἵπτος ἐς τὴν
|allow forth

Ἐρυθρὴν θάλασσαν. τὸ ὦν δὴ τείχος ἐκάτερον τοὺς

|elbow ἐς τὸν ποταμὸν ἐλήλαται· τὸ δὲ ἀπὸ τούτου αἱ

|bend; corner; a mili-lip ἐκάτερον τοῦ ποταμοῦ |wall of dry stones?
|tary tactic

πλίνθων ὀπτέων |extend, lengthen, δὲ ἄστῳ αὐτό, ἐὼν |full, complete;
|torture |(+gen) full of

οἰκίῳν |3 stories in height |four stories tall, κατατέμνεται τὰς

ὁδοὺς ἰθείας τὰς τε ἄλλας καὶ τὰς |running τὰς ἐπὶ τὸν
|headlong

ποταμὸν ἐχούσας. κατὰ δὴ ὦν ἐκάστην ὁδὸν ἐν τῇ |wall of dry stones?

τῇ παρὰ τὸν ποταμὸν |little gate, τῇσαν, ὅσαι περ αἱ |alley
|back door

τοσαῦται |number ἦσαν δὲ καὶ αὗται χάλκεαι... φέρουσιν

καὶ αὗται ἐς αὐτὸν τὸν ποταμόν.

1.181

τοῦτο μὲν δὴ τὸ τείχος |breastplate γί, ἕτερον δὲ ἔσθθεν

τείχος |run around ὃ πολλῶ τεω |weak τοῦ ἑτέρου

τείχεος, στεινότερον δέ. ἐν δὲ |portion ἐκατέρω τῆς πόλιος

|build ἐν μέσῳ ἐν τῷ μὲν τὰ |kingly |enclosing

μεγάλῳ τε καὶ ἰσχυρῷ, ἐν δὲ τῷ ἑτέρῳ Διὸς Βήλου ἱρὸν

|with bronze gates... ἐς ἐμὲ ἔτι τοῦτο ἑόν, δύο σταδίων |everywhere

land of the Armenians and is large and deep and swift, and it flows out into the Erythraian sea. The wall then on each side has its bends carried down to the river, and from this point the walls stretch along each bank of the stream in the form of a rampart of baked bricks: and the city itself is full of houses of three and four stories, and the roads by which it is cut up run in straight lines, including the cross roads which lead to the river; and opposite to each road there were set gates in the rampart which ran along the river, in many in number as the ways, and these also were of bronze and led like the ways to the river itself.

1.181

This wall then which I have mentioned is as it were a cuirass for the town, and another wall runs round within it, not much weaker for defence than the first but enclosing a smaller space. And in each division of the city was a building in the midst, in the one the king's palace of great extent and strongly fortified round, and in the other the temple of Zeus Belos with bronze gates, and this exists still up to my time and measures two furlongs each way, being of a

vocabulary

ἄγαλμα -τος (n, 3) ornament, glory,
 statue
ἀνάβασις -τος (f) going up, mounting,
 going inland
αὐτόθι on the spot
ἐναυλίζω live, stay at
ἐνιμι be in ~ion
ἐνιδρύω establish
ἐξωθεν from outside
ἐπιχώριος native
εὐρος -εος (n, 3) width; (caps) the east
 wind
θᾶκος seat, session of assembly
ἱρεὺς ἱερεὺς (i, m) priest ~hieroglyph
καταγωγὴ landing, stop
κλίνη (i) bed, couch ~clinic

κλίνω (i) lean, recline ~incline
κύκλος circle, wheel ~cycle
μεσώω be in the middle
μῆκος -ους (n, 3) length, stature
νηός temple, shrine
ὀκτώ eight ~octopus
παράκειμαι be at hand, ready
πύργος ramparts, tower; line of troops
στάδιον 200 meters (pl also masc)
στάδιος (adj) standing upright, firm;
 (pl noun) 200 meters
στερεός solid, firm ~stereo
στόρνυμι (i) smooth out
τελευταῖος last, final
τετράγωνος square
φοιτάω go back and forth

ἐὼν τετράγωνον. ἐν μέσῳ δὲ τοῦ ἱεροῦ πύργος στερεὸς οἰκοδόμηται, σταδίου καὶ τὸ μῆκος καὶ τὸ εὖρος, καὶ ἐπὶ τούτῳ τῷ πύργῳ ἄλλος πύργος ἐπιβέβηκε, καὶ ἕτερος μάλα ἐπὶ τούτῳ, μέχρι οὗ ὀκτὼ πύργων. ἀνάβασις δὲ ἐς αὐτοὺς ἔξωθεν κύκλῳ περὶ πάντας τοὺς πύργους ἔχουσα πεποιήται. μεσοῦντι δέ κου τῆς ἀναβάσιος ἐστὶ καταγωγὴ τε καὶ θῶκοι ἀμπαυστήριοι, ἐν τοῖσι κατίζοντες ἀμπαύονται οἱ ἀναβαίνοντες. ἐν δὲ τῷ τελευταίῳ πύργῳ νηὸς ἔπεστι μέγας· ἐν δὲ τῷ νηῷ κλίνη μεγάλη κέεται εὖ ἐστρωμένη, καὶ οἱ τράπεζα παρακέεται χρυσή. ἄγαλμα δὲ οὐκ ἔστι οὐδὲν αὐτόθι ἐνιδρυμένον, οὐδὲ νύκτα οὐδεὶς ἐναυλίζεται ἀνθρώπων ὅτι μὴ γυνὴ μούνη τῶν ἐπιχωρίων, τὴν ἂν ὁ θεὸς ἔληται ἐκ πασέων, ὥς λέγουσι οἱ Χαλδαῖοι ἐόντες ἱερεῖς τούτου τοῦ θεοῦ.

1.182

φασὶ δὲ οἱ αὐτοὶ οὗτοι, ἐμοὶ μὲν οὐ πιστὰ λέγοντες, τὸν θεὸν αὐτὸν φοιτᾶν τε ἐς τὸν νηὸν καὶ ἀμπαύεσθαι ἐπὶ τῆς κλίνης, κατὰ περ ἐν Θήβησι τῇσι Αἰγυπτίησι κατὰ τὸν

ἔδω |square *ἐν μέσῳ δὲ τοῦ ἱροῦ* |wall,
|tower
οἰκοδομήται, σταδίου καὶ τὸ |length, καὶ τὸ |width; (caps)·τὴ
|stature |the east wind
τούτω τῷ |wall, ἄλλος |wall, ἐπιβέβηκε, καὶ ἕτερος
|tower |tower
μάλα ἐπὶ τούτῳ, μέχρι οὗ |eight |wall,
|tower |going up, mounting,
|going inland
δὲ εἰς αὐτοὺς |from |circle, *περὶ πάντας τοὺς* |wall,
|outside |wheel |tower
ἔχουσα πεποιήται. |be in the middle) τῆς |going up, mount-
|ing, going inland
καταγωγῇ τε καὶ |seat, ἱμναυστήριοι, ἐν τοῖσι κατίζοντες
|session
ἀμπαύονται οἱ ἀναβαίνοντες. ἐν δὲ τῷ |last, final |wall,
|tower
νηὸς ἔπεστι μέγας· ἐν δὲ τῷ νηῷ κλίνη μεγάλη κέεται εὖ
|smooth out , καὶ οἱ τράπεζα |be at hand, ready - *σή.* |ornament,
|glory, statue
δὲ οὐκ |be in ὑδὲν |on the|establish , οὐδὲ νύκτα οὐδεῖς
|spot
|live, stay at ἀνθρώπων ὅτι μὴ γυνὴ μόνη τῶν |native
τὴν ἂν ὁ θεὸς ἔληται ἐκ πασέων, ὥς λέγουσι οἱ Χαλδαῖοι
έόντες |priest *τούτου τοῦ θεοῦ.*

1.182

φασὶ δὲ οἱ αὐτοὶ οὗτοι, ἐμοὶ μὲν οὐ πιστὰ λέγοντες, τὸν
θεὸν αὐτὸν **go back and forth** νηὸν καὶ ἀμπαύεσθαι ἐπὶ τῆς
κλίης, κατὰ περ ἐν Θήβησι τῇσι Αἰγυπτίησι κατὰ τὸν

square shape: and in the midst of the temple is built a solid tower measuring a furlong both in length and in breadth, and on this tower another tower has been erected, and another again upon this, and so on up to the number of eight towers. An ascent to these has been built running outside round about all the towers; and when one reaches about the middle of the ascent one finds a stopping-place and seats to rest upon, on which those who ascend sit down and rest: and on the top of the last tower there is a large cell, and in the cell a large couch is laid, well covered, and by it is placed a golden table: and there is no image there set up nor does any human being spend the night there except only one woman of the natives of the place, whomsoever the god shall choose from all the women, as say the Chaldeans who are the priests of this god.

1.182

These same men say also, but I do not believe them, that the god himself comes often to the cell and rests upon the couch, as happens likewise in the Egyptian Thebes according to

vocabulary

ἄγαλμα -τος (n, 3) ornament, glory,
 statue
αὐτόθι on the spot
βάθρον step, base, bench
βωμός altar; stand, pedestal
γαλαθηνός not yet weaned ~galaxy
ἐκεῖθι there
ἐνιμι be in ~ion
ἐξιμι go forth; is possible ~ion
ἐξίημι send forth, allow forth ~jet
εὖς good, brave, noble
θύω (ῥ) rush; sacrifice ~θύω
καταμένω stay; not change
κοιμάω put to sleep; (pass) lie down,
 have sex

νῆέω pile up, load a ship
νηός temple, shrine
ὀκταχόσιοι 800
ὀμιλία (τι) intercourse, company
ὄον οὖ type of fruit
οὐδαμός not anyone
παράκειμαι be at hand, ready
πρόβατον cattle, flocks, herds
πρόμαντις prophet
συγκατακλήϊω enclose together
τάλαντον scale, a unit of weight
 ~talent
φοιτάω go back and forth
χρηστήριον oracle, response
χρυσίον (ῥ) gold coin

αὐτὸν τρόπον, ὡς λέγουσι οἱ Αἰγύπτιοι· καὶ γὰρ δὴ ἐκεῖθι κοιμᾶται ἐν τῷ τοῦ Διὸς τοῦ Θηβαιέος γυνή, ἀμφότεροι δὲ αὐταὶ λέγονται ἀνδρῶν οὐδαμῶν ἐς ὀμιλίην φοιτᾶν· καὶ κατὰ περ ἐν Πατάροισι τῆς Λυκίης ἢ πρόμαντις τοῦ θεοῦ, ἐπεὰν γένηται· οὐ γὰρ ὧν αἰεὶ ἐστὶ χρηστήριον αὐτόθι· ἐπεὰν δὲ γένηται τότε ὧν συγκατακληίεται τὰς νύκτας ἔσω ἐν τῷ νηῶ.

1.183

ἔστι δὲ τοῦ ἐν Βαβυλῶνι ἱεροῦ καὶ ἄλλος κάτω νηός, ἔνθα ἄγαλμα μέγα τοῦ Διὸς ἐνὶ κατήμενον χρύσειον, καὶ οἱ τράπεζα μεγάλη παρακέεται χρυσέῃ, καὶ τὸ βάθρον οἱ καὶ ὁ θρόνος χρύσεος ἐστί· καὶ ὡς ἔλεγον οἱ Χαλδαῖοι, ταλάντων ὀκτακοσίων χρυσίου πεποιήται ταῦτα. ἔξω δὲ τοῦ νηοῦ βωμός ἐστι χρύσεος, ἔστι δὲ καὶ ἄλλος βωμὸς μέγας, ἐπ' οὗ θύεται τὰ¹ τέλεα τῶν προβάτων· ἐπὶ γὰρ τοῦ χρυσοῦ βωμοῦ οὐκ ἔξεστι θύειν ὅτι μὴ γαλαθηνὰ μούνα, ἐπὶ δὲ τοῦ μέζονος βωμοῦ καὶ

¹ the full-grown ones

αὐτὸν τρόπον, ὡς λέγουσι οἱ Αἰγύπτιοι· καὶ γὰρ δὴ ἐκεῖθι
 κοιμᾶται ἐν τῷ τοῦ Διὸς τοῦ Θηβαιέος γυνή, ἀμφότεραι δὲ
 αὐται λέγονται ἀνδρῶν |not anyone ἴς ὁμιλίην |go back and forth
 κατὰ περ ἐν Πατάροισι τῆς Λυκίης ἢ |prophet τοῦ θεοῦ,
 ἐπεὰν γένηται· οὐ γὰρ ὦν αἰεὶ ἐστὶ |oracle, |on the spot
 |response
 ἐπεὰν δὲ γένηται τότε ὦν συγκατακληίεται τὰς νύκτας
 ἔσω ἐν τῷ |temple

1.183

ἔστι δὲ τοῦ ἐν Βαβυλῶνι ἱεροῦ καὶ ἄλλος κάτω νηός, ἐνθα
 |ornament, |glory, statue ἵσταται τοῦ Διὸς |be |stay; not change ἵσταται, καὶ οἱ
 |in
 τράπεζα μεγάλη |be at hand, ready ἵσταται, καὶ τὸ |step, base, bench
 καὶ ὁ θρόνος χρύσεος ἐστὶ· καὶ ὡς ἔλεγον οἱ Χαλδαῖοι,
 |scale, a unit|800 |gold coin πεποιήται ταῦτα. ἔξω δὲ
 |of weight
 τοῦ νηοῦ |altar ἐστὶ χρύσεος, ἔστι δὲ καὶ ἄλλος |altar
 μέγας, ἐπ' οὗ¹ |rush; sacrifice ἵσταται τῶν |cattle, flocks, ἐπὶ γὰρ τοῦ
 |herds
 χρυσοῦ |altar οὐκ ἔξεστι |rush; sacrifice, |not yet weaned ἵσταται,
 ἐπὶ δὲ τοῦ μέζονος |altar καὶ

¹ the full-grown ones

the report of the Egyptians, for there also a woman sleeps in the temple of the Theban Zeus (and both these women are said to abstain from commerce with men), and as happens also with the prophetess of the god in Patara of Lykia, whenever there is one, for there is not always an Oracle there, but whenever there is one, then she is shut up during the nights in the temple within the cell.

1.183

There is moreover in the temple at Babylon another cell below, wherein is a great image of Zeus sitting, made of gold, and by it is placed a large table of gold, and his footstool and seat are of gold also; and, as the Chaldeans reported, the weight of the gold of which these things are made is eight hundred talents. Outside this cell is an altar of gold; and there is also another altar of great size, where full-grown animals are sacrificed, whereas on the golden altar it is not lawful to sacrifice any but young sucklings only: and also on the larger altar the Chaldeans offer one

*vocabulary***ἀνάθημα** -τος (n, 3) consecrated gift

~thesis

ἀνδριάς -ντος (m, 3) portrait, statue**ἀπαγορεύω** forbid; fail, be worn out**ἐπιβουλεύω** plot, plan, harm

~volunteer

ἐπικοσμέω decorate; celebrate**ἱρεὺς** ἱεῖος (i, m) priest ~hieroglyph**καταγίζω** devote, dedicate**κοσμέω** marshal, array ~cosmos**λιβανωτός** frankincense**μῖν** him, her, it**μνήμη** reminder, memorial**ὁρτή** holiday, feast**πῆχυς** forearm, cubit**στερεός** solid, firm ~stereo**τάλαντον** scale, a unit of weight

~talent

τέμενος -εος (n, 3) non-common land**χίλιοι** (ii) thousand ~kilo-

καταγίζουσι λιβανωτοῦ χίλια τάλαντα ἔτεος ἐκάστου οἱ
 Χαλδαῖοι τότε ἐπεὰν τὴν ὀρτὴν ἄγωσι τῷ θεῷ τούτῳ. ἦν
 δὲ ἐν τῷ τεμένει τούτῳ ἔτι τὸν χρόνον ἐκείνον καὶ ἀνδριάς
 δυνώδεκα πηχέων χρύσεος στερεός· ἐγὼ μὲν μιν οὐκ εἶδον,
 τὰ δὲ λέγεται ὑπὸ Χαλδαίων, ταῦτα λέγω. τούτῳ τῷ
 ἀνδριάντι Δαρείος¹ μὲν ὁ Ὑστάσπεος ἐπιβουλεύσας οὐκ
 ἐτόλμησε λαβεῖν, Χέρξης δὲ ὁ Δαρείου ἔλαβε καὶ τὸν
 ἱερά ἀπέκτεινε ἀπαγορεύοντα μὴ κινεῖν τὸν ἀνδριάντα.
 τὸ μὲν δὴ ἱρὸν τοῦτο οὕτω κεκόσμηται, ἔστι δὲ καὶ ἴδια
 ἀναθήματα πολλά.

1.184

τῆς δὲ Βαβυλῶνος ταύτης πολλοὶ μὲν κου καὶ ἄλλοι
 ἐγένοντο βασιλεές, τῶν ἐν τοῖσι Ἀσσυρίοισι λόγοισι
 μνήμην ποιήσομαι, οἳ τὰ τείχεά τε ἐπεκόσμησαν καὶ τὰ
 ἱρά, ἐν δὲ δὴ καὶ γυναῖκες δύο. ἡ μὲν πρότερον ἄρξασα, τῆς
 ὕστερον γενεῇσι² πέντε πρότερον γενομένη, τῇ οὖνομα

¹ Darius I. (Darius II and his son Cyrus, described in the Anabasis, were slightly after Herodotus's time.) ² generations

|devote, |frankincense χίλια |scale, a unit γεος ἐκάστου οἱ
|dedicate |of weight

Χαλδαῖοι τότε ἐπεὰν τὴν |holiday, ἄγωσι τῷ θεῷ τούτῳ. ἦν
|feast

δὲ ἐν τῷ |non-common land . . τὸν χρόνον ἐκείνον καὶ |portrait,
|statue

δυῶδεκα |forearm, χρύσεος |solid, firm ἔγὼ μὲν μιν οὐκ εἶδον,
|cubit

τὰ δὲ λέγεται ὑπὸ Χαλδαίων, ταῦτα λέγω. τούτῳ τῷ

|portrait, Δαρείος¹ μὲν ὁ Ὑστάσπεος |plot, plan, harm οὐκ
|statue

ἐτόλμησε λαβεῖν, Χέρξης δὲ ὁ Δαρείου ἔλαβε καὶ τὸν

|priest ἱπέκτεινε |forbid; fail, be μὴ κινέειν τὸν |portrait,
|worn out |statue

τὸ μὲν δὴ ἶρόν τοῦτο οὕτω |marshal, ἔστι δὲ καὶ ἴδια
|array

|consecrated gift ἁλλά.

1.184

τῆς δὲ Βαβυλῶνος ταύτης πολλοὶ μὲν κου καὶ ἄλλοι

ἐγένοντο βασιλεές, τῶν ἐν τοῖσι Ἀσσυρίοισι λόγοις

|reminder, ποιήσομαι, οἱ τὰ τείχεά τε |decorate; καὶ τὰ
|memorial |celebrate

ἱρά, ἐν δὲ δὴ καὶ γυναῖκες δύο. ἡ μὲν πρότερον ἄρξασα, τῆς

ὕστερον γενεῇσι² πέντε πρότερον γενομένη, τῇ οὐνομα

¹ Darius I. (Darius II and his son Cyrus, described in the Anabasis, were slightly after Herodotus's time.) ² generations

thousand talents of frankincense every year at the time when they celebrate the feast in honour of this god. There was moreover in these precincts still remaining at the time of Cyrus, a statue twelve cubits high, of gold and solid. This I did not myself see, but that which is related by the Chaldeans I relate. Against this statue Dareios the son of Hystaspes formed a design, but he did not venture to take it: it was taken however by Xerxes the son of Dareios, who also killed the priest when he forbade him to meddle with the statue. This temple, then, is thus adorned with magnificence, and there are also many private votive-offerings.

1.184

Of this Babylon, besides many other rulers, of whom I shall make mention in the Assyrian history, and who added improvement to the walls and temples, there were also two who were women. Of these, the one who ruled first, named Semiramis, who lived five generations before the other, produced banks of

vocabulary

ἄνωθεν from above, the beginning
ἄξιοθέητος well worth seeing
ἀπηγέομαι lead; tell, relate
ἀποδείκνυμι (ὁ) show, point out;
 appoint; (mid) declare
ἀποδέχομαι accept ~doctrine
ἀτρεμίζω not be restless
βασίλεια noblewoman
βασίλειος kingly
διῶρυξ -χος (f) ditch, canal
κῶμη village
κῶμος party, celebration

μνημόσυνον memorial
ὀρύσσω dig
πελαγίζω flood; sail the sea
προφυλάσσω guard the front
ῥέω flow ~rheostat
ῥοά pl: waters of a river ~rheostat
ῥόος ῥοῦ stream, flow, current
 ~rheostat
σκολιός crooked ~scoliosis
συνετός smart; intelligible
τρίς 3 times
χῶμα -τος (n, 3) mound of dirt
ὠθέω push

ἦν Σεμίραμις, αὕτη μὲν ἀπεδέξατο χώματα ἀνὰ τὸ πεδῖον
 ἐόντα ἀξιοθέητα· πρότερον δὲ ἐώθεε¹ ὁ ποταμὸς ἀνὰ τὸ
 πεδῖον πᾶν πελαγίζειν.

1.185

ἡ δὲ δὴ δεύτερον γενομένη ταύτης βασιλεία, τῇ
 οὖνομα ἦν Νίτωκρις, αὕτη δὲ συνετωτέρη γενομένη τῆς
 πρότερον ἀρξάσης τοῦτο μὲν μνημόσυνα ἐλίπετο² τὰ ἐγὼ
 ἀπηγῆσομαι, τοῦτο δὲ τὴν Μήδων ὀρώσα ἀρχὴν μεγάλην
 τε καὶ οὐκ ἀτρεμίζουσαν, ἀλλ' ἄλλα τε ἀραιρημένα³ ἄστυα
 αὐτοῖσι, ἐν δὲ δὴ καὶ τὴν Νίνον, προεφυλάξατο ὅσα
 ἐδύνατο μάλιστα. πρῶτα μὲν τὸν Εὐφρήτην ποταμὸν
 ῥέοντα πρότερον ἰθύν, ὅς σφι διὰ τῆς πόλιος μέσης ῥέει,
 τοῦτον ἄνωθεν διώρυχας ὀρύξασα οὕτω δὴ τι ἐποίησε
 σκολιὸν ὥστε δὴ τρὶς ἐς τῶν τινα κωμέων τῶν ἐν τῇ
 Ἀσσυρίῃ ἀπικνέεται ῥέων· τῇ δὲ κώμῃ οὖνομα ἐστί, ἐς
 τὴν ἀπικνέεται ὁ Εὐφρήτης, Ἀρδέρικκα. καὶ νῦν οἱ ἂν
 κομίζονται ἀπὸ τῆσδε τῆς θαλάσσης ἐς Βαβυλῶνα,

¹ flood ² the regime ³ perfect participle of αἰρέω

ἦν Σεμίραμις, αὕτη μὲν ἀπεδέξατο |mound of dirt¹ τὸ πεδίον
 εὐόντα |well worth seeing². ἔρον δὲ |push³ ὁ ποταμὸς ἀνὰ τὸ
 πεδίον πᾶν |flood; sail the sea

1.185

ἡ δὲ δὴ δεύτερον γενομένη ταύτης βασιλεία, τῇ
 οὖνομα ἦν Νίτωκρις, αὕτη δὲ |smart; intelligible⁴ γμένη τῆς
 πρότερον ἀρξάσης τοῦτο μὲν |memorial ἐλίπετο² τὰ ἐγὼ
 |lead; tell, relate⁵. οὗτο δὲ τὴν Μήδων ὀρώσα ἀρχὴν μεγάλην
 τε καὶ οὐκ |not be restless⁶, ἀλλ' ἄλλα τε ἀραιρημένα³ ἄστεα
 αὐτοῖσι, ἐν δὲ δὴ καὶ τὴν Νίνον, |guard the front⁷ ὅσα
 ἐδύνατο μάλιστα. πρῶτα μὲν τὸν Εὐφρήτην ποταμὸν
 |flow πρότερον ἰθύν, ὅς σφι διὰ τῆς πόλιος μέσης ῥέει,
 τοῦτον |from |ditch, canal |dig οὕτω δὴ τι ἐποίησε
 |crooked |above, the
 |beginning⁸ |3 ἐς τῶν τινα κωμέων τῶν ἐν τῇ
 |times
 Ἀσσυρίῃ ἀπικνέεται ῥέων· τῇ δὲ |village οὖνομα ἐστί, ἐς
 τὴν ἀπικνέεται ὁ Εὐφρήτης, Ἀρδέρικκα. καὶ νῦν οἱ ἂν
 κομίζονται ἀπὸ τῆσδε τῆς θαλάσσης ἐς Βαβυλῶνα,

¹ flood ² the regime ³ perfect participle of αἰρέω

earth in the plain which are a sight worth seeing; and before this the river used to flood like a sea over the whole plain.

1.185

The queen who lived after her time, named Nitocris, was wiser than she who had reigned before; and in the first place she left behind her monuments which I shall tell of; then secondly, seeing that the monarchy of the Medes was great and not apt to remain still, but that besides other cities even Nineveh had been captured by it, she made provision against it in so far as she was able.

First, as regards the river Euphrates which flows through the midst of their city, whereas before this it flowed straight, she by digging channels above made it so winding that it actually comes three times in its course to one of the villages in Assyria; and the name of the village to which the Euphrates comes is Ardericca; and at this day those who travel from this Sea of ours to Babylon, in their

vocabulary

ἀναισιμῶ spend, use up
βάθος -ους (n, 3) depth, height
βραδύς slow, dull, late ~Sp.~gordo
εἰσβολή -ωβόλης invasion, an entrance
 ~ballistic
ἐκδέχομαι receive; succeed to a
 position
ἐλος ἔλεος (n, 3) marsh
ἐλυτρον covering, case; reservoir
εὖρος -εος (n, 3) width; (caps) the east
 wind
θῶμα a wonder, feeling of surprise
 ~theater
καμπή a bend, turn
καταπλέω land ~float
κατύπερθεν above, from above
κρηπίς (i) boot; foundation
κύκλος circle, wheel ~cycle
λίμνη lake, marsh, basin, sea ~limnic
μέγαθος tall, big (person)
ὄρυγμα -τος (n, 3) trench, tunnel

ὀρύσσω dig
παραγίγνομαι be beside, attend
 ~genus
παρατείνω extend, lengthen, torture
παραχέω pour in, beside
περίμετρος very long ~metric
περίοδος picket, circuit
πλόος -ῦ course, voyage ~float
σκολιός crooked ~scoliosis
σταδίη (adj) standing upright, firm; (pl
 noun) 200 meters
στάδιον 200 meters (pl also masc)
στάδιος (adj) standing upright, firm;
 (pl noun) 200 meters
σύντομος truncated, concise
τετρακόσιοι 400
τρίς 3 times
ὑψος ὕψους (n, 3) height, summit
χεῖλος -εος (n, 3) lip
χοῦς jar, jug; loose dirt
χόω heap up
χῶμα -τος (n, 3) mound of dirt

καταπλέοντες τὸν Εὐφρήτην ποταμὸν τρίς τε ἐς τὴν αὐτὴν ταύτην κώμην παραγίνονται καὶ ἐν τρισὶ ἡμέρησι. τοῦτο μὲν δὴ τοιοῦτον ἐποίησε, χῶμα δὲ παρέχωσε παρ' ἐκάτερον τοῦ ποταμοῦ τὸ χεῖλος ἄξιον θώματος μέγαθος καὶ ὕψος ὅσον τι ἐστί. κατύπερθε δὲ πολλῶ Βαβυλῶνος ὥρυσσε ἔλυτρον λίμνη, ὀλίγον τι παρατείνουσα ἀπὸ τοῦ ποταμοῦ, βάθος μὲν ἐς τὸ ὕδωρ αἰεὶ ὀρύσσουσα, εὖρος δὲ τὸ περίμετρον αὐτοῦ ποιέουσα εἴκοσί τε καὶ τετρακοσίων σταδίων· τὸν δὲ ὀρυσσόμενον χοῦν ἐκ τούτου τοῦ ὀρύγματος ἀναισιμίου παρὰ τὰ χεῖλεα τοῦ ποταμοῦ παραχέουσα. ἐπεῖτε δέ οἱ ὀρώρυκτο, λίθους ἀγαγομένη κρηπίδα κύκλῳ περὶ αὐτὴν ἤλασε. ἐποίεε δὲ ἀμφοτέρα ταῦτα, τὸν τε ποταμὸν σκολιὸν καὶ τὸ ὄρυγμα πᾶν ἔλος, ὥς ὃ τε ποταμὸς βραδύτερος εἴη περὶ καμπὰς πολλὰς ἀγνύμενος, καὶ οἱ πλόοι ἕωσι σκολιοὶ ἐς τὴν Βαβυλῶνα, ἔκ τε τῶν πλόων ἐκδέκεται περίοδος τῆς λίμνης μακρῆ. κατὰ τοῦτο δὲ ἐργάζετο τῆς χώρας τῇ αἵ τε ἐσβολαὶ ἦσαν καὶ τὰ¹ σύντομα τῆς ἐκ Μήδων

¹ the direct routes

καταπλέοντες τὸν Εὐφρήτην ποταμὸν τρίς τε ἐς τὴν
αὐτὴν ταύτην κώμην παραγίνονται καὶ ἐν τρισὶ ἡμέρησι.
τοῦτο μὲν δὴ τοιοῦτον ἐποίησε, |mound ὀφ' dirt, ἔχωσε παρ'
ἐκάτερον τοῦ ποταμοῦ τὸ |lip ἄξιον θώματος μέγαθος
καὶ |height, ἵον τι ἐστί. |above, from above ἁλῶ Βαβυλῶνος
|dig |covering, |lake, marsh, ἵον τι |extend, lengthen, ἀπὸ
|case; |basin, sea |torture
τοῦ ποταμοῦ, |reservoir |depth, μὲν ἐς τὸ ὕδωρ αἰεὶ |dig
|height
|width; (caps) ὁ περίμετρον αὐτοῦ ποιεύσα εἴκοσί τε καὶ
|the east wind
|400 σταδίων· τὸν δὲ |dig χοῦν ἐκ τούτου
τοῦ |trench, ἀναισίμου παρὰ τὰ |lip τοῦ ποταμοῦ
|tunnel
|pour in, beside. ἐπεῖτε δέ οἱ |dig , λίθους ἀγαγομένη
|boot; |circle, περὶ αὐτὴν ἤλασε. ἐποίεε δὲ ἀμφότερα
|foundation |wheel
ταῦτα, τὸν τε ποταμὸν |crooked καὶ τὸ |trench, πᾶν |marsh
|tunnel
ὥς ὃ τε ποταμὸς |slow, dull, late ἔη περὶ |a bend, turn. ἁλλὰς
ἀγνύμενος, καὶ οἱ πλόοι ἔωσι |crooked ἐς τὴν Βαβυλῶνα,
ἐκ τε τῶν πλόων |receive; suc-|picket, τῆς |lake, marsh, ρή.
|ceed to a po-|circuit |basin, sea
κατὰ τοῦτο δὲ ἐργάζετο τῆς χώρας τῇ αἵ τε |invasion, ἀν' αν
|entrance
καὶ τὰ¹ |truncated, γῆς ἐκ Μήδων
|concise

¹ the direct routes

voyage down the river Euphrates arrive three times at this same village and on three separate days. This she did thus; and she also piled up a mound along each bank of the river, which is worthy to cause wonder for its size and height: and at a great distance above Babylon, she dug a basin for a lake, which she caused to extend along at a very small distance from the river, excavating it everywhere of such depth as to come to water, and making the extent such that the circuit of it measured four hundred and twenty furlongs: and the earth which was dug out of this excavation she used up by piling it in mounds along the banks of the river: and when this had been dug by her she brought stones and set them all round it as a facing wall. Both these two things she did, that is she made the river to have a winding course, and she made the place which was dug out all into a swamp, in order that the river might run more slowly, having its force broken by going round many bends, and that the voyages might be winding to Babylon, and after the voyages there might succeed a long circuit of the pool. These works she carried out in that part where the entrance to the country was, and the shortest way to it from Media,

*vocabulary***ἀνοικοδομέω** build up, rebuild**ἀποξηραίνω** dry up**ἀρχαῖος** ancient, from the beginning

~oligarch

βάθος -ους (n, 3) depth, height**διαβαίνω** pass over, cross ~basis**ἐκμανθάνω** know by heart**ἐκτρέπω** turn aside**ἔλυτρον** covering, case; reservoir**ἐπιμίσγω** deal with, fight ~mix**ἐτοῖμος** ready; fulfilled**κατάβασις** -εως (f) way down**λίμνη** lake, marsh, basin, sea ~limnic**μνημόσυνον** memorial**ὀπτός** roasted**ὀρύσσω** dig**ὀχληρός** troublesome**παρενθήκη** an aside, addition

~parentheses

περιβάλλω act: excel; mid: put on clothing ~ballistic**περιμήκης** very long, high**πίμπλημι** fill (+gen.) ~plenum**πλίνθος** (f) brick, block**προεῖδον** look toward, catch sight of ~wit**προοράω** see before oneself**πυλῖς** little gate, back door**ῥεῖθρον** stream ~rheostat**τέμνω** cut, sacrifice, solemnize ~tonsure**τοιόσδε** such**φάρσος** -εος (n, 3) portion**χεῖλος** -εος (n, 3) lip

ὁδοῦ, ἵνα μὴ ἐπιμισγόμενοι οἱ Μῆδοι ἐκμανθάνοιεν αὐτῆς τὰ πρήγματα.

1.186

ταῦτα μὲν δὴ ἐκ βάθεος περιεβάλετο, τοιήνδε δὲ ἐξ αὐτῶν παρενθήκην ἐποιήσατο. τῆς πόλιος ἐούσης δύο φαρσέων, τοῦ δὲ ποταμοῦ μέσον ἔχοντος, ἐπὶ τῶν πρότερον βασιλέων ὅπως τις ἐθέλοι ἐκ τοῦ ἐτέρου φάρσεος ἐς τοῦτερον διαβῆναι, χρῆν πλοίῳ διαβαίνειν, καὶ ἦν, ὡς ἐγὼ δοκέω, ὀχληρὸν τοῦτο. αὕτη δὲ καὶ τοῦτο προείδε. ἐπεῖτε γὰρ ὥρυσσε τὸ ἔλυτρον τῇ λίμνῃ, μνημόσυνον τόδε ἄλλο ἀπὸ τοῦ αὐτοῦ ἔργου ἐλίπετο· ἐτάμνετο λίθους περιμήκεας, ὡς δέ οἱ ἦσαν οἱ λίθοι ἔτοιμοι καὶ τὸ χωρίον ὁρώρυκτο, ἐκτρέψασα τοῦ ποταμοῦ τὸ ῥέεθρον πᾶν ἐς τὸ ὥρυσσε χωρίον, ἐν ᾧ ἐπίμπλατο τοῦτο, ἐν τούτῳ ἀπεξηρασμένου τοῦ ἀρχαίου ῥέεθρου τοῦτο μὲν τὰ χεῖλα τοῦ ποταμοῦ κατὰ τὴν πόλιν καὶ τὰς καταβάσις τὰς ἐκ τῶν πυλίδων ἐς τὸν ποταμὸν φερούσας ἀνοικοδόμησε πλίνθοισι ὀπτῆσι κατὰ τὸν αὐτὸν λόγον τῷ τείχεϊ, τοῦτο

όδοῦ, ἵνα μὴ |deal with οἱ Μῆδοι |know by heart αὐτῆς
τὰ πρήγματα.

1.186

ταῦτα μὲν δὴ ἐκ |depth, |excel; don , |such δὲ ἐξ
|height
αὐτῶν |an aside, addition ῥήσατο. τῆς πόλιος εὐούσης δύο
|portion , τοῦ δὲ ποταμοῦ μέσον ἔχοντος, ἐπὶ τῶν
πρότερον βασιλέων ὅπως τις ἐθέλοι ἐκ τοῦ ἐτέρου |portion
ἐς τοῦτερον |pass over, cross , πλοίῳ |pass over, cross ἦν, ὥς
ἐγὼ δοκέω, |troublesome ὕτο. αὕτη δὲ καὶ τοῦτο προεΐδε.
ἐπείτε γὰρ |dig τὸ |covering, cañe; |lake, , |memorial
|reservoir |marsh,
τόδε ἄλλο ἀπὸ τοῦ αὐτοῦ ἔργου ἐλίπε| basin,
|sea
|very long, high ἄς δέ οἱ ἦσαν οἱ λίθοι ἔτοιμοι καὶ τὸ χωρίον
|dig , |turn aside τοῦ ποταμοῦ τὸ |stream πᾶν ἐς
τὸ |dig χωρίον, ἐν ᾧ |fill (+gen.) τοῦτο, ἐν τούτῳ
ἀπεξηρασμένου τοῦ |ancient, |stream τοῦτο μὲν τὰ |lip
|from the
τοῦ ποταμοῦ κατὰ τὴν πόλιν καὶ τὰς |beginning
|way down τὰς
ἐκ τῶν |little gate, ἐς τὸν ποταμὸν φερούσας |build up, rebuild
|back door
πλίνθοισι |roasted κατὰ τὸν αὐτὸν λόγον τῷ τείχεϊ, τοῦτο

so that the Medes might not have dealings with her kingdom and learn of her affairs.

1.186

These defences she cast round her city from the depth; and she made the following addition which was dependent upon them:— The city was in two divisions, and the river occupied the space between; and in the time of the former rulers, when any one wished to pass over from the one division to the other, he had to pass over in a boat, and that, as I imagine, was troublesome: she however made provision also for this; for when she was digging the basin for the lake she left this other monument of herself derived from the same work, that is, she caused stones to be cut of very great length, and when the stones were prepared for her and the place had been dug out, she turned aside the whole stream of the river into the place which she had been digging; and while this was being filled with water, the ancient bed of the river being dried up in the meantime, she both built up with baked bricks after the same fashion as the wall the edges of the river, where it flows through the city, and the places of descent leading from the small gateways to the river; and also about the middle of the city, as I judge, with the stones which

vocabulary

ἀρχαῖος ancient, from the beginning
 ~oligarch
βασίλεια noblewoman
βασίλειος kingly
γέφυρα (ῥ) dam, dike; bridge
διαβαίνω pass over, cross ~basis
διάβασις -εως (f) crossing, passage
 ~basis
διαφοιτέω wander, cast about
ἐγχολάπτω cut or carve on stone
ἔλος ἔλεος (n, 3) marsh
ἐπιβολή (gen) on top of
κατασκευάζω equip, build
κλέπτω steal
κοσμέω marshal, array ~cosmos

λεωφόρος heavily traveled
λίμνη lake, marsh, basin, sea ~limnic
μετέωρος up in the air ~meteor
μηχανάομαι build, contrive
 ~mechanism
μόλυβδος lead
οικοδομέω build, build a house
ὀρύσσω dig
πλήρης full, complete; (+gen) full of
 ~plethora
ῥεῖθρον stream ~rheostat
σίδηρος iron ~siderite
τάφος (m) funeral, grave; (n)
 astonishment
τετράγωνος square
τοιόσδε such

δὲ κατὰ μέσσην κου μάλιστα τὴν πόλιν τοῖσι λίθοις τοὺς
 ὠρύξατο οἰκοδόμει γέφυραν, δέουσα τοὺς λίθους σιδήρῳ
 τε καὶ μολύβδῳ. ἐπιτείνεσκε δὲ ἐπ' αὐτήν, ὅκως μὲν ἡμέρη
 γίνοιτο, ξύλα τετράγωνα, ἐπ' ὧν τὴν διάβασιν ἐποιεῦντο
 οἱ Βαβυλώνιοι· τὰς δὲ νύκτας τὰ ξύλα ταῦτα ἀπαιρέεσκον
 τοῦδε εἵνεκα, ἵνα μὴ διαφοιτέοντες τὰς νύκτας κλέπτοιεν
 παρ' ἀλλήλων. ὥς δὲ τό τε ὀρυχθὲν λίμνη πλήρης ἐγεγόνει
 ὑπὸ τοῦ ποταμοῦ καὶ τὰ περὶ τὴν γέφυραν ἐκεκόσμητο,
 τὸν Εὐφρήτην ποταμὸν ἐς τὰ ἀρχαῖα ῥέεθρα ἐκ τῆς
 λίμνης ἐξήγαγε, καὶ οὕτω τὸ ὀρυχθὲν ἔλος γενόμενον
 ἐς δέον ἐδόκει γεγονέναι καὶ τοῖσι πολιῆταισι γέφυρα ἦν
 κατεσκευασμένη.

1.187

ἡ δ' αὐτὴ αὕτη βασιλεία καὶ ἀπάτην τοιγύδε τινὰ
 ἐμηχανήσατο· ὕπερ τῶν μάλιστα λεωφόρων πυλέων τοῦ
 ἄστεος τάφον ἑωυτῇ¹ κατεσκευάσατο μετέωρον ἐπιπολῆς
 αὐτέων τῶν πυλέων, ἐνεκόλαψε δὲ ἐς τὸν

¹ for herself

δὲ κατὰ μέσσην κου μάλιστα τὴν πόλιν τοῖσι λίθοιςιν τοὺς

|dig |build, build |dam, dike; bridge . τοὺς λίθους σιδήρω
|a house

τε καὶ |lead . ἐπιτείνεσκε δὲ ἐπ' αὐτήν, ὅπως μὲν ἡμέρη

γίνοιτο, ξύλα |square , ἐπ' ὧν τὴν διάβασιν ἐποιεῦντο

οἱ Βαβυλώνιοι· τὰς δὲ νύκτας τὰ ξύλα ταῦτα ἀπαιρέεσκον

τοῦδε εἵνεκα, ἵνα μὴ |wander, cast about ἄς νύκτας |steal

παρ' ἀλλήλων. ὥς δὲ τό τε |dig |lake, |full, complete; 'νεε
|marsh, (+gen) full of
ὑπὸ τοῦ ποταμοῦ καὶ τὰ περὶ τὴν |basin,
|sea, |dam, dike; marshal,
|bridge |array

τὸν Εὐφρήτην ποταμὸν ἐς τὰ |ancient, |stream ἐκ τῆς
|from the
|lake, marsh, 'γαγε, καὶ οὕτω τὸ |beginning |marsh μενόμενον
|basin, sea |dig

ἐς δέον ἐδόκεε γεγονέναι καὶ τοῖσι πολίτησιν |dam, dike; bridge

|equip, build

1.187

ἡ δ' αὐτὴ αὕτη βασιλεια καὶ ἀπάτην |such τινὰ

|build, contrive ὑπερ τῶν μάλιστα |heavily πυλέων τοῦ
|traveled

ἄστεος |¹(m) ἑῷ funeral |equip, build |up in the air |¹(gen) on top of
|grave; (n)

αὐτέων τῶν πυλέων, |astonishment
|cut or carve δὲ ἐς τὸν
|on stone

¹ for herself

she had caused to be dug out she proceeded to build a bridge, binding together the stones with iron and lead: and upon the top she laid squared timbers across, to remain there while it was daytime, over which the people of Babylon made the passage across; but at night they used to take away these timbers for this reason, namely that they might not go backwards and forwards by night and steal from one another: and when the place dug out had been made into a lake full of water by the river, and at the same time the bridge had been completed, then she conducted the Euphrates back into its ancient channel from the lake, and so the place dug out being made into a swamp was thought to have served a good purpose, and there had been a bridge set up for the men of the city.

1.187

This same queen also contrived a snare of the following kind:— Over that gate of the city through which the greatest number of people passed she set up for herself a tomb above the very gate itself. And on the tomb she

*vocabulary***αἰσχροκερδής** shamefully greedy**ἀκίνητος** motionless, immovable**ἀνοίγνυμι** (ῶ) open**ἄπληστος** insatiable, greedy**βασίλεια** noblewoman**βασίλειος** kingly**γράμμα** -τος (n, 3) writing, letter**γραμματεὺς** -ος (m) clerk,

schoolmaster

διεξελαύνω drive through**ἐπικαλέω** call upon**ὅπόσος** as many as, how many, how great**περιέρχομαι** go around; come next to**σπανίζω** be scarce; lack; use up**τάφος** (m) funeral, grave; (n) astonishment

τάφον γράμματα λέγοντα τάδε. «τῶν τις ἐμεῦ ὕστερον
 γινομένων Βαβυλῶνος βασιλέων ἦν σπανίση χρημάτων,
 ἀνοίξας τὸν τάφον λαβέτω ὅκόσα βούλεται χρήματα· μὴ
 μέντοι γε μὴ σπανίσας γε ἄλλως ἀνοίξῃ· οὐ γὰρ ἄμεινον·»

οὗτος ὁ τάφος ἦν ἀκίνητος μέχρι οὗ ἐς Δαρεῖον¹ περιῆλθε
 ἡ βασιληίη· Δαρείῳ δὲ καὶ δεινὸν ἐδόκεε εἶναι τῇσι πύλῃσι
 ταύτῃσι μηδὲν χρᾶσθαι, καὶ χρημάτων κειμένων καὶ
 αὐτῶν τῶν γραμμάτων ἐπικαλεομένων, μὴ οὐ λαβεῖν
 αὐτά· τῇσι δὲ πύλῃσι ταύτῃσι οὐδὲν ἐχρᾶτο τοῦδε εἵνεκα,
 ὅτι ὕπερ κεφαλῆς οἱ ἐγίνετο ὁ νεκρὸς διεξελαύνοντι.

ἀνοίξας δὲ τὸν τάφον εὗρε χρήματα μὲν οὐ, τὸν δὲ
 νεκρὸν καὶ γράμματα λέγοντα τάδε· «εἰ μὴ ἄπληστός τε
 ἔας χρημάτων καὶ αἰσχροκερδής, οὐκ ἂν νεκρῶν θήκας
 ἀνέωγες.» αὕτη μὲν νυν ἡ βασιλεία τοιαύτη τις λέγεται
 γενέσθαι.

¹ first mentioned in 1.183, in which he coveted a golden statue

(m) writing, λέγοντα τάδε. «τῶν τις ἐμεῦ ὕστερον
 funeral, letter
 grave; (n) ἀπομένων Βαβυλῶνος βασιλέων ἦν |be scarce; ημάτων,
 aston- |lack; use up
 ishment τὸν (m) funeral, grave; as/how many/great ῥήματα· μὴ
 (n) astonishment
 μέντοι γε μὴ |be scarce; εἰ ἄλλως ἀνοίξῃ· οὐ γὰρ ἄμεινον· »
 |lack; use up
 οὗτος ὁ (m) fu- |motionless, ἐχρησάμενος δὲ Δαρείων¹ |go around;
 neral, |immovable |come next to
 ἡ βασιλεία οὐκ ἀρρεῖα δὲ καὶ δεινὸν ἐδόκεε εἶναι τῇσι πύλῃσι
 astonish- (n)
 ment
 ταύτῃσι μηδὲν χρᾶσθαι, καὶ χρημάτων κεμένων καὶ
 αὐτῶν τῶν γραμμάτων |call upon , μὴ οὐ λαβεῖν
 αὐτά· τῇσι δὲ πύλῃσι ταύτῃσι οὐδὲν ἐχρᾶτο τοῦδε εἵνεκα,
 ὅτι ὕπερ κεφαλῆς οἱ ἐγίνετο ὁ νεκρὸς |drive through
 ἀνοίξας δὲ τὸν (m) funeral, grave; ῥήματα μὲν οὐ, τὸν δὲ
 (n) astonishment
 νεκρὸν καὶ |writing, λέγοντα τάδε· «εἰ μὴ |insatiable, τε
 |letter |greedy
 ἕας χρημάτων καὶ |shamefully , οὐκ ἂν νεκρῶν θήκας
 |greedy
 ἀνέωγες.» αὕτη μὲν νυν ἡ βασιλεία τοιαύτη τις λέγεται
 γενέσθαι.

¹ first mentioned in 1.183, in which he coveted a golden statue

engraved writing which said thus: “If any of the kings of Babylon who come after me shall be in want of wealth, let him open my tomb and take as much as he desires; but let him not open it for any other cause, if he be not in want; for that will not be well.”

This tomb was undisturbed until the kingdom came to Dareios; but to Dareios it seemed that it was a monstrous thing not to make any use of this gate, and also, when there was money lying there, not to take it, considering that the money itself invited him to do so. Now the reason why he would not make any use of this gate was because the corpse would have been above his head as he drove through.

He then, I say, opened the tomb and found not indeed money but the corpse, with writing which said thus: “If thou hadst not been insatiable of wealth and basely covetous, thou wouldest not have opened the resting-places of the dead.”

vocabulary

ἄγγήιον vessel

ἄμαξα wagon

ἀποψάω wipe off

ἀργύρεος silver ~Argentina

ἀργυροῦς silver

ἐκάστοτε each time

ἐκδίδωμι hand over ~donate

κάρτα very much ~κράτος

ὅπη wherever, however

πηγή headwaters, fountain

πηγός stout, mighty

προβαίνω surpass, continue ~basis

ῥέω flow ~rheostat

σκευάζω prepare, collect

σοῦσον lily

τετράκυκλος four-wheeled ~cycle

1.188

ὁ δὲ δὴ Κῦρος ἐπὶ ταύτης τῆς γυναικὸς τὸν παῖδα ἐστρατεύετο, ἔχοντά τε τοῦ πατρὸς τοῦ ἐωυτοῦ τοῦνομα Λαβυνήτου καὶ τὴν Ἀσσυρίων ἀρχήν. στρατεύεται δὲ δὴ βασιλεὺς ὁ μέγας καὶ σιτίοισι εὖ ἐσκευασμένος ἐξ οἴκου καὶ προβάτοισι, καὶ δὴ καὶ ὕδωρ ἀπὸ τοῦ Χοάσπεω ποταμοῦ ἅμα ἄγεται τοῦ παρὰ Σοῦσα ρέοντος, τοῦ μούνου πίνει βασιλεὺς καὶ ἄλλου οὐδενὸς ποταμοῦ. τούτου δὲ τοῦ Χοάσπεω τοῦ ὕδατος ἀπειρημένου πολλαὶ κάρτα ἅμαξαι τετράκυκλοι ἡμιόνεαι κομίζουσαι ἐν ἀγγῆίοισι ἀργυρέοισι ἔπονται, ὅκη ἂν ἐλαύνῃ ἐκάστοτε.

1.189

ἐπεῖτε δὲ ὁ Κῦρος πορευόμενος ἐπὶ τὴν¹ Βαβυλῶνα ἐγίνετο ἐπὶ Γύνδη ποταμῷ, τοῦ αἰ μὲν πηγαὶ ἐν Ματιηνοῖσι ὄρεσι, ῥέει δὲ διὰ Δαρδανέων, ἐκδιδοῖ δὲ ἐς ἕτερον ποταμὸν Τίγρην, ὁ δὲ παρὰ Ὠπιν πόλιν

¹ the Persian gulf, referred to by the same name as the Red Sea

1.188

ὁ δὲ δὴ Κῦρος ἐπὶ ταύτης τῆς γυναικὸς τὸν παῖδα
 ἐστρατεύετο, ἔχοντά τε τοῦ πατρὸς τοῦ ἑωυτοῦ τοῦνομα
 Λαβυνήτου καὶ τὴν Ἀσσυρίων ἀρχήν. στρατεύεται δὲ δὴ
 βασιλεὺς ὁ μέγας καὶ σιτίοισι εὖ |prepare, collect ἑξ οἴκου καὶ
 |surpass , καὶ δὴ καὶ ὕδωρ ἀπὸ τοῦ Χοάσπεω ποταμοῦ
 ἄμα ἄγεται τοῦ παρὰ |lily |flow , τοῦ μούνου πίνει
 βασιλεὺς καὶ ἄλλου οὐδενὸς ποταμοῦ. τούτου δὲ τοῦ
 Χοάσπεω τοῦ ὕδατος |wipe off πολλαὶ |very |wagon
 |four-wheeled ἡμiónεαι κομίζουσαι ἐν |vessel ἀργυρέοισι
 ἔπονται, |wherever, ἡ ἀνὴρ |each time .
 |however

1.189

ἐπεῖτε δὲ ὁ Κῦρος πορευόμενος ἐπὶ τὴν¹ Βαβυλῶνα ἐγίνετο
 ἐπὶ Γύνδη ποταμῷ, τοῦ αἰ μὲν πηγαὶ ἐν Ματιηνοῖσι ὄρεσι,
 ῥέει δὲ διὰ Δαρδανέων, |hand over ἔς ἕτερον ποταμὸν
 Τίγρην, ὁ δὲ παρὰ Ὠπιν πόλιν

¹ the Persian gulf, referred to by the same name as the Red Sea

1.188

This queen then is reported to have been such as I have described: and it was the son of this woman, bearing the same name as his father, Labynetos, and being ruler over the Assyrians, against whom Cyrus was marching. Now the great king makes his marches not only well furnished from home with provisions for his table and with cattle, but also taking with him water from the river Choaspes, which flows by Susa, of which alone and of no other river the king drinks: and of this water of the Choaspes boiled, a very great number of waggons, four-wheeled and drawn by mules, carry a supply in silver vessels, and go with him wherever he may march at any time.

1.189

Now when Cyrus on his way towards Babylon arrived at the river Gyndes,— of which river the springs are in the mountains of the Matienians, and it flows through the Dardanians and runs into another river, the Tigris, which flowing by

vocabulary

ἀπειλή boast, threat

ἀσθενής weak

βρέχω soak; it rains

διαβαίνω pass over, cross ~basis

διαιρέω divide, distinguish, distribute

διατάσσω arrange, array

διατρίβω (ιῖ) wear down, delay

~tribology

δίχα in two, in two ways

διῶρυξ -χος (f) ditch, canal

εἰσβαίνω enter, board ~basis

ἐκδίδωμι hand over ~donate

ἐνθαῦτα there, here

ἐπαπειλέω threaten

εὐπετής coming out well; (adv)
fortunately

θέρειος of summer

θέρω warm up ~thermos

κάρτα very much ~κράτος

κατατείνω stretch out

μέτειμι be among, go, follow ~ion

μίν him, her, it

νησιπέρητος navigable

ὀγδώκοντα eighty

ὄμιλος (ι) crowd, throng ~homily

ὀρύσσω dig

ῥέω flow ~rheostat

ῥοά pl: waters of a river ~rheostat

ῥόος ῥοῦ stream, flow, current

~rheostat

στράτευσις expedition

στρατιά army ~strategy

στρατός common people/soldiers

~strategy

συμψάω rake over, sweep up

σχοινοτενής stretched straight

ὕβριζω insult, treat outrageously

ὕβρις -εως (f) pride, insolence, outrage

ὑποβρύχιος underwater, deep

ὑποδείκνυμι (υῦ) show, trace out

ὑποδέχομαι welcome, accept, suffer

~doctrine

χαλεπαίνω be violent, rage

χείλος -εος (n, 3) lip

ῥέων ἐς τὴν Ἐρυθρὴν θάλασσαν ἐκδιδοί, τοῦτον δὲ τὸν
 Γύνδην ποταμὸν ὡς διαβαίνειν ἐπειρᾶτο ὁ Κῦρος ἐόντα
 νηυσιπέρητον, ἐνθαῦτά οἱ τῶν τις ἱρῶν¹ ἵππων τῶν
 λευκῶν ὑπὸ ὕβριος ἐσβὰς ἐς τὸν ποταμὸν διαβαίνειν
 ἐπειρᾶτο, ὁ δέ μιν συμψήσας ὑποβρύχιον οἰχώκεε φέρων.
 κάρτα τε δὴ ἐχαλέπαινε τῷ ποταμῷ ὁ Κῦρος τοῦτο
 ὑβρίσαντι, καί οἱ ἐπηπείλησε οὕτω δὴ μιν ἀσθενέα
 ποιήσειν ὥστε τοῦ λοιποῦ καὶ γυναῖκας μιν εὐπετέως
 τὸ γόνυ οὐ βρεχούσας διαβήσεσθαι. μετὰ δὲ τὴν
 ἀπειλὴν μετεῖς τὴν ἐπὶ Βαβυλῶνα στρατεύουσιν διαίρει
 τὴν στρατιὴν δίχα, διελὼν δὲ κατέτεινε σχοινοτενέας
 ὑποδέξας διώρυχας ὀγδώκοντα καὶ ἑκατὸν παρ' ἑκάτερον
 τὸ χεῖλος τοῦ Γύνδεω τετραμμένας πάντα τρόπον,
 διατάξας δὲ τὸν στρατὸν ὀρύσσειν ἐκέλευε. οἷα δὲ ὁμίλου
 πολλοῦ ἐργαζομένου ἦνετο μὲν τὸ ἔργον, ὅμως μέντοι τὴν
 θερεῖν πᾶσαν αὐτοῦ ταύτη διέτρυψαν ἐργαζόμενοι.

¹ The horses are holy.

ῥέων ἐς τὴν Ἐρυθρὴν θάλασσαν |hand over οὗτον δὴ τὸν
 Γύνδην ποταμὸν ὡς |pass over, cross ἡρᾶτο ὁ Κῦρος ἐόντα
 |navigable , ἐνθαυτά οἱ τῶν τις ἱρῶν¹ ἵππων τῶν
 λευκῶν ὑπὸ |hubris |enter, ἐς τὸν ποταμὸν |pass over, cross
 |board
 ἐπειρᾶτο, ὁ δέ μιν συμψήσας |underwater, deep, ἔκεε φέρων.
 |very much- δὴ |be violent, rage ᾧ ποταμῷ ὁ Κῦρος τοῦτο
 |insult , καί οἱ |threaten οὔτω δὴ μιν |weak
 ποιήσειν ὥστε τοῦ λοιποῦ καὶ γυναικας μιν |coming out well; (adv)
 |fortunately
 τὸ γόνυ οὐ |soak; it rains |pass over, cross μετὰ δὲ τὴν
 |boast, |be among ἣν ἐπὶ Βαβυλῶνα |expedition |divide, distinguish,
 |threat |distribute
 τὴν στρατιὴν |in two, |divide, |dis- |stretch out |stretched
 |in two, |distinguish, |straight
 |ways, |distribute
 ὑποδέξας |ditch, canal |eighty καὶ ἑκατὸν παρ' ἑκάτερον
 τὸ |lip τοῦ Γύνδεω τετραμμένας πάντα τρόπον,
 |arrange, δὲ τὸν |army |dig ἐκέλευε. οἶα δὲ ὁμίλου
 |array
 πολλοῦ ἐργαζομένου ἦντο μὲν τὸ ἔργον, ὅμως μέντοι τὴν
 θερείην πᾶσαν αὐτοῦ ταύτη |wear down, delay ᾧ ὄντες.

¹ The horses are holy.

the city of Opis runs out into the Erythraian Sea,— when Cyrus, I say, was endeavouring to cross this river Gyndes, which is a navigable stream, then one of his sacred white horses in high spirit and wantonness went into the river and endeavoured to cross, but the stream swept it under water and carried it off forthwith. And Cyrus was greatly moved with anger against the river for having done thus insolently, and he threatened to make it so feeble that for the future even women could cross it easily without wetting the knee. So after this threat he ceased from his march against Babylon and divided his army into two parts; and having divided it he stretched lines and marked out straight channels, one hundred and eighty on each bank of the Gyndes, directed every way, and having disposed his army along them he commanded them to dig: so, as a great multitude was working, the work was completed indeed, but they spent the whole summer season at this spot working.

*vocabulary***ἀγγοῦ** near, nigh; like ~angina**ἄνω** (ἄ) accomplish, pass, waste; upwards, out to sea**ἀπορέω** be confused, distressed**ἀπορία** difficulty, bottleneck ~pierce**ἄτε** as if; since**ἀτρεμίζω** not be restless**διαλαμβάνω** distribute**διῶρυξ** -χος (f) ditch, canal**ἔαρ** -ος (n) spring (season)**ἐγγίγνομαι** live in ~genus**ἐκστρατεύω** march out; (mp) take the field**ἐνθαῦτα** there, here**ἐξεπίσταμαι** know well**ἑξήκοντα** sixty**ἐπιχειρέω** do, try, attack ~chiral**εὖς** good, brave, noble**ἡσάομαι** (pass) be weaker, be overcome; (active) defeat**κάρτα** very much ~χράτος**κατειλέω** coop up**μίν** him, her, it**ὄον** οὖ type of fruit**πολιορκία** siege**προκόπτω** make progress**συμβάλλω** pit against; compare; mp: meet, fall in with ~ballistic**συχνός** long; many; extensive**τίνω** (ι) pay, atone for; (mp) punish**τίω** value, honor; mp: exact recompense for**τοιόσδε** such**τριηκόσιοι** three hundred**ὕπολάμπω** shine under; begin to shine**ὑποτίθηναι** suggest, advise ~hypothesis

1.190

ὥς δὲ τὸν Γύνδην ποταμὸν ἐτίσατο Κῦρος ἐς τριηκοσίας καὶ ἐξήκοντα διώρυχάς μιν διαλαβών, καὶ τὸ δεύτερον ἔαρ ὑπέλαμπε, οὕτω δὴ ἤλυνε ἐπὶ τὴν Βαβυλῶνα. οἱ δὲ Βαβυλώνιοι ἐκστρατευσάμενοι ἔμενον αὐτόν. ἐπεὶ δὲ ἐγένετο ἐλαύνων ἀγχοῦ τῆς πόλιος, συνέβαλόν τε οἱ Βαβυλώνιοι καὶ ἐσσωθέντες τῇ μάχῃ κατεκλήθησαν ἐς τὸ ἄστυ. οἶα δὲ ἐξεπιστάμενοι ἔτι πρότερον τὸν Κῦρον οὐκ ἀτρεμίζοντα, ἀλλ' ὀρέοντες αὐτὸν παντὶ ἔθνει ὁμοίως ἐπιχειρόντα, προεσάξαντο σιτία ἐτέων κάρτα πολλῶν. ἐνθαῦτα οὗτοι μὲν λόγον εἶχον τῆς πολιορκίης οὐδένα, Κῦρος δὲ ἀπορίῃσι ἐνείχετο, ἅτε χρόνου τε ἐγγινομένου συχνοῦ ἀνωτέρω τε οὐδὲν τῶν πρηγμάτων προκοπτομένων.

1.191

εἴτε δὴ ὦν ἄλλος οἱ ἀπορέοντι ὑπεθήκατο, εἴτε καὶ αὐτὸς ἔμαθε τὸ ποιητέον οἱ ἦν, ἐποίεε δὴ τοιόνδε. τάξας

1.190

ὥς δὲ τὸν Γύνδην ποταμὸν ἐτίσατο Κῦρος ἐς ^{|three} ^{|hundred}
καὶ ^{|sixty} ^{|ditch, canal} μιν ^{|distribute} , καὶ τὸ δεύτερον
^{|spring shine under;} ^{ὔτω δὴ ἤλαυνε ἐπὶ τὴν Βαβυλῶνα. οἱ}
^{(sea-|begin to shine}
^{son)} ^{δε Βαβυλώνιοι} ^{|march out; (mp) take} ^{ἔμενον αὐτόν. ἐπεὶ}
^{the field}
^{δε ἐγένετο ἐλαύνων} ^{|near, nigh; like} ^{ἴλιος,} ^{|pit against; compare; mp:}
^{meet, fall in with}
οἱ Βαβυλώνιοι καὶ ^{|pass) be weaker, be over-} ^{κατελήθησαν}
^{come; (active) defeat}
ἐς τὸ ἄστυ. οἶα δὲ ἐξεπιστάμενοι ἔτι πρότερον τὸν
Κῦρον οὐκ ^{|not be restless} , ἀλλ' ὀρέοντες αὐτὸν παντὶ ἔθνει
ὁμοίως ^{|do, try, attack} , προσάξαντο σιτία ἐτέων ^{|very much}
πολλῶν. ^{|there, here} ^{ὑτοὶ μὲν λόγον εἶχον τῆς πολιορκίης}
οὐδένα, Κῦρος δὲ ἀπορίῃσι ἐνείχετο, ^{|as if; since} ^{οὐ τε}
^{|live in} ^{|long;} ^{|accomplish, pass, waste;} ^{ὧν πρηγμάτων}
^{many;} ^{|upwards, out to sea}
^{|make progress} ^{|extensive}

1.191

εἴτε δὴ ὦν ἄλλος οἱ ^{|be confused, suggest} , εἴτε καὶ αὐτὸς
^{|distressed}
^{ἔμαθε τὸ ποιητέον οἱ ἦν, ἐποίεε δὴ} ^{|such} . τάξας

1.190

When Cyrus had taken vengeance on the river Gyndes by dividing it into three hundred and sixty channels, and when the next spring was just beginning, then at length he continued his advance upon Babylon: and the men of Babylon had marched forth out of their city and were awaiting him. So when in his advance he came near to the city, the Babylonians joined battle with him, and having been worsted in the fight they were shut up close within their city. But knowing well even before this that Cyrus was not apt to remain still, and seeing him lay hands on every nation equally, they had brought in provisions beforehand for very many years. So while these made no account of the siege, Cyrus was in straits what to do, for much time went by and his affairs made no progress onwards.

1.191

Therefore, whether it was some other man who suggested it to him when he was in a strait what to do, or whether he of himself perceived what he ought to do, he

vocabulary

ἀπελαύνω expel, exclude, ward off;
 (intrans) ride away
ἀρχαῖος ancient, from the beginning
 ~oligarch
ἀχρεῖος serving no purpose ~chresard
βασίλεια noblewoman
βασίλειος kingly
διαβατός crossable, fordable
διῶρυξ -χος (f) ditch, canal
εἰσάγω lead in ~demagogue
εἰσβάλλω throw into ~ballistic
εἴσειμι go in; come in range; come to
 mind ~ion
εἰσίημι (mid) speed to ~jet
ἐλος ἔλεος (n, 3) marsh
ἐμβολή putting in; incursion, charge
ἐξίημι send forth, allow forth ~jet
λίμνη lake, marsh, basin, sea ~limnic

μηρός thigh, femur
ὀπισθεν behind, hereafter
παραινέω recommend, exhort, warn
περίοιδα have great, greater skill
περιοράω look around; watch; permit
Πέρσης Persian
προαγορεύω declare, predict, order
προεῖπον foretell, proclaim, order
 before
προλέγω prophecy, proclaim; preselect
 ~legion
προπυνθάνομαι learn in advance
ῥεῖθρον stream ~rheostat
στρατιά army ~strategy
στρατός common people/soldiers
 ~strategy
στρατόω be on a campaign ~strategy
ὕπονοστέω sink, settle

τὴν στρατιὴν ἄπασαν ἐξ ἐμβολῆς τοῦ ποταμοῦ, τῇ ἐς τὴν πόλιν ἐσβάλλει, καὶ ὅπισθε αὐτὶς τῆς πόλιος τάξας ἑτέρους, τῇ ἐξιεὶ ἐκ τῆς πόλιος ὁ ποταμός, προεῖπε τῷ στρατῷ, ὅταν διαβατὸν τὸ ρέεθρον ἴδωνται γενόμενον, ἐσιέναι ταύτῃ ἐς τὴν πόλιν. οὕτω τε δὴ τάξας καὶ κατὰ ταῦτα παραιέσας ἀπήλαυνε αὐτὸς σὺν τῷ ἀχρηίῳ τοῦ στρατοῦ. ἀπικόμενος δὲ ἐπὶ τὴν λίμνην, τά περ ἢ τῶν Βαβυλωνίων βασιλεία ἐποίησε κατὰ τε τὸν ποταμὸν καὶ κατὰ τὴν λίμνην, ἐποίεε καὶ ὁ Κῦρος ἕτερα τοιαῦτα· τὸν γὰρ ποταμὸν διώρυχι ἐσαγαγὼν ἐς τὴν λίμνην ἐοῦσαν ἔλος, τὸ ἀρχαῖον ρέεθρον διαβατὸν εἶναι ἐποίησε, ὑπονοστήσαντος τοῦ ποταμοῦ. γενομένου δὲ τούτου τοιούτου, οἱ Πέρσαι οἳ περ ἐτετάχατο ἐπ' αὐτῷ τούτῳ κατὰ τὸ ρέεθρον τοῦ Εὐφρήτεω ποταμοῦ ὑπονενοστηκότος ἀνδρὶ ὥς ἐς μέσον μηρὸν μάλιστά κη, κατὰ τοῦτο ἐσήσαν ἐς τὴν Βαβυλῶνα. εἰ μὲν νυν προεπύθοντο ἢ ἔμαθον οἱ Βαβυλώνιοι τὸ ἐκ τοῦ Κύρου ποιούμενον, οἳ δ' ἂν περιδόντες τοὺς Πέρσας ἐσελθεῖν ἐς

τὴν στρατιὴν ἅπασαν ἐξ |putting in; in- ποταμοῦ, τῇ
 |cursion, charge
 ἐς τὴν πόλιν ἐσβάλλει, καὶ ὀπισθε αὐτὶς τῆς πόλιος
 τάξας ἐτέρους, τῇ |send forth, |τῆς πόλιος ὁ ποταμός,
 |allow forth
 προείπε τῷ στρατῷ, ὅταν |crossable, τὸ |stream ἴδωνται
 |fordable
 γενόμενον, ἐσιέναι ταύτῃ ἐς τὴν πόλιν. οὕτω τε δὴ
 τάξας καὶ κατὰ ταῦτα |recommend, |expel, exclude, ward off; (intrans)
 |exhort, warn |ride away
 τῷ |serving no purpose τοῦ. ἀπικόμενος δὲ ἐπὶ τὴν |lake, marsh,
 |basin, sea
 τά περ ἢ τῶν Βαβυλωνίων βασιλεία ἐποίησε κατὰ τε
 τὸν ποταμὸν καὶ κατὰ τὴν |lake, marsh, |ἵκε καὶ ὁ Κῦρος
 |basin, sea
 ἕτερα τοιαῦτα· τὸν γὰρ ποταμὸν |ditch, |lead in ἐς
 |canal
 τὴν |lake, marsh, basin, |marsh τὸ |ancient, |stream |crossable,
 |sea |from the |fordable
 εἶναι ἐποίησε, |sink, settle |beginning
 τοῦ ποταμοῦ. γενομένου
 δὲ τούτου τοιούτου, οἱ Πέρσαι οἳ περ ἐτετάχατο ἐπ’
 αὐτῷ τούτῳ κατὰ τὸ |stream τοῦ Εὐφρήτεω ποταμοῦ
 |sink, settle ἀνδρὶ ὥς ἐς μέσον |thigh μάλιστά κη,
 κατὰ τοῦτο |go in ἐς τὴν Βαβυλῶνα. εἰ μὲν νυν
 |learn in advance, ἔμαθον οἱ Βαβυλώνιοι τὸ ἐκ τοῦ Κύρου
 ποιούμενον, οἳ δ’ ἂν περιδόντες τοὺς Πέρσας ἐσελθεῖν ἐς

did as follows:— The main body of his army he posted at the place where the river runs into the city, and then again behind the city he set others, where the river issues forth from the city; and he proclaimed to his army that so soon as they should see that the stream had become passable, they should enter by this way into the city. Having thus set them in their places and in this manner exhorted them he marched away himself with that part of his army which was not fit for fighting: and when he came to the lake, Cyrus also did the same things which the queen of the Babylonians had done as regards the river and the lake; that is to say, he conducted the river by a channel into the lake, which was at that time a swamp, and so made the former course of the river passable by the sinking of the stream. When this had been done in such a manner, the Persians who had been posted for this very purpose entered by the bed of the river Euphrates into Babylon, the stream having sunk so far that it reached about to the middle of a man's thigh. Now if the Babylonians had had knowledge of it beforehand or had perceived that which was being done by Cyrus, they would have allowed the Persians to enter the city and then destroyed

*vocabulary***αίμασιά** wall of dry stones?**ἄλίσκομαι** be captured ~helix**ἄπροσδόκητος** unexpected; unaware**διαίρῃω** divide, distinguish, distribute**ἔσχατάω** be at the edge**ἔσχατος** farthest, last**εὐπάθεια** comfort**εὖς** good, brave, noble**κάρτα** very much ~κράτος**κατακλείω** enclose; shut up**κύρτη** sieve, cage**μέγαθος** tall, big (person)**μίν** him, her, it**ὄον** οὖ type of fruit**ὀρτή** holiday, feast**πάρεξ** alongside, diverging from; (+ῃ or gen) except; (+acc) beyond, alongside**Πέρσης** Persian**πυλὶς** little gate, back door**στρατιά** army ~strategy**τροφή** food, upkeep ~atrophy**φορέω** frequentative of φέρω, to carry ~bear**φόρον** forum**φόρος** tribute, revenue**χεῖλος** -εος (n, 3) lip**χορεύω** dance

τὴν πόλιν διέφθειραν ἂν κάκιστα· κατακλήσαντες γὰρ ἂν πάσας τὰς ἐς τὸν ποταμὸν πυλίδας ἐχούσας καὶ αὐτοὶ ἐπὶ τὰς αἵμασιās ἀναβάντες τὰς παρὰ τὰ χεῖλεα τοῦ ποταμοῦ ἐλληλαμένας, ἔλαβον ἂν σφέας ὡς ἐν κύρτῃ. νῦν δὲ ἐξ ἀπροσδοκίτου σφι παρέστησαν οἱ Πέρσαι. ὑπὸ δὲ μεγάθεος τῆς πόλιος, ὡς λέγεται ὑπὸ τῶν ταύτῃ οἰκημένων, τῶν περὶ τὰ ἔσχατα τῆς πόλιος ἐαλωκότων τοὺς τὸ μέσον οἰκέοντας τῶν Βαβυλωνίων οὐ μανθάνειν ἐαλωκότας, ἀλλὰ τυχεῖν γάρ σφι ἐοῦσαν ὀρτήν, χορεύειν τε τοῦτον τὸν χρόνον καὶ ἐν εὐπαθείῃσι εἶναι, ἐς ὃ δὴ καὶ τὸ κάρτα ἐπύθοντο.

1.192

καὶ Βαβυλὼν μὲν οὕτω τότε πρῶτον ἀραίρητο. τὴν δὲ δύναμιν τῶν Βαβυλωνίων πολλοῖσι μὲν καὶ ἄλλοισι δηλώσω ὅση τις ἐστί, ἐν δὲ δὴ καὶ τῷδε. βασιλεί τῷ μεγάλῳ ἐς τροφήν αὐτοῦ τε καὶ τῆς στρατιῆς διαραίρηται, πάρεξ τοῦ φόρου, γῇ πᾶσα ὅσης ἄρχει· δυνώδεκα ὧν μηνῶν ἐόντων ἐς τὸν ἐνιαυτὸν τοὺς τέσσερας μῆνας τρέφει μιν

τὴν πόλιν διέφθειραν ἂν κάκιστα· |enclose; shut up γὰρ
 ἂν πάσας τὰς ἐς τὸν ποταμὸν |little gate, |χούσας καὶ αὐτοὶ
 |back door
 ἐπὶ τὰς |wall of dry stones?.. τες τὰς παρὰ τὰ |lip τοῦ
 ποταμοῦ ἐληλαμένας, ἔλαβον ἂν σφέας ὡς ἐν |sieve, cage
 δὲ ἐξ |unexpected; σφι παρέστησαν οἱ Πέρσαι. ὑπὸ
 |unaware
 δὲ |tall, big τῆς πόλιος, ὡς λέγεται ὑπὸ τῶν ταύτῃ
 οἰκημένων, τῶν περὶ τὰ ἔσχατα τῆς πόλιος |be captured
 τοὺς τὸ μέσον οἰκέοντας τῶν Βαβυλωνίων οὐ μανθάνειν
 |be captured , ἀλλὰ τυχεῖν γάρ σφι εὐοῦσαν |holiday, |dance
 |feast
 τε τοῦτον τὸν χρόνον καὶ ἐν |comfort εἶναι, ἐς ὃ δὴ καὶ
 τὸ |very much ἔθοντο.

1.192

καὶ Βαβυλὼν μὲν οὕτω τότε πρῶτον ἀραίρητο. τὴν
 δὲ δύναμιν τῶν Βαβυλωνίων πολλοῖσι μὲν καὶ ἄλλοισι
 δηλώσω ὅση τις ἐστί, ἐν δὲ δὴ καὶ τῷδε. βασιλεί τῷ
 μεγάλῳ ἐς |food, αὐτοῦ τε καὶ τῆς στρατιῆς |divide, distin-
 |upkeep |guish, distribute
 παρέξ τοῦ φόρου, γῇ πᾶσα ὅσης ἄρχει· δυνάδεκα ὧν μηνῶν
 ἐόντων ἐς τὸν ἐνιαυτὸν τοὺς τέσσερας μῆνας τρέφει μιν

them miserably; for if they had closed all the gates that led to the river and mounted themselves upon the ramparts which were carried along the banks of the stream, they would have caught them as it were in a fish-wheel: but as it was, the Persians came upon them unexpectedly; and owing to the size of the city (so it is said by those who dwell there) after those about the extremities of the city had suffered capture, those Babylonians who dwelt in the middle did not know that they had been captured; but as they chanced to be holding a festival, they went on dancing and rejoicing during this time until they learnt the truth only too well.

Babylon then had thus been taken for the first time:

1.192

And as to the resources of the Babylonians how great they are, I shall show by many other proofs and among them also by this:— For the support of the great king and his army, apart from the regular tribute, the whole land of which he is ruler has been distributed into portions. Now whereas twelve months go to make up the year, for four of these he has his support from

*vocabulary***ἀργύριον** small coin**ἀρτάβη** 50 liters**ἀτελής** incomplete, endless; invalid, for free**ἐκτρέφω** raise, rear**ἑξακισχίλιοι** 6000**ἔρσην** male**κράτιστος** best**μέδιμνος** bushel**μεστός** full**μέτρον** measure ~metric**μυρίος** (ἰ) 10,000 ~myriad**νομός** home, district ~nemesis**ὀκτακόσιοι** 800**ὀκτώ** eight ~octopus**πάρεξ** alongside, diverging from; (+ῃ or gen) except; (+acc) beyond, alongside**Πέρσης** Persian**πολεμιστήριος** of/for a warrior**πρόσειμι** approach, draw near; add ~ion**προστάσσω** post at, attach to, command**σατραπήη** satrapy**τριτημόριος** 1/3**ὕω** (ῶ) to rain**χοῖνιξ** -κος (f) liter; shackle**χωρέω** withdraw, give way to (+dat) ~heir

ἡ Βαβυλωνίη χωρῇ, τοὺς δὲ ὀκτὼ τῶν μηνῶν ἡ λοιπὴ
 πᾶσα Ἀσίη. οὕτω τριτημορίη ἡ Ἀσσυρίη χώρα τῇ δυνάμει
 τῆς ἄλλης Ἀσίας. καὶ ἡ ἀρχὴ τῆς χώρας ταύτης, τὴν οἱ
 Πέρσαι σατραπήην καλέουσι, ἐστὶ ἀπασέων τῶν ἀρχέων
 πολλόν τι κρατίστη, ὅκου Τριτανταίχμη τῷ Ἀρταβάζου ἐκ
 βασιλέος ἔχοντι τὸν νομὸν τοῦτον ἀργυρίου μὲν προσήμει
 ἐκάστης ἡμέρης ἀρτάβη μεστή. ἡ δὲ ἀρτάβη, μέτρον
 ἐὼν Περσικόν, χωρεῖ μεδίμνου Ἀττικοῦ πλέον χοίνιξι
 τρισὶ Ἀττικῇσι. ἵπποι δὲ οἱ αὐτοῦ ἦσαν ἰδίῃ, παρέξ
 τῶν πολεμιστηρίων, οἱ μὲν ἀναβαίνοντες τὰς θηλέας
 ὀκτακόσιοι, αἱ δὲ βαινόμεναι ἑξακισχίλια καὶ μυρία·
 ἀνέβαινε γὰρ ἕκαστος τῶν ἐρσένων τούτων εἴκοσι ἵππους.
 κυνῶν δὲ Ἰνδικῶν τοσοῦτο δὴ τι πλῆθος ἐτρέφετο ὥστε
 τέσσερες τῶν ἐν τῷ πεδίῳ κῶμαι μεγάλαι, τῶν ἄλλων
 εὐῶσαι ἀτελέες, τοῖσι κυσὶ προσετέταχτο σιτία παρέχειν.
 τοιαῦτα μὲν τῷ ἄρχοντι τῆς Βαβυλῶνος ὑπῆρχε ἐόντα.

1.193

ἡ δὲ γῆ τῶν Ἀσσυρίων ἔεται μὲν ὀλίγω, καὶ τὸ ἐκτρέφον

ἡ Βαβυλωνίη |withdraw, give way|eight τῶν μηνῶν ἡ λοιπή
 |to (+dat)
 πᾶσα Ἀσίη. οὕτω |1/3 ἡ Ἀσσυρίη χώρα τῇ δυνάμει
 τῆς ἄλλης Ἀσίης. καὶ ἡ ἀρχὴ τῆς χώρας ταύτης, τὴν οἱ
 Πέρσαι |satrapy καλέουσι, ἐστὶ ἀπασέων τῶν ἀρχέων
 πολλόν τι |best , ὅκου Τριτανταίχμη τῷ Ἀρταβάζου ἐκ
 βασιλέος ἔχοντι τὸν |home, τοῦτον |small coin μὲν προσήμει
 |district
 ἐκάστης ἡμέρης |50 liters |full . ἡ δὲ |50 liters , |measure
 ἐὼν Περσικόν, |with- |bushel Ἀττικῷ πλέον |liter;
 |draw, |shackle
 τρισὶ Ἀττικῇσι. |give way |to (+dat) δὲ οἱ αὐτοῦ ἦσαν ἰδίῃ, παρέξ
 τῶν |of/for a warrior , οἱ μὲν ἀναβαίνοντες τὰς θηλέας
 |800 , αἱ δὲ βαινόμεναι |6000 καὶ |10,000
 ἀνέβαινε γὰρ ἕκαστος τῶν |male τούτων εἴκοσι ἵππους.
 κυνῶν δὲ Ἰνδικῶν τοσοῦτο δὴ τι πλῆθος ἐτρέφετο ὥστε
 τέσσερες τῶν ἐν τῷ πεδίῳ κῶμαι μεγάλαι, τῶν ἄλλων
 ἐοῦσαι |incomplete, ^ endless; |post at, attach to, σιτία παρέχειν.
 |invalid, for free |command
 τοιαῦτα μὲν τῷ ἄρχοντι τῆς Βαβυλῶνος ὑπῆρχε ἐόντα.

1.193

ἡ δὲ γῆ τῶν Ἀσσυρίων |to rain, ἐν ὀλίγῳ, καὶ τὸ |raise, rear

the territory of Babylon, and for the remaining eight months from the whole of the rest of Asia; thus the Assyrian land is in regard to resources the third part of all Asia: and the government, or satrapy as it is called by the Persians, of this territory is of all the governments by far the best; seeing that when Tritantaichmes son of Artabazos had this province from the king, there came in to him every day an artab full of silver coin (now the artab is a Persian measure and holds more than the medimnos of Attica by three Attic choinikes); and of horses he had in this province as his private property, apart from the horses for use in war, eight hundred stallions and sixteen thousand mares, for each of these stallions served twenty mares: of Indian hounds moreover such a vast number were kept that four large villages in the plain, being free from other contributions, had been appointed to provide food for the hounds.

1.193

Such was the wealth which belonged to the ruler of Babylon. Now the land of the Assyrians has but little rain;

vocabulary

ἀδρύνω ripen, mature

ἄμπελος (f) vine

ἄρδω give water

ἄρουρα land ~arable

αὐτόθι on the spot

δένδρεον -οῦ tree

δένδρον tree

δένδρος tree

διῶρυξ -χος (f) ditch, canal

εἰσέχω stretch into

εἰσέχω pour into

ἐκφέρω carry off ~bear

ἐλαία olive, olive tree ~olive

εὐπετής coming out well; (adv)
fortunately

κατατέμνω cut up

κηλωνήιον shadoof, water lever

κριθή (t) barley plant

λήιον standing grain

νηυσιπέρητος navigable

παραγίγνομαι be beside, attend

~genus

παράπαν completely

πλάτος -εος (n, 3) width

πυρά pyre ~pyre

πυρός (ῥ) wheat

πυρόω burn something

ρίζα root ~rhizome

συκέα -ῆς (ῥ) fig tree

συκῆ fig tree

τριηκόσιοι three hundred

φύλλον leaf

χειμερινός of winter

χωρέω withdraw, give way to (+dat)

~heir

χώρος place ~heir

τὴν ρίζαν τοῦ σίτου ἐστὶ τοῦτο· ἀρδόμενον μέντοι ἐκ τοῦ ποταμοῦ ἀδρύνεται τε τὸ λήιον καὶ παραγίνεται ὁ σίτος, οὐ κατὰ περ ἐν Αἰγύπτῳ αὐτοῦ τοῦ ποταμοῦ ἀναβαίνοντος ἐς τὰς ἀρούρας, ἀλλὰ χερσί τε καὶ κηλωνήιοισι ἀρδόμενος. ἡ γὰρ Βαβυλωνίη χώρα πᾶσα, κατὰ περ ἡ Αἰγυπτία, κατατέμνεται ἐς διώρυχας· καὶ ἡ μεγίστη τῶν διωρύχων ἐστὶ νησισιπέρητος, πρὸς ἥλιον τετραμμένη τὸν χειμερινόν, ἐσέχει δὲ ἐς ἄλλον ποταμὸν ἐκ τοῦ Εὐφρήτεω, ἐς τὸν Τίγρην, παρ' ὃν Νίνος πόλις οἴκητο. ἔστι δὲ χωρέων αὕτη πασέων μακρῶ ἀρίστη τῶν ἡμεῖς ἴδμεν Δήμητρος καρπὸν ἐκφέρειν... τὰ γὰρ δὴ ἄλλα δένδρεα οὐδὲ πειράται¹ ἀρχὴν φέρειν, οὔτε συκῆν οὔτε ἄμπελον οὔτε ἐλαίην. τὸν δὲ τῆς Δήμητρος καρπὸν ὧδε ἀγαθὴ ἐκφέρειν ἐστὶ ὥστε² ἐπὶ³ διηκόσια μὲν τὸ παράπαν ἀποδιδοῖ, ἐπειδὰν δὲ ἄριστα αὕτῃ ἐωντῆς ἐνείκη, ἐπὶ τριηκόσια ἐκφέρει. τὰ δὲ φύλλα αὐτόθι τῶν τε πυρῶν καὶ τῶν κριθέων τὸ πλάτος γίνεται τεσσέρων εὐπετέως

¹ The land doesn't try. ² approximately ³ expressing a multiple of the seed

τῇν |root τοῦ σίτου ἐστὶ τοῦτο· |give water μέντοι ἐκ
τοῦ ποταμοῦ |ripen, |mature τε τὸ |standing |grain παραγίνεται ὁ
σίτος, οὐ κατὰ περ ἐν Αἰγύπτῳ αὐτοῦ τοῦ ποταμοῦ
ἀναβαίνοντος ἐς τὰς |land , ἀλλὰ χερσί τε καὶ
|shadoof, water |give water ἡ γὰρ Βαβυλωνίη χώρα πᾶσα,
|lever
κατὰ περ ἡ Αἰγυπτία, κατατέμνεται ἐς |ditch, canal καὶ
ἡ μεγίστη τῶν |ditch, canal ἐστὶ |navigable , πρὸς ἥλιον
τετραμμένη τὸν |of winter , ἐσέχει δὲ ἐς ἄλλον ποταμὸν
ἐκ τοῦ Εὐφράτεω, ἐς τὸν Τίγρην, παρ' ὃν Νίνος πόλις
οἰκητο. ἔστι δὲ χωρέων αὕτη πασέων μακρῶ ἀρίστη
τῶν ἡμεῖς ἴδμεν Δήμητρος καρπὸν |carry off ... τὰ γὰρ δὴ
ἄλλα δένδρεα οὐδὲ πειρᾶται¹ ἀρχὴν φέρειν, οὔτε συκὴν
οὔτε |vine οὔτε |olive . τὸν δὲ τῆς Δήμητρος καρπὸν
ᾧδε ἀγαθὴ |carry off ἐστὶ ὥστε² ἐπὶ³ διηκόσια μὲν τὸ
|completely ἱποδιδοί, ἐπειδὰν δὲ ἄριστα αὐτῇ ἐωυτῆς ἐνείκη,
ἐπὶ |three |carry off τὰ δὲ |leaf |on the spot ' τε πυρῶν
|hundred
καὶ τῶν |barley τὸ |width γίνεται τεσσέρων |coming out well; (adv)
|plant |fortunately

¹ The land doesn't try. ² approximately ³ expressing a multiple of the seed

and this little gives nourishment to the root of the corn, but the crop is ripened and the ear comes on by the help of watering from the river, not as in Egypt by the coming up of the river itself over the fields, but the crop is watered by hand or with swing-buckets. For the whole Babylonian territory like the Egyptian is cut up into channels, and the largest of the channels is navigable for ships and runs in the direction of the sunrising in winter from the Euphrates to another river, namely the Tigris, along the bank of which lay the city of Nineveh. This territory is of all that we know the best by far for producing corn: as to trees, it does not even attempt to bear them, either fig or vine or olive, but for producing corn it is so good that it is as much as two hundred fold for the average, and when it bears at its best it produces three hundred fold. The leaves of the wheat and barley there grow to be full four fingers broad; and

vocabulary

ἀπιστία disbelief, distrust
ἀπορρέω flow, fall off
βαλανηφόρος bearing dates
βάλανος (f) nut; pin, bolt
δάκτυλος finger, toe
δένδρον tree
εἰσδύνω take part in
ἔλαιον oil, olive oil ~olive
Ἑλλήν Greek
ἐξεπίσταμαι know well
ἔρσην male
θῶμα a wonder, feeling of surprise
 ~theater
καρποφόρος fruit-bearing

κέγχρος small thing, bit
μέγαθος tall, big (person)
μέλι honey, a sweet
μνήμη reminder, memorial
ὄλυνθος wild fig
πεπαίνω ripen
περιδέω tie around, on
σήσαμον sesame
σήσαμος sesame
συκέα -ῆς (ῶ) fig tree
συκῇ fig tree
σῦκον fig
φοῖνιξ -χος (m) red or purple dye or color; bay (horse); palm tree
φύω produce, beget; clasp ~physics

δακτύλων. ἐκ δὲ κέγχρου καὶ σησάμου ὅσον τι δένδρον μέγαθος γίνεται, ἐξεπιστάμενος μνήμην οὐ ποιήσομαι, εὖ εἰδὼς ὅτι τοῖσι μὴ ἀπιγμένοισι ἐς τὴν Βαβυλωνίην χώραν καὶ τὰ εἰρημένα καρπῶν ἐχόμενα ἐς ἀπιστίην πολλὴν ἀπίκται. χρέωνται δὲ οὐδὲν ἐλαίῳ ἀλλ' ἢ ἐκ τῶν σησάμων ποιεῦντες. εἰσὶ δέ σφι φοίνικες πεφυκότες ἀνὰ πᾶν τὸ πεδῖον, οἱ πλεῖνες αὐτῶν καρποφόροι, ἐκ τῶν καὶ σιτία καὶ οἶνον καὶ μέλι ποιεῦνται· τοὺς συκέων τρόπον θεραπεύουσι τά τε ἄλλα καὶ φοινίκων τοὺς ἔρσενας Ἑλληνες καλέουσι, τούτων τὸν καρπὸν περιδέουσι τῇσι βαλανηφόροισι τὸν φοινίκων, ἵνα πεπαίνῃ τε σφι ὁ ψῆν¹ τὴν βάλανον ἐσδύνων καὶ μὴ ἀπορρέῃ ὁ καρπὸς τοῦ φοίνικος· ψῆνας γὰρ δὴ φέρουσι ἐν τῷ καρπῷ οἱ ἔρσενες κατὰ περ δὴ οἱ ὄλυνθοι.

1.194

τὸ δὲ ἀπάντων θῶμα μέγιστόν μοι ἐστὶ τῶν ταύτῃ μετὰ γε αὐτὴν τὴν πόλιν, ἔρχομαι φράσω· τὰ πλοῖα αὐτοῖσι

¹ a pollinating insect

|finger, toe ἑκ δὲ |small καὶ σῆσάμου ὅσον τι |tree
 |thing, bit
 |tall, big γίνεται, ἐξεπιστάμενος |reminder, ὃ ποιήσομαι,
 |memorial
 εὖ εἰδὼς ὅτι τοῖσι μὴ ἀπιγμένοισι ἐς τὴν Βαβυλωνίην
 χώραν καὶ τὰ εἰρημένα καρπῶν ἐχόμενα ἐς ἀπιστίην
 πολλὴν ἀπίκται. χρέωνται δὲ οὐδὲν |oil ἄλλ' ἢ ἐκ τῶν
 σῆσάμων ποιεῦντες. εἰσὶ δέ σφι |red, red dye; φυτότες ἀνά
 |palm tree
 πᾶν τὸ πεδίον, οἱ πλεῦνες αὐτῶν |fruit-bearing , ἐκ τῶν καὶ
 σιτία καὶ οἶνον καὶ |honey ὀιεῦνται· τοὺς συκέων τρόπον
 θεραπεύουσι τά τε ἄλλα καὶ |red, red dye; οὓς |male
 |palm tree
 |Greek καλέουσι, τούτων τὸν καρπὸν |tie around, on, ἵσου
 |bearing dates τὸν |red, red , ὡς dye;|ripen τε σφι ὁ ψῆγν¹
 |palm tree
 τὴν |nut; πῖν, |take part in καὶ μὴ |flow, fall off ὁ καρπὸς τοῦ
 |bolt
 |red, red dye; ἡνας γὰρ δὴ φέρουσι ἐν τῷ καρπῷ οἱ |male
 |palm tree
 κατὰ περ δὴ οἱ |wild fig

1.194

τὸ δὲ ἀπάντων | wonder, ἐγιστόν μοι ἐστὶ τῶν ταύτῃ μετὰ
| surprise
γε αὐτὴν τὴν πόλιν, ἔρχομαι φράσω· τὰ πλοῖα αὐτοῖσι

¹ a pollinating insect

from millet and sesame seed how large a tree grows, I know myself but shall not record, being well aware that even what has already been said relating to the crops produced has been enough to cause disbelief in those who have not visited the Babylonian land. They use no oil of olives, but only that which they make of sesame seed; and they have date-palms growing over all the plain, most of them fruit-bearing, of which they make both solid food and wine and honey; and to these they attend in the same manner as to fig-trees, and in particular they take the fruit of those palms which the Hellenes call male-palms, and tie them upon the date-bearing palms, so that their gall-fly may enter into the date and ripen it and that the fruit of the palm may not fall off: for the male-palm produces gall-flies in its fruit just as the wild-fig does.

1.194

But the greatest marvel of all the things in the land after the city itself, to my mind is this which I am about to tell: Their boats, those I mean

*vocabulary***βίκος** jar, cask**γόμος** cargo**διατίθημι** arrange; set out goods for sale ~thesis**διφθέρα** leather**ἔδαφος** -ους (n, 3) ground, floor
~edifice**ἐνιμι** be in ~ion**ἐξωθεν** from outside**εὖς** good, brave, noble**ζώος** alive ~zoo**ἰθύνω** (ιϥ) straighten, aim, guide;
accuse; punish ~justice**καλάμη** straw, stubble**κάρτα** very much ~κράτος**κατάγω** lead down/home; land
~demagogue**κατύπερθεν** above, from above**κηρύσσω** be a henchman, summon
people**κυκλωτερής** rounded (by wear) ~cycle**νομεύς** -ος (m) shepherd, herder
~nemesis**ὄνος** (f) donkey ~onager**ὄον** οὖ type of fruit**πεντακισχίλιοι** 5,000**περιτείνω** stretch all around, over**πλήκτρον** plectrum, barge pole**πρύμνα** stern**πρῶρα** bow, prow ~prolog**σκύτινος** (ϣ) of leather**στεγαστρίς** roof, covering**τάλαντον** scale, a unit of weight
~talent**τέμνω** cut, sacrifice, solemnize
~tonsure**φοινικήιος** of palm trees**φορτίον** burden, load**φόρτος** outward cargo ~bear**ώθέω** push

ἐστὶ τὰ κατὰ τὸν ποταμὸν πορευόμενα ἐς τὴν Βαβυλῶνα,
 ἐόντα κυκλοτερέα, πάντα σκύτινα. ἐπεὰν γὰρ ἐν τοῖσι
 Ἀρμενίοισι τοῖσι κατύπερθε Ἀσσυρίων οἰκημένοισι νομέας
 ἰτέης ταμόμενοι ποιήσωνται, περιτείνουσι τούτοις
 διφθέρας στεγαστρίδας ἔξωθεν ἐδάφεος τρόπον, οὔτε
 πρύμνην ἀποκρίνοντες οὔτε πρῶρην συνάγοντες, ἀλλ'
 ἀσπίδος τρόπον κυκλοτερέα ποιήσαντες καὶ καλάμης¹
 πλήσαντες πᾶν τὸ πλοῖον τοῦτο ἀπιεῖσι κατὰ τὸν
 ποταμὸν φέρεσθαι, φορτίων πλήσαντες· μάλιστα δὲ
 βίκους φοινικίους κατάγουσι οἴνου πλέους. ἰθύνεται δὲ
 ὑπὸ τε δύο πλήκτρων καὶ δύο ἀνδρῶν ὀρθῶν ἐστεώτων,
 καὶ ὁ μὲν ἔσω ἔλκει τὸ πλήκτρον ὁ δὲ ἔξω ὠθέει. ποιέεται
 δὲ καὶ κάρτα μεγάλα ταῦτα τὰ πλοῖα καὶ ἐλάσσω· τὰ δὲ
 μέγιστα αὐτῶν καὶ πεντακισχιλίων ταλάντων γόμον ἔχει.
 ἐν ἐκάστῳ δὲ πλοίῳ ὄνος ζωὸς ἔνεστι, ἐν δὲ τοῖσι μέζοσι
 πλεῦνες. ἐπεὰν ὦν ἀπίκωνται πλέοντες ἐς τὴν Βαβυλῶνα
 καὶ διαθέωνται τὸν φόρτον, νομέας μὲν τοῦ πλοίου καὶ
 τὴν καλάμην πᾶσαν ἀπ' ὧν ἐκήρυξαν, τὰς δὲ

¹ reeds to be sold later

ἐστὶ τὰ κατὰ τὸν ποταμὸν πορευόμενα ἐς τὴν Βαβυλῶνα,
 ἐόντα |rounded , πάντα |of leather. ἐπεὰν γὰρ ἐν τοῖσι
 Ἀρμενίοισι τοῖσι |above, from above ,ρίων οἰκημένοις |shepherd,
 |herder
 ἰτέης ταμόμενοι ποιήσονται, |stretch all τούτοις
 |around, over
 |leather |roof, covering |from out-ground, τρόπον, οὔτε
 |side |floor
 |stern ἀποκρίνοντες οὔτε |bow, prow συνάγοντες, ἀλλ'
 ἀσπίδος τρόπον |rounded ποιήσαντες καὶ |straw,
 |stubble¹
 πλήσαντες πᾶν τὸ πλοῖον τοῦτο ἀπιέει κατὰ τὸν
 ποταμὸν φέρεσθαι, |burden, load λήσαντες· μάλιστα δὲ
 |jar, cask |of palm trees |lead down/home; land ἄρους. |straighten, ἵaim, guide;
 |accuse; punish
 ὑπὸ τε δύο |plectrum, καὶ δύο ἀνδρῶν ὀρθῶν ἐστεῶτων,
 |barge pole
 καὶ ὁ μὲν ἔσω ἔλκει τὸ |plectrum, ὁ δὲ ἔξω |push . ποιέεται
 |barge pole
 δὲ καὶ |very much ,άλα ταῦτα τὰ πλοῖα καὶ ἐλάσσω· τὰ δὲ
 μέγιστα αὐτῶν καὶ πεντακισχιλίων |scale, a unit|cargo ἔχει.
 |of weight
 ἐν ἐκάστῳ δὲ πλοίῳ |donkey ὃς |be in , ἐν δὲ τοῖσι μέζοσι
 πλεῦνες. ἐπεὰν ὦν ἀπίκωνται πλέοντες ἐς τὴν Βαβυλῶνα
 καὶ |arrange; set ἄνω |outward, |shepherd, ἐν τοῦ πλοίου καὶ
 |goods for sale |cargo |herder
 τὴν |straw, πᾶσαν ἀπ' ὧν ἐκήρυξαν, τὰς δὲ
 |stubble

¹ reeds to be sold later

which go down the river to Babylon, are round and all of leather: for they make ribs for them of willow which they cut in the land of the Armenians who dwell above the Assyrians, and round these they stretch hides which serve as a covering outside by way of hull, not making broad the stern nor gathering in the prow to a point, but making the boats round like a shield: and after that they stow the whole boat with straw and suffer it to be carried down the stream full of cargo; and for the most part these boats bring down casks of palm-wood filled with wine. The boat is kept straight by two steering-oars and two men standing upright, and the man inside pulls his oar while the man outside pushes. These vessels are made both of very large size and also smaller, the largest of them having a burden of as much as five thousand talents' weight; and in each one there is a live ass, and in those of larger size several. So when they have arrived at Babylon in their voyage and have disposed of their cargo, they sell by auction the ribs of the boat and all the straw, but they pack the hides upon

vocabulary

ἄετός eagle ~avis
ἀναδέω wreath, tie
ἄνευ away from; not having; not
 needing ~Sp. sin
ἀνίημι urge, impel; release ~jet
ἀπελαύνω expel, exclude, ward off;
 (intrans) ride away
διφθέρα leather
ἐμβάς slipper
ἐπενδύω put on over
ἐπισάπτω pile a load on
ἐπίσημον mark, badge
ἐπίσημος marked, significant
ἐπιχώριος native
ἐσθής clothes ~vest
κομάω have long hair
κρίνον lily

λίνεος linen
μῆλον sheep, small livestock; apple,
 tree fruit
μίτρα metal waist guard
μυρίζω anoint
ὄνος (f) donkey ~onager
παραπλήσιος similar to
περιβάλλω act: excel; mid: put on
 clothing ~ballistic
ποδηνεκής reaching to the feet
προσδοκάω expect
ρόδον rose
σκῆπτρον scepter, staff ~scepter
τάχος -ους (n, 3) speed ~tachometer
τοιόσδε such
ὕπόδημα -τος (n, 3) sandals
χειροποίητος artificial
χλανίδιον woman's mantle

διφθέρας ἐπισάξαντες ἐπὶ τοὺς ὄνους ἀπελαύνουσι ἐς τοὺς Ἀρμενίους. ἀνὰ τὸν ποταμὸν γὰρ δὴ οὐκ οἶά τε ἐστὶ πλέειν οὐδενὶ τρόπῳ ὑπὸ τάχεος τοῦ ποταμοῦ· διὰ γὰρ ταῦτα καὶ οὐκ ἐκ ξύλων ποιεῦνται τὰ πλοῖα ἀλλ' ἐκ διφθερέων. ἐπεὰν δὲ τοὺς ὄνους ἐλαύνοντες ἀπίκωνται ὀπίσω ἐς τοὺς Ἀρμενίους, ἄλλα τρόπῳ τῷ αὐτῷ ποιεῦνται πλοῖα.

1.195

τὰ μὲν δὴ πλοῖα αὐτοῖσι ἐστὶ τοιαῦτα· ἐσθήτι δὲ τοιγῆδε χρέωνται, κιθῶνι ποδηγεκί λινέῳ, καὶ ἐπὶ τοῦτον ἄλλον εἰρίνεον κιθῶνα ἐπενδύνει καὶ χλανίδιον λευκὸν περιβαλλόμενος, ὑποδήματα ἔχων ἐπιχώρια, παραπλήσια τῇσι Βοιωτίῃσι ἐμβάσι. κομῶντες δὲ τὰς κεφαλὰς μίτρησι ἀναδέονται, μεμυρισμένοι πᾶν τὸ σῶμα. σφρηγίδα δὲ ἕκαστος ἔχει καὶ σκῆπτρον χειροποίητον· ἐπ' ἐκάστῳ δὲ σκῆπτρῳ ἔπεστι πεποιημένον ἢ μῆλον ἢ ῥόδον ἢ κρίνον ἢ αἰετὸς ἢ ἄλλο τι· ἄνευ γὰρ ἐπισήμου οὐ σφιν νόμος ἐστὶ ἔχειν σκῆπτρον.

|leather |pile a load on ἐπὶ τοὺς |don- |expel, exclude, 'ward 'off; (intrans)
|key |ride away

Ἀρμενίους. ἀνὰ τὸν ποταμὸν γὰρ δὴ οὐκ οἶά τε ἐστὶ πλέειν

οὐδενὶ τρόπῳ ὑπὸ |speed τοῦ ποταμοῦ· διὰ γὰρ ταῦτα

καὶ οὐκ ἐκ ξύλων ποιεῦνται τὰ πλοῖα ἀλλ' ἐκ |leather

ἐπεὰν δὲ τοὺς |donkey 'λαύνοντες ἀπίκωνται ὀπίσω ἐς τοὺς

Ἀρμενίους, ἄλλα τρόπῳ τῷ αὐτῷ ποιεῦνται πλοῖα.

1.195

τὰ μὲν δὴ πλοῖα αὐτοῖσι ἐστὶ τοιαῦτα· |clothes δὲ

|such χρέωνται, κιθῶνι |reaching to|linen , καὶ ἐπὶ
|the feet

τοῦτον ἄλλον εἰρίνεον κιθῶνα |put on over αἰ |woman's mantle

λευκὸν |excel; don , |sandals ἔχων |native ,

|similar to τῇσι Βοιωτήσι ἐμβάσι. |have long hair τὰς

κεφαλὰς |metal |wreath, tie , |anoint πᾶν τὸ σῶμα.

|waist
|guard σφρηγίδα δὲ ἑκαστος ἔχει καὶ |scepter, |artificial ἐπ'
|staff

ἐκάστῳ δὲ |scepter, ἔπεστι πεποιημένον ἢ |sheep; ἢ |rose
|staff |apple

ἢ |lily ἢ |eagle ἢ ἄλλο τι· ἄνευ γὰρ ἐπισήμου οὐ σφι

νόμος ἐστὶ ἔχειν |scepter,
|staff

their asses and drive them off to Armenia: for up the stream of the river it is not possible by any means to sail, owing to the swiftness of the current; and for this reason they make their boats not of timber but of hides. Then when they have come back to the land of the Armenians, driving their asses with them, they make other boats in the same manner.

1.195

Such are their boats; and the following is the manner of dress which they use, namely a linen tunic reaching to the feet, and over this they put on another of wool, and then a white mantle thrown round, while they have shoes of a native fashion rather like the Boeotian slippers. They wear their hair long and bind their heads round with fillets, and they are anointed over the whole of their body with perfumes. Each man has a seal and a staff carved by hand, and on each staff is carved either an apple or a rose or a lily or an eagle or some other device, for it is not their custom to have a staff without a device upon it.

*vocabulary***ἄλης** crowded; all together**ἅπαξ** once**ἄρτισις** equipment**γάμος** wedding, sex ~bigamy**διεξέρχομαι** go through**εἶδος** -ους (n, 3) appearance, form
~oid**εἰσάγω** lead in ~demagogue**ἐξωνέομαι** redeem, pay off**ἐπίγαμος** marriageable**εὐδαίμων** blessed with a good genius**εὐειδής** good-looking ~wit**καλλιστεύω** be the best**κηρύσσω** be a henchman, summon

people

κώμη village**ὄμιλος** (ἰ) crowd, throng ~homily**παρθένος** (f) girl, virgin ~Parthenon**πéριξ** all around**πέρνημι** export, sell as a slave ~porno**πωλέομαι** go back and forth**πωλέω** sell**πῶλος** (f) foal ~foal**σοφός** skilled, clever, wise**ὑπερβάλλω** cause to go beyond; delay

~ballistic

χρυσίον (ῶ) gold coin**ώραῖος** ripe; young adult

1.196

αὕτη μὲν δὴ σφι ἄρτισις περὶ τὸ σῶμα ἐστί· νόμοι δὲ αὐτοῖσι ὧδε κατεστᾶσι, ὁ μὲν σοφώτατος ὅδε κατὰ γνώμην τὴν ἡμετέρεην, τῷ καὶ Ἰλλυριῶν Ἐνετοὺς πυνθάνομαι χρᾶσθαι. κατὰ κώμας ἐκάστας ἅπαξ τοῦ ἔτεος ἐκάστου ἐποιέετο τάδε· ὥς ἂν αἱ παρθένοι γενοίατο γάμων ὠραῖαι, ταύτας ὅκως συναγάγοιεν πάσας, ἐς ἓν χωρίον ἐσάγεσκον ἀλέας, περίξ δὲ αὐτὰς ἴστατο ὄμιλος ἀνδρῶν, ἀνιστὰς δὲ κατὰ μίαν ἐκάστην κήρυξ πωλέεσκε, πρῶτα μὲν τὴν εὐειδεστάτην ἐκ πασέων· μετὰ δέ, ὅκως αὕτη εὐροῦσα πολλὸν χρυσίον πρηθείη, ἄλλην ἂν ἐκήρυσσε ἢ μετ' ἐκείνην ἔσκε εὐειδεστάτη· ἐπωλέοντο δὲ ἐπὶ συνοικίῃσι. ὅσοι μὲν δὴ ἔσκον εὐδαίμονες τῶν Βαβυλωνίων ἐπίγαμοι, ὑπερβάλλοντες ἀλλήλους ἐξωνέοντο τὰς καλλιστευνούσας· ὅσοι δὲ τοῦ δήμου ἔσκον ἐπίγαμοι, οὗτοι δὲ εἶδος μὲν οὐδὲν ἐδέοντο χρηστοῦ, οἳ δ' ἂν χρήματά τε καὶ αἰσχίονας παρθένους ἐλάμβανον. ὥς γὰρ δὴ διεξέλθοι ὁ κήρυξ πωλέων τὰς εὐειδεστάτας

1.196

αὕτη μὲν δὴ σφι |equipment ἐρὶ τὸ σῶμα ἐστί· νόμοι
 δὲ αὐτοῖσι ὧδε κατεστᾶσι, ὁ μὲν |skilled, clever, ὅδε
 |wise
 κατὰ γνώμην τὴν ἡμετέρην, τῷ καὶ Ἰλλυριῶν Ἐνετοῦς
 πυνθάνομαι χρᾶσθαι. κατὰ |village ἐκάστας |once τοῦ
 ἔτεος ἐκάστου ἐποιέετο τάδε· ὡς ἂν αἱ |girl, virgin γενοίαιτο
 |wedding, |ripe; , ταύτας ὅκως συναγάγοιεν πάσας, ἐς
 |sex |young
 ἐν χωρίῳ |adult |lead in |crowded; |all around αὐτὰς ἴστατο
 |all to-
 |crowd ἀνδρῶν, ἀνιστὰς δὲ κατὰ μίαν ἐκάστην κήρυξ
 |gather
 |sell , πρῶτα μὲν τὴν |good-looking ἐκ πασέων·
 μετὰ δέ, ὅκως αὕτη εὐρούσα πολλὸν |gold coin |export, sell
 |as a slave
 ἄλλην ἂν |be a henchman, εἴτ' ἐκείνην ἔσκε |good-looking
 |summon people
 ἐπωλέοντο δὲ ἐπὶ συνοικίῃσι. ὅσοι μὲν δὴ ἔσκον |blessed with a
 |good genius
 τῶν Βαβυλωνίων |marriageable |cause to go be- ἀλλήλους
 |yond; delay
 ἐξωνέοντο τὰς |be the best ὅσοι δὲ τοῦ δήμου ἔσκον
 |marriageable ἔτοι δὲ |form μὲν οὐδὲν ἐδέοντο χρηστοῦ, οἳ δ'
 ἂν χρήματά τε καὶ αἰσχίονας |girl, virgin ἐλάμβανον. ὡς
 γὰρ δὴ |go through ἔκ κήρυξ πωλέων τὰς |good-looking

1.196

Such is the equipment of their bodies: and the customs which are established among them are as follows, the wisest in our opinion being this, which I am informed that the Enetoi in Illyria also have. In every village once in each year it was done as follows:— When the maidens grew to the age for marriage, they gathered these all together and brought them in a body to one place, and round them stood a company of men: and the crier caused each one severally to stand up, and proceeded to sell them, first the most comely of all, and afterwards, when she had been sold and had fetched a large sum of money, he would put up another who was the most comely after her: and they were sold for marriage. Now all the wealthy men of the Babylonians who were ready to marry vied with one another in bidding for the most beautiful maidens; those however of the common sort who were ready to marry did not require a fine form, but they would accept money together with less comely maidens. For when the crier had made an end of selling the most comely of the

vocabulary

ἀλίσκομαι be captured ~helix
ἄμορφος misshapen, shapeless
ἄνευ away from; not having; not
 needing ~Sp. sin
ἀνίημι urge, impel; release ~jet
ἀπάγω lead away, back ~demagogue
ἀποφέρω carry off, carry back ~bear
διατελέω accomplish; keep doing
 ~apostle
ἐγγυητής -οῦ (m, 1) guarantor
ἐκδίδωμι hand over ~donate
ἐλάχιστος smallest, shortest, fewest
ἐμπηρος crippled
ἐξειμι go forth; is possible ~ion
ἐξευρίσκω find; discover ~eureka
εὐειδής good-looking ~wit
εὖμορφος beautiful

θῆλυς female; (rare) abundant ~female
κακῶ harm, disfigure ~cacophony
καταπορνέω treat as a prostitute
κηρύσσω be a henchman, summon
 people
κώμη village
οἰκοφθορέω lose one's fortune
παρθένος (f) girl, virgin ~Parthenon
πρίμαι buy
πρόκειμαι be placed by; be devoted to
προσδοκάω expect
σπανίζω be scarce; lack; use up
συμφέρω bring together; be expedient;
 agree; (mp) happen ~bear
συνοικέω live together
ὕφιστημι promise, undertake ~station
χρυσίον (ῶ) gold coin
ὠνέομαι buy

τῶν παρθένων ἀνίστη ἂν τὴν ἀμορφεστάτην, ἣ εἴ τις αὐτέων ἔμπηρος εἴη, καὶ ταύτην ἂν ἐκήρυσσε, ὅστις θέλοι ἐλάχιστον χρυσίον λαβὼν συνοικέειν αὐτῇ, ἐς ὃ τῷ τὸ ἐλάχιστον ὑπισταμένῳ προσέκειτο. τὸ δὲ ἂν χρυσίον ἐγένετο ἀπὸ τῶν εὐειδέων παρθένων καὶ οὕτω αἱ εὐμορφοὶ τὰς ἀμόρφους καὶ ἐμπήρους ἐξεδίδουσιν. ἐκδοῦναι δὲ τὴν ἐωντοῦ θυγατέρα ὅτεω βούλοιτο ἕκαστος οὐκ ἐξῆν, οὐδὲ ἄνευ ἐγγυητέω ἀπάγεσθαι τὴν παρθένον πριάμενον, ἀλλ' ἐγγυητὰς χρῆν καταστήσαντα ἢ μὲν συνοικήσειν αὐτῇ, οὕτω ἀπάγεσθαι. εἰ δὲ μὴ συμφεροίατο, ἀποφέρειν τὸ χρυσίον ἔκειτο νόμος. ἐξῆν δὲ καὶ ἐξ ἄλλης ἐλθόντα κώμης τὸν βουλόμενον ὠνέεσθαι. ὁ μὲν νυν κάλλιστος νόμος οὗτός σφι ἦν, οὐ μέντοι νῦν γε διατελέει ἐών, ἄλλο δέ τι ἐξευρήκασιν νεωστὶ γενέσθαι ἵνα μὴ ἀδικοῖεν αὐτὰς μηδ' εἰς ἑτέραν πόλιν ἄγωνται· ἐπεῖτε γὰρ ἀλόντες¹ ἐκακώθησαν καὶ οἰκοφθορήθησαν, πᾶς τις τοῦ δήμου βίου σπανίζων καταπορνεύει τὰ θήλεα τέκνα.

¹ the nation

τῶν |girl, virgin ἀνίστη ἂν τὴν ἀμορφεστάτην, ἣ εἴ τις
 αὐτέων |crippled εἴη, καὶ ταύτην ἂν |be a henchman,^s θέλοι
 |smallest, |gold coin λαβὼν |live together |τῇ, ἐς ὃ τῷ τὸ
 |shortest,
 |fewest
 |smallest, |promise, προσέκειτο. τὸ δὲ ἂν |gold coin
 |shortest, |undertake
 |fewest
 ἐγένετο ἀπὸ τῶν |good-looking |girl, virgin καὶ οὕτω αἱ |beautiful
 τὰς |misshapen, καὶ |crippled |hand over . |hand over ὃς τὴν
 |shapeless
 ἑωυτοῦ θυγατέρα ὅτεω βούλοιτο ἕκαστος οὐκ ἐξῆν, οὐδὲ
 ἄνευ ἐγγυητέω ἀπάγεσθαι τὴν |girl, virgin πριάμενον, ἀλλ'
 |guarantor χρῆν καταστήσαντα ἢ μὲν |live together αὐτῇ,
 οὕτω ἀπάγεσθαι. εἰ δὲ μὴ συμφεροίαιτο, |carry off τὸ
 |gold coin ἔκειτο νόμος. ἐξῆν δὲ καὶ ἐξ ἄλλης ἐλθόντα |village
 τὸν βουλόμενον |buy . ὁ μὲν νυν κάλλιστος νόμος
 οὗτός σφι ἦν, οὐ μέντοι νῦν γε |accomplish; ἔλυν, ἄλλο δέ τι
 |keep doing
 |find;
 |discover νεωστὶ γενέσθαι ἵνα μὴ ἀδικοῖεν αὐτὰς μηδ' εἰς
 ἑτέραν πόλιν ἄγωνται· ἐπεῖτε γὰρ ἀλόντες¹ |harm, disfigure
 καὶ |lose one's fortune , πᾶς τις τοῦ δήμου βίου |be scarce;
 |lack; use up
 |treat as a prosti- τὰ θήλεα τέκνα.
 |tute

¹ the nation

maidens, then he would cause to stand up that one who was least shapely, or any one of them who might be crippled in any way, and he would make proclamation of her, asking who was willing for least gold to have her in marriage, until she was assigned to him who was willing to accept least: and the gold would be got from the sale of the comely maidens, and so those of beautiful form provided dowries for those which were unshapely or crippled; but to give in marriage one's own daughter to whomsoever each man would, was not allowed, nor to carry off the maiden after buying her without a surety; for it was necessary for the man to provide sureties that he would marry her, before he took her away; and if they did not agree well together, the law was laid down that he should pay back the money. It was allowed also for any one who wished it to come from another village and buy. This then was their most honourable custom; it does not however still exist at the present time, but they have found out of late another way, in order that the men may not ill-treat them or take them to another city: for since the time when being conquered they were oppressed and ruined, each one of the common people when he is in want of livelihood prostitutes his female children.

vocabulary

ἄγγος -εος (n, 3) container
ἐκφεύγω flee from, escape ~fugitive
ἐκφορέω carry out ~bear
ἔξιμι go forth; is possible ~ion
ἐπείρομαι ask as well; ask then
ἐτέρωθι opposite, elsewhere, anywhere
 ~other
εὖς good, brave, noble
θρῆνος dirge ~threnody
θυμίαμα incense
ἵζω to seat ~sit
ιητρός (ι) physician
κάμνω toil, be tired, acquire by toil; be
 troubled; be sick
καταγίζω devote, dedicate
μέλι honey, a sweet
νόσος (f) plague, pestilence ~noisome

νοῦσος (f) plague, pestilence ~noisome
ὄον οὓ type of fruit
ὅποῖος whatever kind
ὄρθρος dawn
ὅσάκις as often as, whenever
παραινέω recommend, exhort, warn
παραπλήσιος similar to
παρεξέρχομαι pass by, slip past
πρόσεμι approach, draw near; add
 ~ion
προσίημι be allowed near
σιγά silence
σιγάω (ι) be silent
σοφία skill; wisdom ~sophistry
συμβουλευώ give advice; (mid) consult
 ~volunteer
ταφή burial, grave

1.197

δεύτερος δὲ σοφίῃ ὁδὲ ἄλλος σφι νόμος κατέστηκε· τοὺς κάμνοντας ἐς τὴν ἀγορὴν ἐκφορέουσι· οὐ γὰρ δὴ χρέωνται ἱητροῖσι. προσιόντες ὦν πρὸς τὸν κάμνοντα συμβουλεύουσι περὶ τῆς νόσου, εἴ τις καὶ αὐτὸς τοιοῦτο ἔπαθε ὁκοῖον ἂν ἔχῃ ὁ κάμνων ἢ ἄλλον εἶδε παθόντα, ταῦτα προσιόντες συμβουλεύουσι καὶ παραινέουσι ἅσσα αὐτὸς ποιήσας ἐξέφυγε ὁμοίην νοῦσον ἢ ἄλλον εἶδε ἐκφυγόντα. σιγῇ δὲ παρεξελθεῖν τὸν κάμνοντα οὗ σφι ἔξεστι, πρὶν ἂν ἐπείρηται ἥντινα νοῦσον ἔχει.

1.198

ταφαὶ δέ σφι ἐν μέλιτι, θρῆνοι δὲ παραπλήσιοι τοῖσι ἐν Αἰγύπτῳ. ὁσάκις δ' ἂν μιχθῇ γυναικὶ τῇ ἐωυτοῦ ἀνὴρ Βαβυλώνιος, περὶ θυμὴμα καταγιζόμενον ἵζει, ἐτέρωθι δὲ ἢ γυνὴ τῶντὸ τοῦτο ποιεῖ, ὄρθρου δὲ γενομένου λούνται καὶ ἀμφοτέροι· ἄγγεος γὰρ οὐδενὸς αἴψονται πρὶν ἂν λούσωνται. ταῦτὰ δὲ ταῦτα καὶ Ἀράβιοι ποιεῖσι.

1.197

δεύτερος δὲ σοφίῃ ὅδε ἄλλος σφί νόμος κατέστηκε·
 τοὺς |toil, acquire, ἐς τὴν ἀγορὴν |carry out οὐ γὰρ δὴ
 |be tired
 χρέωνται |physician. προσιόντες ὦν πρὸς τὸν |toil, acquire,
 |be tired
 |give advice; περὶ τῆς νόσου, εἴ τις καὶ αὐτὸς τοιοῦτο
 |(mid) consult
 ἔπαθε |whatever kind ἢ ὁ |toil, acquire, ἄλλον εἶδε παθόντα,
 |be tired
 ταῦτα προσιόντες |give advice; καὶ |recommend, ἄσσα
 |(mid) consult |exhort, warn
 αὐτὸς ποιήσας |flee ὁμοίην νοῦσον ἢ ἄλλον εἶδε
 |flee σιγῇ δὲ |pass by, slip past |toil, acquire, ὃ σφί
 |be tired
 ἔξεστι, πρὶν ἂν ἐπείρηται ἥντινα νοῦσον ἔχει.

1.198

|burial, δέ σφί ἐν |honey, |dirge δὲ |similar to τοῖσι ἐν
 |grave
 Αἰγύπτῳ. |as often as, ἂν μιχθῇ γυναικὶ τῇ ἐωυτοῦ ἀνὴρ
 |whenever
 Βαβυλώνιος, περὶ |incense |devote, dedicate |to |opposite, ἄλλῃ
 |seat |where, anywhere
 ἢ γυνὴ τῶντὸ τοῦτο ποιέει, |dawn δὲ γενομένου λούνται
 καὶ ἀμφότεροι· |container, ἄρ οὐδενὸς ἄψονται πρὶν ἂν
 λούσωνται. ταῦτὰ δὲ ταῦτα καὶ Ἀράβιοι ποιέουσι.

1.197

Next in wisdom to that, is this other custom which was established among them:— they bear out the sick into the market-place; for of physicians they make no use. So people come up to the sick man and give advice about his disease, if any one himself has ever suffered anything like that which the sick man has, or saw any other who had suffered it; and coming near they advise and recommend those means by which they themselves got rid of a like disease or seen some other get rid of it: and to pass by the sick man in silence is not permitted to them, nor until one has asked what disease he has.

1.198

They bury their dead in honey, and their modes of lamentation are similar to those used in Egypt. And whenever a Babylonian man has intercourse with his wife, he sits by incense offered, and his wife does the same on the other side, and when it is morning they wash themselves, both of them, for they will touch no vessel until they have washed themselves: and the Arabians do likewise in this matter.

*vocabulary***αἰσχρός** shameful**ἀναμίγνυμι** mix ~mix**ἀπαλλάσσω** free from, remove; be freed, depart**ἅπαξ** once**ἀργύριον** small coin**διέξειμι** pass through; recount ~ion**διέξοδος** διαξόδου (f) outlet, path; narrative**ἐκλέγω** pick, single out**ἐπικαλέω** call upon**ἐπιχώριος** native**εὖς** good, brave, noble**ζεῦγος** -ους (n, 3) team of animals

~zygote

θεραπήη service, tending**θῶμιγξ** cord, string**ἵζω** to seat ~sit**καμάρα** covered carriage, boat**μέγαθος** tall, big (person)**ὄον** οὔ type of fruit**ὀπισθεν** behind, hereafter**στέφανος** ring**σχοινοτενής** stretched straight**τέμενος** -εος (n, 3) non-common land**τοσόσδε** this much**ὑπερφρονέω** be snobby

1.199

ὁ δὲ δὴ αἰσχιστος τῶν νόμων ἐστὶ τοῖσι Βαβυλωνίοισι ὅδε·
 δεῖ πᾶσαν γυναῖκα ἐπιχωρίην ἰσομένην ἐς ἱρὸν Ἀφροδίτης
 ἅπαξ ἐν τῇ ζόῃ μιχθῆναι ἀνδρὶ ξείνῳ. πολλαὶ δὲ καὶ
 οὐκ ἀξιούμεναι ἀναμίσγεσθαι τῇσι ἄλλῃσι, οἷα πλούτῳ
 ὑπερφρονέουσai, ἐπὶ ζευγέων ἐν καμάρῃσι ἐλάσασαι πρὸς
 τὸ ἱρὸν ἐστᾶσι· θεραπήνῃ δέ σφι ὅπισθε ἔπεται πολλή. αἱ
 δὲ πλεῦνες ποιεῦσι ὧδε· ἐν τεμένει Ἀφροδίτης κατέεται
 στέφανον περὶ τῇσι κεφαλῇσι ἔχουσαι θώμιγγος πολλαὶ
 γυναῖκες· αἱ μὲν γὰρ προσέρχονται, αἱ δὲ ἀπέρχονται.
 σχοινοτενέες δὲ διεξοδοὶ πάντα τρόπον ὁδῶν ἔχουσι διὰ
 τῶν γυναικῶν, δι' ὧν οἱ ξεῖνοι διεξιόντες ἐκλέγονται·
 ἔνθα ἐπεὰν ἴζηται γυνή, οὐ πρότερον ἀπαλλάσσεται ἐς τὰ
 οἰκία, ἢ τίς οἱ ξείνων, ἀργύριον ἐμβαλὼν ἐς τὰ γούνατα,
 μιχθῇ ἔξω τοῦ ἱροῦ· ἐμβαλόντα δὲ δεῖ εἰπεῖν τοσόνδε·
 «ἐπικαλέω τοι τὴν θεὸν Μύλιττα.» Μύλιττα δὲ καλέουσι
 τὴν Ἀφροδίτην Ἀσσύριοι.

τὸ δὲ ἀργύριον μέγας ἐστὶ ὅσον ὦν· οὐ γὰρ μὴ

1.199

ὁ δὲ δὴ |shameful τῶν νόμων ἐστὶ τοῖσι Βαβυλωνίοισι ὅδε·
 δεῖ πᾶσαν γυναῖκα |native |to seat ἐς ἱρὸν Ἀφροδίτης
 |once ἐν τῇ ζόῃ μιχθῆναι ἀνδρὶ ξείνῳ. πολλὰ δὲ καὶ
 οὐκ ἀξιούμεναι ἀναμίσγεσθαι τῇσι ἄλλῃσι, οἷα πλούτῳ
 |be snobby , ἐπὶ |team ἐν καμάρῃσι ἐλάσασαι πρὸς
 τὸ ἱρὸν ἐστᾶσι· θεραπῆν δέ σφι ὅπισθε ἔπεται πολλή. αἱ
 δὲ πλεῦνες ποιεῦσι ὧδε· ἐν |non-common, land .js κατέαται
 |ring περὶ τῇσι κεφαλῇσι ἔχουσai |cord, string πολλὰ
 γυναῖκες· αἱ μὲν γὰρ προσέρχονται, αἱ δὲ ἀπέρχονται.
 |stretched δὲ |outlet, path; ἅντα τρόπον ὁδῶν ἔχουσι διὰ
 |straight |narrative
 τῶν γυναικῶν, δι' ὧν οἱ ξεῖνοι |pass |pick, single
 |through; |out
 ἔνθα ἐπεὰν |to seat γυνή, οὐ πρότερον |recount
 |free from, remove; τὰ
 |be freed, depart
 οἰκία, ἢ τίς οἱ ξείνων, |small coin ἐμβαλὼν ἐς τὰ γούνατα,
 μιχθῇ ἕξω τοῦ ἱροῦ· ἐμβαλόντα δὲ δεῖ εἰπεῖν |this much
 «|call upon τοι τὴν θεὸν Μύλιττα.» Μύλιττα δὲ καλέουσι
 τὴν Ἀφροδίτην Ἀσσύριοι.

τὸ δὲ |small coin |tall, big ἐστὶ ὅσον ὦν· οὐ γὰρ μὴ

1.199

Now the most shameful of the customs of the Babylonians is as follows: every woman of the country must sit down in the precincts of Aphrodite once in her life and have commerce with a man who is a stranger: and many women who do not deign to mingle with the rest, because they are made arrogant by wealth, drive to the temple with pairs of horses in covered carriages, and so take their place, and a large number of attendants follow after them; but the greater number do thus,— in the sacred enclosure of Aphrodite sit great numbers of women with a wreath of cord about their heads; some come and others go; and there are passages in straight lines going between the women in every direction, through which the strangers pass by and make their choice. Here when a woman takes her seat she does not depart again to her house until one of the strangers has thrown a silver coin into her lap and has had commerce with her outside the temple, and after throwing it he must say these words only: “I demand thee in the name of the goddess Mylitta”: now Mylitta is the name given by the Assyrians to Aphrodite.

The silver coin may be of any value; whatever it is she will not refuse it, for that is not lawful for her, seeing that this coin is made sacred by the

vocabulary

ἄμορφος misshapen, shapeless
ἀπαλλάσσω free from, remove; be freed, depart
ἀποδοκιμάω reject
ἀπωθέω repel, reject
ἀργύριον small coin
ἄτε as if; since
αὐαίνω to dry; (mp) wither
ἀφοσιόω purify, atone
εἶδος -ους (n, 3) appearance, form
 ~-oid
εἰσβάλλω throw into ~ballistic
ἐκπλέω sail away ~float
ἐνιαχῇ in some places; sometimes

ἐφάπτω fasten upon ~haptic
θέμις -τος (f) custom, law
θηρεύω hunt, fish ~fierce
μέγαθος tall, big (person)
μίν him, her, it
ὄλμος roller ~helix
παραπλήσιος similar to
πατριά family, tribe
προσμένω await, cleave to
σινδών -όνος (f, 3) linen
σιτέομαι (i) eat ~parasite
τετραέτης of four years
τριέτης for three years
ὑπερον pestle, club; pupa
ὑπερος pestle, club; pupa

ἀπώσῃται· οὐ γάρ οἱ θέμις ἐστί· γίνεται γὰρ ἱρὸν τοῦτο τὸ ἀργύριον. τῷ δὲ πρώτῳ ἐμβαλόντι ἔπεται οὐδὲ ἀποδοκιμῇ οὐδένα. ἐπεὰν δὲ μιχθῇ, ἀποσιωσαμένη τῇ θεῷ ἀπαλλάσσεται ἐς τὰ οἰκία, καὶ τῷπὸ τούτου οὐκ οὔτω μέγα τί οἱ δώσεις ὥς μιν λάμψειαι.

ὅσσαι μὲν νυν εἵδεός τε ἐπαμμέναι εἰσὶ καὶ μεγάθεος, ταχὺ ἀπαλλάσσονται, ὅσαι δὲ ἄμορφοι αὐτέων εἰσί, χρόνον πολλὸν προσμένουσι οὐ δυνάμεναι τὸν νόμον ἐκπλήσαι· καὶ γὰρ τριέτεα καὶ τετραέτεα μετεξέτεραι χρόνον μένουσι. ἐνιαχῇ δὲ καὶ τῆς Κύπρου ἐστὶ παραπλήσιος τούτῳ νόμος.

1.200

νόμοι μὲν δὴ τοῖσι Βαβυλωνίοισι οὗτοι κατεστᾶσι· εἰσὶ δὲ αὐτῶν πατριαὶ τρεῖς αἱ οὐδὲν ἄλλο σιτέονται εἰ μὴ ἰχθὺς μοῦνον, τοὺς ἐπέιτε ἂν θηρεύσαντες αὐήνωσι πρὸς ἥλιον, ποιεύσι τάδε· ἐσβάλλουσι ἐς ὄλμον καὶ λεήναντες ὑπέροισι σῶσι διὰ σινδόνος, καὶ ὃς μὲν ἂν βούληται αὐτῶν ἄτε

|repel, reject οὐ γάρ οἱ |custom, law γίνεται γὰρ ἱρὸν τοῦτο

τὸ |small coin . τῷ δὲ πρώτῳ ἐμβαλόντι ἔπεται οὐδὲ

|reject οὐδένα. ἐπεὰν δὲ μιχθῇ, |purify, atone τῇ θεῷ

|free from, remove; τὰ οἰκία, καὶ τῷπὸ τούτου οὐκ οὕτω
|be freed, depart

μέγα τί οἱ δώσεις ὥς μιν λάμβανει.

ὅσσαι μὲν νυν |form τε |fasten upon εἰςὶ καὶ |tall, big , ταχὺ

|free from, remove; ὅσαι δὲ |misshapen, ὑτέων εἰσί, χρόνον
|be freed, depart |shapeless

πολλὸν |await, cleave to οὐ δυνάμεναι τὸν νόμον |sail away

καὶ γὰρ |for three years |of four years μετεξέτεραι χρόνον

μένουσι. ἐνιαχῇ δὲ καὶ τῆς Κύπρου ἐστὶ |similar to

τούτῳ νόμος.

1.200

νόμοι μὲν δὴ τοῖσι Βαβυλωνίοισι οὗτοι κατεστᾶσι· εἰςὶ δὲ

αὐτῶν |family, τρεῖς αἱ οὐδὲν ἄλλο σιτέονται εἰ μὴ ἰχθὺς
|tribe

μοῦνον, τοὺς ἐπείτε ἂν |hunt, fish |to dry; (mp), wither ...ον,

ποιεῦσι τάδε· ἐσβάλλουσι ἐς |roller καὶ λεήγαντες ὑπέροισι

σῶσι διὰ |linen , καὶ ὅς μὲν ἂν βούληται αὐτῶν |as if; since

act: and she follows the man who has first thrown and does not reject any: and after that she departs to her house, having acquitted herself of her duty to the goddess, nor will you be able thenceforth to give any gift so great as to win her.

So then as many as have attained to beauty and stature are speedily released, but those of them who are unshapely remain there much time, not being able to fulfil the law; for some of them remain even as much as three or four years: and in some parts of Cyprus too there is a custom similar to this.

1.200

These customs then are established among the Babylonians: and there are of them three tribes which eat nothing but fish only: and when they have caught them and dried them in the sun they do thus,— they throw them into brine, and then pound them with pestles and strain them through muslin; and they have them for food either kneaded into

*vocabulary***ἄλκιμος** brave; sturdily made

~Alexander

ἀνατολή a rising in the sky ~apostle**ἄράσσω** smash**δένδρεον** -οῦ tree**δένδρον** tree**δένδρος** tree**ἐξευρίσκω** find; discover ~eureka**θέρως** -εως (n, 3) summer ~thermos**κατατίθημι** put down, deposit, lay
aside ~thesis**κατεργάζομαι** achieve; cultivate; get;
kill**μᾶζα** barley bread; lump**μάσσω** handle, knead ~mass**μέγαθος** tall, big (person)**ὀπτάω** roast, bake**ὀρύσσω** dig**παντοῖος** all kinds of**παραπλήσιος** similar to**πέραν** (ᾱ) on the other side, across**ρίζα** root ~rhizome**σιτέομαι** (ι) eat ~parasite**συνέρχομαι** come together**συχνός** long; many; extensive**τοιόσδε** such**φορβή** food, pasture ~euphorbia**χειμερινός** of winter**ώραῖος** ripe; young adult

μαΐζαν μαζάμενος ἔχει, ὁ δὲ ἄρτου τρόπον ὀπτήσας.

1.201

ὥς δὲ τῷ Κύρῳ καὶ τοῦτο τὸ ἔθνος κατέργαστο, ἐπεθύμησε Μασσαγέτας ὑπ' ἐωντῷ ποιήσασθαι. τὸ δὲ ἔθνος τοῦτο καὶ μέγα λέγεται εἶναι καὶ ἄλκιμον, οἰκημένον δὲ πρὸς ἡῷ τε καὶ ἡλίου ἀνατολάς, πέρην τοῦ Ἀράξω ποταμοῦ, ἀντίον δὲ Ἰσσηδόνων ἀνδρῶν. εἰσὶ δὲ οὔτινες καὶ Σκυθικὸν λέγουσι τοῦτο τὸ ἔθνος εἶναι.

1.202

ὁ δὲ Ἀράξης λέγεται καὶ μέζων καὶ ἐλάσσων εἶναι τοῦ Ἰστροῦ· νήσους δὲ ἐν αὐτῷ Λέσβῳ μεγάθρα παραπλησίας συχνὰς φασὶ εἶναι, ἐν δὲ αὐτῇσι ἀνθρώπους οἳ σιτέονται μὲν ρίζας τὸ θέρος ὀρύσσοντες παντοίας· καρποὺς δὲ ἀπὸ δενδρέων ἐξευρημένους σφι ἐς φορβὴν κατατίθεσθαι ὠραίους, καὶ τούτους σιτέεσθαι τὴν χειμερινήν. ἄλλα δὲ σφι ἐξευρηῆσθαι δένδρεα καρποὺς τοιούσδε τινὰς φέροντα, τοὺς ἐπεῖτε ἂν ἐς τῶντὸ συνέλθωσι κατὰ εἶλας καὶ

|barley |handle, |bread; |knead ἔχει, ὁ δὲ ἄρτου τρόπον |roast, bake
|lump
1.201

ὥς δὲ τῷ Κύρῳ καὶ τοῦτο τὸ ἔθνος |achieve; culti-
|vate; get; kill
ἐπεθύμησε Μασσαγέτας ὑπ' ἐωυτῷ ποιήσασθαι. τὸ δὲ
ἔθνος τοῦτο καὶ μέγα λέγεται εἶναι καὶ |brave;
|sturdily , οἰκημένον
δὲ πρὸς ἡῷ τε καὶ ἡλίῳ |a rising in the |across τοῦ Ἀράξεω
|sky
ποταμοῦ, ἀντίον δὲ Ἰσσηδόνων ἀνδρῶν. εἰσὶ δὲ οἵτινες
καὶ Σκυθικὸν λέγουσι τοῦτο τὸ ἔθνος εἶναι.

1.202

ὁ δὲ |smash λέγεται καὶ μέζων καὶ ἐλάσσων εἶναι τοῦ
Ἰστρου· νήσους δὲ ἐν αὐτῷ Λέσβῳ |tall, big |similar to
|long; many; |π εἶναι, ἐν δὲ αὐτῇσι ἀνθρώπους οἳ σιτεύονται
|extensive
μὲν |root τὸ |sum- |dig |all kinds of καρποὺς δὲ
|mer
ἀπὸ δεινδρέων |find; discover σφι ἐς |food |put down
|ripe; , καὶ τούτους σιτέεσθαι τὴν |of winter . ἄλλα δέ
|young
|adult
σφι ἐξευρησθαι δένδρεα καρποὺς |such τινὰς φέροντα,
τοὺς ἐπείτε ἂν ἐς τῶντὸ |come together...τὰ εἶλας καὶ

a soft cake, or baked like bread, according to their liking.

1.201

When this nation also had been subdued by Cyrus, he had a desire to bring the Massagetai into subjection to himself. This nation is reputed to be both great and warlike, and to dwell towards the East and the sunrising, beyond the river Araxes and over against the Issedonians: and some also say that this nation is of Scythian race.

1.202

Now the Araxes is said by some to be larger and by others to be smaller than the Ister: and they say that there are many islands in it about equal in size to Lesbos, and in them people dwelling who feed in the summer upon roots of all kinds which they dig up and certain fruits from trees, which have been discovered by them for food, they store up, it is said, in the season when they are ripe and feed upon them in the winter. Moreover it is said that other trees have been discovered by them which yield fruit of such a kind that when they have assembled together in companies in the same place and lighted a

*vocabulary***ἀνακαίω** light (a fire) ~caustic**ᾠδή** song**ἄρασσω** smash**δέρμα** -τος (n, 3) skin, hide

~dermatology

δίαιτα way of life; home; arbitration**διαλαμβάνω** distribute**διῶρυξ** -χος (f) ditch, canal**ἐκδίδωμι** hand over ~donate**Ἑλλήν** Greek**ἐλος** ἔλεος (n, 3) marsh**ἐξερεύγομαι** spew, discharge**ἑξήκοντα** sixty**ἐπιβάλλω** throw upon, head for

~ballistic

ἐσθής clothes ~vest**θάλλω** bloom, flourish, abound

~thallium

καθαρός clean, pure**καταγίζω** devote, dedicate**κύκλος** circle, wheel ~cycle**μεθύσκω** (mp) get drunk**μεθύω** be soaked, drunk ~mead**ναυτίλλομαι** sail ~navy**ὄρχησις** dancing**ὀσμή** smell ~osmium, odor**ὀσφραίνομαι** catch scent of**περιίζομαι** sit around**ῥέω** flow ~rheostat**σιτέομαι** (i) eat ~parasite**συμμίγνυμι** mix with ~mix**τέναγος** -εος (n, 3) shoal, shallows**τριηκόσιοι** three hundred**φώκη** seal (animal) ~Fr. phoque**ὠμός** raw

πῦρ ἀνακαύσωνται κύκλῳ περιζομένους ἐπιβάλλειν ἐπὶ τὸ πῦρ, ὁσφραινομένους δὲ καταγιζόμενου τοῦ καρποῦ τοῦ ἐπιβαλλομένου μεθύσκεσθαι¹ τῇ ὁσμῇ κατὰ περ Ἑλλήνας τῷ οἴνῳ πλεῦνος δὲ ἐπιβαλλομένου τοῦ καρποῦ μᾶλλον μεθύσκεσθαι, ἐς ὃ ἐς ὄρχησίν τε ἀνίστασθαι καὶ ἐς αἰοιδὴν ἀπικνέεσθαι. τούτων μὲν αὕτη λέγεται δίαιτα εἶναι.

ὁ δὲ Ἀράξης ποταμὸς ῥέει μὲν ἐκ Ματινηῶν, ὅθεν περ ὁ Γύνδης τὸν ἐς τὰς διώρυχας τὰς ἐξήκοντά τε καὶ τριηκοσίας διέλαβε ὁ Κῦρος, στόμασι δὲ ἐξερεύγεται τεσσαράκοντα, τῶν τὰ πάντα πλὴν ἑνὸς ἐς ἔλεά τε καὶ τενάγεια ἐκδιδοῖ· ἐν τοῖσι ἀνθρώπους κατοικῆσθαι λέγουσι ἰχθύς ὤμους σιτεομένους, ἐσθῆτι δὲ νομίζοντας χρᾶσθαι φωκέων δέρμασι. τὸ δὲ ἐν τῶν στομάτων τοῦ Ἀράξεω ῥέει διὰ καθαροῦ ἐς τὴν Κασπίην θάλασσαν. ἡ δὲ Κασπία θάλασσα ἐστὶ ἐπ' ἐωυτῆς, οὐ συμμίσγουσα τῇ ἐτέρῃ θαλάσσῃ. τὴν μὲν γὰρ Ἑλληνὲς ναυτίλλονται πᾶσα καὶ

¹ The smoke drugs them.

πῦρ |light (a fire) |circle, |sit around |throw upon ἐπὶ
 τὸ πῦρ, |catch scent of δὲ |devote, dedicate τοῦ καρποῦ τοῦ
 |throw upon μεθύσκεσθαι¹ τῇ |smell κατά περ |Greek
 τῷ οἴνῳ πλεῦνος δὲ |throw upon τοῦ καρποῦ μᾶλλον
 μεθύσκεσθαι, ἐς ὃ ἐς |dancing τε ἀνίστασθαι καὶ ἐς |song
 ἀπικνέεσθαι. τούτων μὲν αὕτη λέγεται |way of life; home;
 |arbitration
 ὁ δὲ |smash ποταμὸς ῥέει μὲν ἐκ Ματινηῶν, ὅθεν περ
 ὁ Γύνδης τὸν ἐς τὰς |ditch, canal τὰς |sixty τε καὶ
 |three |distribute ὁ Κῦρος, στόμασι δὲ |spew, discharge
 |hundred
 τεσσαράκοντα, τῶν τὰ πάντα πλὴν ἑνὸς ἐς |marsh .ε καὶ
 |shoal, |hand over² τοῖσι ἀνθρώπους κατοικῆσθαι λέγουσι
 |shallows
 ἰχθῦς |raw σιτεομένους, |clothes δὲ νομίζοντας χρᾶσθαι
 |seal (ani-|skin, hide τὸ δὲ ἐν τῶν στομάτων τοῦ Ἀράξεω
 |mal)
 ῥέει διὰ καθαροῦ ἐς τὴν Κασπὴν θάλασσαν. ἡ δὲ Κασπίη
 |bloom, flour³ τὴν ἐπ' ἐωυτῆς, οὐ συμμίσγουσα τῇ ἐτέρῃ
 |ish, abound
 θαλάσση. τὴν μὲν γὰρ |Greek |sail πᾶσα καὶ

¹ The smoke drugs them.

fire, they sit round in a circle and throw some of it into the fire, and they smell the fruit which is thrown on, as it burns, and are intoxicated by the scent as the Hellenes are with wine, and when more of the fruit is thrown on they become more intoxicated, until at last they rise up to dance and begin to sing. This is said to be their manner of living.

And as to the river Araxes, it flows from the land of the Matienians, whence flows the Gyndes which Cyrus divided into the three hundred and sixty channels, and it discharges itself by forty branches, of which all except one end in swamps and shallow pools; and among them they say that men dwell who feed on fish eaten raw, and who are wont to use as clothing the skins of seals: but the one remaining branch of the Araxes flows with unimpeded course into the Caspian Sea. Now the Caspian Sea is apart by itself, not having connection with the other Sea: for all that Sea which the Hellenes navigate, and the

vocabulary

ἄγριος wild, savage ~agriculture
 δένδρεον -οῦ tree
 δένδρον tree
 δένδρος tree
 ἐγγράφω engrave, enroll
 εἰρεσία rowing ~row
 εἶριον wool ~Eriogonum
 ἐκπλύνω (ῥ) wash dirt out; wash
 thoroughly
 ἐμφανής visible
 ἐνυφαίνω weave in
 ἐσθής clothes ~vest
 ἐσπέρα evening, west
 εὖρος -εος (n, 3) width; (caps) the east
 wind
 ζῶον being, animal; picture
 θάλλω bloom, flourish, abound

~thallium

ἰδέα ἰδῆς semblance; kind, style
 μέγαθος tall, big (person)
 μῆκος -ους (n, 3) length, stature
 μῖξις mixing; sex, commerce
 ὀκτώ eight ~octopus
 παντοῖος all kinds of
 παραμίγνυμι mix in
 παρατείνω extend, lengthen, torture
 πεντεκαίδεκα 15
 πλόος -ῶ course, voyage ~float
 πρόβατον cattle, flocks, herds
 στήλη post, column
 συγκαταγηράσκω grow old together
 τοιόσδε such
 τρίβω (ι) rub; (mid) be worn out
 ~tribulation
 φύλλον leaf

ἡ ἔξω¹ στηλέων θάλασσα ἡ Ἀτλαντὶς καλεομένη καὶ ἡ Ἐρυθρὴ μία ἐοῦσα τυγχάνει.

1.203

ἡ δὲ Κασπίη ἐστὶ ἐτέρη ἐπ' ἐωυτῆς, ἐοῦσα μῆκος μὲν πλόου εἰρεσίῃ χρεωμένῳ πεντεκαίδεκα ἡμερέων, εὖρος δέ, τῇ εὐρυτάτῃ ἐστὶ αὐτῇ ἐωυτῆς, ὀκτὼ ἡμερέων. καὶ τὰ μὲν πρὸς τὴν ἐσπέρην φέροντα τῆς θαλάσσης ταύτης ὁ Καύκασος παρατείνει, ἐὼν ὀρέων καὶ πλήθει μέγιστον καὶ μεγάθει ὑψηλότατον. ἔθνεα δὲ ἀνθρώπων πολλὰ καὶ παντοῖα ἐν ἐωυτῷ ἔχει ὁ Καύκασος, τὰ πολλὰ πάντα ἀπ' ὕλης ἀγρίας ζώοντα· ἐν τοῖσι καὶ δένδρεα φύλλα τοιῆσδε ιδέης παρεχόμενα εἶναι λέγεται, τὰ τρίβοντάς τε καὶ παραμίσγοντας ὕδωρ ζῶα ἐωυτοῖσι ἐς τὴν ἐσθῆτα ἐγγράφειν· τὰ δὲ ζῶα οὐκ ἐκπλύνεσθαι, ἀλλὰ συγκαταγηράσκειν τῷ ἄλλῳ εἰρίῳ κατὰ περ ἐνυφανθέντα ἀρχήν. μῖξιν δὲ τούτων τῶν ἀνθρώπων εἶναι ἐμφανέα κατὰ περ τοῖσι προβάτοισι.

¹ The pillars of Hercules, modern Gibraltar.

ἡ ἔξω¹ |post, column |bloom, flour; ish, abound Ἀτλαντὶς καλεομένη καὶ ἡ Ἐρυθρὴ μία ἐοῦσα τυγχάνει.

1.203

ἡ δὲ Κασπίη ἐστὶ ἐτέρη ἐπ' ἐωυτῆς, ἐοῦσα |length, stature μὲν |course, εἰρεσίῃ χρεωμένῳ |15 |width; (caps) the east wind ἡμερέων, δέ, τῇ εὐρυτάτῃ ἐστὶ αὐτὴ ἐωυτῆς, |eight ἡμερέων. καὶ τὰ μὲν πρὸς τὴν ἐσπέρην φέροντα τῆς θαλάσσης ταύτης ὁ Καύκασος |extend, lengthen, torture ὀρέων καὶ πλήθει μέγιστον καὶ |tall, big ὑψηλότατον. ἔθνεα δὲ ἀνθρώπων πολλὰ καὶ |all kinds of ἔχει ὁ Καύκασος, τὰ πολλὰ πάντα ἀπ' ὕλης |wild, savage ζώοντα· ἐν τοῖσι καὶ δένδρεα |leaf |such |semblance; |kind, style ἐχόμενα εἶναι λέγεται, τὰ |rub; (mid) |mix in ὕδωρ ζῶα ἐωυτοῖσι ἐς |be worn out τὴν |clothes |engrave, |enroll τὰ δὲ ζῶα οὐκ |wash dirt out; |wash thoroughly συγκαταγῆράσκειν τῷ ἄλλῳ |wool κατὰ περ |weave in ἀρχήν. |mixing; sex, |ύτων τῶν ἀνθρώπων εἶναι |visible commerce κατὰ περ τοῖσι |cattle, flocks, |herds

¹ The pillars of Hercules, modern Gibraltar.

Sea beyond the Pillars, which is called Atlantis, and the Erythraian Sea are in fact all one, but the Caspian is separate and lies apart by itself.

203. In length it is a voyage of fifteen days if one uses oars, and in breadth, where it is broadest, a voyage of eight days. On the side towards the West of this Sea the Caucasus runs along by it, which is of all mountain-ranges both the greatest in extent and the loftiest: and the Caucasus has many various races of men dwelling in it, living for the most part on the wild produce of the forests; and among them there are said to be trees which produce leaves of such a kind that by pounding them and mixing water with them they paint figures upon their garments, and the figures do not wash out, but grow old with the woollen stuff as if they had been woven into it at the first: and men say that the sexual intercourse of these people is open like that of cattle.

vocabulary

ἀμήχανος helpless, impossible

~mechanism

ἀνατέλλω cause to grow ~apostle

ἄπειρος untested; infinite

ἀπείρων boundless

ἀποέργω exclude; divide; confine

ἀπόφημι speak out ~fame

βασίλεια noblewoman

βασίλειος kingly

γένεσις -εως (f) source, origin ~genus

διαφεύγω escape, survive

ἐκδέχομαι receive; succeed to a position

ἐλάχιστος smallest, shortest, fewest

ἐπαείρω raise, place on ~aorta

ἐποτρύνω (ῶ) urge, stir, dispatch

ἐσπέρα evening, west

εὖς good, brave, noble

εὐτυχία good luck, success

ἰθύω (ι) charge at, head for ~justice

μετέχω partake of

μίν him, her, it

μνάομαι be mindful of, woo, take for sex ~mnemonic

ὄον οὖ type of fruit

ὅπη wherever, however

προθυμία (ῶ) zeal, alacrity ~fume

1.204

τὰ μὲν δὴ πρὸς ἐσπέρην τῆς θαλάσσης ταύτης τῆς
 Κασπίης καλεομένης ὁ Καύκασος ἀπέργει, τὰ δὲ πρὸς
 ἡῶ τε καὶ ἥλιον ἀνατέλλοντα πεδίων ἐκδέκεται πλῆθος
 ἄπειρον ἐς ἄποψιν. τοῦ ὧν δὴ πεδίου τούτου τοῦ μεγάλου
 οὐκ ἐλαχίστην μοῖραν μετέχουσι οἱ Μασσαγέται, ἐπ' οὓς ὁ
 Κῦρος ἔσχε προθυμίην στρατεύσασθαι. πολλά τε γάρ μιν
 καὶ μεγάλα τὰ ἐπαείροντα καὶ ἐποτρύνοντα ἦν, πρῶτον
 μὲν ἡ¹ γένεσις, τὸ δοκέειν πλέον τι εἶναι ἀνθρώπου,
 δευτέρα δὲ ἡ εὐτυχία ἢ κατὰ τοὺς πολέμους γενομένη· ὅκη
 γὰρ ἰθύσειε στρατεύεσθαι Κῦρος, ἀμήχανον ἦν ἐκεῖνο τὸ
 ἔθνος διαφυγεῖν.

1.205

ἦν δὲ τοῦ ἀνδρὸς ἀποθανόντος γυνὴ τῶν Μασσαγετέων
 βασίλεια. Τόμυρίς οἱ ἦν οὖνομα. ταύτην πέμπων ὁ Κῦρος
 ἐμνάτο τῷ λόγῳ θέλων γυναῖκα ἦν ἔχειν. ἡ δὲ Τόμυρις
 συνιῆσα οὐκ αὐτήν μιν μνώμενον ἀλλὰ τὴν

¹ of Cyrus

1.204

τὰ μὲν δὴ πρὸς ἐσπέρην τῆς θαλάσσης ταύτης τῆς
 Κασπίης καλεομένης ὁ Καύκασος |exclude; , di-...
 |vide; confine
 ἡὼ τε καὶ ἥλιον |cause to grow πεδίον |receive; succeed, θος
 |to a position
 ἄπειρον ἐς ἄποψιν. τοῦ ὦν δὴ πεδίου τούτου τοῦ μεγάλου
 οὐκ |smallest, short-...
 |est, fewest ραν |partake of οἱ Μασσαγέται, ἐπ' οὓς ὁ
 Κῦρος ἔσχε προθυμίην στρατεύσασθαι. πολλά τε γάρ μιν
 καὶ μεγάλα τὰ |raise, place καὶ |urge, stir ἦν, πρῶτον
 |on
 μὲν ἡ¹ |source, , τὸ δοκέειν πλέον τι εἶναι ἀνθρώπου,
 |origin
 δευτέρα δὲ ἡ εὐτυχίῃ ἢ κατὰ τοὺς πολέμους γενομένη· |wherever,
 |however
 γὰρ |charge at, head for ...θαι Κῦρος, |helpless, ἦν ἐκείνο τὸ
 |impossible
 ἔθνος |escape,
 |survive

1.205

ἦν δὲ τοῦ ἀνδρὸς ἀποθανόντος γυνὴ τῶν Μασσαγετέων
 βασίλεια. Τόμυρίς οἱ ἦν οὖνομα. ταύτην πέμπων ὁ Κῦρος
 |be mindful ...of, ὡ θέλων γυναιῖκα ἦν ἔχειν. ἡ δὲ Τόμυρις
 |woo, take for sex
 συνιῖσα οὐκ αὐτήν μιν |be mindful ...of, τὴν
 |woo, take for sex

¹ of Cyrus

1.204

On the West then of this Sea which is called Caspian the Caucasus is the boundary, while towards the East and the rising sun a plain succeeds which is of limitless extent to the view. Of this great plain then the Massagetai occupy a large part, against whom Cyrus had become eager to march; for there were many strong reasons which incited him to it and urged him onwards,— first the manner of his birth, that is to say the opinion held of him that he was more than a mere mortal man, and next the success which he had met with in his wars, for whithersoever Cyrus directed his march, it was impossible for that nation to escape.

1.205

Now the ruler of the Massagetai was a woman, who was queen after the death of her husband, and her name was Tomyris. To her Cyrus sent and wooed her, pretending that he desired to have her for his wife: but Tomyris

vocabulary

ἀναχωρέω return, retreat ~heir
ἀπεῖπον refuse, renounce, declare
βασιλεύω be king
γέφυρα (ῥ) dam, dike; bridge
διαβαίνω pass over, cross ~basis
διάβασις -εως (f) crossing, passage
 ~basis
διαπορθμεύω ferry, bring across
δόλος trick, bait
εἰσδέχομαι admit, take in
ἐμφανής visible
ζεύγνυμι (ῥ) yoke, join ~zygote
ἡσυχία peace and quiet
κῦρος -εος (n, 3) authority; validity
μόχθος toil

οἰκοδομέω build, build a house
οὐκω no longer
πάντως by all means
πρόσοδος (f) approach, procession; a
 rent
προχωρέω proceed, come forward
πύργος ramparts, tower; line of troops
σπεύδω 'push on,' get going, hurry
 ~repudiate
στρατηγή expedition, campaign
στρατός common people/soldiers
 ~strategy
στρατόω be on a campaign ~strategy
ὑποθήκη advice, warning; deposit
ὑποτίθημι suggest, advise ~hypothesis

Μασσαγετέων βασιλῆϊν, ἀπείπατο τὴν πρόσοδον. Κῦρος δὲ μετὰ τοῦτο, ὥς οἱ δόλω οὐ προεχώρεε, ἐλάσας ἐπὶ τὸν Ἀράξεια ἐποιέετο ἐκ τοῦ ἐμφανέος ἐπὶ τοὺς Μασσαγέτας στρατηίην, γεφύρας τε ζευγνύων ἐπὶ τοῦ ποταμοῦ διάβασιν τῷ στρατῷ, καὶ πύργους ἐπὶ πλοίων τῶν διαπορθμεόντων τὸν ποταμὸν οἰκοδομεόμενος.

1.206

ἔχοντι δέ οἱ τοῦτον τὸν πόνον πέμψασα ἡ Τόμυρις κήρυκα ἔλεγε τάδε. «ὦ βασιλεῦ Μήδων, παῦσαι σπεύδων τὰ σπεύδεις· οὐ γὰρ ἂν εἰδείης εἴ τοι ἐς καιρὸν ἔσται ταῦτα τελεόμενα· παυσάμενος δὲ βασίλευε τῶν σεωντοῦ, καὶ ἡμέας ἀνέχευ ὀρέων ἄρχοντας τῶν περ ἄρχομεν. οὐκων ἐθελήσεις ὑποθήκησι τῇσιδε χρᾶσθαι, ἀλλὰ πάντως μᾶλλον ἢ δι' ἡσυχίης εἶναι· σὺ δὲ εἰ μεγάλως προθυμέαι Μασσαγετέων πειρηθῆναι, φέρε μόχθον μὲν τὸν ἔχεις ζευγνὺς τὸν ποταμὸν ἄπες, σὺ δὲ ἡμέων ἀναχωρησάντων ἀπὸ τοῦ ποταμοῦ τριῶν ἡμερέων ὁδὸν διάβαινε ἐς τὴν ἡμετέρεν· εἰ δ' ἡμέας βούλει ἐσδέξασθαι μᾶλλον ἐς τὴν

Μασσαγετέων βασιλήϊν, |refuse, renounce, |approach, |authority;
 |declare |procession; a |validity
 δὲ μετὰ τοῦτο, ὥς οἱ |trick, bait' |^{rent}proceed, come ἐλάσας
 |forward
 ἐπὶ τὸν Ἀράξεια ἐποιέετο ἐκ τοῦ |visible ἐπὶ τοὺς
 Μασσαγέτας |expedition, , |dam, dike; bridge ,νύων ἐπὶ τοῦ
 |campaign
 ποταμοῦ διάβασιν τῷ στρατῷ, καὶ |wall, ἐπὶ πλοίων
 |tower
 τῶν |ferry, bring across τὸν ποταμὸν |build, build a.
 |house

1.206

ἔχοντι δέ οἱ τοῦτον τὸν πόνον πέμψασα ἡ Τόμυρις
 κήρυκα ἔλεγε τάδε. «ὦ βασιλεῦ Μήδων, παῦσαι |'push on,' get going,
 |hurry
 τὰ |'push on,' get' γὰρ ἂν εἰδείης εἴ τοι ἐς καιρὸν ἔσται
 |going, hurry
 ταῦτα τελεόμενα· παυσάμενος δὲ |be king τῶν σεωντοῦ,
 καὶ ἡμέας ἀνέχεν ὀρέων ἄρχοντας τῶν περ ἄρχομεν.
 |no longer' ἐλήσεις ὑποθήκησι τῇσιδε χρᾶσθαι, ἀλλὰ |by all means
 μᾶλλον ἢ δι' |peace and quiet σὺ δὲ εἰ μέγας προθυμέαι
 Μασσαγετέων πειρηθῆναι, φέρε |toil μὲν τὸν ἔχεις
 |yoke, join. ὃν ποταμὸν ἄπες, σὺ δὲ ἡμέων |return, retreat
 ἀπὸ τοῦ ποταμοῦ τριῶν ἡμερέων ὁδὸν |pass over, cross ἵν
 ἡμετέρην· εἰ δ' ἡμέας βούλει |admit, take in, ἄλλον ἐς τὴν

understanding that he was wooing not herself but rather the kingdom of the Massagetai, rejected his approaches: and Cyrus after this, as he made no progress by craft, marched to the Araxes, and proceeded to make an expedition openly against the Massagetai, forming bridges of boats over the river for his army to cross, and building towers upon the vessels which gave them passage across the river.

1.206

While he was busied about this labour, Tomyris sent a herald and said thus: “O king of the Medes, cease to press forward the work which thou art now pressing forward; for thou canst not tell whether these things will be in the end for thy advantage or no; cease to do so, I say, and be king over thine own people, and endure to see us ruling those whom we rule. Since however I know that thou wilt not be willing to receive this counsel, but dost choose anything rather than to be at rest, therefore if thou art greatly anxious to make trial of the Massagetai in fight, come now, leave that labour which thou hast in yoking together the banks of the river, and cross over into our land, when we have first withdrawn three days’ journey from the river: or if thou desirest rather to receive us into

*vocabulary***άνθρωπῆιος** human**ἀποτρέπω** divert from ~trophy**ἀποφαίνω** display, declare**ἄχαρις** -δος (f) ungracious**κύκλος** circle, wheel ~cycle**μάθημα** -τος (n, 3) lesson, knowledge**μέμφομαι** blame; reject**ὅπότερος** which of two, either of two**πάθημα** -τος (n, 3) suffering, condition**Πέρσης** Persian**πρόκειμαι** be placed by; be devoted to**προτίθημι** prefer, set out ~thesis**στρατιά** army ~strategy**στρατός** common people/soldiers

~strategy

συγκαλέω call together ~gallo**συμβουλευώ** give advice; (mid) consult

~volunteer

συναγείρω gather together ~agora**συνεκπίπτω** be removed together**σφάλμα** stumble**τοιόσδε** such

ὑμετέρην, σὺ τῶντὸ τοῦτο ποίει.»

Ταῦτα δὲ ἀκούσας ὁ Κῦρος συνεκάλεσε Περσέων τοὺς πρῶτους, συναγείρας δὲ τούτους ἐς μέσον σφί προετίθεε τὸ πρῆγμα, συμβουλευόμενος ὁκότερα ποιέη. τῶν δὲ κατὰ τῶντὸ αἱ γνώμαι συνεξέπιπτον κελυόντων ἐσδέκεσθαι Τόμυρὴν τε καὶ τὸν στρατὸν αὐτῆς ἐς τὴν χώραν.

1.207

παρεὼν δὲ καὶ μεμφόμενος τὴν γνώμην ταύτην Κροῖσος ὁ Λυδὸς ἀπεδείκνυτο ἐναντίην τῇ προκειμένη γνώμῃ, λέγων τάδε. «ὦ βασιλεῦ, εἶπον μὲν καὶ πρότερόν τοι ὅτι ἐπεὶ με Ζεὺς ἔδωκέ τοι, τὸ ἂν ὁρῶ σφάλμα ἐὼν οἴκῳ τῷ σῷ κατὰ δύναμιν ἀποτρέψειν· τὰ δὲ μοι παθήματα ἔοντα ἀχάρिता μαθήματα γέγονε. εἰ μὲν ἀθάνατος δοκέεις εἶναι καὶ στρατιῆς τοιαύτης ἄρχειν, οὐδὲν ἂν εἴῃ πρῆγμα¹ γνώμας ἐμὲ σοὶ ἀποφαίνεσθαι· εἰ δ' ἔγνωκας ὅτι ἄνθρωπος καὶ σὺ εἰς καὶ ἐτέρων τοιῶνδε ἄρχεις, ἐκεῖνο πρῶτον μάθε, ὥς κύκλος τῶν ἀνθρωπιῶν ἐστὶ πρηγμάτων,

¹ it will not be profitable

ὑμετέρην, σὺ τῶντὸ τοῦτο ποίει.»

Ταῦτα δὲ ἀκούσας ὁ Κῦρος |call together Περσέων τοὺς
 πρώτους, |gather together δὲ τούτους ἐς μέσον σφι |prefer, set out
 τὸ πρῆγμα, |give advice; (mid)|which of two, ἕη. τῶν δὲ κατὰ
 |consult |either of two
 τῶντὸ αἰ γινώμαι |be removed together ὀνόντων ἐσδέκεσθαι
 Τόμυρὸν τε καὶ τὸν |army αὐτῆς ἐς τὴν χώραν.

1.207

παρεὼν δὲ καὶ |blame; reject τὴν γνώμην ταύτην Κροῖσος ὁ
 Λυδὸς ἀπεδείκνυτο ἐναντίην τῇ |be placed by; γνώμη, λέγων
 |be devoted to
 τάδε. «ὦ βασιλεῦ, εἶπον μὲν καὶ πρότερόν τοι ὅτι ἐπεὶ με
 Ζεὺς ἔδωκέ τοι, τὸ ἂν ὁρῶ σφάλμα ἐὼν οἴκῳ τῷ σῷ κατὰ
 δύναμιν |divert from τὰ δὲ μοι |suffering, condition
 |lesson, γέγονε. εἰ μὲν ἀθάνατος δοκέεις εἶναι καὶ
 |knowledge
 στρατιῆς τοιαύτης ἄρχειν, οὐδὲν ἂν εἴη πρῆγμα¹ γνώμας
 ἐμὲ σοὶ |display, declare εἰ δ' ἔγνωκας ὅτι ἄνθρωπος καὶ σὺ
 εἰς καὶ ἑτέρων |such ἄρχεις, ἐκεῖνο πρῶτον μάθε, ὥς
 |circle, τῶν |human ἐστὶ πρηγμάτων,
 |wheel

¹ it will not be profitable

your land, do thou this same thing thyself.”

Having heard this Cyrus called together the first men among the Persians, and having gathered these together he laid the matter before them for discussion, asking their advice as to which of the two things he should do: and their opinions all agreed in one, bidding him receive Tomyris and her army into his country.

1.207

But Croesus the Lydian, being present and finding fault with this opinion, declared an opinion opposite to that which had been set forth, saying as follows: “O king, I told thee in former time also, that since Zeus had given me over to thee, I would avert according to my power whatever occasion of falling I might see coming near thy house: and now my sufferings, which have been bitter, have proved to be lessons of wisdom to me. If thou dost suppose that thou art immortal and that thou dost command an army which is also immortal, it will be of no use for me to declare to thee my judgment; but if thou hast perceived that thou art a mortal man thyself and dost command others who are so likewise, then learn this first, that for the affairs of men there is a revolving wheel, and that this

*vocabulary***αἰσχροῦς** shameful**ἀνασχετός** enduring**ἀντιθέω** run against**ἀντιόω** meet, fight, join**ἀντιτίθημι** oppose, balance**ἄπειρος** untested; infinite**ἀφηγέομαι** lead; tell, relate**διαβαίνω** pass over, cross ~basis**εἰσδέχομαι** admit, take in**ἐμπαλιν** backwards, on the contrary**ἐνιμι** be in ~ion**ἐνθεῦτεν** thence**εὖς** good, brave, noble**εὐτυχέω** be lucky, prosper, succeed**ἡσάομαι** (pass) be weaker, be overcome; (active) defeat**ὄον** οὖ type of fruit**περιγίγνομαι** surpass; survive; attain
~genus**περιφέρω** carry around**προέρχομαι** proceed, come out**πρόκειμαι** be placed by; be devoted to**ὑπέξιμι** withdraw; go out**ὑποχωρέω** recoil ~heir**χωρίς** separately; except, other than
~heir

περιφερόμενος δὲ οὐκ ἔᾱ αἰεὶ τοὺς αὐτοὺς εὐτυχέειν.

«ἤδη ὦν ἔχω γνώμην περὶ τοῦ προκειμένου πρήγματος
τὰ ἔμπαλιν ἢ οὗτοι. εἰ γὰρ ἐθελήσομεν ἐσδέξασθαι τοὺς
πολεμίους ἐς τὴν χώραν, ὅδε τοι ἐν αὐτῷ κίνδυνος ἔνι·
ἐσωθεῖς μὲν προσαπολλύεις πᾶσαν τὴν ἀρχήν. δηλα γὰρ
δὴ ὅτι νικῶντες Μασσαγέται οὐ τὸ ὀπίσω φεύγονται ἀλλ’
ἐπ’ ἀρχὰς τὰς σὰς ἐλῶσι. νικῶν δὲ οὐ νικᾷς τοσοῦτον
ὅσον εἰ διαβὰς ἐς τὴν ἐκείνων, νικῶν Μασσαγέτας, ἔποιο
φεύγουσι. τὼντὸ γὰρ ἀντιθήσω ἐκείνῳ, ὅτι νικήσας τοὺς
ἀντιουμένους ἐλᾷς ἰθὺ τῆς ἀρχῆς τῆς Τομύριος.

«χωρὶς τε τοῦ ἀπηγγεμένου αἰσχρὸν καὶ οὐκ ἀνασχετὸν
Κῦρόν γε τὸν Καμβύσεω¹ γυναικὶ εἷξαντα ὑποχωρήσαι
τῆς χώρας.

«νῦν ὦν μοι δοκέει διαβάντας προελθεῖν ὅσον ἂν ἐκείνοι
ὑπεξίωσι, ἐνθεῦτεν δὲ τάδε ποιεῦντας πειρᾶσθαι ἐκείνων
περιγενέσθαι. ὥς γὰρ ἐγὼ πυνθάνομαι, Μασσαγέται εἰσὶ
ἀγαθῶν τε Περσικῶν ἄπειροι² καὶ

¹ Cyrus's son ² inexperienced

|carry around δὲ οὐκ ἔα αἰεὶ τοὺς αὐτοὺς |be lucky, prosper,
|per, succeed

«ἦδη ὦν ἔχω γνώμην περὶ τοῦ |be placed by; πρήγματος
|be devoted to

τὰ |backwards, on¹ τοι. εἰ γὰρ ἐθελήσομεν |admit, take in . οὐς
|the contrary

πολεμίους ἐς τὴν χώραν, ὅδε τοι ἐν αὐτῷ κίνδυνος |be in

|(pass) be weaker, be over- λλύεις πᾶσαν τὴν ἀρχήν. δηλα γὰρ
|come; (active) defeat

δὴ ὅτι νικῶντες Μασσαγέται οὐ τὸ ὀπίσω φεύξονται ἀλλ’

ἐπ’ ἀρχὰς τὰς σὰς ἐλῶσι. νικῶν δὲ οὐ νικᾷς τοσοῦτον

ὅσον εἰ |pass over, cross ἐκείνων, νικῶν Μασσαγέτας, ἔποιο

φεύγουσι. τῷτὸ γὰρ ἀντιθήσω ἐκείνῳ, ὅτι νικήσας τοὺς

|meet, fight, join ἐλᾷς ἰθὺ τῆς ἀρχῆς τῆς Τομύριος.

«|separately; ex- ἀπηγγεμένου |shameful καὶ οὐκ |endurable
|cept, other than

Κῦρόν γε τὸν Καμβύσεω¹ γυναικὶ εἷξαντα |recoil

τῆς χώρας.

«νῦν ὦν μοι δοκεῖ |pass over, |proceed, come out ὃν ἐκείνοι
|cross

ὑπεξίωσι, |thence δὲ τάδε ποιέοντας πειράσθαι ἐκείνων

|surpass; sur- ὥς γὰρ ἐγὼ πυνθάνομαι, Μασσαγέται εἰσὶ
|vive; attain

ἀγαθῶν τε Περσικῶν |untested;² καὶ
|infinite

¹ Cyrus’s son ² inexperienced

in its revolution suffers not the same persons always to have good fortune.

"I therefore now have an opinion about the matter laid before us, which is opposite to that of these men: for if we shall consent to receive the enemy into our land, there is for thee this danger in so doing:— if thou shalt be worsted thou wilt lose in addition all thy realm, for it is evident that if the Massagetai are victors they will not turn back and fly, but will march upon the provinces of thy realm; and on the other hand if thou shalt be the victor, thou wilt not be victor so fully as if thou shouldest overcome the Massagetai after crossing over into their land and shouldest pursue them when they fled. For against that which I said before I will set the same again here, and say that thou, when thou hast conquered, wilt march straight against the realm of Tomyris.

"Moreover besides that which has been said, it is a disgrace and not to be endured that Cyrus the son of Cambyses should yield to a woman and so withdraw from her land.

"Now therefore it seems good to me that we should cross over and go forward from the crossing as far as they go in their retreat, and endeavour to get the better of them by doing as follows:— The Massagetai, as I am informed, are without experience of Persian

vocabulary

ἄκρητος pure, unmixed ~crater
 ἀπαθής unaffected, impassive
 ἀπόδεξις acceptance; (Ion) showing
 ἀφειδής unsparing, cruel ~aphid
 δαίς -τός (f) feast, banquet ~demon
 δαίτη feast, banquet
 διαβαίνω pass over, cross ~basis
 εἰστίθηναι put in
 ἐνθεῦτεν thence
 ἐντέλλω (mp) command
 ἐξαναχωρέω retreat, withdraw
 εὖς good, brave, noble
 κατακόπτω cut down, shatter

κρητήρ -ος (m) mixing bowl for wine
 μέτεμι be among, go, follow ~ion
 ὄον οὖ type of fruit
 παντοῖος all kinds of
 προαγορεύω declare, predict, order
 πρόβατον cattle, flocks, herds
 προτίθηναι prefer, set out ~thesis
 σκευάζω prepare, collect
 στρατιά army ~strategy
 ὑπέχω promise; hold out one's hand;
 submit to
 ὑπολείπω leave as a leftover; leave a
 person behind ~eclipse
 φλαῦρος trifling

καλῶν μεγάλων ἀπαθέες. τούτοισι ὦν τοῖσι ἀνδράσι
 τῶν προβάτων ἀφειδέως πολλὰ κατακόψαντας καὶ
 σκευάσαντας προθεῖναι ἐν τῷ στρατοπέδῳ τῷ ἡμετέρῳ
 δαῖτα, πρὸς δὲ καὶ κρητῆρας ἀφειδέως οἴνου ἀκρήτου
 καὶ σιτία παντοῖα· ποιήσαντας δὲ ταῦτα, ὑπολιπομένους
 τῆς στρατιῆς τὸ φλανρότατον, τοὺς λοιποὺς αὐτῆς
 ἐξαναχωρέειν ἐπὶ τὸν ποταμόν. ἦν γὰρ ἐγὼ γνώμης
 μὴ ἀμάρτω, κείνοι ἰδόμενοι ἀγαθὰ πολλὰ τρέφονταί τε
 πρὸς αὐτὰ καὶ ἡμῖν τὸ ἐνθεῦτεν λείπεται ἀπόδεξις ἔργων
 μεγάλων.»

1.208

γνώμαι μὲν αὗται συνέστασαν· Κῦρος δὲ μετεῖς¹ τὴν
 προτέρην γνώμην, τὴν Κροίσου δὲ ἐλόμενος, προηγόρευε
 Τομύρι ἐξαναχωρέειν ὡς αὐτοῦ διαβησομένου ἐπ' ἐκείνην.
 ἦ μὲν δὴ ἐξανεχώρεε κατὰ ὑπέσχετο πρῶτα· Κῦρος δὲ
 Κροίσον ἐς τὰς χεῖρας ἐσθεῖς τῷ ἑωνυτοῦ παιδὶ Καμβύσῃ,
 τῷ περ τὴν βασιληίην ἐδίδου, καὶ πολλὰ ἐντειλάμενός

¹ going away from

καλῶν μεγάλων |unaffected, |τούτοις ὧν τοῖσι ἀνδράσι
 |impassive
 τῶν |cattle, |flocks, |unsparing, |πολλὰ |cut down, shatter καὶ
 |herds |cruel
 |prepare, collect |prefer, set out τῷ στρατοπέδῳ τῷ ἡμετέρῳ
 δαῖτα, πρὸς δὲ καὶ |mixing bowl |unsparing, οἶνου |pure
 |for wine |cruel
 καὶ σιτία |all kinds of οὐσίσας δὲ ταῦτα, |leave (food, person)
 τῆς στρατιῆς τὸ |trifling , τοὺς λοιποὺς αὐτῆς
 |retreat, ἐπὶ τὸν ποταμόν. ἦν γὰρ ἐγὼ γνώμης
 |withdraw
 μὴ ἀμάρτω, κείνοι ἰδόμενοι ἀγαθὰ πολλὰ τρέψονται τε
 πρὸς αὐτὰ καὶ ἡμῖν τὸ |thence λείπεται |acceptance; ὧν
 |(Ion) showing
 μεγάλων.»

1.208

γινώμαι μὲν αὐταὶ συνέστασαν· Κῦρος δὲ |be among ἡν
 προτέρην γνώμην, τὴν Κροίσου δὲ ἐλόμενος, |declare, pre-
 |dict, order
 Τομύρι |retreat, ὥς αὐτοῦ |pass over, cross ἐπ' ἐκείνην.
 |withdraw
 ἥ μὲν δὲ |retreat, κατὰ |promise πρῶτα· Κῦρος δὲ
 |withdraw
 Κροῖσον ἐς τὰς χεῖρας |put in τῷ ἑωυτοῦ παιδί Καμβύσῃ,
 τῷ περ τὴν βασιληίην ἐδίδου, καὶ πολλὰ ἐντειλάμενός

¹ going away from

good things, and have never enjoyed any great luxuries. Cut up therefore cattle without stint and dress the meat and set out for these men a banquet in our camp: moreover also provide without stint bowls of unmixed wine and provisions of every kind; and having so done, leave behind the most worthless part of thy army and let the rest begin to retreat from the camp towards the river: for if I am not mistaken in my judgment, they when they see a quantity of good things will fall to the feast, and after that it remains for us to display great deeds.“

1.208

These were the conflicting opinions; and Cyrus, letting go the former opinion and choosing that of Croesus, gave notice to Tomyris to retire, as he was intending to cross over to her. She then proceeded to retire, as she had at first engaged to do, but Cyrus delivered Croesus into the hands of his son Cambyses, to whom he meant to give the kingdom, and gave him charge earnestly to

vocabulary

ἀπολαμβάνω receive, recover, take
aside, cut off ~epilepsy

διαβαίνω pass over, cross ~basis

διάβασις -εως (f) crossing, passage
~basis

ἐντέλλω (mp) command

ἐξεγείρω awaken

ἐπισκιάζω throw shade on

εὕδω sleep, lie down, rest

εὖς good, brave, noble

ἡλικία time of life, contemporaries

ὄον οὖ type of fruit

ὀρθόω stand up

ὄψιος late, in evening

ὄψις ὄψεως (f) sight, view

~thanatopsis

περαιόω carry across ~pierce

Πέρσης Persian

πτέρυξ -γος (f) wing ~archeopteryx

στρατός common people/soldiers

~strategy

τοιόσδε such

χωρέω withdraw, give way to (+dat)

~heir

οἱ τιμᾶν τε αὐτὸν καὶ εὖ ποιέειν, ἣν ἡ διάβασις ἡ ἐπὶ Μασσαγέτας μὴ ὀρθωθῇ, ταῦτα ἐντειλάμενος καὶ ἀποστείλας τούτους ἐς Πέρσας, αὐτὸς διέβαινε τὸν ποταμὸν καὶ ὁ στρατὸς αὐτοῦ.

1.209

ἐπεῖτε δὲ ἐπεραιώθη τὸν Ἀράξεια, νυκτὸς ἐπελθούσης εἶδε ὄψιν εὐδων ἐν τῶν Μασσαγετέων τῇ χωρῇ τοιήνδε· ἐδόκεε ὁ Κῦρος ἐν τῷ ὕπνῳ ὁρᾶν τῶν Ὑστάσπεος παίδων τὸν πρεσβύτατον ἔχοντα ἐπὶ τῶν ὠμων πτέρυγας καὶ τουτέων τῇ μὲν τὴν Ἀσίην τῇ δὲ τὴν Εὐρώπην ἐπισκιάζειν. Ὑστάσπεϊ δὲ τῷ Ἀρσάμεος ἐόντι ἀνδρὶ Ἀχαιμενίδῃ ἦν τῶν παίδων Δαρεῖος πρεσβύτατος, ἐὼν τότε ἡλικίην ἐς εἴκοσιν ἔτα, καὶ οὗτος κατελέλειπτο ἐν Πέρσῃσι· οὐ γὰρ εἶχε κω ἡλικίην στρατεύεσθαι.

ἐπεὶ ὦν δὴ ἐξηγέρθη ὁ Κῦρος, ἐδίδου λόγον ἐωυτῷ περὶ τῆς ὄψιος. ὥς δὲ οἱ ἐδόκεε μεγάλη εἶναι ἡ ὄψις, καλέσας Ὑστάσπεα καὶ ἀπολαβὼν μῶνον εἶπε «Ὑστασπες, παῖς

οἱ τιμᾶν τε αὐτὸν καὶ εὖ ποιέειν, ἣν ἡ |crossing, ἡ
 |passage
 ἐπὶ Μασσαγέτας μὴ |stand up, ταῦτα ἐντειλάμενος καὶ
 ἀποστείλας τούτους ἐς Πέρσας, αὐτὸς |pass over, cross
 ποταμὸν καὶ ὁ |army αὐτοῦ.

1.209

ἐπείτε δὲ |carry across τὸν Ἀράξεια, νυκτὸς ἐπελθούσης
 εἶδε |sight |lie ἐν τῶν Μασσαγετέων τῇ |with- |such
 |draw,
 ἐδόκεε ὁ Κῦρος ἐν τῷ ὕπνῳ ὁρᾶν τῶν Ὑστασπέων παίδων |give
 |way to
 |(+dat)
 τὸν πρεσβύτατον ἔχοντα ἐπὶ τῶν ὤμων |wing καὶ
 τουτέων τῇ μὲν τὴν Ἀσίην τῇ δὲ τὴν Εὐρώπην |throw shade
 |on
 Ὑστάσπεϊ δὲ τῷ Ἀρσάμεος ἐόντι ἀνδρὶ Ἀχαιμενίδῃ ἣν τῶν
 παίδων Δαρεῖος πρεσβύτατος, ἐὼν τότε |time of life, con- |σί
 |temporaries
 κου μάλιστα ἔτεα, καὶ οὗτος κατελέλειπτο ἐν Πέρσῃσι· οὐ
 γὰρ εἶχε κω |time of life, con- εὔεσθαι.
 |temporaries
 ἐπεὶ ὦν δὴ |awaken ὁ Κῦρος, ἐδίδου λόγον ἐωυτῷ περὶ
 τῆς ὄψιος. ὥς δὲ οἱ ἐδόκεε μεγάλη εἶναι ἡ |sight, καλέσας
 Ὑστάσπεα καὶ |receive, recover, 'ον εἶπε «Ὑστασπες, παῖς
 |take aside, cut off

honour him and to treat him well, if the crossing over to go against the Massagetai should not be prosperous. Having thus charged him and sent these away to the land of the Persians, he crossed over the river both himself and his army.

1.209

And when he had passed over the Araxes, night having come on he saw a vision in his sleep in the land of the Massagetai, as follows:— in his sleep it seemed to Cyrus that he saw the eldest of the sons of Hystaspes having upon his shoulders wings, and that with the one of these he overshadowed Asia and with the other Europe. Now of Hystaspes the son of Arsames, who was a man of the Achaimenid clan, the eldest son was Dareios, who was then, I suppose, a youth of about twenty years of age, and he had been left behind in the land of the Persians, for he was not yet of full age to go out to the wars.

So then when Cyrus awoke he considered with himself concerning the vision: and as the vision seemed to him to be of great import, he called Hystaspes, and having taken him apart by himself he said: “Hystaspes, thy son

*vocabulary***ἀλίσκομαι** be captured ~helix**ἀτρεκής** precise, certain**δαίμων** -ονος (m, 3) a god, fate, doom
~demon**ἐλεγχος** (n) shame, disgrace; (m)
refutation**ἐλέγχω** shame; try, examine**ἐπιβουλεύω** plot, plan, harm
~volunteer**ἐπισκιάζω** throw shade on**ἐπιφέρω** bestow, impute ~bear**εὕδω** sleep, lie down, rest**εὖς** good, brave, noble**καταστρέφω** overturn, subdue
~catastrophe**κῆδω** distress, hurt; mp: care about
(+gen) ~heinous**κῦρος** -εος (n, 3) authority; validity**μηχανή** machine; mechanism, way**ὄον** οὖ type of fruit**οὐκω** no longer**ὄψιος** late, in evening**ὄψις** ὄψεως (f) sight, view

~thanatopsis

παροίχομαι pass, keep going**πέρθω** sack, ravage, plunder**περιχωρέω** go around, rotate**Πέρσης** Persian**προδείκνυμι** (ὑ) show by example;
foreshadow**προφαίνω** show; pass: appear
~photon**πτέρυξ** -γος (f) wing ~archeopteryx**σημαίνω** give orders to; show; mark
~semaphore

σὸς ἐπιβουλεύων ἐμοί τε καὶ τῇ ἐμῇ ἀρχῇ ἐάλωκε. ὥς δὲ ταῦτα ἀτρεκέως οἶδα, ἐγὼ σημανέω· ἐμεῦ θεοὶ κήδονται καὶ μοι πάντα προδεικνύουσι τὰ ἐπιφερόμενα. ἤδη ὦν ἐν τῇ παροιχομένη νυκτὶ εὖδων εἶδον τῶν σῶν παίδων τὸν πρεσβύτατον ἔχοντα ἐπὶ τῶν ὤμων πτέρυγας καὶ τουτέων τῇ μὲν τὴν Ἀσίην τῇ δὲ τὴν Εὐρώπην ἐπισκιάζειν. οὐκων ἐστὶ μηχανὴ ἀπὸ τῆς ὄψιος ταύτης οὐδεμία τὸ μὴ ἐκείνον ἐπιβουλεύειν ἐμοί· σύ νυν τὴν ταχίστην πορεύεο ὀπίσω ἐς Πέρσας καὶ ποίεε ὅκως, ἐπεὰν ἐγὼ τάδε καταστρεψάμενος ἔλθω ἐκεῖ, ὥς μοι καταστήσεις τὸν παῖδα ἐς ἔλεγχον.»

1.210

Κῦρος μὲν δοκέων οἱ Δαρεῖον ἐπιβουλεύειν ἔλεγε τάδε· τῷ δὲ ὁ δαίμων προέφαινε ὥς αὐτὸς μὲν τελευτήσειν αὐτοῦ ταύτῃ μέλλοι, ἡ δὲ βασιληίῃ αὐτοῦ περιχωρέοι ἐς Δαρεῖον. ἀμείβεται δὴ ὦν ὁ Ὑστάσπης τοῖσιδε. «ὦ βασιλεῦ, μὴ εἷῃ ἀνὴρ Πέρσης γεγονῶς ὅστις τοὶ ἐπιβουλεύσειε, εἰ δ' ἐστί, ἀπόλοιτο ὥς τάχιστα· ὅς¹ ἀντὶ μὲν δούλων ἐποίησας

¹ you, who

has been found plotting against me and against my throne: and how I know this for certain I will declare to thee:— The gods have a care of me and show me beforehand all the evils that threaten me. So in the night that is past while sleeping I saw the eldest of thy sons having upon his shoulders wings, and with the one of these he overshadowed Asia and with the other Europe. To judge by this vision then, it cannot be but that he is plotting against me. Do thou therefore go by the quickest way back to Persia and take care that, when I thither after having subdued these regions, thou set thy son before me to be examined.”

1.210

Cyrus said thus supposing that Dareios was plotting against him; but in fact the divine powers were showing him beforehand that he was destined to find his end there and that his kingdom was coming about to Dareios.

To this then Hystaspes replied as follows: “O king, heaven forbid that there should be any man of Persian race who would plot against thee, and if there be any, I pray that he perish as quickly as may be; seeing that thou didst make the Persians to

*vocabulary***ἀλέξω** ward off; aid**ἀπαγγέλλω** announce, order, promise
~angel**ἀπελαύνω** expel, exclude, ward off;
(intrans) ride away**ἀχρεῖος** serving no purpose ~chresard**δαίνυμι** (ῥ) give a feast, feast on
~demon**δαῖς** -τός (f) feast, banquet ~demon**δαίτη** feast, banquet**διαβαίνω** pass over, cross ~basis**ἐλεύθερος** not enslaved**ἐλευθερώω** set free**εὔδω** sleep, lie down, rest**καθαρός** clean, pure**κλίνω** (ι) lean, recline ~incline**ὄψις** ὄψεως (f) sight, view
~thanatopsis**Πέρσης** Persian**προέρχομαι** proceed, come out**πρόκειμαι** be placed by; be devoted to**στρατιά** army ~strategy**στρατός** common people/soldiers
~strategy**στρατώω** be on a campaign ~strategy**τριτημορίς** 1/3**ὑποτίθημι** suggest, advise ~hypothesis**φονεύω** kill**φορβή** food, pasture ~euphorbia**χειρώω** dominate, subdue

ἐλευθέρους Πέρσας εἶναι, ἀντὶ δὲ ἄρχεσθαι ὑπ' ἄλλων
 ἄρχειν ἀπάντων. εἰ δέ τις τοὶ ὄψις ἀπαγγέλλει παῖδα
 τὸν ἐμὸν νεώτερα βουλεύειν περὶ σέο, ἐγὼ τοι παραδίδωμι
 χρᾶσθαι αὐτῷ τοῦτο ὅ τι σὺ βούλει.»

1.211

Ὑστάσπης μὲν τούτοισι ἀμειψάμενος καὶ διαβὰς τὸν
 Ἀράξεα ἦε ἐς Πέρσας φυλάξων Κύρω τὸν παῖδα Δαρεῖον,
 Κῦρος δὲ προελθὼν ἀπὸ τοῦ Ἀράξεω ἡμέρης ὁδὸν ἐποίεε
 κατὰ τὰς Κροίσου ὑποθήκας. μετὰ δὲ ταῦτα Κύρου τε
 καὶ Περσέων τοῦ καθαροῦ¹ στρατοῦ ἀπελάσαντος ὀπίσω
 ἐπὶ τὸν Ἀράξεα, λειφθέντος δὲ τοῦ ἀχρηίου, ἐπελθοῦσα
 τῶν Μασσαγετέων τριτημορὶς τοῦ στρατοῦ τοὺς τε
 λειφθέντας τῆς Κύρου στρατιῆς ἐφόνευε ἀλεξομένους καὶ
 τὴν προκειμένην ἰδόντες δαῖτα, ὥς ἐχειρώσαντο τοὺς
 ἐναντίους, κλιθέντες ἐδαίνυντο, πληρωθέντες δὲ φορβῆς
 καὶ οἴνου ἡῦδον. οἱ δὲ Πέρσαι ἐπελθόντες πολλοὺς μὲν
 σφέων ἐφόνευσαν, πολλῶ δ' ἔτι

¹ fit, sound

ἐλευθέρους Πέρσας εἶναι, ἀντὶ δὲ ἄρχεσθαι ὑπ' ἄλλων
 ἄρχειν ἀπάντων. εἰ δέ τις τοῖς |sight |announce, or- παῖδα
 |der, promise
 τὸν ἐμὸν νεώτερα βουλεύειν περὶ σέο, ἐγὼ τοι παραδίδωμι
 χρᾶσθαι αὐτῷ τοῦτο ὅτι σὺ βούλει.»

1.211

Ὑστάσπης μὲν τούτοις ἀμειψάμενος καὶ |pass over, cross
 Ἀράξεα ἦε ἐς Πέρσας φυλάζων Κύρω τὸν παῖδα Δαρείον,
 Κῦρος δὲ |proceed, come οὐτ . οὐ Ἀράξεω ἡμέρης ὁδὸν ἐποίεε
 κατὰ τὰς Κροίσου |suggest . μετὰ δὲ ταῦτα Κύρου τε
 καὶ Περσέων τοῦ |clean, pure¹ στρατοῦ |expel, exclude, ward off; (intrans)
 |ride away
 ἐπὶ τὸν Ἀράξεα, λειφθέντος δὲ τοῦ |serving no purpose ἵστα
 τῶν Μασσαγετέων |1/3 τοῦ στρατοῦ τοὺς τε
 λειφθέντας τῆς Κύρου στρατιῆς |kill |ward off; aid καὶ
 τὴν |be placed by; ἰδόντες δαῖτα, ὥς |χειρώ?: dominate, subdue; or
 |be devoted to |χειρώ?: dominate, subdue
 ἐναντίους, |lean, |feast , πληρωθέντες δὲ |food
 |recline
 καὶ οἶνον |lie . οἱ δὲ Πέρσαι ἐπελθόντες πολλοὺς μὲν
 σφέων |kill , πολλῶ δ' ἔτι

¹ fit, sound

be free instead of slaves, and to rule all nations instead of being ruled by others. And if any vision announces to thee that my son is planning rebellion against thee, I deliver him over to thee to do with him whatsoever thou wilt.”

1.211

Hystaspes then, having made answer with these words and having crossed over the Araxes, was going his way to the Persian land to keep watch over his son Dareios for Cyrus; and Cyrus meanwhile went forward and made a march of one day from the Araxes according to the suggestion of Croesus. After this when Cyrus and the best part of the army of the Persians had marched back to the Araxes, and those who were unfit for fighting had been left behind, then a third part of the army of the Massagetai came to the attack and proceeded to slay, not without resistance, those who were left behind of the army of Cyrus; and seeing the feast that was set forth, when they had overcome their enemies they lay down and feasted, and being satiated with food and wine they went to sleep. Then the Persians came upon them and slew many of them, and took alive many more even

*vocabulary***ἄζήμιος** not paying, not punished**ἄμπέλινος** of the vine**ἄπληστος** insatiable, greedy**δεσπότης** -ου (m, 1) master, despot**δολόω** trick, trap, disguise**ἐμπίμπλημι** fill with**ἐπαείρω** raise, place on ~aorta**ἐπαναπλέω** sail back**ἐπόμενυμι** (ὅ) swear by**εὖς** good, brave, noble**ζωγρέω** capture, give quarter; revive

~zoo

καθυβρίζω insult**καρτερός** strong, staunch**κάτειμι** go down, disembark ~ion**κορέννυμι** (ὅ) sate; pf, mp: have enough ~cereal**μαίνομαι** be berserk ~maenad**ὄον** οὖ type of fruit**παραινέω** recommend, exhort, warn**στρατηγέω** be a general**στρατιά** army ~strategy**στρατός** common people/soldiers

~strategy

στρατόω be on a campaign ~strategy**τριτημορίς** 1/3**ὑπολαμβάνω** take under one's

support, seize; speak up; imagine

~epilepsy

φάρμακον drug, potion ~pharmacy

πλεῦνας ἐξώγρησαν καὶ ἄλλους καὶ τὸν τῆς βασιλείης
 Τομύριος παῖδα στρατηγέοντα Μασσαγετέων, τῷ οὐνόμα
 ἦν Σπαργαπίσης.

1.212

ἡ δὲ πυθομένη τά τε περὶ τὴν στρατιὴν γεγονότα καὶ
 τὰ περὶ τὸν παῖδα, πέμπουσα κήρυκα παρὰ Κῦρον ἔλεγε
 τάδε. «ἄπληστε αἵματος Κῦρε, μηδὲν ἐπαερθῆς τῷ
 γεγονότι τῷδε πρήγματι, εἰ ἀμπελίνῳ καρπῷ, τῷ περ
 αὐτοὶ ἐμπιπλάμενοι μαίνεσθε οὕτω ὥστε κατιόντος τοῦ
 οἴνου ἐς τὸ σῶμα ἐπαναπλέειν ὑμῖν ἔπεα κακά, τοιούτῳ
 φαρμάκῳ δολώσας ἐκράτησας παιδὸς τοῦ ἐμοῦ, ἀλλ' οὐ
 μάχῃ κατὰ τὸ καρτερόν. νῦν ὦν μευ εὖ παραινεούσης
 ὑπόλαβε τὸν λόγον· ἀποδούς μοι τὸν παῖδα ἄπιθι ἐκ
 τῆσδε τῆς χώρας ἀζήμιος, Μασσαγετέων τριτημορίδι τοῦ
 στρατοῦ κατυβρίσας. εἰ δὲ ταῦτα οὐ ποιήσεις, ἥλιον
 ἐπόμενυμί τοι τὸν Μασσαγετέων δεσπότην, ἡ μὲν σε ἐγὼ
 καὶ ἄπληστον ἐόντα αἵματος κορέσω.»

πλεῦνας |capture καὶ ἄλλους καὶ τὸν τῆς βασιλείης
 Τομύριος παῖδα |be a general Μασσαγετέων, τῷ οὖνομα
 ἦν Σπαργαπίσης.

1.212

ἡ δὲ πυθομένη τά τε περὶ τὴν στρατιὴν γεγονότα καὶ
 τὰ περὶ τὸν παῖδα, πέμπουσα κήρυκα παρὰ Κῦρον ἔλεγε
 τάδε. «|insatiable, αἵματος Κῦρε, μηδὲν |raise, place τῷ
 |greedy |on
 γεγονότι τῷδε πρήγματι, εἰ |of the vine καρπῷ, τῷ περ
 αὐτοῖ |fill with |be berserk οὕτω ὥστε |go down, disembark
 οἴνου ἐς τὸ σῶμα |sail back ὑμῖν ἔπεα κακά, τοιούτω
 φαρμάκῳ |trick, trap, ἐκράτησας παιδὸς τοῦ ἐμοῦ, ἀλλ' οὐ
 |disguise
 μάχῃ κατὰ τὸ |strong, . νῦν ὦν μεν εὖ |recommend, ex-
 |staunch |hort, warn
 |take under one's support, ὑποδούς μοι τὸν παῖδα ἅπιθι ἐκ
 |seize; speak up; imagine
 τῆσδε τῆς χώρας |not paying, σσαγετέων |1/3 τοῦ
 |not punished
 στρατοῦ |insult . εἰ δὲ ταῦτα οὐ ποιήσεις, ἥλιον
 |swear by τοι τὸν Μασσαγετέων |master, , ἡ μὲν σε ἐγὼ
 |despot
 καὶ |insatiable, ἐόντα αἵματος |sate; pf, mp:
 |greedy |have enough

than they slew, and among these the son of the queen Tomyris, who was leading the army of the Massagetai; and his name was Spargapises.

1.212

She then, when she heard that which had come to pass concerning the army and also the things concerning her son, sent a herald to Cyrus and said as follows: “Cyrus, insatiable of blood, be not elated with pride by this which has come to pass, namely because with that fruit of the vine, with which ye fill yourselves and become so mad that as the wine descends into your bodies, evil words float up upon its stream,— because setting a snare, I say, with such a drug as this thou didst overcome my son, and not by valour in fight. Now therefore receive the word which I utter, giving thee good advice:— Restore to me my son and depart from this land without penalty, triumphant over a third part of the army of the Massagetai: but if thou shalt not do so, I swear to thee by the Sun, who is lord of the Massagetai, that surely I will give thee thy fill of blood, insatiable as thou art.”

*vocabulary***αἰχμή** spear point ~acute**ἀναφέρω** bring up ~bear**ἀνήκω** reach up to; belong**ἀνίημι** urge, impel; release ~jet**βέλος** -εος (n, 3) missile ~ballistic**δεσμέω** to chain**δεσμός** bond, latch, strap; also (pl)
headdress**διεργάζομαι** cultivate; kill, end**δίιστημι** stand apart ~stand**ἐγχειρίδιος** handle, hand tool, dagger**εἰσακούω** hearken ~acoustic**ἐκτοξεύω** shoot out**κῦρος** -εος (n, 3) authority; validity**μὴν** him, her, it**οὐδέτερος** neither**συλλέγω** collect, assemble ~legion**συμβάλλω** pit against; compare; mp:
meet, fall in with ~ballistic**συμπίπτω** fall together, happen**συνέχω** keep together, constrain**τοξεύω** shoot an arrow at ~toxic

1.213

Κῦρος μὲν ἐπέων οὐδένα τούτων ἀνενειχθέντων ἐποιέετο λόγον· ὁ δὲ τῆς βασιλείης Τομύριος παῖς Σπαργαπίσης, ὥς μιν ὁ τε οἶνος ἀνήκε καὶ ἔμαθε ἵνα ᾗν κακοῦ, δεηθεὶς Κύρου ἐκ τῶν δεσμῶν λυθῆναι ἔτυχε, ὥς δὲ ἐλύθη τε τάχιστα καὶ τῶν χειρῶν ἐκράτησε, διεργάζεται ἐωυτόν.

1.214

καὶ δὴ οὗτος μὲν τρόπῳ τοιούτῳ τελευτᾷ· Τόμυρις δέ, ὥς οἱ Κῦρος οὐκ ἐσήκουσε, συλλέξασα πᾶσαν τὴν ἐωυτῆς δύναμιν συνέβαλε Κύρῳ. ταύτην τὴν μάχην, ὅσαι δὴ βαρβάρων ἀνδρῶν μάχαι ἐγένοντο, κρίνω ἰσχυροτάτην γενέσθαι, καὶ δὴ καὶ πυνθάνομαι οὕτω τοῦτο γενόμενον. πρῶτα μὲν γὰρ λέγεται αὐτοὺς διαστάντας ἐς ἀλλήλους τοξεύειν, μετὰ δὲ ὥς σφι τὰ βέλεα ἐξετετόξευτο, συμπεσόντας τῇσι αἰχμῇσί τε καὶ τοῖσι ἐγχειριδίῳσι συνέχεσθαι. χρόνον τε δὴ ἐπὶ πολλὸν συνεστάναι μαχομένους καὶ οὐδετέρους ἐθέλιν φεύγειν. τέλος δὲ οἱ

1.213

|authority; ἔν ἐπέων οὐδένα τούτων |bring up ἐποιέετο
 |validity
 λόγον· ὁ δὲ τῆς βασιλείης Τομύριος παῖς Σπαργαπίσης,
 ὥς μιν ὅ τε οἶνος ἀνῆκε καὶ ἔμαθε ἵνα ἦν κακοῦ, δεηθεὶς
 Κύρου ἐκ τῶν δεσμῶν λυθῆναι ἔτυχε, ὥς δὲ ἐλύθη τε
 τάχιστα καὶ τῶν χειρῶν ἐκράτησε, |cultivate; kill, end· ἴον.

1.214

καὶ δὴ οὗτος μὲν τρόπῳ τοιούτῳ τελευτᾷ· Τόμυρις
 δέ, ὥς οἱ Κύρος οὐκ |hearken , |collect, πᾶσαν τὴν
 |assemble
 ἑωυτῆς δύναμιν |pit against; ἴcompare; ταύτην τὴν μάχην,
 |mp: meet, fall in with
 ὅσαι δὴ βαρβάρων ἀνδρῶν μάχαι ἐγένοντο, κρίνω
 ἰσχυροτάτην γενέσθαι, καὶ δὴ καὶ πυνθάνομαι οὕτω τοῦτο
 γενόμενον. πρῶτα μὲν γὰρ λέγεται αὐτοὺς |stand apart ἐς
 ἀλλήλους |shoot an arrow at ἃ ὥς σφι τὰ |missile |shoot out ,
 |συμπίπτω?: fall together, |spear τε καὶ τοῖσι ἐγχειριδίοισι
 |happen; or συμπίπτω?: |point
 |fall together, happen
 |keep together, χρόνον τε δὴ ἐπὶ πολλὸν συνεστάναι
 |constrain
 μαχομένους καὶ |neither ἐθέλειν φεύγειν. τέλος δὲ οἱ

1.213

When these words were reported to him Cyrus made no account of them; and the son of the queen Tomyris, Spargapises, when the wine left him and he learnt in what evil case he was, entreated Cyrus that he might be loosed from his chains and gained his request, and then so soon as he was loosed and had got power over his hands he put himself to death.

1.214

He then ended his life in this manner; but Tomyris, as Cyrus did not listen to her, gathered together all her power and joined battle with Cyrus. This battle of all the battles fought by Barbarians I judge to have been the fiercest, and I am informed that it happened thus:— first, it is said, they stood apart and shot at one another, and afterwards when their arrows were all shot away, they fell upon one another and engaged in close combat with their spears and daggers; and so they continued to be in conflict with one another for a long time, and neither side would flee; but at last the Massagetai got the better

*vocabulary***αἰχμή** spear point ~acute**αἰχμοφόρος** spearman**ἄνθρωπῆος** human**ἄνιππος** horseless**ἀπειλέω** vow, threaten, boast**ἄρδις** arrowhead**ἄσχος** wine skin, leather bag**βασιλεύω** be king**δαίιτα** way of life; home; arbitration**δίζημαι** seek ~zeal**δόλος** trick, bait**ἐναφίημι** release into**ἐπιλέγω** say re, say also; choose; (mid)
think over**ἐσθῆς** clothes ~vest**ἵππότης** -ου (m, 1) horseman ~hippo**κορέννυμι** (ῥ) sate; pf, mp: have
enough ~cereal**λυμαίνομαι** (ῥ) abuse, violate,
descecrate**μετέχω** partake of**νέκυς** (ῥ) corpse, ghost ~necro**περιγίγνομαι** surpass; survive; attain
~genus**Πέρσης** Persian**πιθανός** persuasive**στρατιά** army ~strategy**τελευτή** conclusion, fulfilment ~apostle**τοξότης** -ου (m, 1) archer ~toxic**φορέω** frequentative of φέρω, to carry
~bear**χρυσός** (ῥ) gold**χρυσόω** (ῥ) make golden, gild

Μασσαγέται περιεγένοντο, ἥ τε δὴ πολλή τῆς Περσικῆς στρατιῆς αὐτοῦ ταύτῃ διεφθάρη καὶ δὴ καὶ αὐτὸς Κῦρος τελευτᾷ, βασιλεύσας τὰ πάντα ἐνὸς δέοντα τριήκοντα ἔτεα. ἄσκον δὲ πλήσασα αἵματος ἀνθρωπηίου Τόμυρις ἐδίξητο ἐν τοῖσι τεθνεῶσι τῶν Περσέων τὸν Κύρου νέκυν, ὥς δὲ εὔρε, ἐναπῆκε αὐτοῦ τὴν κεφαλὴν ἐς τὸν ἄσκον, λυμαينوμένη δὲ τῷ νεκρῷ ἐπέλεγε τάδε· «σὺ μὲν ἐμὲ ζῶσάν τε καὶ νικῶσάν σε μάχῃ ἀπώλεσας, παῖδα τὸν ἐμὸν ἐλὼν δόλω· σέ δ' ἐγώ, κατὰ περ ἠπειλήσα, αἵματος κορέσω.» τὰ μὲν δὴ κατὰ τὴν Κύρου τελευτὴν τοῦ βίου, πολλῶν λόγων λεγομένων, ὅδε μοι ὁ πιθανώτατος εἴρηται.

1.215

Μασσαγέται δὲ ἐσθῆτά τε ὁμοίην τῇ Σκυθικῇ φορέουσι καὶ δίαιταν ἔχουσι, ἵππόται δὲ εἰσὶ καὶ ἄνιπποι ἀμφοτέρων γὰρ μετέχουσι καὶ τοξόται τε καὶ αἰχμοφόροι, σαγάρις νομίζοντες ἔχειν. χρυσῷ δὲ καὶ χαλκῷ τὰ πάντα χρέωνται· ὅσα μὲν γὰρ ἐς αἰχμὰς καὶ ἄρδεις καὶ σαγάρις,

Μασσαγέται ^{|surpass; sur-,} ἥ τε δὴ πολλή τῆς Περσικῆς ^{|vive; attain}
 στρατιῆς αὐτοῦ ταύτῃ διεφθάρη καὶ δὴ καὶ αὐτὸς Κῦρος
 τελευτᾷ, ^{|be king} τὰ πάντα ἐνὸς δέοντα τριήκοντα
 ἔτεα. ^{|wine skin} πλήσασα αἵματος ^{|human} Τόμυρις
^{|seek} ἐν τοῖσι τεθνεῶσι τῶν Περσέων τὸν Κύρου ^{|corpse, ghost}
 ὡς δὲ εὔρε, ^{|release into} οὗτοῦ τὴν κεφαλὴν ἐς τὸν ^{|wine skin}
^{|abuse, violate, desecrate} δὲ τῷ νεκρῷ ἐπέλεγε τάδε· «σὺ μὲν ἐμὲ
 ζῶσάν τε καὶ νικῶσάν σε μάχῃ ἀπώλεσας, παῖδα τὸν
 ἐμὸν ἐλὼν ^{|trick, bait} δ' ἐγώ, κατὰ περ ἠπειλήσα, αἵματος
^{|sate; pf, mp; have enough} τὰ μὲν δὴ κατὰ τὴν Κύρου ^{|conclusion, fulfilment}
 βίου, πολλῶν λόγων λεγομένων, ὅδε μοι ὁ ^{|persuasive}
 εἴρηται.

1.215

Μασσαγέται δὲ ^{|clothes} τε ὁμοίην τῇ Σκυθικῇ ^{|frequentative of φέρω, to carry}
^{|way of life; home; arbitration} οἱ δὲ εἰσὶ καὶ ^{|horseless} ἀμφοτέρων
^{|partake of} γὰρ καὶ ^{|archer} τε καὶ ^{|spearman}, σαγάρις
 νομίζοντες ἔχειν. χρυσῷ δὲ καὶ χαλκῷ τὰ πάντα
 χρεώνται· ὅσα μὲν γὰρ ἐς ^{|spear point} καὶ ^{|arrowhead} ταγάρις,

in the fight: and the greater part of the Persian army was destroyed there on the spot, and Cyrus himself brought his life to an end there, after he had reigned in all thirty years wanting one. Then Tomyris filled a skin with human blood and had search made among the Persian dead for the corpse of Cyrus: and when she found it, she let his head down into the skin and doing outrage to the corpse she said at the same time this: "Though I yet live and have overcome thee in fight, nevertheless thou didst undo me by taking my son with craft: but I according to my threat will give thee thy fill of blood." Now as regards the end of the life of Cyrus there are many tales told, but this which I have related is to my mind the most worthy of belief.

1.215

As to the Massagetai, they wear a dress which is similar to that of the Scythians, and they have a manner of life which is also like theirs; and there are of them horsemen and also men who do not ride on horses (for they have both fashions), and moreover there are both archers and spearmen, and their custom it is to carry battle-axes; and for everything they use either gold or bronze, for in all that has to

*vocabulary***ἄδεής** (ἄ) fearless ~Deimos**ἄμαξα** wagon**ἄπλετος** boundless, immense,
abundant**ἀποκρεμάζω** let hang down; (mp)
hang, come off**ἄργυρος** silver, money ~Argentina**αὐτως** just so, merely; in vain ~after
Ἑλλήν Greek**ἐπίκοινος** in common**ἐψω** boil, be boiling**ζωστήρ** -ος (m) belt ~zone**ἡλικία** time of life, contemporaries**θύω** (ῥ) rush; sacrifice ~θύω**θώραξ** -ηκος (m) breastplate ~thorax**κάρτα** very much ~κράτος**κατευωχέομαι** party on; entertain**κοσμέω** marshal, array ~cosmos**κρέας** -ως (n) meat ~creatine**μασχαλιστήρ** girth, band**μίν** him, her, it**ὄλβιος** happy, wealthy**περιβάλλω** act: excel; mid: put on
clothing ~ballistic**πρόβατον** cattle, flocks, herds**πρόκειμαι** be placed by; be devoted to**προσήκω** belong to, it seems**σίδηρος** iron ~siderite**στέρνον** breast, chest, seat of feelings
~sternum**στόμιον** aperture; bit**συνέρχομαι** come together**τοιόσδε** such**φάλαρον** bosses on a helmet,
cheek-piece for horses**φαρετρεών** quiver**χαλινός** (ι) bit for a horse**χρυσός** (ϝ) gold**χρυσώω** (ϝ) make golden, gild**χωρέω** withdraw, give way to (+dat)
~heir

χαλκῷ τὰ πάντα χρέωνται, ὅσα δὲ περὶ κεφαλὴν καὶ ζωστήρας καὶ μασχαλιστήρας, χρυσῷ κοσμέονται. ὥς δ' αὖτως τῶν ἵππων τὰ μὲν περὶ τὰ στέρνα χαλκέους θώρηκας περιβάλλουσι, τὰ δὲ περὶ τοὺς χαλινούς καὶ στόμια καὶ φάλαρα χρυσῷ. σιδήρῳ δὲ οὐδ' ἀργύρῳ χρέωνται οὐδέν· οὐδὲ γὰρ οὐδέ σφι ἐστὶ ἐν τῇ χωρῇ, ὃ δὲ χρυσὸς καὶ ὁ χαλκὸς ἄπλετος.

1.216

νόμοισι δὲ χρέωνται τοιοῖσινδε. γυναῖκα μὲν γαμέει ἕκαστος, ταύτησι δὲ ἐπίκοινα χρέωνται· τὸ γὰρ Σκύθας φασὶ Ἕλληνες ποιεῖν, οὐ Σκύθαι εἰσὶ οἱ ποιέοντες ἀλλὰ Μασσαγέται· τῆς γὰρ ἐπιθυμῆσι γυναικὸς Μασσαγέτης ἀνὴρ, τὸν φαρετρεῶνα ἀποκρεμάσας πρὸ τῆς ἀμάξης μίσγεται ἀδεῶς. οὗρος δὲ ἡλικίᾳ σφι πρόκειται ἄλλος μὲν οὐδεὶς· ἐπεὰν δὲ γέρων γένηται κάρτα, οἱ προσήκοντές οἱ πάντες συνελθόντες θύουσί μιν καὶ ἄλλα πρόβατα ἅμα αὐτῷ, ἐφήσαντες δὲ τὰ κρέα κατευωχέονται. ταῦτα μὲν τὰ ὀλβιώτατά σφι νενόμισται,

χαλκῷ τὰ πάντα χρέωνται, ὅσα δὲ περὶ κεφαλὴν καὶ

|belt καὶ |girth, band , χρυσῷ |marshal, ὥς
|array

δ' |just so, merely; |in vain ἵππων τὰ μὲν περὶ τὰ |chest χαλκίους

|breastplate |excel; don , τὰ δὲ περὶ τοὺς |bit καὶ

|aperture; bit ` φάλαρα χρυσῷ. σιδήρῳ δὲ οὐδ' |silver,
|money

χρέωνται οὐδέν· οὐδὲ γὰρ οὐδέ σφι ἐστὶ ἐν τῇ |withdraw, give way to
|(+dat)

δὲ |gold καὶ ὁ χαλκὸς |boundless, im-
|mense, abundant

1.216

νόμοισι δὲ χρέωνται τοιοῖσινδε. γυναῖκα μὲν γαμέει

ἕκαστος, ταύτησι δὲ |in common, χρέωνται· τὸ γὰρ Σκύθας

φασὶ |Greek ποιεῖν, οὐ Σκύθαι εἰσὶ οἱ ποιέοντες ἀλλὰ

Μασσαγέται· τῆς γὰρ ἐπιθυμῆσι γυναικὸς Μασσαγέτης

ἀνὴρ, τὸν |quiver |let hang down; (mp)` τῆς |wagon
|hang, come off

μίσγεται |fearless οὗρος δὲ |time of life, |be placed by; ἄλλος
|contemporaries |be devoted to

μὲν οὐδεὶς· ἐπεὰν δὲ γέρων γένηται |very much |belong to, it be-
|seems

οἱ πάντες |come together ἵουσί μιν καὶ ἄλλα πρόβατα ἅμα

αὐτῷ, |boil, be boiling` τὰ |meat |party on; entertain ταῦτα μὲν

τὰ |happy, σφι νενόμισται,
|wealthy

do with spear-points or arrow-heads or battle-axes they use bronze, but for head-dresses and girdles and belts round the arm-pits they employ gold as ornament: and in like manner as regards their horses, they put breast-plates of bronze about their chests, but on their bridles and bits and cheek-pieces they employ gold. Iron however and silver they use not at all, for they have them not in their land, but gold and bronze in abundance.

1.216

These are the customs which they have:— Each marries a wife, but they have their wives in common; for that which the Hellenes say that the Scythians do, is not in fact done by the Scythians but by the Massagetai, that is to say, whatever woman a man of the Massagetai may desire he hangs up his quiver in front of the waggon and has commerce with her freely. They have no precise limit of age laid down for their life, but when a man becomes very old, his nearest of kin come together and slaughter him solemnly and cattle also with him; and then after that they boil the flesh and banquet upon it. This is considered by them the happiest lot; but him who has ended

vocabulary

ἄφθονος ungrudging, plentiful
γαλακτοπότης -ου (m, 1) milk drinker
δατέομαι divide into portions ~demon
θυσία sacrifice
θύω (ῥ) rush; sacrifice ~θύω
κατασιτέομαι (ι) eat up, feed on
κρύπτω hide, cover ~cryptic
κτῆνος -ους (n, 3) herd animal

νόσος (f) plague, pestilence ~noisome
νοῦσος (f) plague, pestilence ~noisome
παραγίγνομαι be beside, attend
 ~genus
σέβομαι feel shame, awe
σπείρω sow ~diaspora
συμφορά collecting; accident, misfortune

τὸν δὲ νοῦσῳ τελευτήσαντα οὐ κατασιτέονται ἀλλ' γῇ
κρύπτουσι, συμφορὴν ποιούμενοι ὅτι οὐκ ἔκετο ἐς τὸ
τυθῆναι. σπείρουσι δὲ οὐδέν, ἀλλ' ἀπὸ κτηνέων ζώουσι
καὶ ἰχθύων· οἳ δὲ ἄφθονοί σφι ἐκ τοῦ Ἀράξεω ποταμοῦ
παραγίνονται· γαλακτοπόται δ' εἰσί. θεῶν δὲ μῶνον
ἥλιον σέβονται, τῷ θύουσι ἵππους. νόος δὲ οὗτος τῆς
θυσίης· τῶν θεῶν τῷ ταχίστῳ πάντων τῶν θνητῶν τὸ
τάχιστον δατέονται.

τὸν δὲ νούσῳ τελευτήσαντα οὐ |eat up, feed on ἀλλ' γῇ
 |hide, cover , συμφορὴν ποιεύμενοι ὅτι οὐκ ἔκετο ἐς τὸ
 |rush; sacri-|sow δὲ οὐδέεν, ἀλλ' ἀπὸ |herd animal|ίουσι
 |fice
 καὶ ἰχθύων· οἳ δὲ |ungrudging, 'ι ἐκ τοῦ Ἀράξεω ποταμοῦ
 |plentiful
 παραγίνονται· |milk drinker δ' εἰσί. θεῶν δὲ μῶνον
 ἥλιον σέβονται, τῷ |rush; sacrifice |ς. νόος δὲ οὗτος τῆς
 θυσίης· τῶν θεῶν τῷ ταχίστῳ πάντων τῶν θνητῶν τὸ
 τάχιστον |divide into portions

his life by disease they do not eat, but cover him up in the earth, counting it a misfortune that he did not attain to being slaughtered. They sow no crops but live on cattle and on fish, which last they get in abundance from the river Araxes; moreover they are drinkers of milk. Of gods they reverence the Sun alone, and to him they sacrifice horses: and the rule of the sacrifice is this:— to the swiftest of the gods they assign the swiftest of all mortal things.